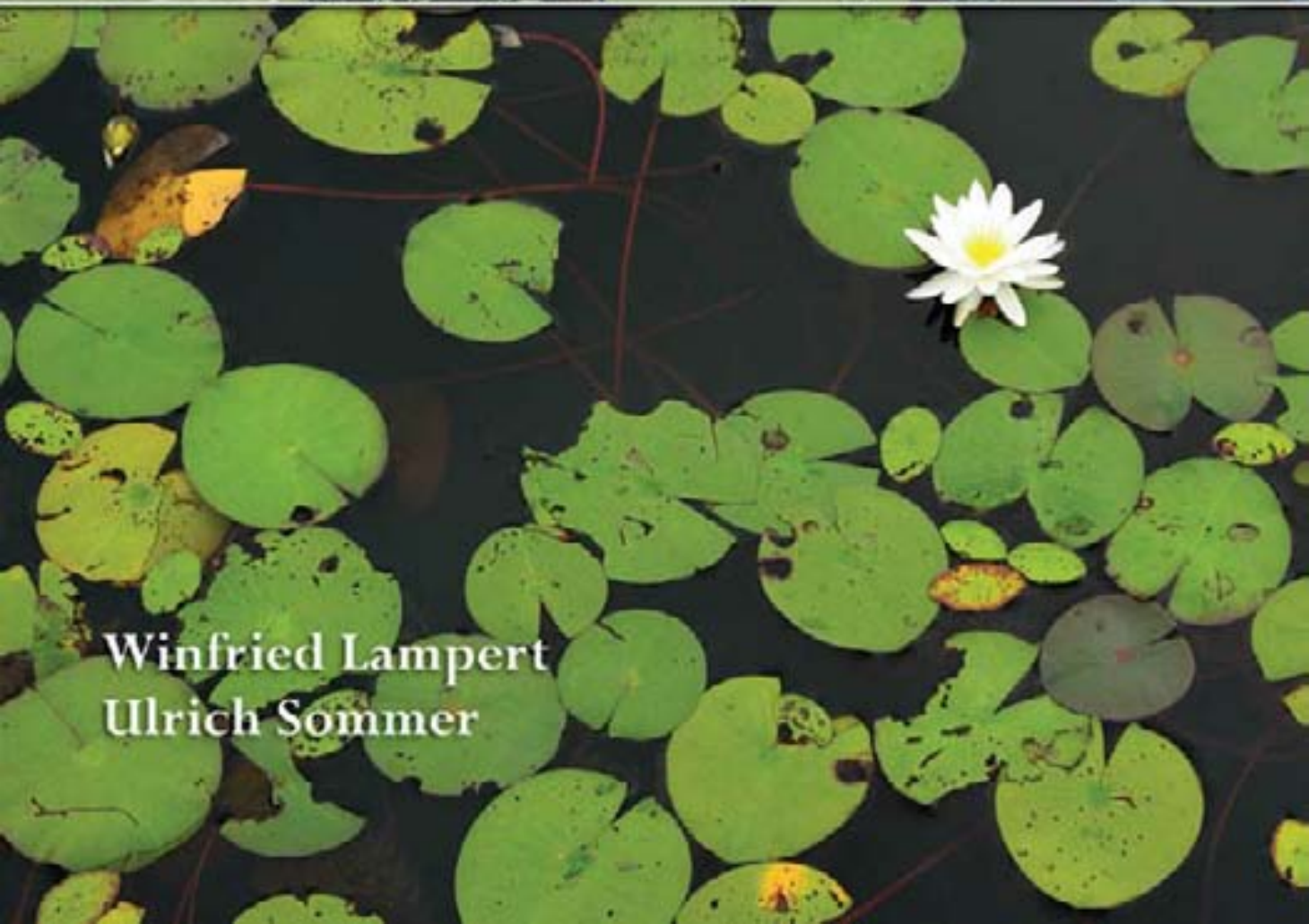
OXFORD BIOLOGY

Limnoecology

SECOND EDITION

The Ecology of Lakes and Streams



Winfried Lampert
Ulrich Sommer

Limnoecology

This page intentionally left blank

Limnoecology

Second Edition

Winfried Lampert
Max Planck Institute for Evolutionary Biology in Plön

Ulrich Sommer
Leibniz Institute of Marine Sciences, Kiel University

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS
Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP
Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in
Oxford New York
Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto
With offices in
Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam
Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press
in the UK and in certain other countries
Published in the United States
by Oxford University Press Inc., New York
© W. Lampert and U. Sommer 2007
The moral rights of the authors have been asserted
Database right Oxford University Press (maker)
First published 2007
Copyright © of the original German language edition 1999 by Georg Thieme Verlag KG,
Stuttgart, Germany. Original title: "Limnoökologie", by W. Lampert and U. Sommer.
The English language edition has been updated by W. Lampert with permission by
Georg Thieme Verlag KG.
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press,
or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction
outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department,
Oxford University Press, at the address above
You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover
and you must impose the same condition on any acquirer
British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
Data available
Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Lampert, Winfried.
[Limnoökologie. English]
Limnoecology / Winfried Lampert, Ulrich Sommer. — 2nd ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references (p.).
ISBN 978–0–19–921393–1 (alk. paper)
ISBN 978–0–19–921392–4 (alk. paper)
1. Limnology. 2. Lake ecology. 3. Stream ecology. I. Sommer, Ulrich. II. Title.
QH96. 57. A1L3513 2007
577.6—dc22 2007017533
Typeset by Newgen Imaging Systems (P) Ltd., Chennai, India
Printed in Great Britain
on acid-free paper by
A. Rowe, Chippenham, Wiltshire
ISBN 978–0–19–921392–4 (Hbk.) 978–0–19–921393–1 (Pbk.)
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Preface to the second English edition

Fresh water covers only a tiny part of the Earth's surface. Nevertheless, its importance for drinking water, irrigation, fisheries, aquaculture, and tourism is beyond dispute. Limnology, the science of inland waters, provides a necessary scientific basis for the management of lakes and rivers. There is, however, a bigger and more fundamental role for limnology. Even the earliest limnologists believed that they had an important message for ecology. This continuing belief is highlighted by article titles like "the lake as a microcosm" (Forbes 1877) and "copepodology for the ornithologist" (Hutchinson 1951). Lakes, in particular, have been considered as little theaters where the great play of the ecological interactions, interactions among organisms and between organisms and their environment, could be studied more easily than anywhere else. Lakes can serve as those little theaters ("microcosms" *sensu* Forbes) because they are relatively easy to sample, because they have clear-cut boundaries (compared to terrestrial ecosystems) and because field experiments are relatively easy to perform. There has been a continuous flow of information from limnology into other fields of ecology, at all levels of science, starting from methodological problems of quantitative sampling to the highly abstract concepts such as the food chain and the trophic cascade. One of the most prominent limnologists, G.E. Hutchinson, has developed most of the foundations of modern population and community ecology. Conversely, limnology has received inputs mainly from theoretical ecology and less so from experimentalists and field ecologists outside the field of limnology. The exception is marine ecology, which has provided limnology with some important methodological advances. More than any other subdiscipline of ecology, limnology has helped bridge the gap between models of theoretical ecology and experimental research. The idea of "the lake as a microcosm" implies, of course, a concept of "unity of ecology". It can be assumed that the same principles and laws govern limnetic, marine and terrestrial communities.

Some time ago we felt our German students needed a textbook that demonstrated the close connection between limnology and ecology. In order to clearly identify the concept of this book we invented the term "limnoecology". The "unity of ecology" structured our book. It is modeled after ecology textbooks with a sequence from more elemental to more complex units: individuals, populations, coupled populations, communities, and ecosystems. We did not intend to write another limnology text, but rather incorporated evolutionary aspects as we believe that a Darwinian approach to ecology is needed to explain biological phenomena. Hence, the physical, chemical, and geological background is reduced to the explanation of abiotic factors driving organismal adaptations. This book was first published in German, and we were surprised to see that the demand was not restricted to Germany. After a first translation into Polish, Oxford University Press made an English edition (translated by James F. Haney) possible. However, not only has general biology developed at a fast pace in the past 10 years, new methods and topics have also been adopted in ecology and limnology. For example, population ecology has increased in importance by the incorporation of molecular genetic tools. Microbial ecology profited from the same tools, as they allow the identification of nonculturable bacteria. Stable isotopes have been used to study food webs and carbon

cycling. Global issues such as climate change and biodiversity have become focal points in research, and they have finally entered the political arena. Long-term data sets have become valuable tools for the analysis of ecosystem responses to anthropogenic stress. Consequently, the book needed an update. We are grateful to OUP for the opportunity to write a new edition. Although the general approach of the book has not changed we have added new results and literature, and incorporated new ideas and methodologies that were not available 10 years ago. We thank many colleagues and students for valuable suggestions of new topic and improvements of the old text, and we hope to receive continuing feedback to develop this text further.

Plön and Kiel W.L. and U.S.
February 2007

Contents

List of Abbreviations ix

1 Ecology and evolution 1
1.1 Natural selection 1
1.2 Fitness 1
1.3 Proximate and ultimate factors 3

2 Methods of ecological research 5
2.1 Hypothesis testing 5
2.2 Observations and recording 6
2.3 Correlation of field data 7
2.4 Laboratory and field experiments 8
2.5 Mathematical models 10
2.6 Methods driving the direction of science 10

3 Special features of aquatic habitats 12
3.1 Effects of the molecular structure of water 12
3.2 Vertical gradients 19
3.3 Other vertical gradients 23
3.4 Running water 28
3.5 Predictability of environmental conditions in water 31
Review questions 32

4 The individual in its habitat 33
4.1 Individual requirements 33
4.2 Abiotic factors 36
4.3 Resources 50
4.4 Energy utilization 79
4.5 The importance of body size 85
Review questions 87

5 Populations 89
5.1 Features of populations 89
5.2 Control of population size 90
5.3 Ecological genetics 102
5.4 Demography 114

5.5 Distribution 117
5.6 Classification of life-history strategies 120
5.7 Dispersal and colonization 120
Review questions 124

6 Interactions 127
6.1 Competition for resources 127
6.2 Direct interactions of competitors 144
6.3 Predator–prey relationships 147
6.4 Grazing 152
6.5 Predation 162
6.6 Parasitism 180
6.7 Symbiosis 183
6.8 Interactions of competition and predation 183
Review questions 199

7 Communities 201
7.1 Characteristics of communities 201
7.2 "Superorganism" or "sieve" 201
7.3 Internal structure of communities 202
7.4 Species richness and diversity 219
7.5 Lake communities 222
7.6 Stream communities 225
Review questions 232

8 Ecosystem perspectives 234
8.1 The ecosystem as an ecological unit 234
8.2 Flow of energy 235
8.3 Cycling of matter 238
8.4 Are streams ecosystems? 247
8.5 Comparisons of ecosystem productivity 248
8.6 Anthropogenic disturbances to ecosystems 252
8.7 Ecosystem change 262
8.8 Effects of biodiversity on ecosystem functions 277
Review questions 282

9 Final remarks 284
9.1 Ecology and the biological sciences 284
9.2 Ecology and society 284
9.3 Ecology and the environment 285

References 286
Glossary 306
Index 313

Abbreviations

CAM	crassulacean acid metabolism
COI	cytochrome oxidase I subunit
CPOM	coarse particulate organic matter
DCM	deep chlorophyll maximum
DGGE	denaturating gradient gel electrophoresis
DIC	dissolved inorganic carbon
DOC	dissolved organic carbon
DOM	dissolved organic matter
DON	dissolved organic nitrogen
ENSO	El Niño southern oscillation
EPA	eicosapentaenoic acid
ESD	equivalent spherical diameter
FPOM	fine particulate organic matter
HNF	heterotrophic nanoflagellates
IBP	International Biological Program
IDH	intermediate disturbance hypothesis
MAA	mycosporine-like amino acids
NAO	North Atlantic oscillation
OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
OTU	operational taxonomic unit
PAR	photosynthetically active radiation
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PEG	Plankton Ecology Group
PIE	probability of interspecific encounters
POC	particulate organic carbon
P_{part} or PP	particulate phosphorus
P_{tot} or TP	total phosphorus
PUFA	polyunsaturated fatty acid
RFLP	restriction fragment length polymorphism
RQ	respiratory quotient
SEH	size–efficiency hypothesis
SIA	stable isotope analysis
SRP	soluble reactive phosphorus
TDP	total dissolved phosphorus
TEP	transparent exopolymers
UPOM	ultrafine particulate organic matter
UV	ultraviolet
ZNGI	zero net growth isocline

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER 1

Ecology and evolution

1.1 Natural selection

The approach of an ecology textbook can often be recognized by the answer it gives to the question "What is ecology?" We will use Krebs's (1985) definition, "Ecology is the scientific study of the interactions that determine the distribution and abundance of organisms" to stress the point that evolutionary concepts are central to modern ecology.

All organisms interact with their living and nonliving environment. They are affected by *abiotic* (physical and chemical) and *biotic* (activities of other organisms) factors. We speak of organisms as existing only under conditions to which they are *adapted*. These adaptations are the result of evolution, the driving force of which is natural selection (Darwin 1859).

Prerequisites for evolution to occur include:

- Individuals of a population are not entirely alike; they differ, if only slightly, in their appearance, size, ability to feed, or reproductive capacity.
- At least a portion of this variability is inheritable. Individuals share part of their genome with their parents and contribute their genes to the next generation.
- Unrestricted, each population has the potential to colonize the entire earth. This leads to resource limitation and competition. In reality, populations do not increase without limit. Many of the offspring of each generation die before they reach reproductive age. In a condition of equilibrium, a single offspring replaces each parent.
- Not every parent is replaced by its own offspring. The probability that the offspring of a particular parent will survive depends on how well these offspring cope with the environmental conditions in comparison to the young of other parents. When the traits responsible for the offspring's success are passed on to the next generation, the populations that carry such traits will increase.
- The likelihood that the offspring of a particular parent make it to the next generation therefore depends heavily on how well the traits of the offspring fit with the specific environmental conditions. Individuals that are successful in a given environment are generally less successful in other environments.

It is a prerequisite of evolution that the results of natural selection are inherited. Natural selection works through phenotypes and does not alter the genome of the individual. It changes the *gene pool* composition of a population, causing the populations to change their characteristics from generation to generation. Population genetics investigates such changes at the level of genes and single characteristics of organisms. It is difficult to observe these changes with present populations because our period of observation is relatively brief and the changes occur slowly. The distribution and occurrence of populations that we see today are the product of previous natural selection.

Evolution and ecology are closely related, as indicated above. Natural selection is the product of a population's interactions with the biotic and abiotic environment. These interactions are the fundamental parameters studied by ecologists. *Ecology investigates the forces driving natural selection*. It is no wonder that modern ecology and evolutionary biology are closely coupled, for many new concepts in evolutionary biology have stimulated recent developments in ecology.

1.2 Fitness

The essence of natural selection is that individuals produce differing numbers of reproductive offspring. At the molecular level this means that certain genes

in the population are copied at different rates. A measure of a genotype's long-term success is *fitness*. Individuals that produce the largest number of offspring over a long period of time have the greatest fitness. Fitness is always a relative measure, since the environmental conditions often do not allow for maximum production. One should consider the fitness of an individual relative to other individuals living in the same environment. The individual that has the most surviving offspring contributes the most to the gene pool, the sum of all genes in a population. Its phenotypic features will increase in the population, indicating it has the highest *relative fitness*.

Two components of fitness are *reproductive potential* and *survival*. It does not necessarily follow that those individuals with the greatest number of offspring automatically have the highest fitness. It is critical to know how many of the offspring survive. A species can achieve a high degree of fitness either by producing a large number of offspring or by providing offspring with special care. Carp, for example, lay millions of tiny eggs that they cannot later care for. Sticklebacks, however, have only a few large eggs that they lay in a nest guarded by the male. During the critical phase of development, mouth-breeding cichlids provide cover and protection for their young in the mouth of the parent, but they can only host a few offspring. All three fish species achieve fitness in different ways.

Availability of a particular resource such as food or a specific chemical element often limits the reproductive capacity. The physiological mechanism of achieving greater fitness for an individual consists of either getting more food or utilizing it better than other individuals. Greater survival often requires specialized morphological structures and behavior. For example, storage of reserves inside or outside the body, as well as periods of diapause, can reduce mortality. Methods of avoiding being eaten include protective armor, other defense mechanisms (e.g., tasting nasty), and fleeing.

There are certainly many ways to increase fitness. The phenotypic characteristics within a population that will be the most successful are those that contribute to maximizing fitness. Since organisms never achieve the maximum possible fitness in nature, it is better to speak of *optimization*. Organisms become adapted to environmental conditions as a result of optimization of fitness through natural selection. A species will never achieve a perfect adaptation, for several reasons:

- *Selection works on the phenotype*. There is never a perfect correlation between genotype and phenotype due to mutations and interpopulation gene flow. The immigration of individuals from other populations that are adapted to somewhat different conditions provides a constant flow of genes into the gene pool. Smaller populations are most likely to be affected by random factors, resulting in *genetic drift*. Selection affects only the available phenotypes, since no single population has all of the possible genetic combinations that influence fitness. Selection promotes the best adapted genotypes from those that are available rather than the absolute best genotypes.
- *Physical, chemical, and biological factors are not constant in the environment*. Long-term and short-term climatic changes constantly require new adaptations. Geological events create new habitats, and the organisms themselves also change the environmental conditions. The accidental immigration of organisms into habitats to which they have historically not had access changes the biological environment for the organisms that are already present.
- *Organisms must constantly make compromises*. One cannot conclude from an organism's presence that the conditions are optimal for it. For example, animals that live in deep, cold water in lakes do not necessarily require cold water. Some of them can produce significantly more offspring at higher temperatures, but cannot live in the warm surface waters because of predators against which they have no defense.
- *Adaptations often have "costs."* The energy that an organism invests for a particular morphological adaptation, such as for defense, may cause deprivation elsewhere in the organism. Adaptation to one selective pressure may interfere with adaptation to another selective factor. For example, when algae develop large colonies, they are protected from grazing by zooplankton, but the innermost cells of

the colony may not receive adequate carbon dioxide and nutrients.

• *There are structural and physiological limits to an adaptation*. Organisms cannot, for example, become infinitely large or small. Likewise, uptake rates for nutrients and feeding rates cannot increase without limit.

• *The biological relationships between organisms resemble an "arms race."* A prey organism that protects itself by means of armor produces a selective pressure that promotes those predators that can best break through the armor, which may, for example, result in the evolution of a stronger jaw. This, in turn, creates a larger selective pressure for stronger armor in the prey. As long as the genetic potential for further change is present, the predator and prey will continually change, but never reach an optimal adaptation.

This last point suggests there are differences in the adaptations to abiotic and biotic factors. Although organisms modify the abiotic environment, the changes in the environment do not represent an adaptive response in return. Adaptation to an abiotic factor is a one-sided process. Adaptation to biotic factors is a two-sided process. Here, species interact and become partners in the evolutionary process in which they co-evolve. In a particular habitat all organisms are exposed to the same abiotic factors; for example, the water in an Arctic lake is cold for all the organisms that live there. Since there are a limited number of possible physiological reactions that would result in increased fitness in response to cold temperatures, evolving organisms tend to become more similar. Biological factors, on the other hand, are not the same for all organisms. There are close interactions between some individuals or groups of individuals, whereas others may have only slight interactions or none. Various organisms are therefore exposed to different biological selective factors that have the effect of maintaining differences. Only those organisms that have a sufficiently high fitness can establish themselves as part of a community. The structure of this community, such as which species occur and how they interact, depends on how well these organisms are adapted to the conditions. In this sense, abiotic factors create the "frame," but biotic factors produce the "picture in the frame" (see Section 8.7.1).

1.3 Proximate and ultimate factors

Ecology is changing from a descriptive science into an explanatory science. There has been a shift to view most aspects of ecology from the standpoint of fitness. The new focus of ecologists is to investigate not only *how* organisms are adapted to their environment, but *why* they have a particular adaptation, which is to ask what is their "adaptive value."

An example may help clarify the distinction. Some planktonic copepods (cyclopoid copepods) have a diapause or resting stage in their life cycle during which they do not undergo further development. This diapause often occurs in the summer. Adult copepods reproduce in the spring. Their larvae (nauplii) and the first juvenile stages (copepodites) develop, but the fourth copepodite stage ceases development and buries itself in the sediment to pass the summer. They reappear in late fall and complete their development. Spindler (1971) demonstrated experimentally that day length determines the onset of diapause. This explains what controls the behavior, but not why the behavior has developed. One would not expect that longer days represent a disadvantage for fitness. On the contrary, a copepod that does not go into diapause could produce several generations of offspring during the summer, thereby increasing fitness. Day length is a *proximate factor*, an environmental factor that determines the immediate response of an organism. In addition, there must be one or more inconspicuous factors that cause the diapause behavior to represent a fitness advantage. The evolutionary response is controlled by *ultimate factors*. It is not always easy to recognize an ultimate factor, since natural selection acts to eliminate ultimate factors. It is rare that we have historic evidence indicating that an ultimate factor is still operating in a population. As a rule we only observe a stage that approaches the final result of the adaptation.

The search for ultimate factors is nonetheless one of the most important tasks of the ecologist. One must develop hypotheses to test which ultimate

factors are important. In our example such hypotheses might appear as:

- The copepods cannot tolerate the high summer temperatures because of physiological limitations.
- The larval stages that depend on algae for food are poor competitors and cannot succeed in the summer in the presence of other zooplankton that graze on algae.
- The copepods are susceptible to fish predation and avoid those periods when fish are abundant and most active in the lake.
- The behavior is a historic relic from a time when the copepods lived in small water bodies that dried out in the summer.

Some of these hypotheses can be tested experimentally and others by comparisons of populations in various lakes. Normally one can only exclude a proposed ultimate factor rather than prove it is the responsible one (see Section 2.1). For example, the first hypothesis could be easily discarded if the copepods could be cultured at short day lengths and at high water temperatures (see Section 6.8.2). By excluding more and more possible explanations, we reduce the number of possible alternative explanations until, ideally, only one ultimate factor remains. Even this is not a final proof, for an infinite number of new explanations could be created.

An understanding of ultimate factors is important, however, for it enables us to predict how organisms will respond to environmental changes. It may also help reduce the number of factors that must be investigated and lead to more general principles that apply to all organisms. Ultimate factors may affect more than a single group of organisms; they often have knock-on effects. Returning to the example of diapause, adult cyclopoid copepods are predatory, feeding on other small zooplankton. When these copepods enter diapause in the summer, they no longer threaten the small zooplankton, which then can develop populations that become large enough to suppress certain species of algae that they feed upon. Natural selection directly changes the phenotypes of a single population (in our case, the copepods), but indirectly alters other populations and communities. Changes in the characteristics of one population create changes in the environment of those organisms with which they interact.

Ecology integrates at levels ranging from the individual, population, community, and ecosystem to the biosphere. As complexity increases at each higher level, our ability to find adequate explanations decreases (Krebs 1985). Quite likely we will never be able to predict the effects of global climate change in terms of theories of evolutionary biology. This, however, may not be necessary, since such questions deal with large groups such as the green plants rather than species or individuals and require special methods to measure the responses and changes. Nevertheless, evolutionary theory is involved at the highest levels of integration, for even the atmosphere is a result of the interactions of organisms and their environment, and it has only developed its present condition after the evolution of oxygen-producing plants.

Current advances in ecology suggest that we will develop general principles of evolutionary adaptations at the level of communities. Communities have unique features that result from their complexity, such as diversity, stability, species structure, hierarchical divisions, and regenerative ability. In contrast to the DNA of individuals, there is no molecular basis for the inheritance of the integrated features of a community. Ultimately, the features of communities must therefore stem from the interactions of individuals. One of the most challenging tasks of ecology is to derive from the characteristics of individuals the principles that regulate higher-level characteristics such as diversity.

CHAPTER 2

Methods of ecological research

2.1 Hypothesis testing

Ecology, like all other sciences, operates with a repertoire of methodological rules. Methods and approaches have changed as ecology has moved from being a descriptive, natural history study to an experimental science.

The early *developmental* stage of a science usually begins with a description of individual observations. In the next phase of *classification*, the objective is to organize the multitude of observations. Lake typology (see Section 8.5.4 represents the classification stage in limnology that was developed in the first decade of the twentieth century. The classification stage frequently spawns discussions concerning the definition of concepts rather than their cause–effect relationships. Ecology has now reached the stage of *scientific law*, which focuses on predictive statements concerning causal relationships.

Predictive laws demand tests of veracity, whereas classification schemes are either practical or impractical rather than true or false. Defining the criteria of the scientific search for true statements, as opposed to less rigorous forms of reasoning, is the goal of philosophy of science, a subfield of philosophy. As in almost all areas of philosophy, there is no consensus of opinion amongst the scholars concerning the definition of science and the scientific method. Karl Popper, whose ideas have achieved wide acceptance within the natural sciences, suggests there are two fundamental ways to make predictions:

- *Deduction*, the derivation of a specific prediction from general statements or laws.
- *Induction*, the inference from many individual observations to a general law that should be valid for similar cases that have not yet been observed.

It is not possible conclusively to prove a statement derived through inductive reasoning, since one cannot test all possible individual cases. However, a single case refuting the observation is sufficient to *falsify* or disprove it. An essential feature of a scientific statement is its falsifiability. A hypothesis must be formulated so that it can be falsified. Nonfalsifiable statements do not contribute to the development of knowledge.

Popper's example of the swans provides a graphic illustration of the falsification principle. Before black swans had been discovered in Australia, the statement, "all swans are white" was a legitimate hypothesis, since it could be falsified by a contradictory observation. The statement that "all swans have some color" would be irrefutable, but it would also be nonsense, for it contributes no information.

Chance occurrences are so important in ecology that it is not useful to apply too rigid a rule of falsification. Falsifiable hypotheses can be formulated to include the probability of the occurrence of an event or the confidence limits of an expected value. Such *probabilistic hypotheses* can be falsified only with a sufficient number of observations, rather than by a single observation.

Scientific theories are logically bound complexes that consist of *hypotheses* and *axioms*. Axioms are definitive statements such as the "survival of the fittest" principle of Darwin's theory of evolution. They are not falsifiable through direct observations or experimentation; they are subject to the historical testing process through which theories based upon the axioms are tested.

The empirical testing of theories follows the *hypothetico-deductive* method. In this method falsifiable hypotheses are derived from a theory and tested by observation or experimentation. Two theories are often in competition to explain a fact. One must examine the theories, derive the contradictory hypotheses, and decide which is correct. An example taken from limnology is in Box 2.1. This procedure

Box 2.1 An example of hypothesis testing

- *Observation:* In many lakes the spring population maximum of phytoplankton is followed by a maximum density of herbivorous zooplankton. At the time of the zooplankton maximum there is a spectacular collapse of the phytoplankton ("clear-water stage", see Section 6.4.1).
- *Correlation:* The temporal changes in phytoplankton biomass (the derivative of the phytoplankton curve; d*B*/d*t*) is negatively correlated with the density of zooplankton.
- *Hypothesis:* The grazing by zooplankton leads to the clear-water stage.
- *Alternative hypothesis:* A deficiency of nutrients causes the collapse of the phytoplankton.
- *Testing by examination of field data:*
  1 The production rates of the phytoplankton per unit biomass are so high during its collapse that nutrient limitation can be excluded.
  2 The grazing rates of the zooplankton are higher than the growth rates of the phytoplankton.
- *Conclusion:* The alternative hypothesis is falsified, whereas the initial hypothesis has not been disproved.
- *Testing by field experiments:*
  1 The unrestricted development of zooplankton in fertilized mesocosms (see Section 2.4) also leads to a clear-water stage.
  2 When the zooplankton are suppressed through fish predation or removal by a plankton net there is no clear-water stage, with or without addition of nutrients.
- *Conclusion:* The alternative hypothesis is falsified, and the initial hypothesis has not been disproved.

is only slowly becoming established in ecology, in part because of tradition and in part because the available methods and theoretical framework are still inadequate to deal with such complex systems of interactions.

2.2 Observations and recording

Observations of nature, the collection and recording of field data, and their systematic analysis dominated the earlier phase of ecology. The concept of the "balance of nature" was particularly important in the development of the early theories, as ecologists applied inductive reasoning to their interpretation of field data. Even though ecology today is moving toward more experimental approaches, the collection of field data is still important, for they provide tests of hypotheses as well as the monitoring of the environment. The once widely held concept that ecologists should collect as many data as possible in hopes of gaining insights through inductive reasoning is, however, no longer current.

Field data commonly collected by freshwater ecologists include physical parameters, such as temperature, density of water, current velocity, light intensity, concentrations of chemical substances, and the abundance and composition of species. Ecologists often measure the mass of organisms, *biomass*, to avoid the problem of comparing organisms of vastly different size, where the *number* of individuals has little meaning (one large fish has more effect on its environment than thousands of microscopic algae). Ecologists refer to *concentrations or densities*, rather than absolute numbers or biomass. For example, the number of water fleas per liter or per square meter, rather than the total number in a lake, is usually more useful to describe general processes rather than events in a particular lake.

The distribution of chemicals and organisms in their environment is not uniform. The density of organisms is spatially variable or *patchy*, even within a habitat that appears physically homogeneous. Rarely is a total census of a habitat possible. Thus quantitative ecology was confronted quite early with the problem of obtaining a representative sample, and related statistical questions. Even with ideal sampling designs there are serious limitations because of variation due to *sampling error*. Sometimes ecologists conclude that it is sufficient and more efficient simply to categorize organisms into estimates of frequency groupings such as single, rare, abundant, very abundant, and massive. If possible, such simplified systems should be avoided, for they may have *subjective errors*,

resulting from overestimation of conspicuous and anticipated organisms.

Concentration, density, and biomass change over time. It is important that the frequency of sampling and the length of the period of study are appropriate for the *time scale* of these changes. In lakes, the species composition of the phytoplankton can change completely within a few weeks; it is therefore not reasonable to describe their changes on the basis of a single sample per year. Samples taken once every weekly or every 2 weeks are usually necessary to describe the seasonal changes in species composition of the phytoplankton. Observations must be made over many years to determine whether the observed changes represent a consistent pattern that is repeatable.

Since finances and personnel are usually limited, ecologists must always make compromises concerning frequency of sampling as well as the degree of resolution from the samples. For example, one must often decide whether to determine the frequency of each species or whether it is permissible to lump the species into taxonomic or functional *group categories*. Sometimes the grouping of species not only results in less work, but also aids in the identification of patterns that would not be so apparent with a more detailed analysis. In certain lakes one can predict, for example, that diatoms will dominate the phytoplankton early in the season, but it is usually difficult to say which diatom species will be dominant.

One of the serious limitations of purely descriptive research is that relatively few statistical tests are appropriate. The seasonal changes in concentration and biomass result from growth and losses. Similarly, the rate of change in the density of a population is the net effect of birth, immigration, emigration, and death rates. For many questions, processes are more important than the empirical measurements such as concentration of chemicals and density or biomass of organisms. Growth and losses occur simultaneously. Thus rates cannot be derived from the static measurements made at different times of the year. The investigation of growth and loss rates requires the isolation of individual processes. Although *in situ* measurements require manipulation, they are usually considered more descriptive than experimental.

2.3 Correlation of field data

The transition from observation and recording to the formulation of laws governing cause and effect often begins with an attempt to find correlations between suspected independent and dependent variables. Changes in biological variables are generally viewed as a function of the abiotic environment or other biological variables. An example of the first case is the attempt to explain the distribution of a species (a biological variable) on the basis of temperature (an abiotic variable). In the case of biological variables, the distribution of a predatory species might be related to the distribution of its prey.

Mathematical methods and the widespread use of computers, and statistical packages are replacing data analysis "by eye." Many basic problems, however, remain unchanged, despite the improved objectivity. *Correlation analysis* can be used to draw numerical, but not functional, relationships. The *cause–effect relationship* must have been already formulated as a hypothesis. If, for example, the pH of the water is positively correlated with the rate of photosynthesis of the phytoplankton, one cannot conclude whether a higher pH stimulates photosynthesis or whether photosynthesis causes the pH to rise. If we already have formulated the hypothesis that photosynthesis drives the pH up as a result of the release of hydroxyl (OH^-) ions, a correlation analysis can be used as a test.

A causal relationship can be misleading if both variables are actually dependent on a third variable that has not been considered, rather than on one another. A common mistake is to conclude there is a causal relationship based on trends in a time series. An example of such an *apparent correlation* is the simultaneous decrease in the human birth rate and in the number of storks in the wealthy countries of Europe.

Lags in the reaction of the interdependent variables present another problem in the use of correlation analysis for field data. Increases and decreases in populations often occur after the causes for these changes. Thus the changes in numbers of organisms are actually more closely related to past rather than present conditions. Statistical methods such as cross-correlation analysis take into consideration

this phenomenon and can be used to determine *time lags*, but such tests require measurements that are taken frequently and over a long period of time.

Routine statistical tests such as *multiple correlation* can be used to find correlations between many variables, but there are difficulties with the assumptions required for these tests. Thus mathematical analysis cannot substitute for the use of experimental manipulations as a means of revealing causal relationships.

2.4 Laboratory and field experiments

Experimentation has been the classic method of the natural sciences since the time of Galileo. Experiments are better suited than pure descriptive science to the falsification of hypotheses and deciding between alternate hypotheses. Critical experiments that can resolve between competing hypotheses contribute greatly to a science and carry much prestige. Unfortunately, they are relatively rare. Not all experiments are conducted with the intention of testing hypotheses. Many experiments simply provide new measurements that can be used in calculations, such as the maximum growth rate of a species. They also have the implicit potential to falsify the basic formulas for which they are being tested, or the experiments may be a part of broader program that leads to hypothesis testing. Unfortunately, many ecological experiments are carried out without a theoretical framework and only for the "fun" of seeing the effects of a manipulation.

The classic construction of an experiment is to hold all factors constant except for one, so that the effect of the varied factor can be investigated. Such experiments are most easily carried out in the laboratory rather than in nature. Laboratory experiments with individuals or *clones*, a number of genetically identical organisms, are a recognized method in physiology. They are also very important to ecology since the fitness of an organism or its role in biochemical processes is dependent on its physiological condition and abilities. Most of the results referred to in Chapter 4 are derived from this type of experiment.

Some researchers use this method to investigate processes at the population or community level. Experiments that use artificially composed communities are called *microcosms* (Fig. 2.1a). Two or more populations are placed in containers in which experimental manipulations are made. Microcosms are either open or closed systems regarding the addition of substances, the removal of waste products, and the sampling of organisms. Immigration of organisms into the containers is usually excluded. The early competition experiments of Gause are prototypes of these experiments (see Section 6.1.1).

The main criticism of microcosm experiments is that organisms must be contained in an unnaturally small space. It is assumed that biotic interactions such as competition and predation are exaggerated over those in nature, because of the lack of immigration, emigration, and avoidance mechanisms. This criticism is a misunderstanding, for the purpose of a microcosm experiment is to study the rules regulating ecological processes such as competition. It is not the immediate goal to determine how important the process is in nature. Microcosm experiments can reveal, for example, which patterns of seasonal changes in the density of organisms are caused by competition or predation. If similar patterns are seen in field observations, it is the first indication that such processes may be important in nature. Of course, it is a reliable indicator only when alternative mechanisms that could lead to the same patterns can be excluded.

The size limitations of microcosms make them ideal for small plankton, sessile microorganisms, and small insects, but they are of little value for the study of processes that involve larger organisms such as fish. The advantage of microcosms is that several parallel systems can be used to allow for statistical comparisons. Processes that "blow up" in small microcosms can sometimes be examined in *mesocosms* (Fig. 2.1b). These are sections of the natural environment that are isolated by means of artificial barriers such as transparent plastic sheets. These mesocosms (sometimes called limnocorrals in lake studies) are used to contain (*enclosures*) or exclude (*exclosures*) certain communities or populations. Experimental ponds can be used for similar experiments. Mesocosms and ponds are exposed to natural variation in temperature, light, and wind conditions and therefore do not have the constancy of variables that are necessary for an

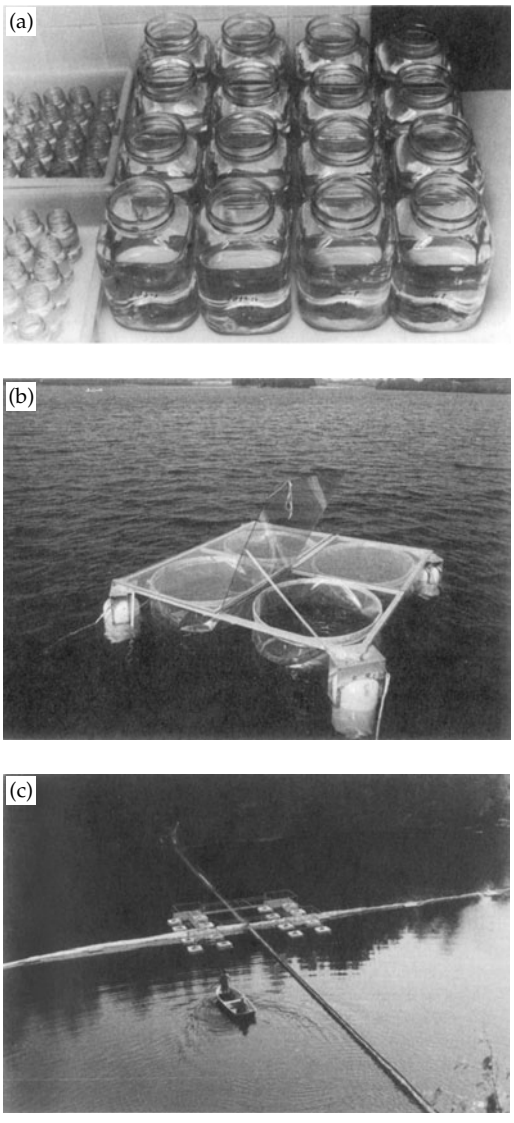


Figure 2.1 Ecological experiments with different size scales: (a) Different-sized microcosms in the laboratory. (b) Mesocosm experiments in Schöhsee (Holstein, Germany). These plastic bags are 1 m in diameter and 3 m deep and contain c.2 m^3 of water (Max Planck Society press photograph). (c) Experiment in which a lake is divided, conducted at Neuglobsow (Brandenburg, Germany). The lake was divided into four sections by plastic curtains anchored in the sediment. Each section received a different treatment (photo W. Scheffler).

ideal controlled experiment. One assumes that despite these variations in conditions the effect of the manipulation can be recognized by comparing the unmanipulated (*control*) and manipulated mesocosms. Parallel experiments are needed to exclude the random effects. Experiments of this type typically involve fertilization or the addition or removal of organisms.

In limnology, a more controlled type of mesocosm such as the plankton towers (Lampert and Loose 1992) is rare because of its expense and complexity. These 10 m high metal cylinders have heating and cooling elements that control the thermal gradients. By controlling the light and wind effects, as well as the distribution of chemical factors, these towers have about the same degree of experimental control as a microcosm.

The *manipulation of ecosystems* is the largest, but the least controlled, form of ecological experiment. Small lakes and ponds are best suited because they are isolated systems. Processes requiring large space such as fish population dynamics can be investigated in this type of experiment, but not in micro- and mesocosms. On the other hand, it is not possible to have direct control of the populations of plankton and microorganisms. Ecosystem manipulations characteristically involve addition of chemicals such as nutrients and acid or the stocking of a fish species. In contrast to mesocosms, there is no true control to compare to the effect of the manipulation. Neither the same system before the manipulation nor similar, unmanipulated systems can be viewed as a control, in the strict sense of the word. It is better to compare many years before and after manipulation or many manipulated lakes with many unmanipulated lakes, so that random variations in the unmanipulated systems can be identified. In an attempt to improve the controlled aspects of ecosystem manipulations, lakes are sometimes divided into two or more subunits with a plastic curtain (Fig. 2.1c). Each lake subunit can be manipulated or kept as a control. In a well-known example of this approach, Schindler (1980) demonstrated that phosphorus was the limiting nutrient in Lake 227 in the Experimental Lakes Area (ELA) of Ontario.

A fundamental problem in limnological experiments is that organisms and physical processes cannot be miniaturized. The larger an experiment becomes, the more realistic and "nearly natural" it becomes and the more types of organisms that

can be included. At the same time larger size means sacrifices in terms of control and replication. Complete control of experimental conditions is relinquished as one moves from micro- to mesocosms. In moving from mesocosms to ecosystem manipulation one cannot assume that the experimental conditions are identical in the manipulated and nonmanipulated systems. Gain in reality is made at the cost of replication and accuracy.

2.5 Mathematical models

Relationships expressed in mathematical terms can be called *mathematical models*. A model may be a simple mathematical formula or a system of connected equations that describes the interactions of various components of a system. With an increasing number of components and complexity, mathematical models become more difficult to solve analytically. At this point, *simulations* may be used to solve for specific conditions by providing for each parameter an assumed numerical value. After a sufficient number of simulations have been run, one can determine the range of conditions within which a particular result is possible—for example, the conditions allowing for the coexistence of populations. *Deterministic* simulation models use a specific value for each parameter, whereas *stochastic* models use the variability around a mean value that is provided.

At first glance, it appears that a simulation is very similar to an experiment since in each case one manipulates a particular input parameter and then waits for the result. Simulations have advantages in not having the temporal, spatial, and technical limitations of an actual experiment. A fundamental difference between simulations and experiments is that simulations are strongly deductive, since the results are implicit in the formulas and parameter assumptions. Thus simulations cannot test predictions of empirical facts, but they can show the consequences of their own assumptions that are not always intuitive. An impressive example of this was the discovery of deterministic chaos (May 1974), which proved that unpredictable time courses could be created from perfectly deterministic formulas.

Comparisons of simulations and experiments are valuable in testing hypotheses. There may be several reasons to account for discrepancies between the experiment and its simulation:

- The processes that were simulated simply do not exist, or were perhaps masked by processes that were not considered
- One or more formulas used in the simulation are unrealistic
- The assumptions concerning the input parameters are incorrect.

One must be careful, especially considering the last point, for especially with complex models it is often possible to achieve the "desired" result with enough "fine tuning" of the parameter values. In such cases the agreement or disagreement of the model with reality has little significance. Models that show major shifts in response to minor alterations of the inputs are suspect, since most ecological measurements have broad error margins.

2.6 Methods driving the direction of science

Scientific progress is frequently triggered by new methodological developments. Often new tools adopted from unrelated scientific areas lead to a breakthrough and cause strong activity in a certain field and new paradigms. For example, quantitative phytoplankton research became possible in the early 1930s when H. Utermöhl proposed the use of the inverted microscope to enumerate algal cells. This was the beginning of a new era of phytoplankton studies relating phytoplankton abundance and composition to environmental variables, e g. nutrients. The method is still being used, and Utermöhl's (1958) detailed description of the technique is still frequently cited.

The availability of radioisotopes, in particular phosphorus-32, carbon-14 and tritium after World War II made it possible to measure to uptake rates and turnover as well as nutrient concentrations. This caused a boom in studies of nutrient dynamics and productivity. Although measuring techniques for radioisotopes have become more sensitive and safer with time, the basic procedures of measuring

primary and bacterial production are still the same (see Box 4.3). Satellite imaging opened the door for large-scale monitoring by remote sensing. Another recent example is the renaissance of food-web studies since techniques for measuring stable isotopes have become affordable (see Box 7.1).

Like many disciplines of biology, ecology has recently been revolutionized by the introduction of techniques from molecular biology. This process is still going on, and it will certainly become more and more important. There is already a subdiscipline called *molecular ecology* that uses molecular methods to study ecological questions. Studies of the structure of DNA and DNA products (genomics, proteomics) can be used to identify genes indicating an organism's possible role in ecological processes, and the measurement of gene expression can give insights into its activity. Genetically engineered organisms have been constructed to serve as "bioreporters" that indicate environmental properties (e.g., iron availability).

By far the most important application of molecular genetic techniques in evolutionary ecology is presently the use of molecular markers (Avise 2004). Since the development of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to amplify traces of DNA, molecular genetic data have been integrated in various areas, in particular population genetics, phylogeny, species identification, phenotypic and genotypic diversity, kinship and parental analyses, hybridization, dispersal and gene flow, speciation and many more. A large variety of methods has been developed to determine the base sequence of defined sections of the DNA, or to generate DNA fragment patterns (amplified fragment length polymorphism, microsatellites) like bar codes for the identification of genotypes. The common principle is a comparison of the similarity of certain portions of DNA or DNA products (RNA, proteins) to estimate the genetic relationships between organisms, either individuals (population genetics), or taxa (phylogeny and systematics). Technological developments in this field are extremely rapid. Examples of applications have been summarized in various books (e.g., Moya and Font 2004). We will mention various examples in the following chapters.

CHAPTER 3

Special features of aquatic habitats

3.1 Effects of the molecular structure of water

3.1.1 Association of molecules

The unique molecular structure of water underlies many of the features of aquatic habitats. The hydrogen atoms form bonds at an angle of approximately 105°, making the water molecule strongly bipolar. This bipolarity is ultimately responsible for the tendency of water molecules to associate with one another andto dissolve other substances, and for biochemical processes.

Water molecules form relatively weak hydrogen bonds with one another, creating associations or "swarms" called *clusters*. An important feature of clusters is that they are dynamic structures, constantly forming and breaking bonds with other water molecules. The number of molecules in a cluster can therefore only be described statistically. The mean number of water molecules in each cluster decreases with increasing temperature. For example, at about 0 °C there are on average 65 molecules per cluster, and at 100 °C there are only 12. The structure of water changes dramatically as it freezes. The molecules line up in a lattice in which four hydrogen atoms surround each oxygen atom in a tetrahedron.

Water has unique characteristics resulting from the arrangement and bonding of water molecules. It is most dense at 4 °C. The surface tension of pure water is higher than that of any other fluid except mercury, allowing for a community including algae and insects to live upon, within, or under the water surface. The high viscosity of water is important for the locomotion of organisms. Also uniquely high are the specific heat, the latent heat of fusion, the heat of vaporization, and the boiling point of water. Water lacking this association of molecules would have a boiling point at about –80 °C; there would be no liquid water on earth, just vapor.

3.1.2 Density anomaly

Water molecules in ice are widely spaced as a crystalline matrix; thus ice has a relatively low density. Upon melting, the molecules move together more closely and the water has a higher density. The density difference between ice and liquid water at 0 °C is 8.5%, allowing ice to float on the water surface. When the temperature increases above 0 °C, the cluster size decreases, thereby increasing the density, since smaller clusters can be more densely packed. Simultaneously, there is an increase in thermal expansion that leads to a reduction in the density. At 4 °C, thermal expansion fully compensates for the increasing density, resulting in a *maximum density* at this temperature. Above 4 °C, the effects of thermal expansion dominate and the density continually decreases as the temperature rises. This peculiarity of having a maximum density at 4 °C, rather than at the lowest temperature, is referred to as the *density anomaly* of water. Without the anomaly, the coldest water would sink to the bottom in winter, eventually freezing the lake solid. Because of the temperature anomaly, water at 4 °C collects near the lake bottom, so that the lake only freezes from above. The surface ice cover insulates the lake against further cooling. Even in the most severe winter, water is always available to aquatic organisms in a deep lake. The temperature of maximum water density is lowered by salt, generally negligible in inland lakes, and by hydrostatic pressure. Under the harsh conditions of Antarctica many lakes have permanent ice cover, but there is nevertheless life in the water under the ice. Liquid water that dates back millions of years has been detected under hundreds of meters of ice. For every 10 bars (10^6 Pa) of pressure, the temperature at which water is most dense drops by about 0.1 °C. In a deep lake such as Lake Constance, Germany, with a maximum

depth of 250 m, water temperature at the bottom is only 3.8 °C.

3.1.3 Thermal features

Water has a high specific heat. At 15 °C, 4.186 kJ are required to heat 1 kg of water by 1°C. This is a very high value, only exceeded by ammonia gas (5.15) and liquid hydrogen (14.23). Likewise, water loses heat very slowly, enabling it to store much heat. As a result, large lakes act as climate buffers, and their water temperatures change slowly over the seasons. Both of these effects have important consequences for the lives of aquatic organisms.

Although water has a higher thermal conductivity than other liquids, heat transmission through motionless water is nevertheless an extremely slow process, as expressed by a thermal conductivity of $0.569\,W\,m^{-1}\,K^{-1}$. This means, that with a temperature difference of 1°C, only $0.00569\,J\,cm^{-1}\,K^{-1}\,s^{-1}$ flows through a 1 cm cube. Thus heat transport via molecular diffusion in lakes is negligible. Consequently, heat should actually stay at the location where it was absorbed, such as at the brightly lit surface waters. This is not, however, what happens (see Fig. 3.5). Wind and water currents transport the heat by means of turbulent eddy diffusion, but only as deep as its force permits. These physical processes result in characteristic heat gradients of lakes (see Section 3.2.2) that are in turn responsible for chemical gradients and the distribution of organisms (see Section 3.3).

3.1.4 Surface effects

The association of water molecules is especially noticeable at interface surfaces. The air–water interface is a habitat for organisms as well as a barrier to their distribution. This is possible because of surface tension, which is higher for pure water than for any other liquid except for mercury. Temperature and pollutants strongly affect the surface tension of water. Many organisms utilize the surface "film" by attaching to it or even walking on the surface.

Water molecules not only attract one another (*cohesion*), but also have attraction for submerged surfaces (*adhesion*). The degree of adhesion depends on the chemical composition of the surface. A surface is called *hydrophilic* if the cohesive forces are less than the adhesive forces. Taken out of the water, a hydrophilic surface would appear wet. When the cohesion between water molecules is greater than the adhesion to the surface, the object is *hydrophobic*. Such surfaces cannot be easily wetted. Water adhered to a hydrophobic surface will form discrete droplets. Many organisms (e.g., water beetles) have hydrophobic surfaces that serve as a physical gill (see Section 4.2.2).

3.1.5 Viscosity

The mutual attraction of water molecules results in a resistance in flowing water. This *dynamic viscosity* (often shortened to viscosity) is due to the "internal friction" of water. Flowing water or a body that moves in water must overcome this "syrupiness." This is clearly demonstrated when one attempts to pour a liquid with a high viscosity such as honey. Water has a relatively low viscosity, compared with other fluids. Viscosity is dependent on temperature, as well as on dissolved substances, although the latter have a negligible effect on viscosity in fresh water.

The unit of measure of dynamic viscosity is the pascal second ($1\,Pa\,s = 1\,kg\,m^{-1}\,s^{-1}$), normally denoted by the Greek letter μ. This is the force necessary to move a mass of 1 kg by 1 m in 1 s. The viscosity of water decreases with increasing temperature. Water at 20 °C has a dynamic viscosity of about 1×10^{-3} Pa s, and at 0 °C, 1.8×10^{-3}. Thus warm water is "more fluid" than cold water. *Kinematic viscosity* (ν) is used for various calculations. It is derived as the dynamic viscosity divided by the density of the fluid (δ): $\nu = \mu/\delta$, with units $kg\,m^{-1}/kg\,m^{-3} = m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$. The relationship between dynamic viscosity and kinematic viscosity is not entirely obvious. Dynamic viscosity expresses how strongly a "parcel" of fluid will be pulled along in synchrony with its neighbors. Density is an expression of the mass of a "parcel" of fluid and thus its tendency to continue in its line of movement (inertia). The relationship of the two is a measure of the ability to counteract the irregularities in the speed of flow of a fluid.

Viscosity and other related phenomena such as water flow are of fundamental importance in regulating aquatic life, the distribution of heat and matter, passive sinking and active swimming, collection

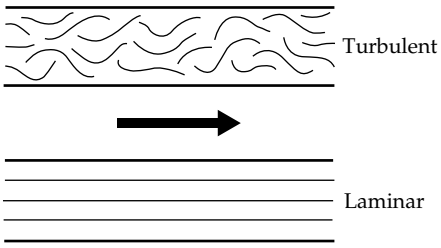


Figure 3.1 Turbulent and laminar flows of water in a pipe. The streamlines describe the paths of the water movement.

of food by filtration and residing in flowing water. Water can move in *turbulent* or *laminar* flow (Fig. 3.1). In laminar flow tiny particles in water move in parallel tracks that can be visualized by parallel *streamlines*. Turbulent flow causes the streamlines to be distorted. The entire water mass may move in one direction, but the individual water particles have irregular paths. Flowing water can change abruptly from laminar to turbulent conditions if, for example, the flow velocity increases. This can be demonstrated when a water tap is opened. If the water stream leaving the tap is thin (slow flow), it flows smoothly (laminar flow). When the tap flow is increased, the stream begins to splash (turbulent flow).

Laminar flow is a consequence of the viscosity; closely attracted molecules move synchronously. In turbulent flow the force of inertia is of greater importance than molecular attractions. If you move a rudder in the water, you can see how a parcel of water that is hit continues to move as a result of its inertia. It quickly slows down due to internal friction (viscosity), and after a short distance there is no trace of the turbulence that was created. The type of flow depends strongly on the degree of viscosity and drag forces. The relationship between inertial and viscous forces is characterized by the dimensionless *Reynolds number* (*Re*):

$$\frac{\text{inertial forces}}{\text{viscous forces}} = Re = \frac{\delta U l}{\mu}$$

where U is the speed ($\mathrm{m\,s^{-1}}$) with which water and an object move relative to each other. It is unimportant whether the water is passing a stationary object or whether the body is moving in stagnant water. l is a characteristic length (m), such as the diameter of a pipe through which the water is flowing or the length of a body in the direction of flow. The density (δ) is removed if the viscosity (μ) is replaced with the kinematic viscosity (ν):

$$Re = \frac{Ul}{\nu}$$

When Reynolds numbers are small, the forces of viscosity prevail; when they are large, inertial forces are more important. Thus laminar flow is predicted with small Reynolds numbers and turbulence at high numbers. The Reynolds number is determined primarily by the speed of movement (U) and the characteristic length (l), since the kinematic viscosity of water varies within a very small range (about $1 \times 10^{-6}\,\mathrm{m^2\,s^{-1}}$). Higher velocity and larger objects produce larger Reynolds numbers. The characteristic length is difficult to determine as it depends on the length as well as the shape of the object. This inaccuracy is of little consequence in ecology, for estimates of Reynolds numbers are usually given simply as orders of magnitude because they range so widely in nature. Some examples are:

	Re
Large swimming whale	10^9
Trout in a stream	10^5
Escaping zooplankter	10^2
Ciliate swimming	10^{-1}
Filtering setules on a zooplankter	10^{-3}

Very small organisms live in a viscous environment, and large organisms live in a turbulent environment. One can ignore turbulent flow when Reynolds numbers are much smaller than 1. Very small organisms such as algae and bacteria are always surrounded by laminar flow (Fig. 3.2A). An algal cell may be transported in a turbulent water parcel, but there is laminar flow in its immediate surroundings. This has important consequences. In laminar flow an object is encompassed with a layer of water with a very low flow velocity. This *boundary layer* contains water molecules that always accompany the object. The width of the boundary layer increases with increasing water velocity and with decreasing size of the object. If an organism removes a molecule from the boundary it can only be replaced from the surrounding water by

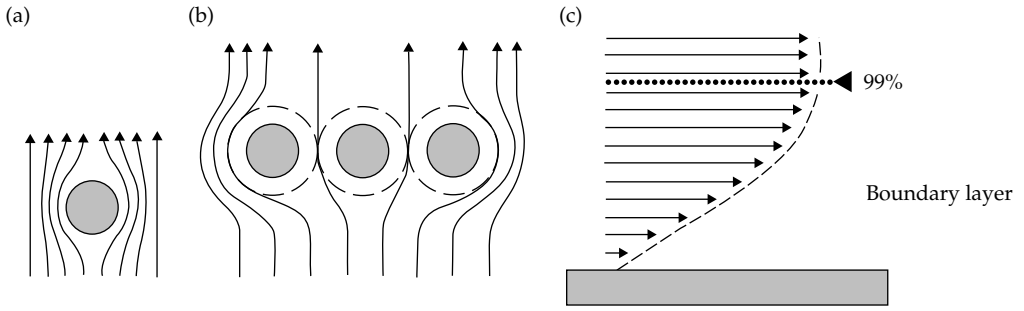


Figure 3.2 Flow at very low Reynolds numbers. (a) Laminar flow around a small particle (e.g., a sinking alga). (b) Cross-section of flow across a filtering structure. The boundary layers around each cylinder are symbolized by dashed lines. Pressure is required to force the water through the pores of the filter. If there is insufficient pressure the water will flow around the filter. (c) Formation of a Prandtl boundary layer when water flows across a fixed surface (e.g., a rock). The length of the arrow symbolizes the flow velocity. It is zero exactly at the stone's surface.

diffusion. This is a very slow process. The concentration gradient in the boundary layer will determine how rapidly the nutrient deficiencies are replaced by diffusion. A cell does not benefit by swimming about in a medium with nutrients equally distributed throughout, for it simply takes with it the nutrient-poor boundary layer. Diffusion remains the only way to supply more nutrients to the layer and is thus the factor that ultimately limits the rate of uptake by the cell. The advantage of changing location for the cell is that it may end up in a region of higher nutrient concentration where there is a steeper nutrient gradient between the boundary layer and the environment.

The common argument that an algal cell sinking slowly through the mixed surface layer of a lake will take up nutrients more easily than a cell that does not sink is correct only if it is a very large algal cell. Even then diffusion is the dominant process, since laminar flow predominates around a sinking algal cell. A diatom with a radius of 10 μm achieves a sinking speed of about 10 μm s^{-1} (85 cm day^{-1}) (see Section 4.2.6 for calculation of the sinking speed), resulting in an increase in nutrient diffusion through the cell surface of about 10%. A green alga sinking more slowly or a diatom with only a 5 μm radius will have almost no significant improvement in nutrient uptake (<1%). For very small cells active locomotion is more important. For example, swimming at rates up to 100 μm s^{-1} increases the nutrient diffusion by about 5% for a 1 μm flagellate, 30% for a 5 μm flagellate, and about 50% for a 10 μm flagellate.

The boundary layers of closely positioned small bodies can affect one another. For example, the boundary layers around the very fine filtering structures of filtering organisms, viewed as a system of cylinders, can overlap (Fig. 3.2B). Although such a filter has many holes, the water cannot flow through them unless the necessary pressure is applied.

Even when water flows over a flat surface a boundary layer develops. Directly on the surface the flow velocity is zero, and it increases with distance from the surface to a maximal speed. This layer around fixed surfaces in which the flow velocity is reduced is called the *Prandtl boundary layer*. Its specific thickness cannot be determined precisely, since the flow velocity increases continuously with distance from the surface. Its thickness is operationally defined as the distance from an attached surface at which the flow velocity reaches 99% of its speed away from all objects. The more the surface faces away from the flow, the thicker the boundary layer. At the same time the velocity gradient at right angles to the surface becomes lower (Fig. 3.2C). The larger the distance from the edge facing the current, the thicker the boundary is. The boundary layer thickness (σ) can be calculated more precisely as:

$$\sigma = \sqrt[5]{\frac{x\mu}{\delta U}}$$

The thickness depends primarily on the distance from the surface on to which the water is flowing (x) and the flow velocity (U), since the kinematic

viscosity (μ/δ) does not change much. The boundary layer around rocks in a stream can extend several millimeters. By treating x as though it were the characteristic length in the Reynolds number at location x (Re_x), we get:

$$\mathrm{Re}_x = \frac{Ux}{\nu}, \quad \frac{\delta}{x} = \sqrt[5]{\frac{1}{\mathrm{Re}_x}}$$

Thus the relative thickness of the boundary layer (σ/x) depends only on the Reynolds number.

The Prandtl boundary layer is especially important for stream organisms since it allows them to avoid contact with the full force of the flowing water. Algal mats growing on the surface of rocks in flowing water can remain in the boundary layer as long as they do not become too thick. Many stream animals have morphological features and behaviors that are adapted to keeping them within the boundary layer. For example, many insect larvae that graze on algae on the surface of rocks are flattened. At high stream velocities they press themselves tightly against the rock to take advantage of the thin layer of quiet water. Flattened insects are actually not forced against the rock surface, since water flowing over the back of the animal pulls it outward, like the airfoil of an airplane wing. These animals actually need devices such as claws and suction cups to hold on to the rocks.

Stream animals must often make compromises. For example, stonefly larvae lacking elaborate external gills would benefit by being further from the rock in the faster-flowing water where the oxygen exchange is better, but this would expose them to greater water turbulence. Filter-feeding black fly larvae must keep their filtering appendages in the flow to supply them with food particles drifting in the water, while securing their position with specialized hooks and adhesive silk. A flattened form does not always indicate an adaptation to the boundary layer. Turbularians, for example, are quite flat yet live under rocks and in cracks. Other animals may live in fast-flowing water by reducing their resistance by streamlined body forms (see Section 4.2.5).

3.1.6 Water as a solvent

Water has a high dielectric constant ($\varepsilon = 80$ at 20 °C) because of the asymmetrical structure of the water molecule. Water thus breaks up or dissociates heteropolar bonds, making water an excellent solvent. Solution and transport of gases and ions are very important environmental factors for aquatic organisms.

Dissolved gases

Gases in water come from the air or from the metabolic activities of organisms. The most important gases dissolved in water and their origin are listed in Table 3.1. A diffusion equilibrium develops between a specific gas and water. The amount of gas that dissolves depends on the solubility constant for the specific gas and the pressure according to Henry's law:

$$C_s = K_s P_t$$

where C_s is the amount of gas that dissolves under the given conditions, K_s is the solubility coefficient for the given temperature, and P_t is the partial pressure (e.g., for oxygen for standard conditions in the atmosphere it is 0.21).

Water that contains the amount of a gas it can hold through the solubility equilibrium is said to be *saturated*. Equilibrium conditions are, however, rare in nature. The rates of consumption and production of gases in lakes exceed the rate of gas exchange with the atmosphere, leading to conditions of supersaturation or deficit. The concentration of a gas present expressed as a percentage of the concentration resulting from equilibrium conditions is called the *relative saturation*. The relative saturation of a gas can change as a result of changing conditions, even though the concentration has not changed. The saturation concentration is determined by pressure, temperature, and salt concentration, although the latter is negligible in fresh water. For example, oxygen saturation in water at standard pressure

Table 3.1 The most important gases dissolved in water

Gas	Chemical symbol	Origin
Oxygen	O_2	Atmosphere, photosynthesis
Nitrogen	N_2	Atmosphere, bacterial activity
Carbon dioxide	CO_2	Atmosphere, respiration
Hydrogen sulfide	H_2S	Bacterial activity
Methane	CH_4	Bacterial activity

and 20 °C is 9.09 mg l^{-1} (100%). If the sun were to warm this water to 22 °C, the relative saturation would become 104%, since the saturation value at 22 °C is only 8.74 mg l^{-1}. Air pressure also affects the saturation concentration. A gas concentration equivalent to 100% saturation at sea level would have a saturation of 135% in a lake at an altitude of 2500 m.

Gases are very soluble deep in a lake because of the high hydrostatic pressure. Since diffusion is very slow, most atmospheric gases exchange at the surface and then are transported elsewhere. During fall circulation, for example, water masses move to the surface, exchange with the atmosphere, and are then moved by wind action to the bottom of the lake. Thus the effects of hydrostatic pressure are usually ignored, and the relative saturation is calculated relative only to the water surface. If gases are produced at depth, such as through bacterial activity, considerable amounts can be dissolved because of the great pressure. An impressive illustration of this effect was seen in the Schluchsee, a lake in the Black Forest (Germany), which was lowered 30 m for repairs to a dam. Suddenly, large quantities of gas bubbled through the lake, the result of reducing the hydrostatic pressure to about one-half, thereby causing the sediments to become highly supersaturated with gas (nitrogen, methane, and carbon dioxide). Fish populations concentrated in the remaining lake were destroyed as the sediments bubbled up and the noxious gas fizzed out of the lake like champagne bubbles, scavenging the dissolved oxygen. A greater disaster happened in 1986 when a large quantity of carbon dioxide that had accumulated from magmatic sources under pressure in the hypolimnion was suddenly released from the crater lake Nyos in Cameroon. Being heavier than air, the gas spread downhill near the ground. It killed 1700 people and 3000 cattle with a radius of 10 km from the lake (Kling *et al*. 1987).

Carbonate–bicarbonate–carbon dioxide equilibrium

Carbon dioxide has a special place among the dissolved gases, because it does not follow Henry's law; there is normally much more carbon dioxide in water than expected. This is because carbon dioxide occurs in chemical forms as well as free gas. When carbon dioxide dissolves in water, a small proportion (less than 1%) hydrates to carbonic acid:

$$H_2O + CO_2 \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3$$

Some of the carbonic acid dissociates to bicarbonate and hydrogen ions:

$$H_2O + CO_2 \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^- + H^+$$

This leads to a decrease in pH. Now a second dissociation step results in the liberation of another hydrogen ion:

$$HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons CO_3^{2-} + H^+$$

The degree of dissociation of carbonic acid depends on the pH (Fig. 3.3). At pH 8 there are almost exclusively bicarbonate ions present. If the pH shifts further to the alkaline side, the equilibrium moves more and more toward the carbonates. When the pH is very low, free carbon dioxide and carbonic acid predominate. This pH relationship is very important because most aquatic plants can only utilize carbon dioxide and bicarbonate for photosynthesis (see Section 4.3.6).

In most natural lakes the carbonic acid can bind with alkaline earth metals and alkali metals to form insoluble salts. This disturbs the equilibrium, allowing new carbon dioxide to diffuse into the water, resulting in a greater than expected amount of dissolved carbon dioxide. The calcium ion and the calcium–carbonic acid equilibrium are especially important in fresh water:

$Ca(HCO_3)_2$	$\rightleftharpoons$	$CaCO_3$	+	H_2CO_3
calcium bicarbonate (highly soluble)		calcium carbonate (low solubility)		carbonic acid

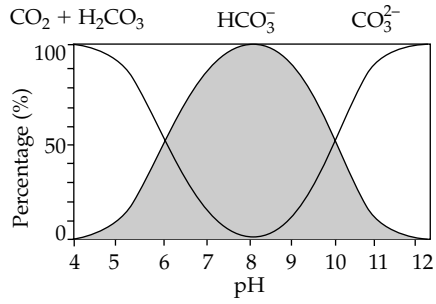


Figure 3.3 Relative proportions of the various forms of carbon dioxide at different pH values.

This equilibrium requires that a small quantity of carbonic acid is always present. If it is removed—by a biological process, for example—then the bicarbonate changes to carbonate, which precipitates because of its low solubility. In calcium-rich lakes aquatic plants can become encrusted with a layer of insoluble $CaCO_3$ that precipitates when carbon dioxide is removed during periods of high photosynthetic activity. In many lakes the water is visibly cloudy with calcite crystals. A spectacular example of such "biogenic decalcification" are the Plitwicz lakes in Croatia. Over the years, the aquatic moss has deposited calcium carbonate barriers 3–50 m high, damming 16 lakes and causing them to cascade into one another.

If carbon dioxide is added to the system, for instance by respiration of aquatic organisms, then the carbonate changes to bicarbonate until the excess carbon dioxide has been used up. If, for example, biological activity produces carbon dioxide in excess of the equilibrium, causing an increase in acidity, we speak of "aggressive carbonic acid," which can cause corrosive problems in water supply pipes.

The carbonate–bicarbonate–carbon dioxide equilibrium is primarily responsible for the *buffering capacity* of a lake; that is, its ability to receive H^+ or OH^- ions without changing its pH. *Alkalinity* is a measure of the buffering capacity relative to acids. Although other ions can contribute to buffering capacity, the carbonate–bicarbonate–carbon dioxide equilibrium plays a major role in most waters. If hydrogen ions (H^+) are added to the water, they react with carbonate (CO_3^-) to form bicarbonate (HCO_3^-); thus they disappear from the system and the pH remains stable. The opposite will happen when OH^- ions are added. The more calcium in the water, the more bound carbonic acid will be present and the more H^+ or OH^- that can be added without changing the pH. Calcium-poor lakes are weakly buffered and are usually slightly acidic. High rates of photosynthesis in such lakes can raise the pH to about 9 by removing carbon dioxide, and even to pH 11 if bicarbonate is used by the plants. This can lead to dramatic daily cycles of pH change in poorly buffered lakes. Calcium-rich lakes usually have a pH of 7–8. When carbon dioxide is removed from this water, the equilibrium shifts to insoluble calcium carbonate, releasing carbon dioxide from the bicarbonate into the water (see Section 4.3.6). The pH remains constant until all the carbon dioxide has been used up. High photosynthetic activity can nevertheless lead to pH fluctuations here, since there is a time lag in the recovery of the equilibrium.

The buffering capacity of a lake depends on the geology of the lake basin and watershed. Lakes in regions with siliceous bedrock (e.g., Scandinavia, north-eastern United States, eastern Canada) receive little calcium and are therefore poorly buffered. An addition of acids, such as sulfuric and nitric acids from acid rain, rapidly depresses the pH in these naturally acidic lakes. Calcium-poor bogs have pH values as low as 4.5, an acidity about 1000 times that of neutral water, due to their humic acids. Volcanic activity can also result in extremely low pH values. For example, a crater lake in El Salvador had a pH of 2 due to sulfuric acid produced by fumaroles. There are also examples of naturally alkaline lakes that may have a pH greater than 9, such as the soda lakes in which sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3) replaces calcium carbonate. Most of these lakes are closed basins lacking an outlet, located in arid regions. Well-known examples are Lake Nakuru (Vareschi and Jacobs 1985) in Kenya and Lake Lenore and Soap Lake in Washington, studied extensively by W. T. Edmondson (Edmondson 1991).

Ions and polar molecules

The most important anions in water, in terms of their abundance, are CO_3^{2-} and HCO_3^-. Sulfate (SO_4^{2-}), chloride (Cl^-), and nitrate (NO_3^-) are less abundant. Of the cations, calcium (Ca^{2+}) is the leader, followed by magnesium (Mg^{2+}), sodium (Na^+), and potassium (K^+). These ions come from the weathering of rock, except for a small quantity that enters lakes as precipitation. The most soluble salts, such as NaCl and Na_2CO_3, were the first to dissolve during geological times and are now primarily found in the oceans. Less soluble salts, including $CaCO_3$, are still being eroded. Thus the salt composition of lakes and oceans is fundamentally different.

The most abundant ions are not necessarily the most important biologically. Many ions, such as essential nutrients, are biologically important because they are so rare, and they therefore can limit

biological production. Phosphate, silica, nitrate, ammonia, and iron are examples of ions that limit the productivity of lakes.

In addition to inorganic ions, polar organic molecules that originate from biological activities also dissolve in water. Substances that make up the *dissolved organic matter* (DOM) in lakes are products of metabolism and decomposition of dead organic material. Lakes usually contain a wide array of dissolved organic substances which are difficult to identify and are usually simply described as total *dissolved organic carbon* (DOC). DOC varies greatly with time of year and from lake to lake. Dissolved organic substances can provide an important energy source for microorganisms, but most of the DOC decomposes very slowly. This *refractory* (resistant) material represents the "leftovers," after the *labile* or rapidly transformed portions of the DOC have been used up. The DOC is a dynamic pool, with a constant inflow and outflow. The slow decomposition of dissolved carbon gives this pool a stabilizing effect on the carbon cycle of a lake. Small amounts of dissolved organic compounds such as exoenzymes and signal chemicals can have important regulatory effects in natural waters.

3.2 Vertical gradients

3.2.1 Light

Almost all available energy on earth comes from the sun's radiation. The total radiation that reaches the earth's surface consists of direct sunlight and diffuse skylight. This *global radiation* includes wavelengths from 300 to 3000 nm, since the atmosphere absorbs some of the shortest wavelengths. It can be divided into three categories, each with differing effects:

- 300–380 nm: Ultraviolet; damaging effects on organisms
- 380–750 nm: Visible radiation; includes the *photosynthetically active radiation* (PAR; 400–700 nm)
- 750–3000 nm: Infrared radiation; produces heat.

When radiation reaches a lake, a small amount is reflected and the remainder penetrates the water, where it is absorbed. The proportion that is reflected depends on the angle of declination of the sun, the wavelength, and the surface wave conditions of the water. In central Europe, for example, about 3% of the direct sunlight is reflected in the summer and 14% in the winter, and about 6% of the diffuse skylight is reflected. Reflection can increase to 30–40% when there is strong wave action.

Since light in a lake always comes from above, and is always absorbed as it passes through the water, there is a vertical light gradient in every lake that has profound effects on the production and life in the lake. Light that penetrates into the lake is either scattered, absorbed as heat, or transformed into other energy sources. In photosynthesis, for example, it is stored as reduced carbon. The degree of light retention by a layer of water is referred to as the *light extinction*, and the amount of light passing through as the *light transmission*.

The concept of light extinction, strictly speaking, only applies to the decrease of monochromatic light with parallel light beams in pure solutions (Lambert–Beer law). Obviously, these conditions are not met in lake water, where light is polychromatic and suspended particles absorb and scatter light. The reduction of light intensity due to absorption and refraction of light is called the *vertical light attenuation*. It can be mathematically approximated by the Lambert–Beer law.

Light intensity does not decrease linearly as it passes through lake water, but rather as a fixed proportion of the light still remaining at each depth. This leads to an exponential decrease in light with depth:

$$E_d(z) = E_d(0)e^{-k_d \cdot z}$$

$$k_d = \frac{\ln E_d(0) - \ln E_d(z)}{z}$$

where $E_d(0)$ and $E_d(z)$ represent the light intensities at the surface and at depth z, and k_d is the *vertical attenuation coefficient*. A higher k_d indicates light is absorbed more rapidly and the vertical light gradient in the water is steeper (Fig. 3.4). k_d can be calculated from light intensities measured at two depths with an underwater photocell (Box 3.1).

Each wavelength that penetrates through the water has a different attenuation coefficient. The different absorption of light at different depths, depending on the wavelength, results in changing

color with depth. Red light is absorbed most rapidly in pure water, and blue light has the greatest transmission. In pure water, about 65% of the red light (720 nm) is absorbed in the first meter ($k_d = 1.05\,m^{-1}$). In contrast, only 0.5% of blue light (475 nm) is absorbed in the same distance ($k_d = 0.005\,m^{-1}$). A diver, for example, sees no red hues at depths greater than a few meters.

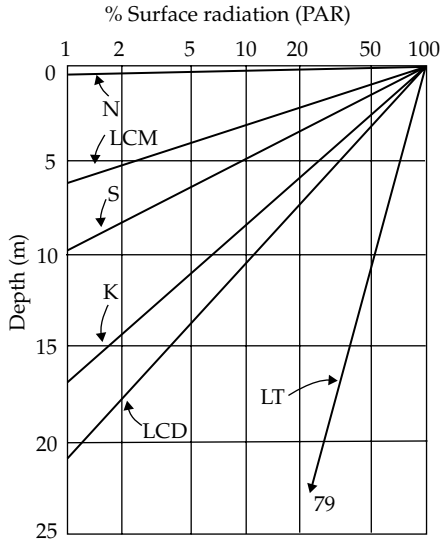


Figure 3.4 Decrease in the photosynthetically active radiation (PAR, 400–700 nm) with depth in different lakes. N, Lake Nakuru (Kenya); mean value for 1972 ($k_d = 17.1\,m^{-1}$); from Vareschi (1982). LCM and LCD, Lake Constance in May and December ($k_d = 0.768\,m^{-1}$ and $0.219\,m^{-1}$); from Tilzer *et al*. (1982). S, Schöhsee (Holstein, Germany) in June ($k_d = 0.461\,m^{-1}$). K, Königsee (Bavaria, Germany), mean value for 1979 ($k_d = 0.271\,m^{-1}$); from Siebeck (1982). LT, Lake Tahoe (California, USA) before eutrophication in 1970 ($k_d = 0.058\,m^{-1}$); from Tilzer *et al*. (1975).

Dissolved substances and particles are also very important in determining light transmission in lakes. Algae shift the absorption maximum to the longer green wavelengths, and dissolved humic substances shift to the shorter yellow wavelengths. Thus both the light intensity and the spectral composition of the light changes with depth. This is of great importance for photosynthesis, which functions only within the range of 400–700 nm.

Figure 3.4 compares the vertical transmission of PAR in lakes with contrasting concentrations of algae and turbidity. The light curves are straight when plotted on a semilogarithmic graph, since the light is absorbed exponentially with depth (Fig. 3.5). One extreme curve is for Lake Nakuru in Kenya, which has high turbidity due to enormous densities of *Spirulina*, a cyanobacterium, and which supports

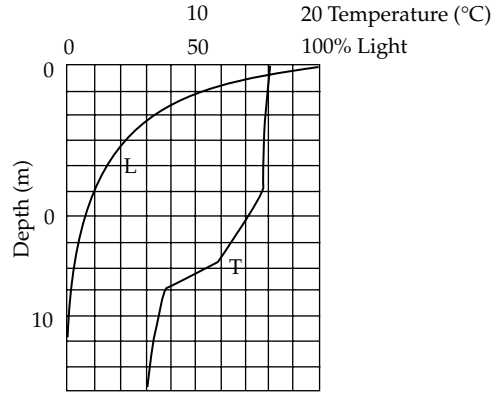


Figure 3.5 Depth profiles of light (L) and temperature (T) in a lake (Schöhsee, Holstein, Germany, June 7, 1983). There is a continuous decrease in light with depth from the surface; the temperature is uniform in the upper water layer due to turbulence (eddy diffusion).

Box 3.1 Light: Units of measurement

Light can be expressed as energy or as mol quanta. These units cannot be directly converted, as the energy content of a light quantum is different for different wavelengths. The following units are generally used:

- *Radiation energy:* $1\,J = 1\,W\,s = 0.2388$ cal
- *Energy flow density:* $1\,W\,m^{-2} = 1\,J\,s^{-1}\,m^{-2}$
- *Photon flux density:* mol $m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ or $\mu E\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ (E for Einstein)
- *An approximation for PAR (400–750 nm):* $1\,\mu E\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1} = 0.2–0.25\,W\,m^{-2}$

Occasionally the older term *illumination intensity* is still used with the unit lux (lx), although it is usually not a useful measure and should be avoided in limnological research:

- $1\,W\,m^{-2}$ = c.95 lx at 10° sun elevation, c.120 lx at 50° sun elevation, and c.140 lx with heavy cloud cover.

large populations of flamingos. The other extreme is for the exceptionally clear Lake Tahoe in California. One can read from the graph the depth at which 1% of the light is still available. This depth is often used as a rough estimate of the lower boundary of the *euphotic zone*, the region in which there is a positive energy balance due to photosynthesis (see Section 4.3.5). This depth can change dramatically, depending on the time of year, as illustrated by the curves for Lake Constance in May and December. As an alternative to actually measuring the light intensity at different depths, one can estimate the transparency of lake water by determining the visibility of a standard white disk (Secchi disk) lowered into the lake (Box 3.2).

Lakes vary widely in color. Such *water color* depends on the spectral range of the light reflected from the water surface (e.g., the color of the sky) and the color of the light that leaves the water after having penetrated it. Some of the light is scattered by water molecules and particles, so that it eventually leaves the water. Scattering does not directly reduce light energy, but increases the distance traveled by light, thereby increasing the amount of light absorbed. Scattering is also selective, depending on wavelength; short-wavelength light is scattered more than long-wavelength light. Pure water appears blue, since blue light is scattered most strongly and also has the greatest transmission. Chlorophyll content and humic substances provide green and brown water colors. Turbidity does not change the color, but it does reduce the color intensity.

Ice cover can greatly change the optical characteristics of a lake. Clear ice has the optical characteristics of distilled water, and many algae grow on the underside of the ice. Air bubbles, and most important, snow on top of the ice, strongly affect the light transmission. A 20 cm cover of dry snow can absorb and reflect 99% of the incident light, thereby seriously limiting the photosynthesis under the ice.

3.2.2 Temperature

Most of the radiation entering a lake, especially the long wavelengths, is absorbed near the surface and transformed into heat. Since molecular diffusion can be ignored (see Section 3.1.3), we might assume that the heat will remain where it was absorbed, and therefore predict that the temperature will decrease exponentially with depth, just as with light. This is not what happens, however (see Fig. 3.5). The reasons for this are the density anomaly of water and the effect of the wind.

Since water is most dense at 4 °C, it can become lighter either by cooling or by warming. Less dense water is buoyant compared to water that is more dense. From 4 °C to 0 °C water has a density difference of about 0.13 g l^{-1}, and between 4 and 20 °C the difference is 1.77 g l^{-1}. The density difference gets larger with increasing temperature, and between 24 and 25 °C it is 30 times as great as between 4 and 5 °C. Most of the exchange of heat between lakes and the environment takes place through the water surface. The lake is warmed by solar radiation and cooled through radiational cooling (e.g., at night)

Box 3.2 A simple determination of transparency

The *Secchi disk* is a simple tool for determining the *Secchi transparency* or depth of the maximum visibility in the water (sometimes called *Secchi depth*). The Secchi transparency is the water depth at which a white disk, usually 20 cm in diameter, disappears from the view of the observer at the water surface. It is a measure of half the distance that the light travels to the disk and back. The Secchi transparency is a relatively reliable and often used estimate for the rapid measurement of the light conditions in a lake. It is remarkably useful, despite the many factors that influence it such as the contrast between the disk and the environment, the light conditions, the visual acuity of the observer, and the diameter and reflectivity of the disk. Parallel measurements of different observers are surprisingly similar. Some typical visibility depths for different lakes are:

- Extremely clear Crater Lake (USA) 40 m
- Lake Constance at various seasons 1.5–12 m
- Schöhsee (Germany), summer 5 m
- Nutrient-rich north German lakes, summer <1 m
- Carp ponds 20 cm
- Lake Nakuru (Kenya) 5–10 cm

and evaporation. As cooling surface water becomes more dense it sinks until it encounters water of even greater density. At temperate latitudes there are usually periods in the spring and fall during which the surface water is cooled to 4°C. Therefore, the deep water temperatures in lakes of sufficient depth is always near 4°C. One exception is high-altitude lakes that are extremely cold. In tropical lakes the surface water never cools to 4°C, so the deep water temperatures are higher, and in polar lakes that are always frozen the temperatures can be even colder.

The wind produces turbulence and currents at the water surface that mix the shallow water. When the warmest water is "floating" near the surface, the wind cannot easily mix it with the underlying cold water. This produces a resistance to the wind effect that is proportional to the density difference between the upper and underlying water. A well-mixed layer is formed in the summer that extends to a depth at which the force of the wind is equal to the positive buoyancy of the warmer water.

There is an increase in the stability (the resistance to mixing of two water masses) from the deep, cold water to the shallow, warm water, since the density changes per degree centigrade are greater at high temperatures than at low temperatures. Wind can only attack the surface, and its power dissipates rapidly with depth, allowing a relatively sharp boundary between the mixed surface waters and the colder deep water. This gives rise to the typical temperature profile of a *stratified* lake with two separate water masses, the warm *epilimnion* and the cold *hypolimnion* (Fig. 3.6). A region of greatest change in temperature, known as the *metalimnion*, separates these two layers. The metalimnion is not easily defined. If one follows the original definition of Birge (1897), the upper and lower boundaries of the metalimnion are located where the temperature difference is at least 1°C per meter. One can also draw an imaginary plane through the lake at the depth of the greatest relative temperature change, dividing the lake into two levels (Hutchinson 1957). This plane is called the *thermocline*. The terms *metalimnion*, *thermocline*, and *Sprungschicht* (German) are often used as synonyms.

When the temperature of the epilimnion approaches 4°C in the spring, density differences between the water layers have almost dissipated. At this time a strong wind is sufficient to mix the

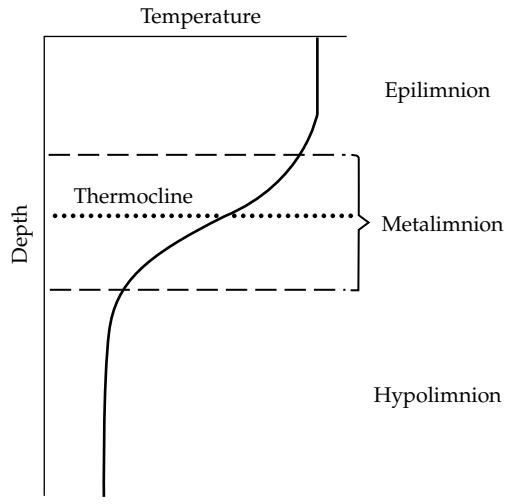


Figure 3.6 A typical summer temperature profile in a lake at temperate latitudes.

lake to the bottom, thereby initiating *spring circulation*. The lake then becomes *homothermic*, with the same temperature from top to bottom. Increasing sunlight surface then warms the surface water and the lake begins to stratify. At first the stratification is so weak that a brief episode of wind can easily destroy it, but after a short time a stable epilimnion develops. The lake then enters the period of *summer stratification*. The stratification becomes increasingly stable throughout the summer. The metalimnion and the thermocline deepen throughout the summer and into the fall (Fig. 3.7). During fall, surface cooling increases the density of surface water which begins to sink (thermal convection). While wind-induced mixing penetrates only through a certain depth, mixing induced by convection can penetrate to the depth of equal density. Thus the greatest depth of the thermocline does not coincide with the highest water temperatures. For example, in Lake Constance, the thermocline is deepest in October.

By late autumn the epilimnion has cooled down and the wind can once again completely mix the lake. Following *fall circulation* the lake is homothermic for the second time that year. Lakes that have an ice cover develop a reverse thermal or *winter stratification* with colder, less dense water directly under the ice floating on top of deep, warmer, and more dense water at about 4°C. An epilimnion

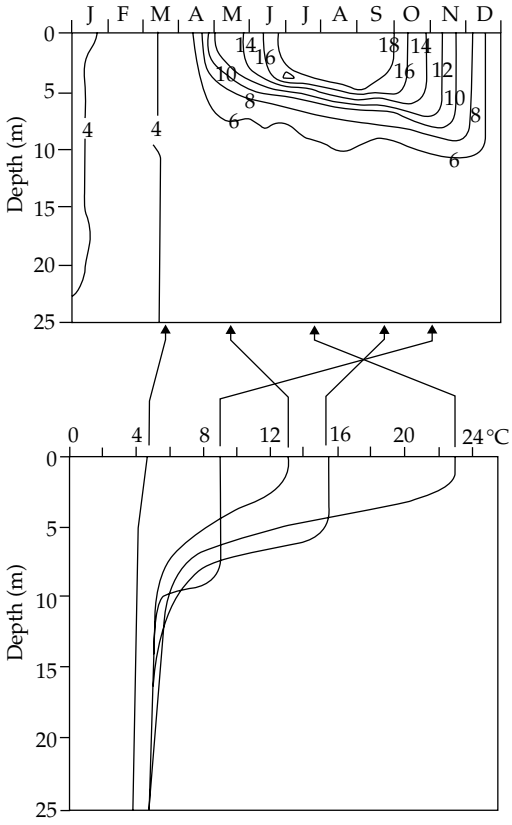


Figure 3.7 Temperature conditions in Plußsee (Holstein, Germany) in 1986. *Top:* Presented as isotherms (lines of equal temperature). *Bottom:* Temperature profiles from five selected dates (data from H. J. Krambeck).

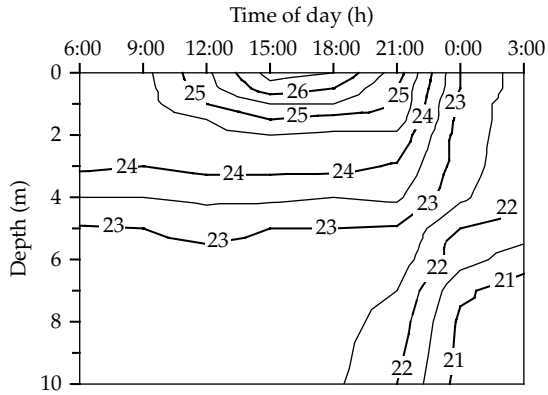


Figure 3.8 Diel circulation pattern in a shallow tropical lake in Brazil. Isothermal representation of temperature stratification (°C) during the day, and mixing at night (from Barbosa and Tundisi 1989).

cannot develop, however, because the water is protected from wind stress by the ice cover.

This change between stratification and circulation that forms an annual cycle in temperate latitudes can occur daily in shallow, tropical lakes. Very small temperature differences can sustain stable thermal stratification in warm, tropical lakes, since the relative density differences per degree temperature change is greatest at high temperatures. These lakes stratify during the day as the surface waters are heated, and each night, as the surface waters cool, the wind destratifies them (Fig. 3.8).

Thermal stratification and heat exchange depend on solar radiation and wind. In addition to climate, the size and wind exposure of a lake, and occasionally water inflow, are the major factors that determine the type of circulation. The wind cannot mix a small, protected woodland pond as well as a large lake with a long axis oriented parallel to the wind. Lakes can be categorized according to the degree and frequency of their *circulation patterns* (Box 3.3).

The epilimnion is referred to as the *mixed layer*, implying that it is a thermally homogeneous water mass. Literally, this means that the lower limit of the epilimnion extends to the depth of the lowest temperature measured at the surface during a 24 h cycle, since a water parcel cooled at night at the surface could theoretically sink to that depth. However, investigations with highly sensitive temperature sensors show that the epilimnion is not completely homogeneous, especially on calm days. Even very slight temperature differences between the shoreline region and the open water can result in density currents that produce a *fine structure* in the thermal stratification, which can be of great importance for the distribution of aquatic organisms (Fig. 3.9).

3.3 Other vertical gradients

3.3.1 Oxygen

Most organisms require oxygen for their metabolic activities. An adequate supply of oxygen is never a problem for air-breathing organisms, but in aquatic environments sufficient oxygen is not always available. The supply of oxygen in water comes from exchange with the atmosphere or from photosynthesis by green plants and cyanobacteria (blue-green algae). Oxygen enters only in the upper waters, since photosynthesis is dependent on light and atmospheric exchange occurs at the water

Box 3.3 Circulation patterns in lakes

- *Amictic lakes* never mix, since they are permanently frozen. Such lakes are found in Arctic and Antarctic regions and at very high altitudes.
- *Meromictic lakes* mix only partially; the deep water layers never mix either because of high water density caused by dissolved substances or because the lake is protected from wind effects (see Section 3.3.4).
- *Holomictic lakes* mix completely and are classified according to the frequency of circulation:
  - *Oligomictic lakes* do not mix every year. Because such lakes are usually large and have a large heat storage capacity, whether or not they mix completely depends on the specific climatic conditions.
  - *Monomictic lakes* mix only once each year, either in the summer or in the winter.
  - *Cold monomictic lakes* are found in polar regions. They thaw, but rarely reach temperatures above 4 °C, and mix in the summer.
  - *Warm monomictic lakes* mix in the winter, when they cool down to about 4 °C, but do not freeze over. An example is Lake Constance, which on average freezes over about once every 33 years because of its large size.
  - *Dimictic lakes* mix twice a year (in spring and fall); this is the most common lake type at temperate latitudes.
  - *Polymictic lakes* mix frequently and sometimes even daily. These are usually shallow lakes, either in the tropics, or at temperate latitudes with a high degree of wind exposure (see Fig. 3.8).

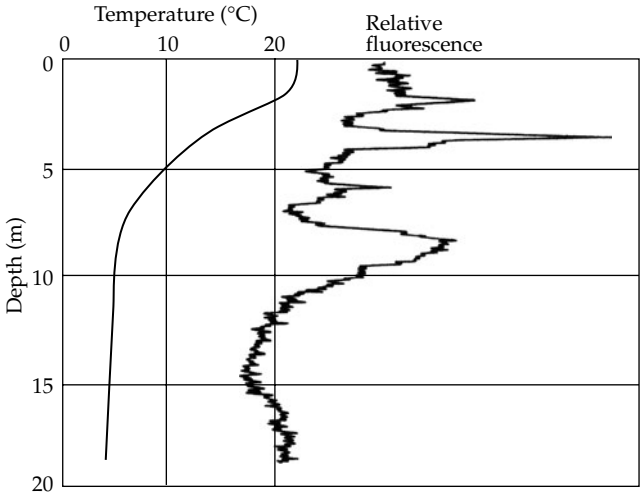


Figure 3.9 Vertical fine layering of organisms indicating that the "mixed zone" is not actually homogenous. The fluorescence is caused by pigments (e.g., chlorophyll). Plußsee (Holstein, Germany), July 9, 1987 (data from A. Baker and C. Watras).

surface. Photosynthesis produces organic matter and releases oxygen (see Section 4.3.5), whereas aerobic respiration consumes organic matter and uses oxygen. Oxygen production usually predominates in the light, and oxygen consumption in the dark. Lakes can be divided into two regions based on these processes: the lighted *trophogenic zone*, in which organic matter is synthesized and oxygen produced, and the *tropholytic zone*, where organic matter is decomposed and oxygen is consumed.

The trophogenic zone often, but not always, corresponds to the epilimnion. Much of the organic matter that is produced in the epilimnion eventually sinks to the deep water, but the oxygen produced remains in the epilimnion. Thus there is a sharp division between oxygen production and oxygen consumption. Addition of oxygen from the atmosphere and loss to the atmosphere, when the water is supersaturated, occurs when the surface waters are disturbed by the wind. This oxygenates the entire water mass during circulation periods. During stagnation periods only the epilimnion can exchange gases with the atmosphere and the hypolimnion has no atmospheric exchange. The

oxygen available for decomposition of organic matter that sinks into the deep water must therefore come from the supply obtained during the periods of circulation. The hypolimnion constantly removes this supply of oxygen.

The concentration of oxygen in the deep waters depends on several factors:

- The circulation pattern determines how often the supply of oxygen is renewed.
- The size of the oxygen supply can be estimated from the volume of the hypolimnion times the oxygen concentration immediately after circulation. A deep lake has a larger hypolimnion than a shallow lake with the same surface area. The deep lake can therefore store more oxygen and has a trophogenic to tropholytic zone ratio that is more favorable for oxygen balance.
- The quantity of decomposable matter that sinks into the bottom water is a function of the production in the epilimnion. In lakes with low productivity, most of the organic matter has been decomposed before it reaches the bottom water and therefore does not use up the oxygen there.
- The rate of decomposition depends on the temperature. Decomposition occurs much more rapidly at 25 °C in the hypolimnion of a tropical lake than at 4 °C in a temperate lake. In polymictic lakes in the tropics, loss of oxygen during the daily temperature cycle is enhanced by the lower solubility of oxygen in warm water.

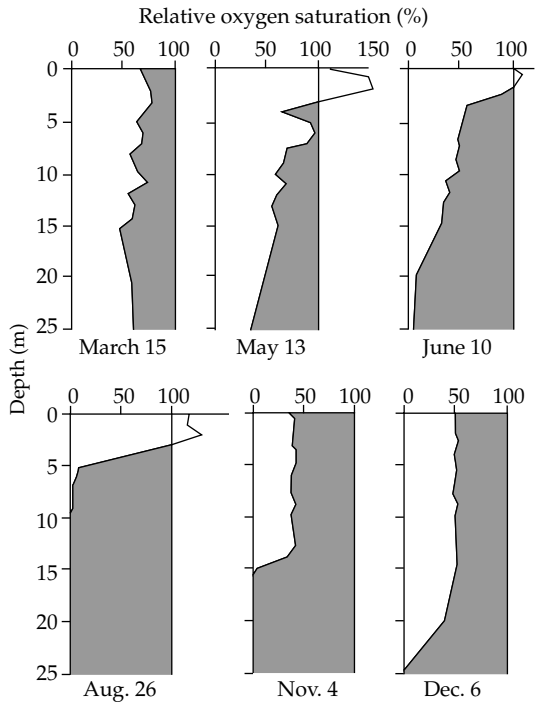


Figure 3.10 Depth profiles of dissolved oxygen (relative saturation) in a eutrophic lake (Plußsee, Holstein, Germany) throughout 1986. The shaded area clearly indicates the region of subsaturation. After ice-out the lake becomes homogenously mixed, but already has an oxygen deficit. The oxygen concentration in the deep water continually decreases during the summer stagnation period, whereas a supersaturation of oxygen develops in the surface waters. In the fall oxygen is once again mixed in from the surface (data from H. J. Krambeck).

Both *productivity* and *morphometry* are critical determinants of the oxygen balance in a lake. For lakes with the same productivity, lakes with a large hypolimnion decompose organic matter with little effect on the dissolved oxygen concentration, whereas shallow lakes may lose oxygen completely. Partially decomposed organic matter that settles to the bottom of a lake forms sediments that are rich in organic matter. The water layer in contact with the sediments then loses oxygen, as the decomposition processes continue within the sediments. Lakes with a large ratio of sediment surface to water volume tend to lose a lot of oxygen to the sediments. Loss of oxygen in the hypolimnion begins with the onset of stagnation, but in very productive lakes there can also be considerable loss of oxygen in winter under the ice. The longer the stagnation period, the greater the oxygen loss in the deep water.

The annual cycle of vertical changes in oxygen in a lake is closely tied to the pattern of circulation (Fig. 3.10). Every lake has its own unique oxygen profile (Fig. 3.11). Deep *holomictic* lakes with low productivity retain throughout the summer the same oxygen curve that they had immediately after spring circulation. In these lakes the water is saturated with oxygen from top to bottom, although the absolute concentration of oxygen may be somewhat less in the surface waters because of the lower saturation limit in the warmer water (see Section 3.1.4). Such oxygen profiles are called *orthograde* curves. In productive lakes where the oxygen concentration often decreases to zero in the hypolimnion, the resulting oxygen curve is

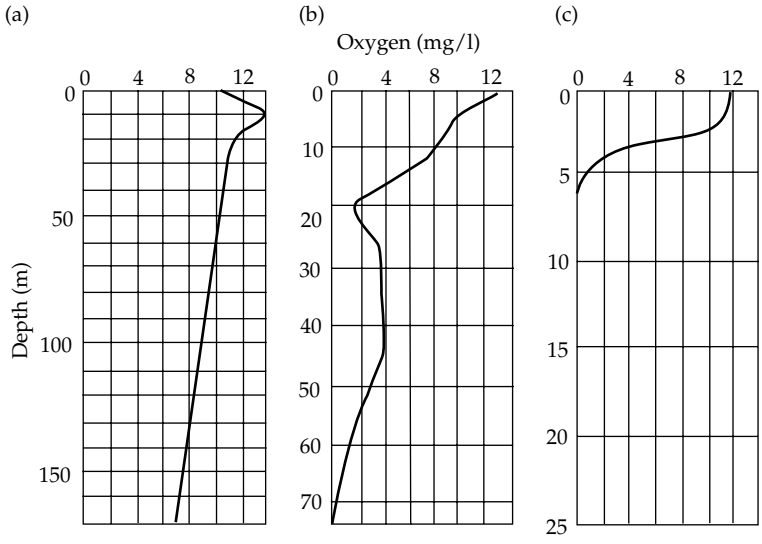


Figure 3.11 Typical oxygen curves during the summer stagnation. (a) Oligotrophic Königsee (July 5, 1980) has a nearly orthograde oxygen curve (from Siebeck 1982). (b) The deep, eutrophic Lake Biel (Switzerland; October 11, 1976) has a negative heterograde oxygen curve (from Tschumi 1977). (c) The eutrophic, wind-protected Plußsee (Holstein, Germany; September 4, 1989) has a strongly clinograde curve (data from H.J. Krambeck).

described as *clinograde*. Clinograde oxygen curves can also develop minima and maxima near the metalimnion. For example, high bacterial activity may develop in accumulations of dead organic matter that is retained by the sharp density gradient. This produces a metalimnetic oxygen minimum or *negative heterograde curve*. On calm, sunny days a productive lake may have a supersaturation of oxygen in the epilimnion. Lack of mixing in the lower epilimnion prevents the excess oxygen escaping into the atmosphere, and an oxygen maximum or *positive heterograde curve* develops.

The vertical distribution of oxygen in a lake is one of the most important abiotic factors for freshwater organisms. Aquatic life in lakes has evolved many adaptations to the wide range of oxygen conditions. For example, for some species the lack of oxygen in the deep water limits their vertical distribution, whereas for other species that can tolerate periods without oxygen (*anoxibiosis*), these oxygen-devoid regions represent a refugium from predators. Many organisms have life cycles adapted to the predictable changes in oxygen conditions. *Obligatory anaerobic* microorganisms can live only in regions that are free of oxygen. The composition of aquatic communities in a lake is highly dependent on the oxygen conditions.

3.3.2 pH

Vertical differences in biological activities in a lake lead to the development of vertical gradients and temporal changes in pH. Three major processes that affect the pH are photosynthesis, respiration, and nitrogen assimilation. The effects of photosynthesis and respiration on the pH depend largely on the carbonate–bicarbonate–carbon dioxide equilibrium (Section 3.1.6). The simplified formulae for photosynthesis are as follows, depending on the prevailing form of *dissolved equilibrium inorganic carbon* (DIC), either carbon dioxide or bicarbonate:

$$6CO_2 + 6H_2O \rightleftharpoons C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2$$

$$6HCO_3^- + 6H^+ \rightleftharpoons C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2$$

Note that no hydrogen ions are used when carbon dioxide is taken up (assimilated) during photosynthesis, whereas one hydrogen ion per atom of carbon is used when bicarbonate ions are used for photosynthesis. The reverse is true for respiration. The result is that when the pH is less than 6.3 and carbon dioxide is the dominant form (see Fig. 3.3), respiration and photosynthesis have little effect on the pH. At higher pH values, when other forms of inorganic carbon are available, photosynthesis and respiration alter the uptake and release of hydrogen

ions. The exchange of hydrogen ions first affects the alkalinity or acid-neutralizing capacity of the water. The effect that addition or removal of hydrogen ions has on the pH depends on the buffering capacity. The vertical gradient of pH that develops in a stratified lake (usually higher in the epilimnion) depends on the initial pH and the buffering capacity.

Nitrogen assimilation by aquatic organisms also can affect the pH of a lake. If ammonium ions (NH_4^+) are used as a source of nitrogen, an equivalent number of hydrogen ions must be released to maintain the balance of charges. When nitrate (NO^{3-}) is assimilated, in contrast, an equivalent number of hydrogen ions must be removed. This generally applies for other ions that are taken up too, but these are quantitatively unimportant. Since nitrogen assimilation is not as important as carbon assimilation, its effect on pH is most noticeable at low pH, where photosynthesis has no impact on the pH because bicarbonate plays no role.

3.3.3 Redox potential

Many chemical and biochemical transformations in water are *redox reactions* or reactions in which there is transfer of electrons. The *electron donor* is referred to as the reducing agent and the *electron acceptor* as the oxidizing agent. In a redox reaction, the electron transfer changes the original reducing agent into an oxidizing agent, and the original oxidizing agent into a reducing agent. The direction and speed of the reaction depends on the amount of energy that is released. The more the equilibrium

$$\text{Red} \rightleftharpoons \text{Ox} + e^-$$

moves to the oxidation side, the more electronegative the redox potential becomes.

Photosynthesis and respiration can also be described in terms of redox reactions. In photosynthesis, carbon dioxide is the original oxidizing agent and water is the original reducing agent. The oxidation level of carbon is reduced during photosynthesis (from +IV to 0), resulting in a reduced organic compound and oxygen as the terminal electron acceptor. Other biologically important elements also undergo redox changes (N, S, Fe, but not P). The oxidation levels of biologically important elements are listed in Table 3.2.

Table 3.2 Oxidation levels of biologically important elements, and commonly occurring examples

Element	Oxidation level	Examples
Carbon	C (+IV)	CO_2, HCO_3^+, CO_3^{2-}
	C (0)	C, CH_2O
	C (−IV)	CH_4
Nitrogen	N (+V)	NO_3^-
	N (+III)	NO_2^+
	N (0)	N_2
	N (−III)	NH_3, NH_4^+, $-NH_2$
Sulfur	S (+VI)	SO_4^{2-}
	S (−II)	H_2S
Iron	Fe (+III)	Fe^{3+}
	Fe (+II)	Fe^{2+}

The free electrons in a solution can be captured by an electrode placed in a redox system. A potential develops on the electrode that corresponds to the capability of the solution to oxidize or reduce, which is the redox potential (Eh) of the solution. The Eh is expressed in volts and is measured with a standard hydrogen electrode. Eh is often standardized to a pH of 7 (E_7), since Eh decreases by 0.058 V for each increase of one pH unit.

Oxygen is especially important for the redox potential. Oxygen dissolved in water follows the reaction:

$$H_2O \rightleftharpoons \tfrac{1}{2}O_2 + 2H^+ + 2e^-$$

The theoretical redox potential of water saturated with oxygen at pH = 7 and 25 °C is 0.8 V. Redox potential is very insensitive to changes in the oxygen concentration *per se*. For example, a 99% decrease in oxygen concentration decreases the E_7 only by about 0.03 V, as long as there are no increases in reducing substances associated with the decrease in oxygen.

The theoretical E_7 value of 0.8 V holds only for ideal conditions in a chemical equilibrium, where all redox reactions are reversible. Such conditions do not occur in natural waters. In an oxygen-rich epilimnion the redox potential is between 0.4 and 0.6 V, since the chemical adjustment to the equilibrium is slow and photosynthesis works against such chemical adjustments. When oxygen is not present, the reducing substances become noticeable. Thus lakes with an anoxic hypolimnion generally have strong vertical gradients in redox

Table 3.3 Reductions in redox pairs

Redox pair	Redox potential, E_7 (V)	Corresponding O_2 concentration (mg l^{-1})
$NO_3^- - NO_2^-$	0.45–0.40	4.0
$NO_2^- - NH_3$	0.40–0.35	0.4
$Fe^{3+} - Fe^{2+}$	0.30–0.20	0.1
$SO_4^- - S^{2-}$	0.10–0.06	0.0

potential. Reducing ferrous ions (Fe^{2+}) and organic matter decrease the redox potential in anoxic regions. There is usually a rapid change in Eh at the sediment–water boundary, where the values in the sediments may reach –0.2 V and in the overlying water seldom drop below 0 V.

Since the redox potential has a strong influence on the solubility of elements, its seasonal changes in the hypolimnion and at the sediment–water interface are especially important in the nutrient cycling in lakes. Iron, for example, plays a key role in the availability of phosphorus (see Section 8.3.5). Lower oxygen concentration and the resulting fall in redox potential lead to a series of reductions in redox pairs, as shown in Table 3.3.

Iron is essentially insoluble as Fe^{3+} above an E_7 of 0.3 V, but as the redox drops below this level the iron changes to soluble Fe^{2+}, which can resolubilize the phosphorus that was bound in the sediments. If the redox potential drops further, however, sulfate transforms into sulfide, which then combines with iron to form an insoluble black iron sulfide that precipitates out of solution. As oxygen concentrations decline and reducing substances build up, phosphorus, the element most frequently limiting algal growth, is first dissolved, then precipitates out.

Reducing substances can be oxidized by oxygen in a purely chemical reaction, but in nature the reaction is often accelerated by biological processes such as respiration, nitrification, and bacterial oxidation of sulfur and iron (see Section 4.3.8).

3.3.4 Meromixis as a special case

Some lakes never mix completely at any time during the year. Such lakes are called *meromictic*. The depth below which no mixing occurs is the *monimolimnion*, and the upper water layer that undergoes the circulation according to the climate of the region is the *mixolimnion*. A strong vertical chemical gradient or *chemocline* separates these two zones.

Meromixis develops when the deep water of a lake becomes so heavy with dissolved substances that its density cannot be equaled by the cooling of the surface water. An increase in salt content of 10 mg l^{-1} produces the same increase in density as a decrease in temperature from 5 to 4 °C. In a clear lake with a high salt content in the deep water, the monimolimnion may be warmed with solar radiation well above 4 °C without mixing, even when the surface waters cool to 4 °C.

Different types of meromixis are distinguished on the basis of the source of salt in the monimolimnion: *crenogenic meromixis* from deep water springs, *ectogenic meromixis* from occasional delivery of ocean water in coastal lakes, and *biogenic meromixis* from minerals released by decomposition in the deep water and released from the sediments. Normally, the accumulation of decomposition products during summer stagnation are not sufficient to prevent circulation in the fall or winter, but in very deep lakes with relatively small surface area inadequate cooling or wind in the fall or winter may result in the lack of a complete circulation. If this happens repeatedly, dissolved substances may accumulate to large enough concentrations to make the lake permanently meromictic. Almost all extremely deep equatorial lakes, such as Lake Tanganyika and Lake Malawi, have this type of meromixis.

A meromictic lake has the same type of vertical chemical gradient as a eutrophic, holomictic lake with an anaerobic hypolimnion. Even unproductive meromictic lakes tend to have an anaerobic monimolimnion, due to the long-term accumulation of decomposing organic matter. The stability of the chemocline also results in much steeper vertical chemical gradients of oxygen and other related substances than in comparable holomictic lakes.

3.4 Running water

3.4.1 Flow

Flow is the primary factor that distinguishes streams from lakes. The constant mixing in streams eliminates

all vertical gradients, except for light. The unidirectionality of stream flow is critical. For small organisms it means that, unless they can attach themselves to a secure structure, they will be transported downstream, with no possibility of being carried back to their original location simply by chance. Plankton, which are so characteristic of lakes, cannot exist in streams. "Stream plankton" are found only in large, slow-moving streams, with lakelike embayments and impounded regions where the washout rate is slower than the reproductive rate of the plankton population. These regions continually supply the stream with plankton (Reynolds *et al*. 1991).

Directed flow also means that, for an organism that is not moving, resources such as nutrients for algae and food particles for animals (see Section 4.3.1) that are not utilized immediately are lost, since the resources never return. On the other hand, new resources are continually supplied at the same rate from upstream. Thus at any point in the stream there is an equilibrium between incoming and outgoing matter.

Flow is a very powerful selective factor, to which stream organisms must be adapted. They must, for example, be able to withstand the shear forces of the water, to attach to and utilize the boundary layers (see Section 3.1.5), and, at the same time, to extract sufficient nutrition from the water current. Fluctuating water flow is another strong selective force in streams. Extreme *high water* (floods) can mechanically disturb the stream bottom and have disastrous effects on the populations there. The structure of the stream bottom is rapidly altered by gravel and stones rolling downstream, destroying the habitats of the organisms.

Stream flow is also responsible for structuring the stream bed and its colonization by organisms. Water currents sort particles according to their size and weight, with more rapid flow transporting the largest particles. Thus, in rapidly flowing streams, the bottom consists primarily of very coarse stones, whereas in quiet habitats the bottom is made up of sand and silt deposits. The effects of velocity on the bottom type can be roughly categorized as shown in Table 3.4.

Table 3.4 Effects of stream velocity on bottom type

Velocity (cm s^{-1})	Bottom characteristics of the water body
3–20	Silt
20–40	Fine sand
40–60	Coarse sand–fine gravel
60–120	Small, fist-sized stones
120–200	Larger stones

Normally one associates high stream velocities with headwater rivers in the mountains. This is correct, although the lower reaches of large streams also have high stream velocities. Stream velocity depends on the incline and smoothness of the substrate, but also on the cross-sectional area of the stream. Velocity increases with increasing gradient and size of the stream. In high mountain regions there is a steep incline, but streams tend to be small; in lowlands there is minimal drop, but there is a large quantity (cross-sectional area) of flowing water. Large rivers such as the Rhine in Germany have a high velocity, even where there is little incline. Although one cannot see the effects of sediment transport, since the banks of the Rhine have been built up, if a hydrophone is lowered into the river one can hear the noise of gravel moving along the bottom.

The hydraulic conditions in a stream are determined by its morphology. Since the morphology changes according to its location and tributaries, it is often helpful to describe a stream in terms of its position or *order* in the hierarchy of its tributaries. A first-order stream is a *headwater* stream with no tributaries. After two headwater streams unite, they become a second-order stream. The juncture of two second-order streams produces a third-order stream, etc. (Fig. 3.12). The world's largest river systems have stream orders of 11–12. Although stream order does not say anything about the length, size, and watershed area of a particular stream, there are consistencies that allow some generalizations. For example, when one moves to a lower order, there are about 3–4 times more streams and each is on the average less than one-half as long and drains one-fifth of the watershed area (Hynes 1970).

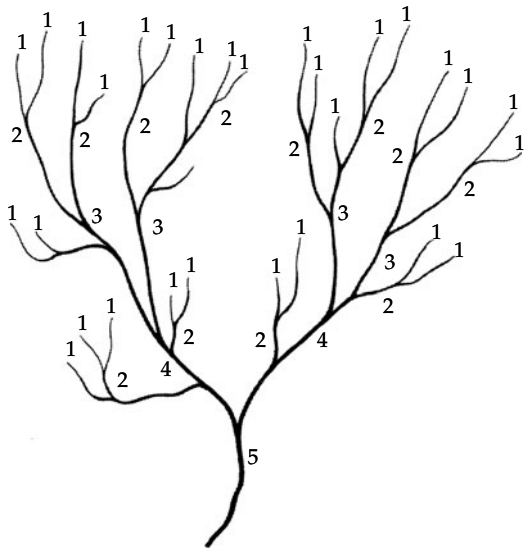


Figure 3.12 The hierarchy of a stream system. The numbers indicate the stream order.

3.4.2 Temperature

Because of their great turbulence and continual mixing, streams do not have a thermal stratification comparable to that found in lakes. Instead, streams typically have longitudinal temperature gradients from origin to end. Springs have very constant temperatures. The temperature at the point of emergence of a spring is determined by the average annual temperature of the drainage area and varies annually by only a few tenths of a degree Celsius. In northern Germany this temperature is usually around 8 °C. As the water moves downstream its temperature gradually approximates the mean air temperature. This results in gradually increasing temperature downstream in the summer and decreasing temperatures as one moves from the stream source in the winter. Superimposed on these gradual temperature changes, however, are daily variations in temperature, the magnitude of which depends on the size of the stream. A small stream with a small volume of water is rapidly warmed by the sunlight, reaching it highest temperature in the afternoon and then cooling until it reaches it lowest temperature late at night. Small streams can vary by 6 °C or more in the summer (Hynes 1970), whereas large rivers with a correspondingly large heat capacity have minimal daily temperature fluctuations.

There is a characteristic pattern of temperature changes in the summer, relating to the fact that streams usually become larger as they progress downstream: with distance downstream, the mean temperature increases, the amplitude of daily changes decreases, and the annual temperature differences increase. This pattern is easily explained by temperature changes from the source to the mouth of the stream, increasing in the summer and decreasing in the winter. Temperature variations in tropical streams are usually much smaller than in streams at temperate latitudes.

Streams that pass through lakes become warmer in the summer as a result of the cooler stream water entering the lake sinking and being replaced in the outlet stream by warm, epilimnetic water.

3.4.3 Oxygen

The oxygen content of unpolluted mountain streams is near 100% relative saturation, because of the constant exchange of gases, enhanced by the turbulence, between the atmosphere and water. There are characteristic patterns of oxygen changes as one moves downstream. Spring water is often low in oxygen, since it has been underground for a long time. This deficit is quickly overcome by atmospheric oxygen in a rapidly flowing headwater stream. In streams of intermediate stream order the processes of oxygen production and consumption become more noticeable, since there are lags in the exchange of gases with the atmosphere. For example, attached algae and rooted aquatic plants produce oxygen during the day, and oxygen is consumed by decomposition of imported organic matter such as leaf litter. This leads to daily fluctuations in the oxygen concentration, with highest oxygen concentrations in the afternoon, due to photosynthesis, and lowest concentrations at night. Such daily changes are primarily under biological control, since physical fluctuations such as temperature, which is cooler at night and warmer in the day, would have the opposite effect on gas concentrations. Physical factors are nonetheless still important in this example, as oxygen is gained from the

atmosphere at night and excess supersaturated oxygen is lost to the atmosphere during the day.

The relative importance of atmospheric exchange lessens as one approaches the mouth of a river, as the massive volume of water below the surface has less frequent contact with the air. Loading of organic matter, and resulting oxygen depletion, increase with stream order. In slow-flowing, dammed regions, however, planktonic algae may flourish, leading to supersaturation of oxygen. Photosynthesis by phytoplankton is unimportant in the subsurface waters of undammed rivers, as the algae are constantly forced down into the darkened depths where they cannot photosynthesize. Such streams usually develop oxygen deficits. This effect is exaggerated where these rivers collect wastewater containing even more organic matter and causing more oxygen consumption. The Rhine is a good example. In the 1970s, when the Rhine was seriously polluted, the oxygen content in the river was frequently less than $3\,mg\,l^{-1}$, thereby threatening the fish populations. Following the construction of water treatment plants, loading of decomposable matter was reduced considerably. As a consequence, between 1982 and 1987, the lowest measured oxygen concentration in the Rhine was $5.3\,mg\,l^{-1}$. Since 1990, the oxygen concentration has never fallen below $6\,mg\,l^{-1}$, which is considered the minimum value for salmonid fishes.

3.5 Predictability of environmental conditions in water

The physico-chemical characteristics of water discussed in the preceding chapter make water bodies unique habitats. Water acts as a buffer against many of the fluctuations in the environment, making living conditions more constant and predictable. For example, on a summer day the ground temperatures in a dry upland habitat may easily differ by 30 °C between day and night, but in the epilimnion of a lake the range rarely exceeds 2 °C.

Thus, aquatic organisms have evolved many adaptions in response to biological factors rather than physical factors. This makes aquatic systems especially useful for the study of interactions of organisms. The following chapters will focus on these interactions.

The predictability of future conditions is important for an adaptation to evolve. Such predictability is high in aquatic systems, but in streams is limited by occasional flood events. Lakes are especially well suited for the study of predictable patterns and phenomena:

- They are relatively well-defined systems. The term *ecosystem* is often an arbitrarily divided piece of the landscape, but with lakes, the land–water boundary also represents for many organisms a functional boundary that separates terrestrial and aquatic habitats. A lake is a relatively isolated system, despite many influences and exchanges of water with the surrounding land.
- Lakes are not extreme habitats in regard to abiotic factors. There is never a shortage of water, for example, which is often a limiting factor in terrestrial habitats. The temperature is never below 0 °C and rarely exceeds 30 °C. There are differences in the chemical characteristics of lakes, but these reach extreme levels in only exceptional cases, such as acid-stressed lakes.
- Abiotic factors are both temporally and spatially more predictable than in terrestrial systems. The high heat capacity of water dampens temperature changes. Maximum water temperatures in lakes show some variation in response to climatic changes, but seasonal changes in lake temperatures change slowly, and day-to-day variations are small. Lakes have predictable vertical gradients of temperature and light that, in turn, regulate the processes of production and decomposition. Anoxic conditions in the hypolimnion are extreme, but they develop slowly and predictably. Lakes generally do not develop an anoxic hypolimnion one year and not the next.
- Lakes have a certain "island character," despite the wide distribution of many aquatic organisms. Density-dependent processes are important in the interactions of organisms, for relatively few species can emigrate when their population gets too dense.

This is not to imply that lakes do not change. Their appearance can vary from year to year. Massive blooms of a particular species of algae need not occur each year, and the species composition of algae also may change, but we can assume that such changes

are not the direct result of variations in abiotic factors. In contrast to terrestrial habitats, water maintains a relatively constant "framework" of environmental conditions that is "filled" with biotic interactions. This makes it easier for the ecologist to exclude changes due to random variation, and to find the natural laws responsible for the observed changes.

Review questions

1 Calculate the Reynolds number for the following moving aquatic organisms (assume water to have a viscosity of $\mu = 1 \times 10^{-3}$ Pa s): (a) a flagellate, 5 μm long swimming at 1 m h^{-1}; (b) a diatom of 50 μm diameter sinking at 1 m d^{-1}; (c) a small fish 10 cm long swimming at 1 m s^{-1}; (d) a large fish 1 m long swimming at 3 m s^{-1}.

2 Plot the thickness of Prandtl's boundary layer as a function of flow velocity for distances (x) of 1, 5, and 10 cm, respectively.

3 Hard waters have higher concentrations of calcium and magnesium ions than soft waters. In which type of lakes do you expect higher concentrations of dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC = $CO_2 + H_2CO_3 + HCO_3^- + CO_3^{2-}$), and why?

4 It is generally assumed that the compensation depth for phytoplankton photosynthesis equals the depth where *c*.1% of the surface intensity is measured. Calculate the vertical extinction coefficients for lakes with compensation depths of 3, 10, and 30 m.

5 In which type of lakes and in which season of the year do you expect a hypolimnion devoid of oxygen?

6 Lake Tanganyika in Africa is *c*.1400 m deep. It is oligotrophic, but has an anaerobic deep-water zone. How is that possible?

CHAPTER 4

The individual in its habitat

Ecological requirements of organisms and the adaptations that allow them to meet these requirements are properties of the individual. Likewise, the primary unit of selection is the individual as carrier of the genome. Physiological ecology investigates how the capabilities of an individual affect its fitness. The individual is not in all cases a well-defined unit; for example, colony-forming protists or plants such as reeds that are connected by rhizomes.

A certain minimal size is needed in order to get measurements of physiological activities and characteristics of individuals. For organisms smaller than about 1 mm, such as rotifers, protozoa, microalgae, and bacteria, such measurements are usually made on cultures consisting of experimental populations made up of many individuals. Ideally, clonal cultures are used to minimize variability, but even then genetic identity can only be ensured if clones are used soon after isolation so that mutations are not noticeable. Individual variability cannot, however, be identified from measurements made on experimental populations.

Measurements of the physiological capabilities of microorganisms are often measured in units that are only meaningful when applied at the population level. Growth rate of populations is an example, as well as migration movements of small organisms, which are usually estimated by analyzing the distribution of a population, rather than observing the movements of each individual. Thus, unavoidably, concepts are used in this chapter that more appropriately belong in the chapter on populations.

4.1 Individual requirements

4.1.1 Ranges of tolerance and optimality

For some time it has been customary to assign organisms a specific range of tolerance and optimal range for environmental factors such as temperature, pH, stream velocity, and availability of resources. It is often assumed that there is a unimodal curve that describes the response to a gradient of an environmental factor for activities such as metabolic rate, individual growth rate, and population growth rate. The highest point on this curve is then designated as the *optimum* condition for that particular environmental factor. The two points where the lines cross the zero level are the *minimum* and the *maximum*, and the distance between these forms the *tolerance range*. The shape of the curve is called the *reaction norm* (Stearns 1989). Species with a wide range of tolerance are traditionally referred to as *euryoecious*, and those with narrow tolerances are *stenoecious*. It is important to note that optimal curves do not describe the response of organisms to all environmental factors: a saturation curve applies to the response to resources (see Section 4.3), and for toxic substances the optimum is zero.

Distinctions are usually made between "physiological" and "ecological" optima and tolerance ranges. The former relates to physiological functions that can be determined by experiments with individual organisms or pure cultures. The latter is inferred from distributions of organisms in nature and thus includes the effects of biotic interactions such as competition and predation (see Chapter 6). Neither of these approaches is totally adequate. The limits of tolerance and the optimal range for a species should be determined by examining the relationship of each activity to the actual environmental conditions encountered by the individual. The response of an organism's various activities to the same environmental factor need not be identical; for example, the temperature optimum may differ for swimming activity and reproduction.

Extreme conditions can usually be tolerated for short periods. Thus the lethal range for a particular

factor is the broadest definition of the tolerance range. The range in which a species has sufficient food to cover its energetic and material costs is narrower, and the range of conditions in which a species can successfully reproduce is even more restricted. All three of these ranges of tolerance—for survival, nutrition, and reproduction—are determined by the physiological characteristics of the individual organism. Since they do not involve interactions with other individuals, these are physiological categories of tolerance and optimal ranges.

Through their metabolic activity, organisms alter their own environment and become part of the "environment" of other organisms (see Chapter 6). Predators, parasites, or competitors may prevent a species from establishing a stable population in a given habitat, even though the conditions are within the physiological tolerance range for reproduction. It is common for the distribution of a species to be considerably more restricted than would be predicted by the physiological tolerance range, even when the population-limiting effects of historical influences such as the distributional history and geographical barriers are excluded. Biological interactions can shift the conditions for the population distribution maximum away from the conditions for the physiological optimum. For example, many aquatic animals live in cold, deep lake water, even though their physiological optimum is near 20 °C, because of the threat from predators in the warmer, shallow regions of the lake.

4.1.2 The niche

The *ecological niche* is an often-used concept that is related to tolerance range; its meaning has changed considerably since it was introduced by Grinnell (1917). The modern definition can be traced back to Hutchinson (1958), who emphasized that organisms have ranges of tolerance for many environmental factors, rather than for only a single factor. Each environmental factor corresponds to an axis in a hypothetical multidimensional coordinate system. The niche is accordingly an *n*-dimensional *hypervolume* within this coordinate system. Figure 4.1 illustrates two niche dimensions using this approach. Because of the limitations of such a

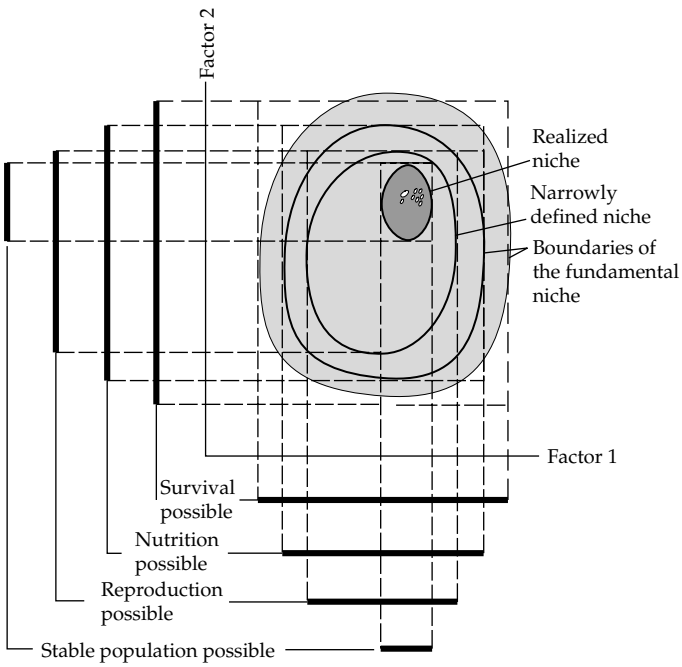


Figure 4.1 A comparison of the Hutchinsonian niche and tolerance regions for two environmental factors.

graphic presentation, a maximum of one additional dimension could be included in such a graph. Hutchinson makes the distinction between *fundamental* and *realized* niches, which are analogous to physiological and ecological tolerance ranges. The fundamental niche is thus the hypervolume within which a species can occur without the effects of biotic interactions. The realized niche is the restricted niche into which the species is driven by competition and predation. The same distinctions apply to the fundamental niche as were made for the physiological tolerance range. This concept will be taken up again in the section dealing with interspecific competition (Section 6.1).

4.1.3 Behavior and life cycle as adaptations to environmental variability

The environment of an organism is not constant; it changes, for example, with the time of year. Also, within the life cycle of a species, the environmental pressures and the tolerances of the organism can change. Young stages may have a different niche from the adults. Thus it is sometimes necessary for a species to partition its life cycle so that the tolerance range of a particular life stage is adapted to its environmental conditions.

The development of a resistant *diapause* or resting stage is the simplest form of adaptation of a life cycle to the periodic appearance of detrimental or lethal conditions. Many aquatic plants lose their stems and leaves in the fall and overwinter as perennial rhizomes in the sediments. Insects can overwinter as eggs laid in the fall that hatch in the spring. They can also tolerate unfavorable conditions in resting stages as larvae and pupae. Diapause stages are also common within the plankton; for example, the zygotes of the green algae, the akinetes of the cyanobacteria (blue-green algae), the statospores of chrysophytes, the ephippia of cladocerans (see Fig. 5.19), and the resting eggs of copepods and rotifers (for review see Gyllström and Hansson 2004).

Various changes in the environment can initiate the formation of resting stages; examples are changes in water temperature and day length or reduction in available nutrients. Nutrient decreases often cause a well-defined pulse of resting stages at the end of the growing period (e.g., the dinoflagellate *Ceratium hirundinella*, Fig. 4.2), commonly referred to as *exogenous controlled encystment*. Golden algae (*chrysophytes*), in contrast, form statospores that are entirely regulated by the population density,

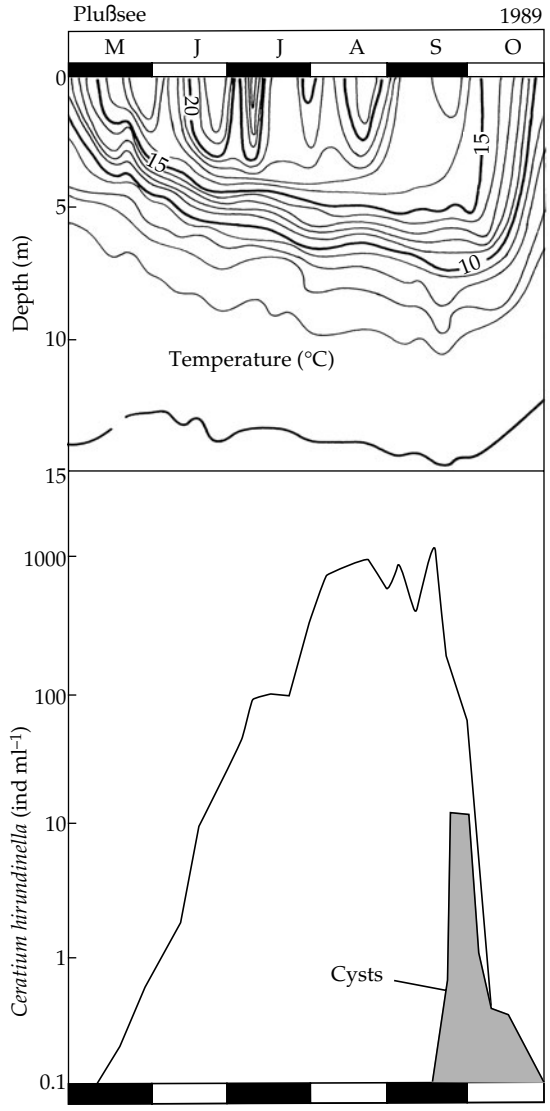


Figure 4.2 The exogenously controlled encystment of the dinoflagellate *Ceratium hirundinella*. The total concentration (vegetative cells and cysts) and density of the cysts (shaded area) in Plußsee (Holstein, Germany), in comparison to thermal stratification.

a process called *endogenous controlled encystment*. The golden algae therefore produce the most resting stages at the time of maximum vegetative cell density.

The realized niche is always smaller than the fundamental niche, giving mobile species a certain amount of flexibility when biotic or abiotic conditions around them change. Such species can take advantage of the spatial heterogeneity in environmental conditions by actively avoiding unfavorable conditions and actively searching for beneficial conditions, shifting their realized niche in this way. For example, when the oxygen concentration decreases in the hypolimnion of a lake, many organisms come close to lower limit of their oxygen niche dimension. They can survive by moving into the shallow water near the shore, as long as their tolerance to temperature is not exceeded. It is interesting to consider why such species do not simply stay in the shallow regions after the lake has mixed and reoxygenated the deep water, rather than return to the deep water. Perhaps they return to the deep water because they have a lower temperature optimum, even though they can tolerate the higher temperature. It could also be that the species moves to the deep water to avoid a higher mortality in the shallow water, such as the presence of predators. This is the more likely explanation. For example, diving ducks that feed on the zebra mussel can dive only a few meters (Hamilton *et al*. 1994), an example of a mortality factor that is limited to the shallow water.

The colonial flagellated green alga *Volvox* has a *vertical migration* in the African reservoir Cahora Bassa that represents a *diel* or daily shift in the realized niche. The upper euphotic zone has scarcely any nutrients, but has the light needed for photosynthesis. In the deep water there is an accumulation of phosphorus, essential for cell growth, but, because of the high turbidity, there is inadequate light. To resolve this problem, *Volvox* migrates upward in the morning and downward in the evening. Most of the *Volvox* population stays in the euphotic zone during the day, but moves into the phosphate-rich bottom water of the reservoir during the night, when there is no light in the epilimnion anyway. (Sommer and Gliwicz 1986).

Often, the ultimate factor responsible for the production of resting stages or changes in behavior can be found in the interactions between organisms, rather than in the abiotic factors (see Section 1.3). Many examples of adaptations in life histories and behavior that lead to shifts in the realized niche are presented in later chapters. These adaptations often enhance the ability of an animal to gather food and avoid predators.

4.2 Abiotic factors

4.2.1 Temperature

Aquatic organisms generally have to face a narrower range of temperature fluctuations than terrestrial organisms. With the exception of hot springs, which may be near boiling point, most lakes have temperatures somewhere between 0 and about 35 °C, although the range of temperature changes in any single lake is usually smaller. Temperatures also change more slowly in aquatic systems than on land. In addition, aquatic organisms do not have to be able to withstand freezing. Thus the lethal limits of temperature are less important in aquatic than in terrestrial systems.

One can assume that heat tolerance is of primary importance to the distribution of organisms in hot springs: thermophilic bacteria can withstand temperatures up to 90 °C, thermophilic cyanobacteria up to 75 °C, and eucaryotic organisms up to a maximum of 50 °C. Except in geothermically heated waters, there are only a few instances where heat resistance is as an important factor. One such case is the diatom *Asterionella formosa*, which does not occur in tropical lakes because it cannot survive temperatures greater than 25 °C.

The absence of a species at higher temperatures does not mean that the species is necessarily limited by temperature. It is also possible that other factors that are correlated with temperature falsely suggest temperature dependency. For example, a species may not inhabit warm regions of a lake because the warmer water contains less oxygen. As another example, the scarcity of algae when the epilimnion is cooler might be caused by the deeper mixing depth associated with cooler waters, which in turn

gives the algae shorter exposure times to high light levels for photosynthesis, limiting its growth and population size. Indirect effects of temperature may also lead to shifts in the competitive advantages of a species (Section 6.1).

Species that have a wide range of tolerance and a flattened optimum temperature curve are called *eurytherms*, whereas species that live only within a narrow set of temperatures and have a steep optimum curve are called *stenotherms*. It was once common to classify organisms as warm or cold stenotherms, simply on the basis of their distribution in nature. Physiological tests have demonstrated such designations are not always meaningful, but they are probably sometimes valid.

Some aquatic animals cannot live at higher temperatures and thus retreat into the cool depths of the lake in the summer, as long as there is sufficient oxygen there. For example, the rotifer *Filinia hofmanni* cannot survive at temperatures above 10 °C. The freshwater mysid shrimp *Mysis relicta* has a distribution that strongly suggests it is a "relict" from the glacial periods. It is assumed that with the warming climate since the retreat of the last continental glaciers 10–15 000 years ago, *Mysis* has been able to survive in only a few cool mountain lakes, in the hypolimnion of deep lakes and in lakes at northern latitudes. The distribution of *Mysis relicta* in North America suggests that it can exist only at temperatures below 14 °C. This contention is supported by laboratory experiments showing that *Mysis* can tolerate higher temperatures, but for only a few hours at most. Similarly, there are examples of tropical species that can live and reproduce only above a certain minimal temperature.

Temperature is also important within the lethal limits, since it regulates the speed of the chemical, and ultimately, therefore, the biochemical and physiological processes. *van't Hoff's Law* describes this relationship within the temperature range of biological reactions. For every increase in temperature of 10 °C, the rate of the reaction will increase by a factor of 1.5–4. This factor is called the Q_{10}.

Activity rates begin to decrease above the *temperature optimum*. Biologically important activities such as feeding may depend on many biochemical reactions. Most enzymes are stable within only a limited

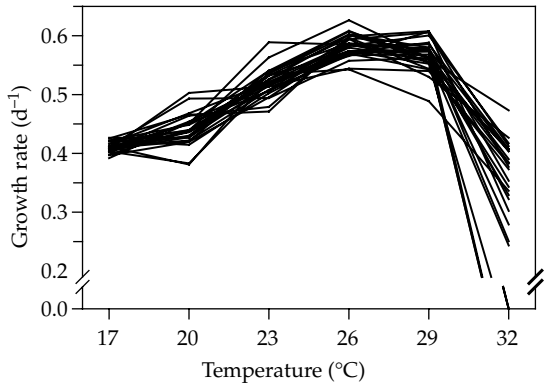


Figure 4.3 Temperature reaction norms for individual clones of *Daphnia magna* isolated from the same pond in northern Germany at different times of the year. The juvenile growth rate is a good proxy for fitness (data from Mitchell *et al*. 2004).

temperature range. If each of the individual reactions has a different Q_{10} value, then the physiological subprocesses can come into disequilibrium at temperatures outside the optimum (Hochachka and Somero 1984). Thus the relationship between temperature and biological activities is best described as a unimodal curve (i.e., with a single maximum, Fig. 4.3). A decrease in activity above the maximum is usually more rapid than the increase in the activity rate at suboptimal temperatures (Huey and Kingsolver 1989). Figure 4.3 demonstrates that individuals (clones) of the waterflea *Daphnia magna* display rather similar reaction norms in the optimum range, but variability between clones increases at extreme temperatures (>29 °C) indicating individual differences in stress resistance. The concept of tolerance is too simplistic to define the success of a species when its biotic interactions are included (see Chapter 6). Very small differences in reproduction and mortality can have a tremendous effect on relative fitness. Fitness parameters, such as population growth rates (see Section 5.2.3), are much more powerful predictive tools than tolerance curves, which deal only with survival of organisms. As a good proxy for fitness in *Daphnia*, the growth rate reaction norm for temperature reflects one dimension (temperature) of the fundamental niche (see Fig. 4.1).

The growth rate is the integrated result of many physiological processes. Reaction norms can also

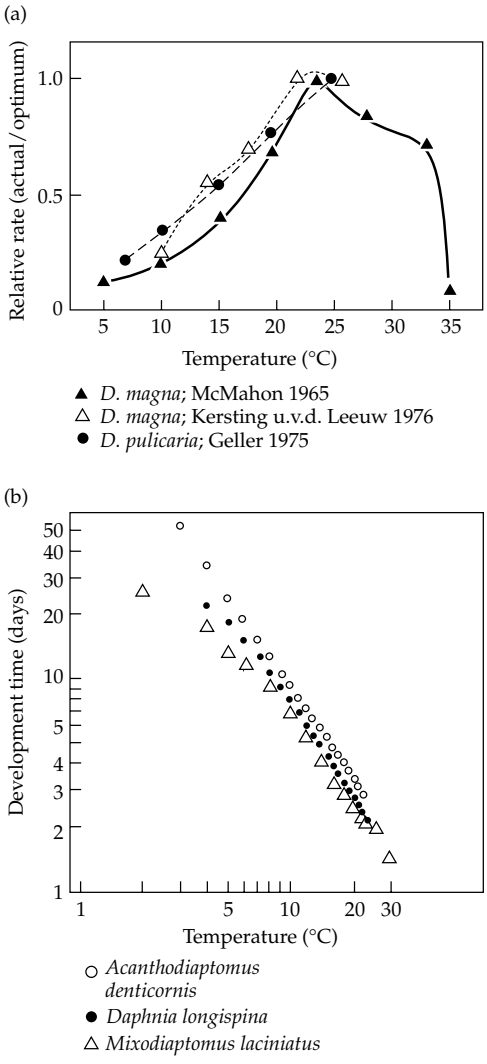


Figure 4.4 Physiological effects of temperature: (a) Maximum (food-saturated) ingestion rates of several *Daphnia* species in relation to temperature (from Lampert 1987b). (b) Egg development times of several species of zooplankton in relation to temperature (from Bottrell 1975).

be constructed for the individual components, e.g., respiration and food uptake (Fig. 4.4a). Note the similarity between the temperature reaction norms of *Daphnia* for feeding and growth. Biological time periods, such as development times of eggs and generation times, become shorter with the speeding up of physiological processes and are minimal at the temperature optimum. Sometimes, however, this optimal temperature is outside the temperature range at which the organisms are actually found in nature; for example, the egg development time for some zooplankton species (Fig. 4.4b). On the other hand, some processes, such as light-limited photosynthesis, are generally assumed to be relatively unaffected by temperature within a broad range, while light-saturated photosynthesis should be temperature-sensitive. The rate limiting step of light-limited photosynthesis should be a temperature-insensitive photochemical reaction, while the rate limiting steps under light-saturation should be temperature-sensitive enzymatic reactions (Geider *et al*. 1997, Geider and McIntyre 2002). Experimental evidence with aquatic organisms is scarce, and partially supportive (Anning *et al*. 2001) and partially contradictory (Li and Morris 1982).

The direct effects of temperature on the ecology of species have often been overemphasized. The zonation of turbellarian flatworms provides a good example of this. There is a characteristic replacement of species along the course of a stream, where *Crenobia alpina* inhabits the upper reaches and species of the genus *Polycelis* live in the middle and lower regions. For a long time this was cited as evidence for the effect of temperature on the distribution of species, because the temperature tends to increase as one moves downstream (see Section 3.4.2). Differences in the maximum temperature tolerance were demonstrated for various species in the laboratory. The lethal temperature is 12 °C for *Crenobia alpina*, 16 °C for *Polycelis felina*, which occurs in lower reaches of streams in Great Britain, and 26 °C for other *Polycelis* species. More recent experiments with diets and transplantation of species have demonstrated that biotic factors such as competition and direct interactions (see Chapter 6) also influence the distributions of these species. Differences in temperature tolerance explains why *C. alpina* does not occur in the lower reaches, but not why *Polycelis* does not invade the upper regions of the stream (Reynoldson 1983).

4.2.2 Oxygen

Uneven distribution of oxygen is common in aquatic environments (see Section 3.3.1). Oxygen deficiencies

and even anoxic conditions are found in the deep waters of eutrophic lakes as well as in organically polluted streams. Groundwater and spring water are often low in oxygen. Supersaturation of oxygen can be caused by high rates of photosynthesis during the day in nutrient-rich waters, resulting on sunny and windless days in oxygen saturation of 200% or more. Supersaturation may create a problem for aquatic animals. For example, gas bubbles may attach to the carapace of zooplankton, causing them to float and attach to the surface film. Occasionally, fish larvae in very productive ponds are harmed by ingesting gas bubbles. Problems due to deficiencies in the supply of oxygen, however, are much more common.

With the exception of a few types of specialized microorganisms (see Section 4.3.10), heterotrophic organisms need at least some exposure to oxygen to provide electron acceptors for respiration. Aquatic organisms have many morphological, biochemical, and behavioral adaptations to deal with the problems of limited or changing concentrations of oxygen (Dejours 1975, Prosser 1986). Some organisms live in water but use atmospheric oxygen. Others can use anoxibiosis to survive periods between exposures to dissolved oxygen.

The cellular exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide requires the gases to diffuse across a boundary surface. The rate of gas exchange therefore depends on the surface area available. Small organisms have a larger surface area in relation to their volume (because surface area increases as the radius squared and volume as the radius cubed), and hence their ability to take up oxygen is better. Thus, protists and small metazoans simply use their entire body surface area for gas exchange.

Such simple solutions are not adequate for most larger metazoans and those with a hardened outer integument; they require specialized exchange surfaces such as gills that have a large surface area. These are usually thin, highly branched, skin protuberances filled with hemolymph. They are delicate and protected in a body cavity, as in fish and crustaceans. Larvae of insects such as mayflies have external gills that are thin membrane extensions of their tracheal system, which in terrestrial insects is entirely internal.

An oxygen gradient with an oxygen-deficient zone develops in the water near the surface area for gas exchange. Diffusion through this boundary layer supplies adequate oxygen for small organisms. For gills to function, there must be constant renewal of the surrounding water. Either the gills are moved in the water, as with mayfly larvae, or water flows past the gills, as with fish and crustaceans. Larvae of caddisflies and chironomid midges produce a flow of water through their cases by rhythmic body movements. It is rather easier for some insect larvae in flowing water, because they can also utilize the stream flow to facilitate gas exchange with the water (see Section 4.2.5).

Some insects come to the surface to breathe atmospheric oxygen. The so-called rat-tailed larvae of the fly *Eristalomyia* have an extreme adaptation to this mode of breathing. They can live in decomposing organic sediments that are low in oxygen by getting oxygen through a breathing tube that extends up to 15 cm to the water surface. The water spider *Argyroneta* stores a supply of air bubbles in its submerged web. Pulmonate aquatic snails *Planorbis* and *Lymnea* breathe either through their entire body surface underwater, or by means of a lung, when they come up to the water surface from time to time.

Some aquatic beetles can carry a bubble of air with them that serves as a "physical gill." As the insect breathes from this air supply via its tracheal system it reduces the oxygen concentration and increases the carbon dioxide. The increased higher partial pressure of carbon dioxide in the bubble causes this highly soluble gas to diffuse into the surrounding water, and, similarly, oxygen diffuses into the bubble in response to lowered partial pressure there. Normally, such physical gills are unprotected and therefore compress as the animal dives under water, causing nitrogen gas to diffuse into the water (Henry's law), thereby gradually reducing the size of the bubble. Thus physical gills function for only a limited period, after which the insect must return to the surface to get a new supply of air. A gas bubble carried under the abdomen has an additional function in the backswimmer *Anisops*. Backswimmers, predatory bugs, cruise under water, which requires buoyancy close to neutral. In *Anisops*, a fast swimmer, diffusion from the water cannot provide sufficient

oxygen to the bubble. Instead, this bug has hemoglobin with a very high oxygen affinity. The hemoglobin extracts oxygen from the bubble until the partial pressure has dropped from 20.6 to 4.3 kPa. When the backswimmer begins a dive, the bubble is 17% larger than necessary for neutral buoyancy. It then respires the oxygen from the bubble until a partial pressure of 4.3 kPa is reached. At this point the bubble has shrunk by 16%, which makes the bug nearly neutrally buoyant. After this the bubble no longer changes its volume as the bug respires oxgen stored in its hemoglobin, i.e., neutral buoyancy is maintained. There is sufficient oxygen storage in the hemoglobin to let *Anisops* breath for another 4 minutes. A complete dive can last up to 8 minutes (Matthews and Seymour 2006). Some insects place a small supply of air between the hydrophobic hairs on their underside (*plastron*). The air cannot pass between the fine hairs, because of the water surface tension, and the bubble does not compress, providing a physical gill that does not need to be frequently replaced.

Some aquatic animals have the hemoglobin with an uusually high affinity for oxygen, enabling the animals to live in habitats with extremely low oxygen concentrations. Some species of *Daphnia* synthesize hemoglobin when they are placed in low oxygen conditions. Animals that come from oxygen-poor conditions, such as the lower regions of the thermocline in eutrophic lakes in the summer (see Fig. 3.10), are easily recognized by their pink color, due to hemoglobin. They can use this zone of the lake as a refuge from predators that are unable to tolerate these low oxygen concentrations.

How a species regulates its metabolic rate in response to changing oxygen concentration can affect its distribution. Animals react to changing oxygen concentrations in two basic ways (Fig. 4.5). *Conformers* have respiratory rates that are dependent on the external oxygen concentration. Thus their metabolic rate decreases with decreasing oxygen concentration (Fig. 4.5; note the example of the cladoceran *Simocephalus vetulus*). *Regulators* are able to maintain a relatively constant respiration rate over a wide range of oxygen concentrations. Below a certain lower limit of oxygen, regulation becomes inadequate. The river limpet *Ancylus fluviatilis* illustrated in Fig. 4.5 compensates for decreasing oxygen levels by increasing its ventilation movements. Figure 4.5 also shows that some species have intermediate types of respiration regulation.

Anoxibiosis allows some organisms to live for periods without any oxygen, although this is energetically inefficient (see Section 4.3.10). End products of anaerobic metabolism, including lactic acid, amino acids, succinate, and ethanol, must be broken down to repay the oxygen "debt" after the animal returns to aerobic conditions. Inhabitants of the deep water of lakes are well known for their anoxibiosis (see Section 7.5.2). Two important examples are the red chironomid midge larvae *Chironomus* and tubificid oligochaete worms *Tubifex*. These bottom-dwelling animals can survive for many weeks without oxygen. Even copepods bury themselves in anoxic sediments when they undergo diapause. Animals become inactive, and metabolic rates are very reduced during anoxibiosis. The phantom midge larva *Chaoborus* is an especially interesting example of switching between aerobic and anaerobic metabolism. They carry out a diel vertical

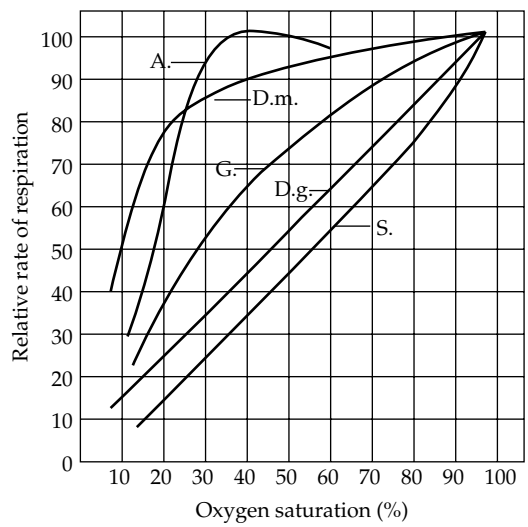


Figure 4.5 Regulation of the respiration rate of some aquatic animals with decreasing oxygen concentration. A, *Ancylus fluviatilis*; Dm, *Daphnia magna*; Dg, *Daphnia galeata mendotae*; G, *Gammarus fossarum*; S, *Simocephalus vetulus* (from Lampert 1984).

migration in which they spend the daytime in the anoxic hypolimnion and bottom sediments and undergo anoxibiosis. At night they migrate into the oxic epilimnion to feed and "pay back" their respiration debt (see Fig. 7.12a–e). This ability to use anaerobic metabolism allows *Chaoborus* to avoid predation by fish (see Section 6.8.4).

4.2.3 pH

It is difficult to distinguish between direct and indirect effects of pH because of its many influences on the water chemistry. Aquatic organisms have ranges of tolerance and optima for pH itself, in addition to the many indirect effects. Enzymes function within specific pH values and thus require the pH of the cell plasma to be held relatively constant. The further the pH of the surrounding water deviates from the optimal range for the cell, the more costly this process becomes.

The internal regulation of pH is not perfect. The cyanobacterium *Coccochloris peniocystis*, for example, is able to maintain maximum photosynthetic activity at external pH values of 7–10, even though the optimal pH range for the enzyme RuBP-carboxylase is in the narrow range 7.5–7.8. When the external pH drops to 5.25, the cell can only adjust its internal pH down to 6.6 and photosynthesis stops completely (Coleman and Coleman 1981).

The problem of *acidification* of weakly buffered waters by atmospheric pollutants (*acid rain*) has become very serious (see Section 8.6.3) and has led to many investigations of the effects of acid stress on aquatic organisms. A small decrease in the pH of the blood of fish, for example, results in a decrease in the ability of hemoglobin to transport oxygen. For the benthic amphipod *Gammarus lacustris* pH values of less than 5.5 cause death within a few days, and survival of the cladoceran *Daphnia magna* decrease markedly below pH 4.5 (Fig. 4.6). Such physiological effects are probably due to the influence of pH on ion transport through the cell membrane.

The most important indirect effects of pH are related to its effects on the calcium–carbonic acid equilibrium (see Section 3.1.6), the dissociation of ammonium ions, and the solubility of metallic ions, especially *aluminum*. Low pH has a strong effect on the solubility and speciation of metallic ions, many of which can be very toxic. The solubility of iron, copper, zinc, nickel, lead, and cadmium increases with decreasing pH, whereas vanadium and mercury tend to become less soluble in acidic conditions. Aluminum is an important aspect of the problem of acidification of natural waters. It is a ubiquitous component of siliceous rocks and one of the most common elements in the earth's crust, so it is often available in unlimited quantities in the watershed regions of lakes and streams. Below is a

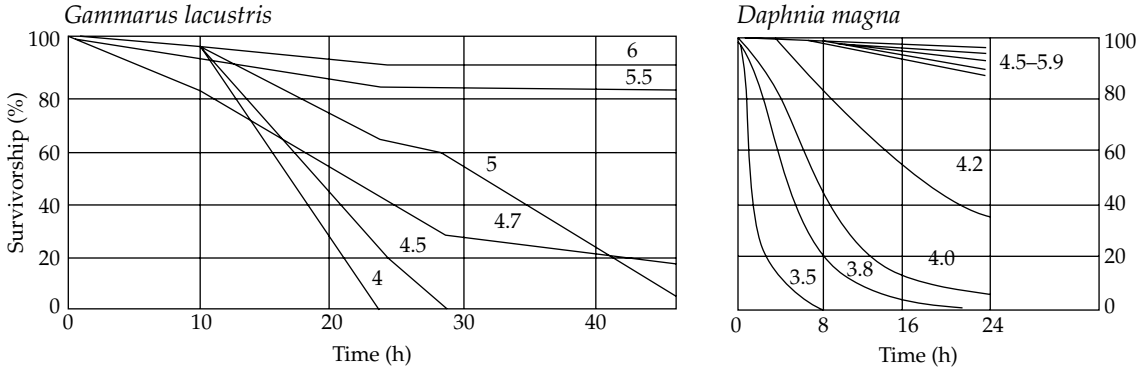


Figure 4.6 Survival rates of *Gammarus lacustris* (from Borgström and Hendrey 1976) and *Daphnia magna* (from Parent and Cheetham 1980) in relation to the pH of the water.

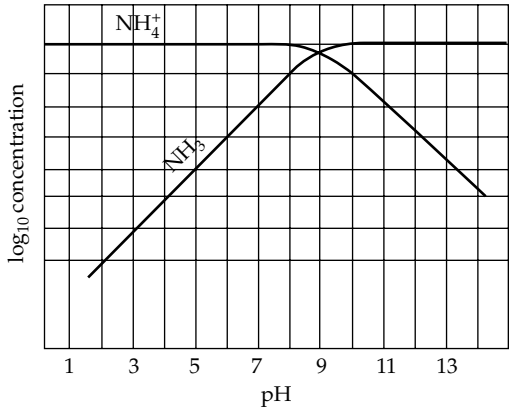


Figure 4.7 The effect of pH on the fractions of ammonium and ammonia at a constant concentration of total ammonium. The scale of the concentrations is relative, since the absolute values depend on the amount of total ammonium available. Each line on the scale represents an order of magnitude (from Morel 1983).

chemical description of the weathering of siliceous rock and the release of aluminum ions:

$$Al_2Si_2O_5(OH)_4 + 6H^+ \rightleftharpoons 2Al^{3+} + 2H_4SiO_4 + H_2O$$

$$Al(OH)_3 + H^+ \rightleftharpoons Al(OH)_2^+ + H_2O$$

$$Al(OH)_2^+ + H^+ \rightleftharpoons Al(OH)^{2+} + H_2O$$

$$Al(OH)^{2+} + H^+ \rightleftharpoons Al^{3+} + H_2O$$

The $A1^{3+}$ ion is toxic, but relatively uncommon. An increase in the number of hydrogen ions by acid rain enhances the weathering of aluminum and shifts the chemical equilibrium toward toxic $A1^{3+}$ ions (Overrein *et al*. 1980). The loss of species in acidified waters is often due to the combined effects of acid stress and aluminum toxicity.

The most important side effect of high pH for aquatic animals is related to changes between the harmless *ammonium* ion (NH_4^+) and undissociated *ammonia* (NH_3), which is toxic. The dissociation of ammonia is controlled by the pH. Below pH 8 there is almost exclusively ammonium, but above pH 10.5 it becomes almost entirely ammonia (Fig. 4.7). Conditions of high total ammonium concentration and high pH, caused by photosynthesis in poorly buffered and nutrient-enriched lakes, can lead to sudden fish die-offs when the critical pH is exceeded and concentrations of ammonia develop.

4.2.4 Other ions

The boundary between salt water and fresh water represents one of the most critical limits for the distribution of aquatic organisms. A minimum number of species occur near the mouths of rivers and in other transition zones at salinities between 0.5 and 0.7%. The osmotic effect of the total concentration of dissolved salts is of primary importance. In the oceans, protists and most invertebrates are in *isotonic* equilibrium with the seawater, meaning the osmotic pressure is the same inside and outside of the cell. There is no need for *osmoregulation*, since the salt concentrations in the ocean changes little. The osmotic value of the protoplasma and the body fluids is adapted to the minor fluctuations in salinity of the surrounding water; that is, they are *poikilosmotic*. The absence of osmoregulation does not mean there is no *ion regulation*. Organisms can store certain ions and eliminate others, so that the total ionic strength remains constant.

Poikilosmotic organisms are rarely able to tolerate large fluctuations in salinity, such as are common in the brackish waters where rivers flow into the ocean. The osmotic value of fresh water is so low that "isotonic life" is not possible. Brackish and freshwater habitats can only be occupied by organisms capable of osmoregulation. A few animals, such as the shrimp *Palaemonetes varians*, are perfect *homoiosmotic* organisms able to maintain a constant osmotic pressure in their body fluids in both *hypotonic* and *hypertonic* surroundings. Hypertonic regulation, in which the osmotic pressure inside the body must be kept higher than pressure in the water, is most common in both brackish and freshwater organisms (Fig. 4.8a, b). The ability to osmoregulate varies greatly from species to species. The freshwater crayfish *Potamobius fluviatilis* keeps an almost perfect salt balance with its surrounding water, whereas the brackish water polychaete *Nereis diversicolor* is essentially poikilosmotic.

Species that have moved from fresh water into habitats with elevated salinities, such as salt lakes, have lower osmotic pressures inside their bodies compared to the surrounding water. One of the most efficient and most common hypotonic regulators in the salt lakes, including the Great Salt Lake in the United States, is the brine shrimp *Artemia*

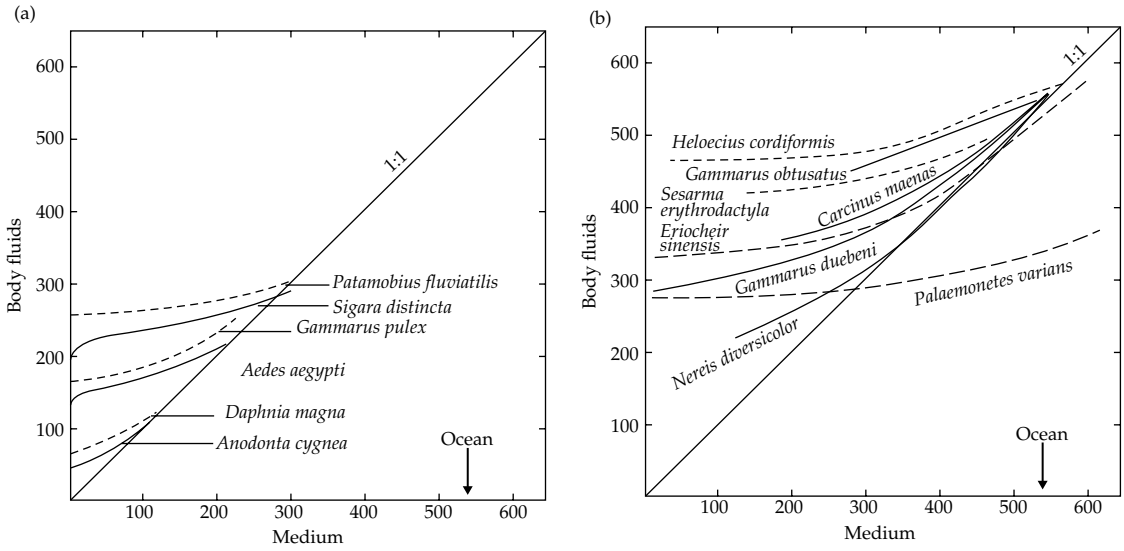


Figure 4.8 Relationship between the concentration of ions (mmol l^{-1}) in the external medium and the body fluids of invertebrates from fresh water (a) and brackish water (b) (from Beadle 1943).

salina. This saltwater shrimp can live in salt pans where the salt concentrations are at the saturation limit for sodium chloride.

Hypertonic regulation works against the invasion of excess water and loss of ions, whereas hypotonic organisms must minimize water loss and excrete ions. Organisms must have active uptake and removal of water and ions, since surfaces that serve for exchange with the environment, such as cell membranes of osmotrophic protists, gills, and intestinal epithelium, cannot be impermeable.

Energy must be expended to regulate the concentration of ions against a concentration gradient. Since this energy would otherwise be used by the organism for other functions such as growth and reproduction, one can assume that a species that occurs outside its optimum range for ion concentrations will have a diminished fitness, even though it can survive there. Figure 4.9 illustrates the use of a fitness parameter, the population growth rate, to define a reaction norms for water hardness, which is mainly a consequence of the calcium concentration.

Calcium is usually the dominant cation and carbonate or bicarbonate the dominant anion in fresh water. Researchers often relate the occurrence of

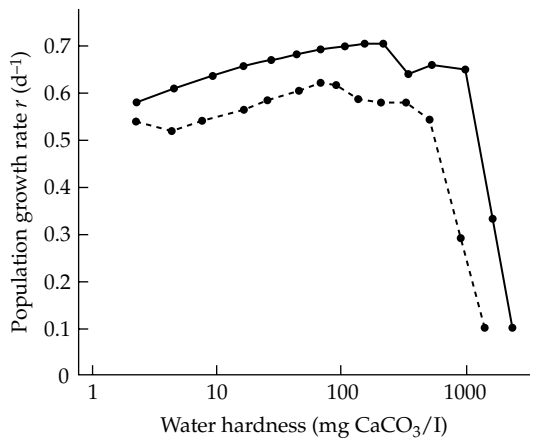


Figure 4.9 The effect of water hardness on the population growth rate of two cladocerans, *Daphnia magna* (solid line) and *Ceriodaphnia dubia* (dashed line). (from Cowgill and Milazzo 1990).

species and higher taxa with the calcium concentration of the water. Although correlations are often found, the causal relationships remain largely unexplained. *Holopedium gibberum*, a cladoceran with a large gelatinous sheath, is a well-known example of a species that only occurs in lakes that are very low in calcium. Other zooplankton are

restricted to lakes with higher calcium concentrations, as their body composition requires higher calcium concentrations. For example, *Daphnia* species contain between 2.5 and 7.7% of calcium in their body mass, while *Holopedium* contain only 0.3% (Jeziorski and Yan 2006). Consequently daphniids disappear first from acidified lakes (see Section 4.2.3).

Calcium can be considered a "micronutrient" for phytoplankton, since they need only micromolar concentrations. The calcium concentrations in most lakes are much higher, in the range of 0.1 to 6 mmol l^{-1}, and thus it is not usually a limiting resource for phytoplankton (see Section 4.3.3). Indirect effects of low calcium concentration are more important, such as the decreased ability of water to take up carbon dioxide and the reduced buffering capacity.

Another important characteristic of calcium is its ability to form complexes with *humic substances*, which then precipitate (*co-precipitation*). Calcium-rich waters therefore tend to be relatively clear, even if they receive considerable dissolved humic substances from outside sources such as bogs, whereas calcium-poor lakes that are rich in humic substances are typically "brown water." Coloration by humic substances alters the light environment by increasing the vertical attenuation (see Section 3.2.1) and shifts the spectral light distribution toward the long wavelengths. Humic lakes have shallower mixing depths than comparable clear water lakes, due to the greater absorption of the heat-producing radiation. Dissolved humic substances also form complexes with other metallic ions, thereby influencing the availability of trace elements and the toxicity of poisonous ions.

One might expect the organisms most directly affected by calcium to be those that have heavily calcified shells or carapaces, such as mollusks and crayfish. There are, in fact, more species of amphipods, isopods, decapods, mussels, and snails in calcium-rich than in calcium-poor lakes. Snails living in water with low calcium contents have thinner shells that are easier to crush than those of the conspecifics in calcium-rich water (Brodersen and Madsen 2003). The lower abundance of snails in calcium-poor waters may be an indirect effect of their thinner shells making them more susceptible to predation by crayfish and fish (Rundle *et al*. 2004). Hence calcium is a constraint to the ability of snails to defend themselves.

After molting, the freshwater crayfish *Cambarus affinis* requires 32 days of exposure to constantly renewed calcium-rich water (1.7 μmol Ca l^{-1}) to harden its new exoskeleton completely. In water with only 0.5 μmol l^{-1} Ca, the exoskeleton stays paper-thin and soft and even the claws do not harden. The calcium supplied in food cannot substitute for the calcium that must be absorbed from the water to harden the exoskeleton. Nevertheless, some animals in soft (calcium-poor) water are heavily calcified. The river pearl mussel *Margaritifera margaritifera* is normally found in soft-water streams, but has a very thick shell. This mussel, which lives for more than a century, grows very slowly, forming its shell over a long period. The difficulty *M. margaritifera* has in maintaining its calcium balance can be seen in the corrosion of the older parts of the shell, which is, in fact, an identifying feature of this mussel.

4.2.5 Water flow

Stream organisms are faced with the danger of being carried downstream, away from the habitat to which they are adapted. They have evolved morphological and behavioral adaptations to avoid this. The flow in a stream is not the same throughout (Lancaster and Hildrew 1993). Barriers on the stream bed such as stones and plants form "dead-water regions" in which there is little water movement. Organisms, such as amphipods (*Gammarus*) and aquatic pill bugs (*Asellus aquaticus*), that lack specialized devices for attachment, utilize these areas. Fish in fast-moving streams also use these dead-water regions to reduce the energy required for swimming.

Stream algae form thin coverings on the rocks within the boundary layers (see Section 3.1.5), or occur as flexible threads that swing in the water with little resistance. Such algae may be either attached to the substrate or fused to the rock by a layer of calcium carbonate deposited by algal photosynthesis. In mountain streams with a flow rate of about 1 m s^{-1}, the boundary layer is millimeters thick. Animals that graze on the upper rock surfaces

are flattened and streamlined (Fig. 4.10) and are rarely more than 4 mm high. They can press themselves against the substrate with varying degrees of pressure, depending on the flow rate (Ambühl 1959). Amphipods are laterally flattened and swim against the current while lying with their side against the substrate.

Recent investigations have demonstrated that the hydrodynamics involved in adaptations to stream flow are more complicated than would appear at first glance. One can measure very precisely the *flow field* around a stream organism with new laser Doppler anemometrics (Fig. 4.11), describing how the flow field varies with the flow conditions as well as the size of the animal (Reynolds number) and its position on the substrate. The dead-water space that occurs behind the animal also determines the resistance of the animal to the flow. The stream limpet *Ancylus fluviatilis* gives the impression that it has an optimally streamlined silhouette (see Fig. 4.10c). Flow measurements indicate, surprisingly, that the limpet has the same water resistance whether it is faces forward or backward into the stream flow (Statzner and Holm 1989). Such studies have also disproved the assumption that certain caddisfly larvae weigh down their cases with pebbles; the increased weight achieved is counteracted by the increase in resistance.

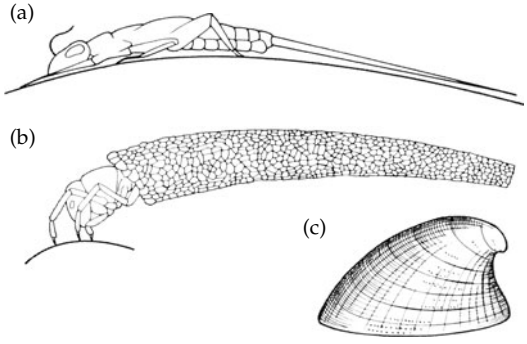


Figure 4.10 Stream animals that are adapted to flowing water: (a) The extremely flattened larvae of the mayfly *Rhithrogena* (c.10 mm). (b) Larvae of the caddisfly *Neothremma*, with a streamlined case (c.10 mm). (c) Stream limpet *Ancylus fluviatilis*.

The shape of a stream organism is apparently a compromise between different factors. Water resistance, friction, and flotation must be minimized to prevent the organism's being swept away. On the other hand, being in an area with high water velocity, and therefore a smaller boundary layer, offers the advantage of better diffusion of oxygen and ions through the gills. Moving water can also bring food to an immobile animal. Some stream animals have thus evolved specialized feeding mechanisms that utilize the flowing water. For example, some have a special filtering apparatus that is held in the flow, and others spin submerged nets (see Fig. 4.25a, b).

As mentioned in Section 3.1.5, water moving over an object produces a lift that pulls the organism away from the substrate. It is therefore not enough merely to lie flattened; an organism must also have a means of attachment, such as hooks and suction cups. The foot of *Ancylus fluviatilis* acts like a suction cup. Also, the larvae of the net-winged midge (Blepharoceridae) has ventral suction discs on each segment, permitting it to live in fast-running areas, and even waterfalls, where there are few competitors or predators.

Many small species and the young stages of larger species live below the stream bottom in the interstices of the sand and gravel. There is no sharp boundary as one goes downward in a stream. There

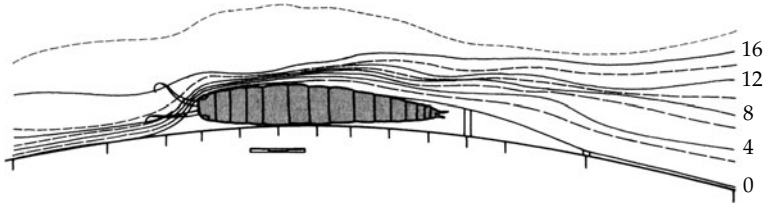


Figure 4.11 Lines of equal flow velocity (cm s^{-1}) around a laterally compressed amphipod *Gammarus* lying against a rock. The flow comes from the left. Note the "dead-water" space behind the animal (from Statzner and Holm 1989).

is a system of openings within the stream sediments in which subterranean water can flow and this is often connected to the groundwater, which, in turn, flows parallel to the stream. Such regions with underground water systems that extend downward from a few centimeters to a meter, depending on the structure of the stream, are called *hyporheic* or *hyporheic interstitial* systems. The water flow in hyporheic habitats depends on the size of the openings, with slowest flow rates in fine sand. Hyporheic species are thus protected from high stream velocity, but may still receive renewed oxygen supplies from the flowing water. Early stages of many species can penetrate so deep into the stream bottom that they are not threatened by moving sediments during floods. When flood waters retreat, these animals return to the surface to inhabit the stream bottom.

Even stream organisms that are adapted to living in fast-flowing water occasionally become dislodged and are carried short distances to a new location downstream. When organisms are found floating downstream, they are referred to as *stream drift*. By placing a net in the water, one can measure the drift rate as the number of organisms caught per unit area or volume over a given time interval. Stream drift has a pronounced diel periodicity, with the largest number of organisms generally caught at sunset or shortly after and the fewest found in the drift nets during the day. The initiation of drift is regulated by both the light intensity and the relative change in light (Haney *et al*. 1983).

The evening increase in drift is related to the movement of animals from underneath the rocks to the rock surface, where they feed. Species that are found on the upper sides of the rocks become more active at night (Cowan and Peckarsky 1994). This heightened nocturnal activity results in a greater probability that animals get swept downstream. There is growing evidence that many species are very capable swimmers and actively release themselves from the substrate (*behavioral drift*) to enter the drift. Such drift movements can serve to distance prey from areas of high predation or help in the location of habitats with better food resources. This effect is compounded by the fact that many invertebrate predators in streams are more active at night, causing their prey to release from the rocks.

Since the flow of a stream is unidirectional and all stream organisms may at some time enter the drift, one might predict that a population in a stream should gradually move downstream and the headwaters should eventually become depleted of organisms. This does not happen, however, indicating that there must be some mechanism that compensates for the losses due to drift. First, many aquatic animals are positively *rheotactic*, meaning they move against the direction of the water flow, tending to move in an upstream direction. Sometimes one can observe groups of amphipods (*Gammaridae*) moving upstream along the stream bank where the flow is not so strong.

Also, many stream organisms are insects that spend only part of their life cycle in the water. Many of these species have *compensatory flights* upstream, allowing them to lay their eggs in the upper reaches of the stream. Their young gradually drift downstream after hatching, occupying the appropriate habitat once again. It is not yet clear how such adult insects orient their flights in an upstream direction. This behavior is not necessary for a species that produces an excess of eggs and whose populations of larvae are regulated by density-dependent factors. In such cases, the flight direction of the adults might well be random, for enough eggs will be laid upstream to maintain the downstream population (Anholt 1995). New techniques have made it possible to estimate the balance between upstream and downstream flight of adult insects. MacNeale *et al*. (2005) labelled large numbers of stoneflies (*Leuctra*) in a particular stretch of a stream with ^{15}N, a stable isotope (see Box 7.1). After the adults had hatched and dispersed, they were captured and analyzed for the presence of ^{15}N. Most labelled stoneflies were caught upstream; they had flown a mean distance of 211 m. The net movement of the population was 126 m upstream.

Drift should not be viewed as simply a disadvantage to stream organisms, for it is an important mechanism for colonization that allows species to find new and better habitats and may also reduce competition for space and food (see Section 5.8).

4.2.6 Density of water

Sinking and floating

Gravity and buoyancy determine whether a particle in water is suspended, sinks, or floats. Since gravity does not change, the specific density of the particle is especially important. Most organisms are more dense than water. Although the fresh mass of all organisms is mainly water, other components are heavier, such as carbohydrates (*c*.1.5 g ml^{-1}), proteins (*c*.1.3 g ml^{-1}), and nucleic acids (*c*.1.7 g ml^{-1}). Minerals are even heavier; for example, polyphosphate granules (*c*.2.5 g ml^{-1}) and diatom frustules (2.6 g ml^{-1}). Lipids (*c*.0.86 g ml^{-1}) and gas vacuoles of cyanobacteria (*c*.0.12 g ml^{-1}) are unusual in that they are less dense than water. Most pelagic organisms that lack heavy mineral components have a density of 1.02–1.05 g ml^{-1}, whereas diatoms, which have much silica in their shells, may have densities up to 1.3 g ml^{-1}.

Most aquatic organisms tend to sink in water. Only a few have specializations that reduce their specific gravity to less than that of water. The flow around sinking particles is laminar when the Reynolds number is small (see Section 3.1.5). Under such conditions the sinking velocity of the particle can be calculated according to Ostwald's modification of Stokes' law for falling spheres, which adjusts sinking rates for the effect of form resistance of nonspherical objects:

$$V_s = \tfrac{2}{9} g r^2 (q' - q) \mu^{-1} \phi^{-1}$$

where V_s is the sinking velocity (m s^{-1}); g, the earth's acceleration (9.8 m s^{-2}); r, the radius of a sphere with equivalent volume; q', the density of the sinking particle (kg m^{-3}); q', the density of the medium (kg m^{-3}); μ, the dynamic viscosity of the medium (kg m^{-1} s^{-1}); and ϕv;, the form resistance (dimensionless; for a sphere it is 1; for most other bodies it is >1; only for vertically oriented elongated bodies it is slightly <1).

This formula is an excellent description of the sinking rate of phytoplankton, since they have such small Reynolds numbers. Even one of the largest diatoms found in fresh water, *Stephanodiscus astraea* ($r = 25\,\mu$m, $v = 0.1\,\mu$m s^{-1}) has a Reynolds number of about 0.001, at which the deviation from Stokes' formula is negligible. Deviations from Stokes' law become important at $Re > 1$ (Reynolds 1984), such as for zooplankton. These relatively large plankton, however, depend more on active swimming to stay in suspension.

Sinking imposes a strong selective pressure on the ability of plankton to float. Photosynthetic organisms must maintain themselves in the euphotic zone, and heterotrophic organisms that feed on these phytoplankton must also stay where the food is located. Stokes' formula indicates which parameters can be modified through evolution to reduce the sinking speed, namely, the particle radius, the density of the suspended particle, and its form resistance. Particle size is the most sensitive parameter, since the radius is squared in the formula. This is one of the reasons that planktonic organisms are normally so small (phytoplankton are usually <1 mm, zooplankton <1 cm).

Small changes in the density also can have a dramatic effect, since the difference between the medium and the organism is small ("*excess density*," q'–q). A diatom with a density of 1.2 g ml^{-1} is only 15% heavier than a green algal cell (1.04 g ml^{-1}), but if they were both the same size and had the same form resistance, the diatom would sink 5 times as fast. Organisms can lessen their average body density by increasing the storage of lighter components such as lipids and gas bubbles and by excreting a *mucilaginous* or *gelatinous sheath*. Mucilage is a gel that consists mainly of water, held together by a network of hydrophilic polysaccharides. Since the sheaths consist of a much higher percentage of water than protoplasm, they reduce the density of the entire organism. Phytoplankton that are especially large often possess mucilaginous sheaths. The cyanobacteria *Microcystis* is an extreme example. It forms colonies consisting of relatively small cells held together in a common mass of mucilage that can be several millimeters long. Note, the sheath can reduce the sinking velocity only within limits, since the density of the mucilage is never less than that of water. Also, sheaths increase the size of the organism, which in turn increases the sinking velocity disproportionately as a squared function. At some point, the accelerating effect of size will equal the braking effect of the sheath.

It seems unlikely that reduction of sinking rates is the ultimate cause for the development of sheaths by large organisms. Zooplankton such as the cladoceran *Holopedium gibberum* and the colonial rotifer *Concochilus unicornis* form gelatinous sheaths. The sinking rate of *Holopedium* is in fact reduced by about 50% by the presence of its sheath. Recent evidence concerning the costs of producing the gelatin (Stenson 1987) and its advantage in predator–prey interactions suggests the clear capsule is a protective mechanism (see Section 6.5.5). This is also probably true for algal colonies enclosed in mucilage.

Deviations from spherical form result in a reduction in the sinking velocity by increasing the *form resistance*. For example, an elongated body with a length 4 times its width has a form resistance of *c*.1.3. The long, needlelike diatom *Synedra acus* has a length-to-width ratio of 15:1 and a form resistance of 4.

Complicated colony shapes of further increase the form resistance. An individual rod-shaped cell of the diatom *Asterionella formosa* has a form resistance of 2.5, whereas the form resistance of a star-shaped colony consisting of 8 *Asterionella* cells is 3.9 (all values are from Reynolds 1984). Overlapping boundary layers may develop from the laminar flows around the cells resulting from the low Reynolds numbers (see Section 3.1.5). A colony can therefore act like an individual particle (parachute effect). With increasing size, colonies face the same problem as with increases in mucilage: The effective diameter of the particle increases, thereby increasing the V_s, so that eventually the size effect exceeds the form effect.

Thus the *selective advantage* of large colonies is not just the increased form resistance. Scientists first suggested that the complicated morphologies of planktonic organisms were adaptations to reduce sinking by increasing form resistance. Spines were commonly referred to as "flotation appendages." More recently it has become clear that many of these examples are adaptations that protect against predation (see Section 6.4.2), and they are interpreted as *defense mechanisms*. This change is evidence of the increasing emphasis ecologists now place on biotic factors.

Most of the sinking rates have been determined for relatively large algae. Sinking rates range from about 1m per day for large diatoms, several tens of centimeters per day for the desmid *Staurastrum cingulum*, and a few centimeters per day for small diatoms. The swimming speed of flagellates is usually at least 10 times the sinking rate of similar-sized algae. Thus flagellated phytoplankton have little loss due to sinking.

Some cyanobacteria can control their density by means of *gas vacuoles*, to the point that they become lighter than water and float. These cyanobacteria can migrate up and down in the water column by metabolically regulating the number of gas vacuoles (Walsby 1994). Photosynthetic production of carbohydrates allows for the regulation of excess weight in the cell. Cyanobacteria store these photosynthetic products as glycogen. Large amounts of glycogen (density $1.5\,g\,ml^{-1}$) are formed under high light conditions in the surface waters, acting as ballast and causing the cell to become heavier. At the same time the pressure inside the cell increases because of the increased volume of glycogen, causing the gas vacuoles to collapse. The cells sink, thereby moving into a depth where light is limiting. Here the glycogen is utilized for cell metabolism and the cells becomes lighter, causing them to move upward again. The light dependency of photosynthesis results in a daily rhythm of vertical migrations during windless periods (Reynolds *et al*. 1987). Some of the largest phytoplankton in fresh water include cyanobacteria species with gas vacuoles (large colonies, e.g., *Microcystis*). Size has the same effect on floating as on sinking. For example, large particles that are buoyant due to gas vacuoles have a higher velocity of ascent than smaller particles. Thus, as buoyant cells aggregate, they form large colonies that move more rapidly toward the surface of a lake.

The best-known example of a zooplankter that can control its buoyancy is the phantom midge *Chaoborus*. *Chaoborus* can finely regulate its density by means of two pairs of contractible swim bladders connected to its tracheal system. Normally these larvae float horizontally, waiting for prey. However, they can undergo pronounced diel vertical migrations (see Fig. 7.12a–e).

The sinking velocity (v_s) calculated from the Stokes equation is valid only for water without currents. In the epilimnion, however, there is much turbulence, which reduces sedimentation. This mixing

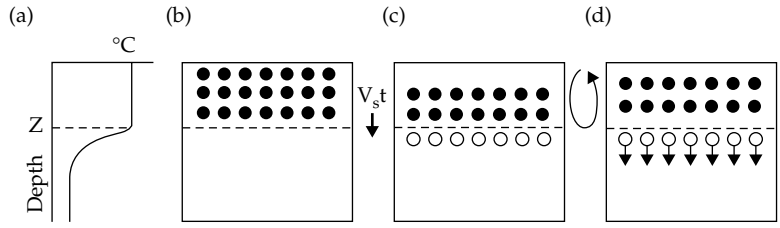


Figure 4.12 The effect of sinking velocity (v_s) and mixing depth (Z) on the losses due to sinking from a mixed epilimnion: (a) Thermal stratification. (b) Distribution of particles at the onset of the quiet-water period t'. (c) Distribution of particles at the end of the quiet-water period t' All particles have traveled the distance $v_s t'$. A third of the particles (open circles) have settled below the lower boundary of mixing. (d) Distribution of the particles following a mixing event at the end of period t'. The particles below the mixing boundary are not resuspended and continue to sink.

allows particles to remain in suspension, despite the fact they are also sinking. The extent of the actual population losses due to sinking depends on the relationship between the depth of mixing (size of the epilimnion, z) and the sinking velocity (v_s) (Fig. 4.12). When there is no turbulence, within the time interval t' all individuals sink the distance v_s/t'. If all individuals N_0 are homogeneously distributed within the epilimnion, at the end of the time interval, $N_0 v_s t'/z$ individuals will sink out of the epilimnion and $N_0(1-v_s t'/z)$ individuals will remain in the epilimnion. If the epilimnion is subjected to turbulent mixing, the individuals remaining will be redistributed within the epilimnion. The epilimnion will not be completely depleted as long as $v_s t'$ is smaller than z.

We can use following two extreme examples to illustrate how sinking losses over extended periods can be estimated:

- During calm periods there is a time interval of about one day (t') between mixing events, the result of convective mixing due to cooling during the night. If there is no reproduction and no losses other than sinking, the number of individuals present at time t (N_t):

$$N_t = N_0(1 - v_s t/z)^t$$

where t is defined as number of days.

- When there is a wind effect and little daily warming there is continuous mixing; that is, the time interval t' tends toward 0 and the number of mixing events per day tends toward infinity. This case can be calculated according to Reynolds (1984):

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = N(v_s/z) \quad \text{or} \quad N_t = N_0 e^{-v_t/z}$$

In nature, actual sinking losses would lie somewhere between these two extremes. In both situations the losses increase with the increasing quotient v_s/z. Diatoms with a sinking velocity of 1 m per day and a mixing depth of 2 m have a loss rate of 50% per day of the original population according to the single mixing model and *c*.39.4% per day with the continuous turbulence model; with a 10 m mixing depth the losses are only 10% and 9.5% per day, respectively.

Swimming

There is no clear division between floating and active swimming; it is largely a matter of scale of observation. Even though many phytoplankton and zooplankton can actively swim, we consider them "plankton." Their swimming movements prevent them from sinking out of the water column, but they cannot avoid being transported horizontally by water currents. Nevertheless, zooplankton can undergo impressive vertical as well as horizontal migrations. Various groups of aquatic organisms have developed a variety of means of propelling themselves through the water, including the ciliary movements of flagellates and ciliates, paddling appendages of insects and crustaceans, and highly specialized swimming movements of fish that cannot be explained by normal hydrodynamic models. The ability to move, relative to the water, depends largely on the Reynolds number (see Section 3.1.5), which in turn depends on the size and shape of the organism. Different laws apply to very small organisms that move in an essentially laminar environment than to large organisms whose environment is turbulent. This has been summarized nicely by Vogel (1994).

Active swimming always costs *energy*, which is then not available for other uses, such as reproduction (Koch and Wieser 1983). The amount of energy used depends on the environmental conditions and the *swimming activity*. Many freshwater fish, such as the perch *Perca fluviatilis*, swim at an average speed of 0.5–0.8 $m\,s^{-1}$. An Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) can swim as fast as 6 $m\,s^{-1}$ during its spawning migration. Such swimming activity costs an enormous amount of energy. A fish swimming slowly (0.8–1.0 body lengths s^{-1}) doubles its metabolic rate (respiration) compared to its resting condition. This increases to an eightfold increase in respiration for a Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) swimming at 4.1 body lengths s^{-1}. However, this rate can only be sustained for about 1 h (Brett 1965).

There are few comparable measurements for small organisms, such as zooplankton, that essentially swim only to compensate for sinking. Estimates based on hydrodynamics and an elegant experiment by Alcaraz and Strickler (1988) show, however, that for copepods the energetic costs of swimming are negligible (less than 1% of the total energy used for metabolism). This also seems to hold for small, motile planktonic protists (flagellates) that swim with flagella (Crawford 1992). Even the long-distance swimming of 1–2 mm-sized *Daphnia* during diel vertical migration (see Section 6.8.4) has negligible direct effect on their growth performance, i.e., swimming is not costly, although the migration has considerable indirect costs (Dawidowicz and Loose 1992).

4.2.7 Surface tension

The high surface tension of water (see Section 3.1.4) makes the *surface film* an important habitat for a specialized group of organisms called *neuston*. The surface film provides a mechanical attachment point for neustonic organisms, as well as a surface that collects organic substances. Organic liquids have a much lower surface tension than water, causing them to accumulate in the gas–water boundary layer. Similarly, this boundary layer acts as a trap for particles carried in the atmosphere and organic matter transported in aerosols. Substances caught in the surface film are exposed to higher light levels, especially higher UV radiation, than substances dissolved in the epilimnion. This results in chemical reactions that make the water surface a habitat that differs chemically from the epilimnion. Of special importance is the higher availability of small organic molecules that can be utilized by bacteria, which leads to higher densities of bacteria. This, in turn, creates better conditions for organisms that feed on bacteria.

The surface film acts as a mechanical barrier preventing the penetration of particles with hydrophobic surfaces. Small particles with high densities may stay on top of the water surface (*epineuston*). Similarly, this allows *hyponeuston* to attach to the underside of the surface film. To live on the surface film an organism must either have an entire body that is hydrophobic, or at least certain hydrophobic structures with which it attaches.

Neustonic bacteria, algae, and protozoans usually have an entirely hydrophobic body. However, there are certain neustonic algae that hang from "swimming umbrellas" (*Nautococcus mammilatus*) or sit on mucilaginous stems that are hydrophobic (*Chromulina rosanoffii*). Just as in higher plants, these single-celled epineuston have an internal movement of water by transpiration. Rhizopodia located inside the mucilaginous stem penetrate into the surface film. These organelles collect water, which is then excreted by the cell body that is extended into the air.

Certain spiders and insects are the largest organisms that are supported by the surface film, despite their high density. The best-known is the water strider *Gerris*, the underside and leg hairs of which are hydrophobic.

4.3 Resources

4.3.1 What are resources?

All organisms must feed; that is, they must remove energy and matter from their environment in order to maintain their basal metabolism, form new body substance, and reproduce. In addition, many organisms require other consumable environmental factors (e.g., space for sessile organisms, nesting places). All these consumable environmental factors are referred to as "resources." A shortage of one or more of these resources leads to a reduction in the growth rate or even to death from starvation. Resources are consumed; this distinguishes them from other factors that limit physiological rates and growth (temperature,

water current, toxic substances in the environment, etc.). *Consumption of resources* means a reduction in their abundance in the environment and thus involves interactions between organisms and their environment. This is an important feature, as organisms compete with each other by consuming resources. Light and heat (temperature) are a good example to explain the principle. Both originate from the sun, and they form vertical gradients in the water column (see Fig. 3.5). Temperature affects metabolic processes of the organisms in the water, but the organisms themselves do not reduce the heat content of the water (they may rather increase the temperature by metabolic activities and absorbing radiation). If organisms gather in a warm spot, they do not compete for the heat but for space in the heat. On the contrary, light is used as an energy source and thereby eliminated. Phototrophic organisms in higher water layers absorb light and shade those in lower layers until the light is absorbed completely in deep layers. Hence light is a resource, but heat is not.

Organisms can be divided into fundamental trophic types according to the type of energy source, their electron donors, and their source of carbon. Light (*phototrophic* organisms) or the energy from exergonic chemical reactions (*chemotrophic* organisms) can serve as sources of energy; inorganic matter (*lithotrophic* organisms) or organic matter (*organotrophic* organisms) can be used as electron donors; carbon dioxide (*autotrophic* organisms) or organic matter (*heterotrophic* organisms) can serve as carbon sources. Within the heterotrophic organisms there are those that consume dissolved carbon compounds (bacteria, fungi), as well as those that consume particulate food (animals). *Mixotrophs*, which are capable of forming body substance from autotrophy or heterotrophy, are transition forms between auto- and heterotrophs. *Auxotrophic* organisms obtain most of their carbon requirements from carbon dioxide but cannot synthesize a few organic substances (vitamins), which must thus be taken up by heterotrophy (Table 4.1).

Table 4.1 Nutritional types of organisms and the primary resources used for obtaining energy and synthesizing biomass

	Energy source	Carbon source	Electron donor	Electron acceptor
Photoautrophs				
Plants, cyanobacteria	Light	CO_2	H_2O	CO_2
Pigmented sulfur bacteria	Light	CO_2	H_2S	CO_2
Sulfur-free purple bacteria	Light	CO_2	H_2O	CO_2
Chemolithoautotrophs				
Colorless sulfur bacteria	S*	CO_2	S*	O_2
	S*	CO_2	S*	NO_3
Nitrifying bacteria	NH_4	CO_2	NH_4	O_2
	NO_2	CO_2	NO_2	O_2
Iron-oxidizing bacteria	Fe^{2+}	CO_2	Fe^{2+}	O_2
Methane bacteria	H_2	CO_2	H_2	O_2
	H_2	CO_2	H_2	NO_3
Chemolithoheterotrophs				
Desulfovibrio	H_2	DOC	H_2	SO_4
Chemoorganoheterotrophs				
Animals	POC	POC	POC	O_2
Aerobic bacteria, fungi	DOC	DOC	DOC	O_2
Denitrifying bacteria	DOC	DOC	DOC	NO_3
Desulfurizing bacteria		DOC	DOC	SO_4

DOC, dissolved organic carbon; POC, particulate organic carbon.
* H_2S, S, or S_2O_3.

4.3.2 Consumption of resources ("functional response")

The rate at which organisms consume their resources depends on the availability of the resources as well as the abilities of the organisms themselves. Even if a resource is very abundant, there are limits to the rate at which an organism can consume it. Animals require time to locate, hunt, handle, and devour their prey. An increase in prey density may reduce the time needed to locate and hunt the prey, but will not reduce the time required to handle and devour each prey item. Microorganisms have a limited number of transport systems in their cell wall, limiting the amount of dissolved resources that can be transported to the inside of the cell per unit time. When all transport systems are functioning at maximum speed, so that further increase in resource concentration does not result in an increase in the consumption rate per individual, it is referred to as *saturation*. At this point, the resource will be consumed at a species-specific *maximum rate of consumption*, v_{max}, which may vary depending on the external boundary conditions (e.g., temperature). At resource concentrations below the saturation limit consumption cannot proceed at maximum speed, either because the animal does not encounter the prey frequently enough or because the enzymatic transport of dissolved substances cannot go faster because of the shortage of substance to be transported. The consumption rate thus becomes limited by the availability of the resource; that is, it depends on the concentration or availability of the resource as well as on the ability of the consumer to acquire a resource in short supply.

The dependency of the specific rate of consumption (v, consumption rate per individual or per unit biomass) on the resource availability (S) is described by a *saturation curve*. These curves typically have a linear or nearly linear increase at low concentrations. This increase ("initial slope") defines the ability to use a limited resource ("affinity"). The major difference between the various models for resource

Box 4.1 Models of the effects of resource on the consumption rate (functional response)

Michaelis–Menten model

$$v = v_{max} S/(S + k_t)$$

where v is the consumption rate (mass/time), S the concentration or availability of a resource (mass/volume), v_{max} the saturation value for the consumption rate, and k_t the half-saturation constant, i.e., the resource concentration at which $v = \frac{1}{2} v_{max}$. If the resource uptake requires a minimum concentration, a threshold value (k_0) must be introduced. In this case, S–k_0 replaces S. One-half the maximum consumption rate is then reached at $S = k_0 + k_t$.

When resources are scarce, the important initial rise in the Michaelis–Menten curve is v_{max}/k_t.

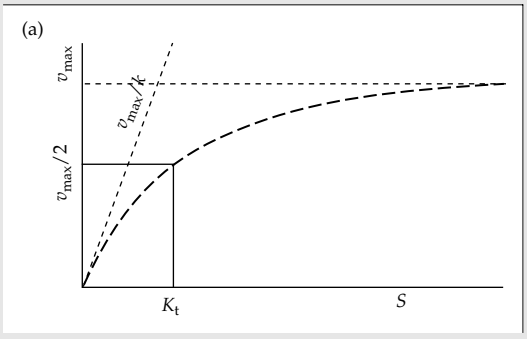
Blackman model

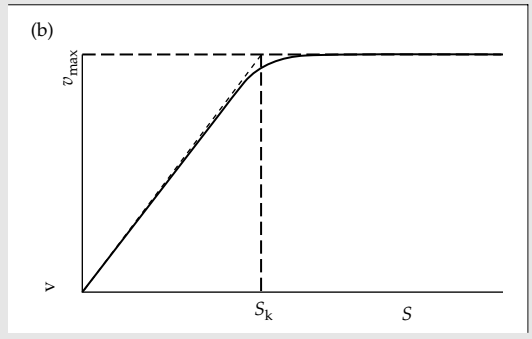
$$v = S\alpha, \quad \text{for } S < S_k$$

$$v = v_{max}, \quad \text{for } S > S_k$$

$$\alpha = v_{max}/S_k$$

where S_k is the saturation concentration, and a is the initial increase. Threshold values can also be introduced into the Blackman model.





limited processes is whether the upper limit (v_{max}) is approached asymptotically or whether it is reached by a sharp change from limitation to saturation. The most common asymptotic model is the right-angle hyperbole, which appears under different names in the literature. Its original version is the *Michaelis–Menten* equation, which was developed to describe the kinetics of enzyme use of a substrate. The most widely used model for an abrupt transition (rectilinear model) is the *Blackman* model, which assumes a linear relationship between consumption rate and resource concentration in the region of limitation (Box 4.1).

Michaelis–Menten and Blackman kinetics were developed for organisms with homogeneously distributed resources that occur as small units (dissolved molecules or small particles, relative to the size of the consumer). For this situation, the time needed to ingest an individual resource unit is negligible. This is not true for predatory animals, since the prey tend to be large relative to the size of the predator. In this case, the consumption rate depends on the length of time it takes the predator to consume a prey item, as well as on how many prey it can capture per unit time. While the predator is devouring its prey it cannot look for other prey. Thus, in addition to search time, *handling time* is also important.

Holling (1959) described three types of *functional response* for predators (Fig. 4.13). His type I curve applies to cases where the handling time is very short. It is similar to the Blackman model. There are theoretical reasons to assume that the Type I curve can only be applied to filter-feeders (Jeschke *et al*. 2004). Type II describes a predator with a relatively long handling time. It corresponds to the Michaelis–Menten equation, where the half-saturation constant (k_t) is replaced by the maximum rate of consumption v_{max} and a specific consumption rate (F). The consumption rate (v) as a function of the prey concentration (S) is

$$v(S) = v_{max}S/(v_{max}/F + S)$$

F indicates, for example, the space a predator can search per unit time. Holling's type II model can be used for many predator–prey relationships, such as for the rotifer *Asplanchna*, which feeds on other rotifers; the phantom midge larva *Chaoborus*, which eats small zooplankton; and the backswimmer *Notonecta*, which selectively feeds on *Daphnia*. Holling's type III model has a sigmoid shape. The number of prey eaten per unit time first increases with the prey density, then reaches a plateau. This type of response might be expected when the predator learns over time how better to catch the prey, becomes increasingly motivated by the increasing density of a particular prey species and begins to feed on it selectively, or if at very low prey densities the return for the predator is lower than the energy expended for foraging. Although type III functional responses have been documented in fish (Townsend and Risebrow 1982) and caddisfly larvae (Ivanov 2004), cases reported for fresh water are rare. Fish often eat relatively large, scarce items, such as benthic animals, and therefore have long search

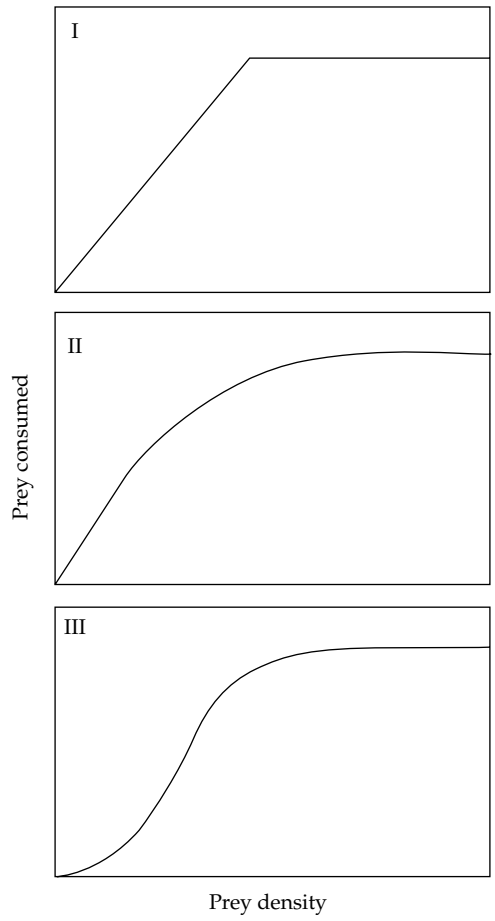


Figure 4.13 Models illustrating the relationship between the feeding rate of a predator and the density of its prey. Functional response curves I–III from Holling (1959).

times. Their handling time is, however, relatively fast, since they simply swallow their prey. The classic saturation model developed for fish comes from Ivlev (1961):

$$v = v_{max}(1 - e^{-\delta}).$$

The constant δ describes the steepness of the increase in the curve.

There are also many other ways to describe limitation-saturation models mathematically (see Jassby and Platt 1976). Actual data usually have such large variability that it is difficult to select the best model (Mullin *et al*. 1975). Nevertheless, some fairly well-accepted conventions have developed: The dependency of nutrient uptake on its concentration in water for bacteria and algae is usually described by the Michaelis–Menten equation; the Blackman model is most often used to describe the relationship between feeding rate of filter-feeding zooplankton and the food concentration (Fig. 4.14a–c). The importance of the parameters of these equations in the comparative physiology of potentially competing organisms is a strong case for following these conventions, even if a different model may provide a somewhat better description of the data.

To unify the models, the consumption rate was here defined as v (or v_{max}). Other symbols have been used in the literature, for example, I (I_{max}) for ingestion rate and P (P_{max}) for predation rate.

4.3.3 Regulation of abundance and growth by resources (numerical response)

In the previous section we used the concept of *limitation* by a resource. The concept can have several meanings. Originally, J.v. Liebig, the first scientist to deal with the problem of chemical plant nutrition, meant the limitation of harvest from a field caused by a shortage of indispensable (*essential*) nutrient elements; the limited size is thus a static parameter, namely, the biomass or number of individuals per unit surface or space. It is instructive to note that essential elements can set an upper limit for the biomass or population density that can be achieved in a habitat, since the elemental composition of biomass can vary only within certain limits and no

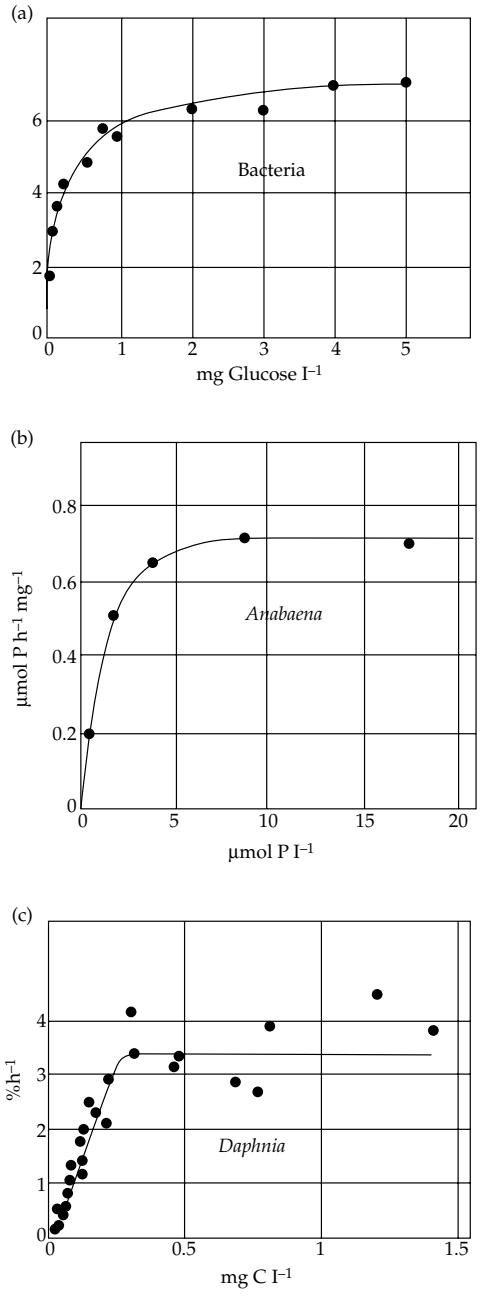


Figure 4.14 Specific rate of consumption as a function of the concentration of resources, for bacteria, phyto-, and zooplankton: (a) Uptake rate of radioactively labeled glucose by a natural assemblage of bacteria in Lake Erken (Sweden) (from Wright and Hobbie 1966). (b) Specific phosphorus uptake rate (in µmol P h^{-1} mg^{-1} dry weight) by the cyanobacterium *Anabaena variabilis* (from Healey 1973). (c) Specific feeding rate of *Daphnia* on *Scenedesmus* (expressed as a percentage of its own biomass per hour; from Lampert and Muck 1985).

more than 100% of the amount of an element that is available in a habitat can be utilized. The elements in the biomass are in a stoichiometric relationship to one another that varies little. Thus the element that is least available relative to this stoichiometry (*minimum factor*) must determine the size of the harvest (*Liebig's "law of the minimum"*). When the availability of the minimum factor is increased, the biomass harvest will increase, up to the point where another resource becomes the minimum factor.

The law of the minimum assumes that resources are not substitutable or *interchangeable*. This is undoubtedly true for essential elements, which cannot replace one another in their biochemical functions (e.g., phosphorus in nucleic acids cannot be replaced by other elements). It is also true for chemical compounds that a particular organism cannot synthesize. Resources are substitutable if they contain the same essential elements or chemical compounds, even if in different proportions. We will explain this later.

The process of growth lies between the act of consumption and the development of biomass. If both the rate of consumption and the maximum biomass are resource limited, it is likely that the intermediate process of growth is also resource limited. Resources that are consumed may be first deposited in a *reserve pool*, which can be used later for growth processes. This can lead to a temporal decoupling between growth and the consumption of the resource, so that when there is temporal variability in the resource concentrations, the growth rate may reflect the earlier conditions.

It is necessary to distinguish between individual growth and population growth (reproduction) when analyzing the *kinetics* of resource-limited growth. Microorganisms generally divide after they have doubled their body size. Thus one can study their growth limitation using the increase in the number of individuals (*population growth*).

The reproductive activity of an individual per unit time is referred to as the *specific growth rate*. If each individual doubles within a time unit, after x doublings there will be 2^x individuals. The number of individuals increases geometrically over time; the absolute increase in individuals per unit time gets larger and larger, although the reproductive activity of each individual remains constant. In a large population individuals do not all divide at the same time (synchronously), but rather divisions are distributed randomly through time. In such populations there is a continuous exponential increase in the number of individuals, rather than a stepwise geometric change:

$$N_2 = N_1 e^{\mu(t_2 - t_1)}$$

where N_1, N_2 are the number of individuals at times 1 and 2, t_1 is the beginning of the time interval, t_2 is the end of the time interval, and μ is the specific growth rate in d^{-1} or h^{-1}. A specific growth rate of 0 means there is no reproduction; a specific growth rate of $\ln 2$ (c.0.69) d^{-1} means one doubling per day. Assuming there are no losses of organisms, μ can be estimated from the change in the number of individuals:

$$\mu = \frac{dN}{dt}\frac{1}{N} = \frac{\ln N_2 - \ln N_1}{t_2 - t_1}$$

Often biomass is used instead of the number of individuals in the calculation.

The kinetics of resource-limited growth can be described by saturation curves similar to those used for the kinetics of resource consumption. If resource consumption and growth are not decoupled, the growth rate can be directly related to the concentration of available ("free") resources in the environment. The *Monod equation*, which is mathematically identical to the Michaelis–Menten equation, is usually applied to such growth (Box 4.2). If there is a temporal decoupling of consumption and growth (e.g., phosphorus-limited growth of algae), either the growth rate must be related to the amount of resource already in the organism (*cell quota*) or experimental provisions for a constant supply of resources must be made (chemostat cultures, Box 4.2).

Two types of culture procedure, representing idealized models for two extreme situations in natural systems (Box 4.2), are used to investigate the kinetics of resource-limited growth of organisms that can be cultured in suspension (bacteria, planktonic algae, some zooplankton). Static culture (*batch culture*) corresponds to the explosive occupation of a free habitat (for planktonic algae, usually at the beginning of the growth period). Continuous culture (*chemostat*) is comparable to a *steady-state equilibrium*

Box 4.2 Static and continuous cultures

Static culture (batch culture)

A static culture consists of a small number of organisms (inoculum) added to a known amount of medium, with no further additions of medium. Following a brief adaptation period (lag phase), the number of organisms (X) increases exponentially, and they continue to reproduce at a maximum rate until a resource becomes limiting. The concentration of available resources declines as the increasing population of organisms consumes the resources, virtually eliminating the minimum factor. Uptake of the limiting resource no longer allows for further reproduction of the organisms. If there is continued reproduction, the amount of the resource contained in each organism decreases (called *cell quota* in microorganisms). The decline in the cell quota leads to a drop in the growth rate until the cell quota reaches its minimum value, at which there can be no further growth (*stationary phase*). The growth rate can be expressed as a function of the cell quota (Droop 1983):

$$\mu = \mu_{max}(1 - q_0/q)$$

where μ is the growth rate (d^{-1}); μ_{max}, the maximum (resource-saturated) growth rate (d^{-1}); q, the cell quota (e.g., pg cell^{-1} or μg mg^{-1} biomass); and q_0, the minimum cell quota for growth.

The denser the organisms become, the more they must share the available resources. The decrease in the growth rate can therefore be viewed as a function of the population density. The denser the population, the lower is the growth rate (*density-dependent control of growth*). This relationship is described by the *logistic growth function* (see Section 5.2.4). The negative feedback between the growth rate and the population density is dependent on how close the population is to its maximum density (capacity, K), rather than on the absolute population density:

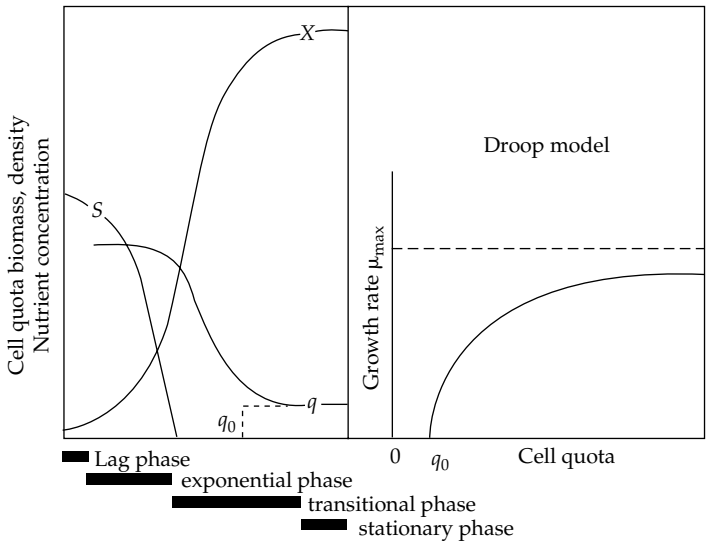
$$\mu = \mu_{max}(K - N/K)$$

Therefore, $\mu = 0$, if $N = K$, and $\mu = \mu_{max}$, if $N << K$.

The logistic growth curve does not indicate the mechanism that limits the growth rate and requires no knowledge of the limiting factors. Factors other than resources, such as the excretion of harmful metabolites, can also create a density-dependent decrease in the growth rate. Once a limiting nutrient has been identified as a critical factor, the logistic and Droop equations can be combined:

$$K = S_{tot}/q_0$$

where S_{tot} is the total concentration of die-limiting nutrient (dissolved and incorporated in the organisms).



continues

Box 4.2 ***continued***

Continuous culture (chemostat)

A chemostat is a container in which new nutrient medium is added through an inflow at a constant flow rate (F; volume d^{-1}) and, simultaneously, the same amount of suspension including the organisms is removed through an outflow. The dilution rate (D; flow rate/culture volume; d^{-1}) equals the *elimination rate* ("mortality") of the organisms. The biomass of the organisms will increase as long as the available resources allow for a growth rate that is higher than D. As organisms increase they use up the limiting resource, causing a reduction in the growth rate. If the growth rate declines to the dilution rate, the system is in *steady state*. This is a self-regulating state. If the density of organisms exceeds the equilibrium value, the concentration of resources will decrease below the equilibrium value. This causes the growth rate to become smaller than the dilution rate and the population density declines. The self-regulating mechanism responds in the opposite direction if the density of the organisms is below the equilibrium.

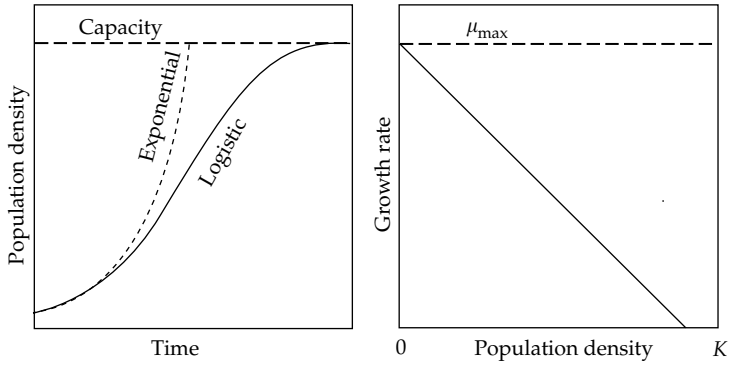
In a steady state the resource limitation of growth can be described with the Monod (1950) equation, which is similar to the Michaelis–Menten equation:

$$\mu = \mu_{max} S/(S + k_s)$$

where μ_{max} is the maximum (resource-saturated) growth rate (d^{-1}), k_s is the half saturation constant (mass/volume), and S is the concentration of limiting nutrients (mass/volume) remaining in solution. If there is a threshold value (k_0) for the resource concentration, S must be replaced by (S–k_0). Equilibrium conditions are $\mu = D$. The equilibrium biomass or density of organisms (X) can be estimated from the amount of limiting resource consumed and the growth rate at the corresponding cell quota:

$$X = (S_0 - S)/q$$

where S_0 is the resource concentration in the medium before consumption by organisms (inflow).



in which production and elimination of organisms, as well as consumption and supply of resources, are in balance with one another (approximates plankton communities during the summer).

4.3.4 Nonsubstitutable and substitutable resources

In the previous models we must assume that the rate of consumption, growth rate, and the maximum attainable biomass are limited by a single resource. Most organisms actually consume more than one kind of resource. This raises the question whether the extent of the limitation by one resource is affected by the availability of other resources. The critical question is whether resources can be substituted for one another. In this regard there are important differences between animals and autotrophic organisms. The nutrition of an animal has a "package character"; that is, a piece of food (a prey, a plant as food) serves both as an energy source and as a source of carbohydrates, proteins,

lipids, vitamins, essential elements, etc. Such "packages" can generally be substituted by others, even if the substitute package has a less favorable composition or is more difficult to capture. A cat that does not catch mice can also be fed canned cat food. It is possible, however, that even animals are not limited by only the total amount of food, but rather by individual components (e.g., carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, in extreme cases even individual amino acids).

Autotrophic organisms are in a different situation. Their resources (light, essential elements) occur separately and cannot be consumed as combined packages. Energy and the various essential elements are not interchangeable. The biochemical functions of an element cannot be replaced by another element (see Section 4.3.3). Such resources are referred to as *essential resources*. For autotrophic organisms, the only substitutable resources are those compounds that contain the same element, such as carbon dioxide and bicarbonate as carbon sources or nitrate and ammonium as nitrogen sources.

Bacteria have an intermediate position between plants and animals in this regard: On the one hand, numerous organic compounds can be substituted as energy and carbon sources, and some even have a package character, since they contain several nutrient elements (e.g., amino acids as sources for carbon and nitrogen). On the other hand, many bacteria are also able to satisfy their demand for nitrogen and phosphorus by uptake of inorganic ions, i.e., they can be nitrogen or phosphorus autotrophs while being carbon heterotrophs. Essential organic substances that the consumer itself cannot synthesize (e.g., certain vitamins) cannot be substituted.

In addition to the two basic types of essential and completely substitutable resources, there are a number of other types of hypothetically possible interactions between resources, for which there is little real evidence (Tilman 1982). The theory of resource limitation is an important prerequisite for understanding the mechanistic models of competition (see Section 6.1.3).

4.3.5 Light

The use of light as an energy source in *photosynthesis* is by far the most important of processes by which inorganic matter is converted to organic matter (*primary production*). We will not go into the details of the biochemistry of photosynthesis, as it is covered well in all textbooks on plant physiology. Photosynthesis can be presented in a simplified form according to the formula:

$$6CO_2 + 6H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 - 2802\ \text{kJ}$$

Sulfur bacteria utilize hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) for photosynthesis in place of water as an electron and hydrogen donor; accordingly, sulfur is formed in place of oxygen. This process is strictly anaerobic.

One can see from the formula that photosynthesis can be measured as either the release of oxygen or the use of carbon dioxide. Oxygen changes in water can be measured with relative ease, but it is difficult to measure the small decrease in carbon dioxide, as normally there is a large supply of bound carbon dioxide (carbonate–bicarbonate system) present in lake water. There are more sensitive methods for measuring the incorporation of carbon dioxide into organic matter (carbon fixation) (^{14}C, Box 4.3).

Box 4.3 Measurement of photosynthetic rate

Oxygen method

In this method, samples (suspensions of planktonic algae, leaves of macrophytes, etc.) are incubated in light and dark bottles and the oxygen concentration is measured at the beginning and the end of the incubation period. It is assumed that the increase in dissolved oxygen in the light bottle corresponds to net photosynthesis (photosynthesis minus respiration) and that only respiration occurs in the dark bottle. The gross rate of photosynthesis is calculated as the difference in the final concentrations in the light and dark bottles.

Two assumptions are sometimes not valid. The first is that the respiration rate of heterotrophic organisms inadvertently enclosed in the bottle (e.g., zooplankton) is negligible.

continues

Box 4.3 ***continued***

The second is that respiration rates in the light and dark bottles are identical. The latter assumption is not valid for high light intensities where light-dependent photorespiration causes higher respiration rates than in the dark bottle. The greatest limitation of the oxygen method is its low sensitivity, which is dependent on the resolution of the usual methods of measuring dissolved oxygen (c.0.1 mg $O_2\,l^{-1}$). The method is therefore only useful for nutrient-rich lakes with high primary production.

^{14}C method

This method involves the addition of a small amount of radioactive $^{14}CO_2$ to the natural CO_2 available to organisms. The incorporation of the radioactivity in the biomass (operationally defined as the filterable particulate matter) is then measured. Trace quantities of ^{14}C (usually as bicarbonate) are added to light and dark bottles that are then incubated for 2–4 h *in situ*. After the incubation, the radioactivity of particles retained on a membrane filter is measured. The organisms photosynthesize the radioactive ^{14}C slightly more slowly than the ^{12}C (correction factor 1.05).

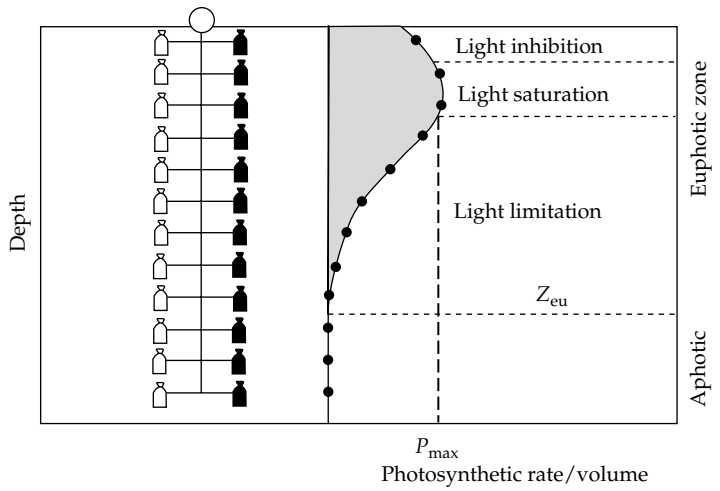
$$\frac{^{14}\text{C taken up}}{^{14}\text{C available}} \times 1.05 = \frac{^{12}\text{C taken up}}{^{12}\text{C available}}$$

Dark bottles used here do not measure respiration, but rather provide a background value for physical adsorption and dark fixation of ^{14}C. The amount of ^{12}C available must be determined chemically (usually from alkalinity and pH). Some of the photosynthetically formed organic matter that is also excreted (e.g., as glycolate) during the incubation can be determined by acidifying the water and bubbling off the carbon dioxide. The radioactivity remaining in solution is a measure of the newly formed dissolved organic matter.

There is much debate over whether the ^{14}C method measures gross or net photosynthesis. This largely depends on how much of the newly formed photosynthate was respired during the incubation. Certainly at first the incorporation of ^{14}C is a measure of gross photosynthesis, since the unlabeled algae can only respire ^{12}C. With time, however, as the ^{14}C content of the algae increases, an increasing percentage of the respired carbon dioxide is ^{14}C. The incorporation of ^{14}C measures the net rate of photosynthesis only after there is isotopic equilibrium (uniform labeling of all algal components). At the normal incubation times used, some undefined value between gross and net photosynthesis is measured. Another important limitation is that the method cannot measure negative rates of photosynthesis in the complete darkness (respiration). Despite its limitations, the ^{14}C method is much more widely used than the oxygen method, since the sensitivity can be increased considerably simply by increasing the amount of radioactivity.

Measures of photosynthetic rate

In studies of production biology the photosynthetic rate, usually referred to as the rate of primary production, is



continues

Box 4.3 ***continued***

related to the volume of the water sample or the surface area of the lake. The extrapolation of rates measured for short periods (2–4 h) to daily rates requires assumptions about the relationship between the rate of photosynthesis and light intensity. This requires measurements of a vertical profile of photosynthesis, the vertical light gradient, and changes in incident light during the course of the day. The various models for calculating the daily production (e.g., Talling 1957) assume a vertically homogeneous distribution of phytoplankton, which is true only if the water column mixes to the lower boundary of the measured profile. Wetzel and Likens (2000) provide a detailed description of the method for measuring primary production.

The figure shows a typical vertical profile of photosynthetic activity per unit volume of water, showing inhibition near the surface, maximum photosynthesis (P_{max}) at shallow depths with decreasing rates deeper in the water column. The measurements of photosynthesis were made with pairs of light/dark bottles suspended at different depths. The zone in which there is detectable photosynthesis is the *euphotic zone*. The photosynthetic rate per unit surface area of the lake, indicated by the shaded surface area, can be approximated as $P_{max} \times \frac{1}{2} Z_{eu}$, where Z_{eu} is the depth of the euphotic zone.

Photosynthetic activity per unit biomass (specific rate of photosynthesis) can be related to the physiology of the organisms. Carbon or chlorophyll is usually selected as a measure of biomass. There is a relatively constant percentage of carbon in the total organic biomass (*c*.45–50% by weight), whereas the chlorophyll content is more variable and, for example, can increase as an adaptation to low light intensity. Carbon-specific and chlorophyll-specific rates of photosynthesis are not always proportional to one another.

Two resources that could possibly limit the rate of photosynthesis are the energy source (light) and the inorganic substrate (carbon dioxide, or hydrogen sulfide for purple-sulfur bacteria). Contrary to the widely held belief, light is not just a boundary condition: It is actually a consumable resource, because of the effect of organisms on the vertical attenuation of light (see Sections 3.2.1, 4.3.1). For example, Tilzer (1983) demonstrated that during the phytoplankton biomass maximum in spring and summer in Lake Constance up to 70% of the light attenuation was due to phytoplankton chlorophyll. At the time of the seasonal minimum of phytoplankton biomass (*c*.0.3 μg chlorophyll l^{-1}) the vertical light attenuation coefficient in this moderately plankton-rich lake was *c*.0.25 m^{-1}, whereas during the biomass maximum (*c*.30 μg Chl l^{-1}) it was *c*.0.75 m^{-1} (see Fig. 3.4).

The light limitation of nonacclimated photosynthetic rates is usually described by a modified Blackman model (Box 4.1). The difference is that the photosynthetic rate decreases again above a certain light intensity (Fig. 4.15). In the literature this is usually called a *P–I curve* (*P* for photosynthetic rate, *I*for light intensity). All the parameters of this curve are influenced by the species of phytoplankton as well as by their physiological condition (light adaptation). Planktonic algae have been most studied in this regard and will therefore be used here as examples. The basic principles also apply to benthic microalgae (periphyton) and to higher aquatic plants (macrophytes).

The increasing portion of the *P–I* curve passes through the origin if one considers only the process of photosynthesis (*gross photosynthesis*). There are also, however, losses due to respiration, which uses organic carbon and oxygen. When these losses are subtracted (*net photosynthesis*), the entire curve is shifted downward. Although it is not entirely correct to assume respiration is not affected by light (Reynolds 1984), the assumption is adequate for most practical purposes. The point intercepted by the net photosynthesis curve along the *x*-axis defines the light intensity at which the gross photosynthesis is sufficient to compensate for respiratory losses. At this "compensation point" there is neither growth nor loss. In a vertical light gradient in a lake this corresponds to a particular *compensation depth*. The layer above the compensation depth is referred to as the *euphotic zone*, and the layer below the compensation depth is called the *aphotic zone*. As a rule of thumb, the compensation depth for phytoplankton lies at about 1% of the surface light intensity. Figure 4.15 shows how the vertical

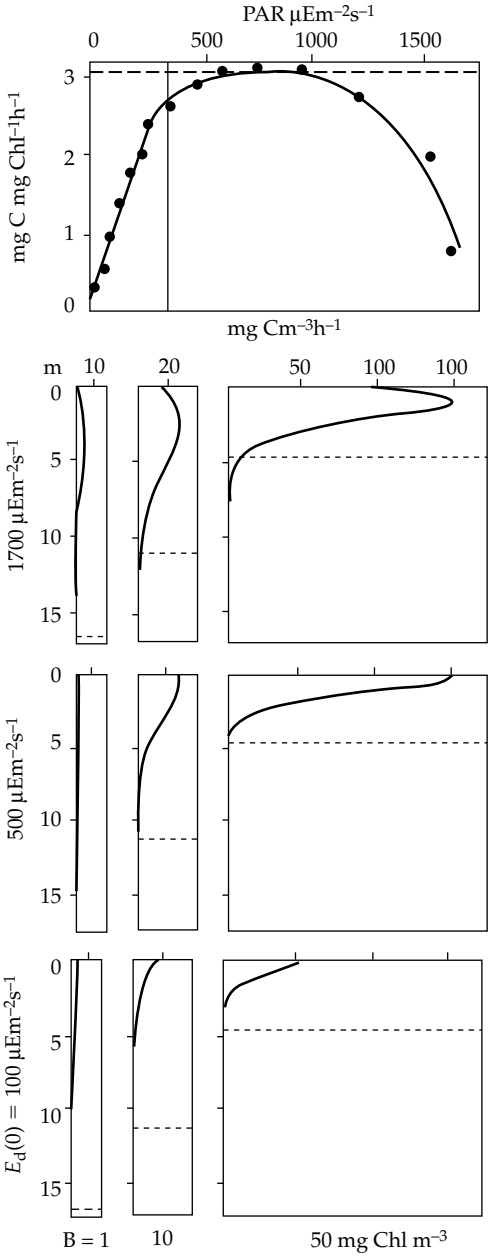


Figure 4.15 The effects of incident light intensity and algal biomass on the vertical profiles of photosynthesis. *Top:* extremely high-light-adapted *P–I* curve (I_k c.300 µE m^{-2} s^{-1}), measured in Lake Constance. *Lower three panels:* vertical profiles of volume-specific rates of photosynthesis (mg C m^{-3} h^{-1}) at three different surface light intensities $E_d(0)$ and three different algal concentrations (as chlorophyll concentration). The dashed line indicates the compensation depth, as conventionally defined [1% $E_d(0)$]. All assumptions about light attenuation are derived from Lake Constance data (from M. Tilzer).

profile of photosynthesis changes with different surface light intensities and algal biomass, following the *P–I* curve response (see Box 4.3).

The early increase in the *P–I* curve is especially important for photosynthesis at low light availability. Measurements for planktonic algae range between 2 and 37 mg C (mg Chl)$^{-1}$ E^{-1} m^{-2}, most frequently between 6 and 18 (Reynolds 1984). In the light-limited range of photosynthesis the photosynthetic rate is determined exclusively by photochemical processes that are not temperature dependent (see Section 4.2.1). Thus the increase in the *P–I* curve is independent of temperature.

The region of transition from the light-limited (increasing) to the light-saturated (horizontal) region of the *P–I* curve is determined by the intensity of saturation (I_k). I_k values do not differ systematically between phytoplankton, benthic microalgae and macrophytes, but within those groups there are pronounced differences between low- and high-light species. The phytoplankton literature values range from 20 to 300 µE m^{-2} s^{-1} of photosynthetically active radiation (PAR), most frequently between 60 and 100 µE m^{-2} s^{-1} (Harris 1978). For benthic microalgae growing on solid surfaces (periphyton) most of the reported I_k-values are in the range c.17–400 µE m^{-2} s^{-1} (Guasch and Sabater 1998, Vadeboncoeur and Lodge 2000). Differences between species are more pronounced than differences between higher taxa (Necchi 2004). I_k values for submerged macrophytes vary between similarly broad limits as the ones for phytoplankton. Menendez and Sanchez (1998) reported values of 200–400 µE m^{-2} s^{-1} for the higher plant *Potamogeton pectinatus* and values of *c*.100–300 µE m^{-2} s^{-1} for the macroscopic green alga *Chara hispida*, with strong seasonal variation in both species. I_k values for both species varied between 40 and 160 µE m^{-2} s^{-1}. In contrast to these high demands, several species of macrophytes (*Egeria densa*, *Hydrilla verticillata*, *Potamogeoton lucens P. schweinfurthii*) required less than 10 µE m^{-2} s^{-1} for half the maximal photosynthetic rate (half saturation constant from a Michaelis–Menten type fit instead of I_k, Kahara and Vermaat 2003).

The highest specific photosynthetic rates for light-saturated conditions measured in temperate zone lakes are about 7.5 mg C (mg Chl)$^{-1}$ h^{-1} and

12 mg C (mg Chl)$^{-1}$ h^{-1}in tropical lakes. The magnitude of the light-saturated photosynthesis is temperature dependent. For temperatures below the optimum, the Q_{10} is *c*.1.8–2.5. Since the light-saturated photosynthetic rate is temperature dependent, but the initial region of the *P–I* curve is assumed to be temperature independent (see Section 4.2.1), the I_k value is indirectly temperature dependent.

The photosynthetic rate does not follow the Blackman model at high light intensities (above *c*.200–1000 μE m^{-2} s^{-1}), where it begins to decrease (see Fig. 4.15). This *light inhibition* is caused by photochemical damage of the chloroplasts by UV radiation as well as increased photorespiration.

Plants can also adapt physiologically to low light intensities. Light adaptation can be tested by comparing the *P–I* curves of the same clones of phytoplankton that have been cultured under different light intensities. There are two different types of light adaptation (Jørgensen 1969):

- In the *Chlorella-type light adaptation* the chlorophyll content increases, resulting in higher rates of photosynthesis for cells adapted to low light.
- In *Cyclotella-type light adaptation* there is a restructuring of the photosynthetic apparatus that only results in an elevation in the slope of the initial region of the *P–I* curve (Jørgensen 1969).

The ability to adapt to low light intensities means that the long-term response to light, unlike the instantaneous response, does not show the linear increase of the Blackman model and can be better described by a Michaelis–Menten-type model (Fig. 4.16). The *P–I* curve therefore only describes the immediate reaction to light conditions, whereas the long-term correlations between the underwater light environment and the occurrence of different species are better explained by the light-adapted model.

The parameters of the *P–I* curve of most aquatic algae and plants imply light inhibition at the lake surface on clear summer days ($I_{d(0)} = 2000$ μE m^{-2} s^{-1}). For an alga with moderate light requirements ($I_k = c.100$ μE m^{-2} s^{-1}) and a lake with a moderate amount of plankton ($k_d = 0.5$ m^{-1}), light saturation on such a sunny day would reach down to a depth of *c*.6 m.

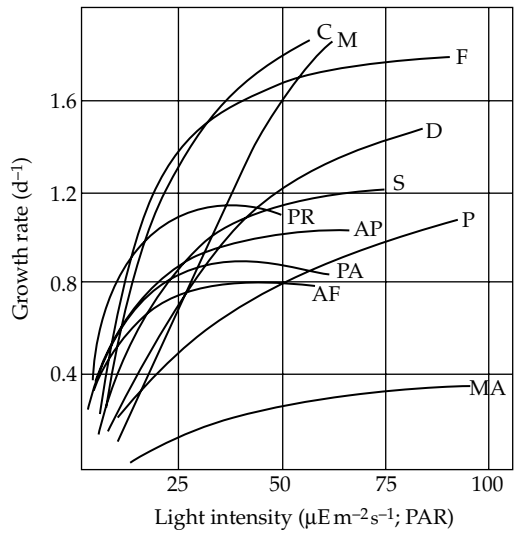


Figure 4.16 The effect of light intensity on the growth rate of planktonic algae, with constant light and at 20 °C: C, *Coelastrum microporum*; M, *Monoraphidium minutum*; F, *Fragilaria bidens*; D, *Dictyosphaerium pulchellum*; S, *Scenedesmus quadricauda*; LR, *Limnothrix redeki*; AP, *Aphanizomenon flow-aquae*; P, *Pediastrum boryanum*; PA, *Planktothrix agardhii*; PR, *Planktothrix rubescens*; AF, *Anabaena flos-aquae*; MA, *Microcystis aeruginosa* (from Reynolds 1989).

When there is adequate surface light intensity, one might expect to find most species of phytoplankton at depths of optimal (i.e., saturated) light. It is not always possible, however, for the algae to remain stratified at a particular depth. Even a wind velocity of only *c*.3 m s^{-1} can destroy stratification patterns of flagellated algae. The phytoplankton then become exposed passively to a light intensity equal to the average light intensity of the mixing zone. However, during calm periods even closely related species can show clear vertical separation (see Fig. 3.9). For example, the flagellate *Rhodomonas minuta* stratifies at about 50% of surface light intensity, whereas *Rhodomonas lens* locates at *c*.10% (Sommer 1982). Studies of the effect of light on growth rates indicate these are close to the optimal light conditions for both species.

Low-light-adapted species of algae can develop very pronounced maxima in the metalimnion of lakes with a stable thermocline as long as the light intensity in these layers is not below the compensation point for that species. The best-known

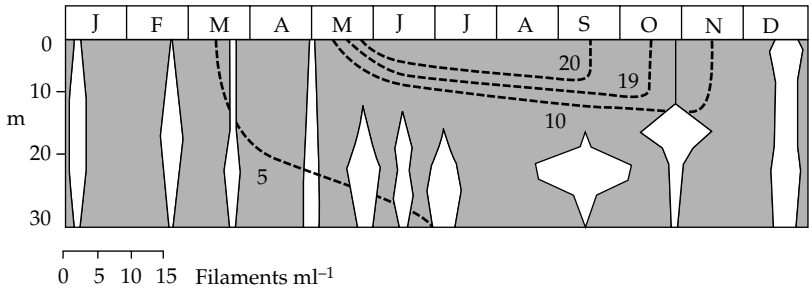


Figure 4.17 Depth distribution of *Planktothrix rubescens* in Wörthersee (Austria) showing the isotherms for 5, 10, 19, and 20 °C (from Findenegg 1943).

example of this are the red pigmented cyanobacteria *Planktothrix* and *Limnothrix* (prev. *Oscillatoria*). *Planktothrix rubescens* stratifies in moderately enriched, thermally stratified lakes in Middle Europe (Fig. 4.17), and *P. agardhii* var. *isothrix* in similar lakes in Scandinavia. The "burgundy red alga" *Planktothrix rubescens* formed blooms in the early stages of eutrophication of Lake Zürich. These populations then disappeared with increasing eutrophication as the algal densities in the epilimnion increased, decreasing the water transparency. *P. rubescens* finally reappeared once again after sewage treatment plants succeeded in reducing the algal densities and increasing the transparency of the water. With an I_k of *c.*10 $\mu E\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ and light inhibition at about 130 $\mu E\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ (Mur and Bejsdorf 1978), these red pigmented *Planktothrix* and *Limnothrix* species can be considered true shade plants.

It is generally recognized that the light conditions set the maximum limits of depth distribution for *submerged macrophytes*. For example, Maristo (cited in Hutchinson 1975) found a linear relationship between the extent of macrophyte growth into deep water and the Secchi disk transparency in 27 different lakes in Finland. In 17 of these lakes the aquatic mosses *Fontinalis antipyretica* and *Drapanocladus sendtneri* had populations at the greatest depth. The best-documented examples of deep macrophyte growth are reported for Lake Titicaca (Peru/Bolivia) and the extremely clear Lake Tahoe (USA) (Hutchinson 1975). In Lake Titicaca the flowering plant *Potamogeton strictus* occurs at depths to 11 m, the low-light alga *Chara spp*. to 14 m, and the moss *Hygrohypnum* to 29 m. In macrophyte-poor Lake Tahoe, the flowering plants extend down to only 6.5 m, but *Chara globularis* and aquatic mosses have been found at 75 m. Flowering plants are generally not found at depths where there is on average less than 2% of the surface light intensity.

Macrophytes show a characteristic *depth zonation* (see Hutchinson 1975). In addition to light, hydrostatic pressure and depth-related changes in the bottom sediments are also important determinants of macrophyte depth. As soon as the leaves reach the surface, the underwater light climate is unimportant for emergent macrophytes (e.g., *Phragmites, Typha*) and floating plants (e.g., *Nymphaea*). The maximum depth of these plants may be determined by the ability of the air-filled tissue (aerenchyma) to withstand the hydrostatic pressure at depth. Submerged species, however, are arranged according to their light requirements. Spence and Chrystal (1970) measured the relative photosynthetic activity of five *Potamogeton* species under low light conditions after being first adapted to high light intensities. The species that had the highest low-light photosynthetic rate were those that also were found deepest in the lake (Fig. 4.18).

Photosynthetic bacteria (*Chlorobiaceae, Chromatiaceae, Rhodospirillaceae*) can develop below the zone of phyto plankton in lakes with an anaerobic hypolimnion and a buildup of hydrogen sulfide, as long as light penetrates into the hydrogen sulfide zone. These bacteria have light requirements that are comparable to low-light-type phytoplankton. For example, purple bacteria have I_k values of 25–70 $\mu E\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$, and *sulfur bacteria*, which are usually stratified below the *purple bacteria*, have I_k values of 20–25 $\mu E\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$ (Pfennig 1978). These sulfur

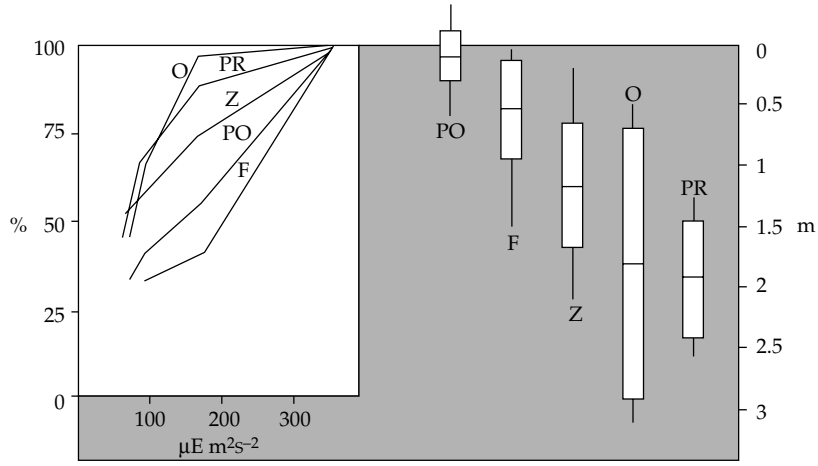


Figure 4.18 *Left*: the effect of light on the relative photosynthetic activity (as percent of photosynthesis at 350 µE $m^{-2} s^{-1}$) for high-light-adapted leaves of various species of *Potamogeton*: O, *P. obtusifolius*; PR, *P. praelongus*; Z, *P. zizii*; PO, *P. polygonifolius*; F, *P. filiformis*. *Right*: depth distribution of five *Potamogeton* species in Scottish lakes (from Spence and Chrystal 1970; light values are recalculated).

bacteria have spectral optima for photosynthesis at wavelengths that are weakly absorbed by the phytoplankton that stratify above them: 700–760 nm for the green sulfur bacteria and $>$ 800 nm for purple bacteria.

4.3.6 Inorganic carbon

Dissolved organic carbon (DIC) occurs in three different forms: carbon dioxide, bicarbonate, and carbonate. The abundance of each form depends on the pH of the water (see Section 3.3.2). All plants can utilize carbon dioxide. When the supply of this has been depleted, the pH rises to 9 and only plants that produce the enzyme carbonic anhydrase can continue to photosynthesize, using bicarbonate, essentially the only form of dissolved inorganic carbon present at that pH. If the supply of bicarbonate also becomes exhausted, the pH will continue to rise to 11.

Consumption of carbon dioxide can become a problem, especially in dense stands of macrophytes, since the gas diffuses very slowly and there is little exchange of water within macrophyte beds. To deal with this aquatic plants have developed four different strategies (Bowers 1987):

- Formation of aerial leaves (emergent macrophytes)
- Utilization of carbon dioxide in pore water (interstitial) of the sediments (*Lobelia, Littorella*)
- Temporal decoupling of the photosynthetic light reaction, similar to the crassulacean acid metabolism (CAM) of some terrestrial plants. This makes it possible to fix carbon dioxide at night when it is released through respiration by other organisms (*Hydrilla, Isotes, Lobelia*)
- Utilization of bicarbonate (*Myriophyllum, Elodea*).

Plants that do not have such adaptations are usually especially efficient in using carbon dioxide at low concentrations in water. This can be recognized in such plants by the carbon dioxide compensation point, which is the minimum carbon dioxide concentration that is needed to compensate for the respiratory loss of carbon by photosynthesis. Obligate carbon dioxide users that do not have access to alternate sources in the air and interstitial water have a carbon dioxide compensation point of 2–12 µmol l^{-1}, compared to 60–110 µmol l^{-1} for plants with alternate sources of carbon dioxide (Sand-Jensen 1987).

Even those plants that use bicarbonate prefer to assimilate carbon dioxide, and its presence will suppress the uptake of bicarbonate. If the total amount of DIC remains constant, but the pH changes, thereby altering the forms of DIC present, the photosynthetic rate of bicarbonate-using plants decreases as the pH exceeds 7 (Sand-Jensen 1987; Fig. 4.19). On the other hand, bicarbonate-using plants can continue photosynthesizing to

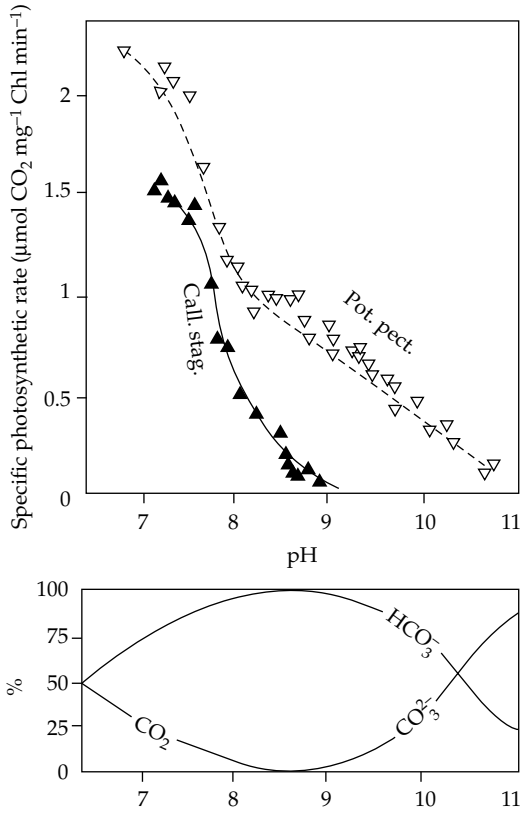


Figure 4.19 *Top*: the effect of pH on the specific rate of photosynthesis by *Potamogeton pectinatus* (Pot. pect.), which utilize HCO_3^-, and *Callitriche stagnalis* (Call. stag.), which use only carbon dioxide, at a DIC concentration of 5 mmol l^{-1} (from Sand-Jensen 1987). *Bottom*: distribution of the species of DIC as a function of pH.

pH 11, but carbon dioxide users can do this only to about pH 9.

4.3.7 Mineral nutrients

In addition to the elements carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen that are part of the general photosynthetic equation, many other elements are essential components of the biomass of living plants. Nutrients are usually divided according to the amounts required into the *macro elements* (nitrogen, phosphorus, sulfur, potassium, magnesium, calcium, sodium, chlorine), which usually make up >0.1% of the organic matter, and the *trace elements* (iron, manganese, copper, zinc, boron, silicon, molybdenum, vanadium, cobalt, and possibly some others), which are needed in far smaller quantities. Silicon is also a macro element for diatoms and some chrysophytes. All these elements must be taken up from the pool of nutrients dissolved in water. Theoretically, any of these elements could become an essential, limiting resource. In most lakes, however, many of them are almost always in excess (e.g., magnesium, calcium, potassium, sodium, sulfur, chlorine), so that the spectrum of limiting nutrients can be narrowed to nitrogen, phosphorus, some trace elements, and silicon for the diatoms and certain chrysophytes. During the growth period the limiting nutrients dissolved in the water are reduced to concentrations that are often below detectable limits.

Before nutrients can become incorporated into the structure of organisms, they must first be removed from the environment. Only dissolved forms make up the pool of available nutrients. Usually, potentially limiting nutrients must be taken up at extremely low concentrations and transported across biological membranes against concentration gradients. This requires energetically costly active transport of ions, which is mediated by enzymes. The uptake rate is dependent on the concentration of nutrients and can be described by a Michaelis–Menten equation (Section 4.3.2). The parameters of this equation (V_{max}, k_t) are not constant and depend on the nutritional state of the organisms. Highly nutrient-limited organisms often have increased maximum uptake rates with which they can exploit short-term pulses of increased nutrient concentrations.

For many ecological questions it is more interesting to examine the effect of nutrient limitation on the growth rate than on the rate of nutrient uptake. The introduction of chemostat cultures for phytoplankton has provided valuable kinetics data for Monod-type models (see Box 4.2). The k_s *values* for dissolved phosphate at 20 °C are between 0.003 μmol l^{-1} for *Synedra filiformis* and 1.83 μmol l^{-1} for *Volvox globator* (Tilman *et al*. 1982). The pennate diatoms and chrysophytes generally have low k_s values (<0.20 μmol l^{-1}). Even in phosphorus-poor lakes at times of year when the algal biomass is sparse, there is usually more than 0.05 μmol l^{-1} dissolved phosphate present. Thus phosphorus

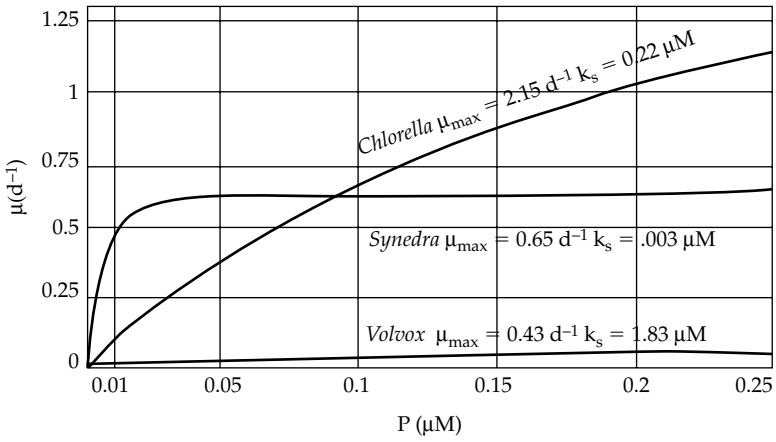


Figure 4.20 Growth kinetics of selected phytoplankton species under phosphate limitation and at 20 °C: *Chlorella minutissima* (high μ_{max}, intermediate k_s, from Tilman *et al*. 1982); *Volvox globator* (low μ_{max}, high k_s, from Tilman *et al*. 1982).

limitation only develops as a consequence of phosphate consumption by organisms. Figure 4.20 shows the phosphorus-limited growth kinetics for three extreme types of algae: *Synedra filiformis*, a most extreme case of an adaptation to low phosphorus concentrations; *Chlorella minutissima*, an example of adaptation to high concentrations; and *Volvox globator*, an example of an algal species that has low growth rates at all phosphorus concentrations.

Because of the preponderance of phosphorus limitation in lakes, k_s values for nitrogen-limited growth have been determined less frequently for freshwater phytoplankton in than for marine phytoplankton. The higher cellular requirements make k_s values much higher for nitrogen than for phosphorus. The cyanobacterium *Planktothrix agardhii* has a k_s value at 20 °C of 1.2 μmol l^{-1} for nitrate and 1.1 μmol l^{-1} for ammonium, in contrast to 0.03 μmol l^{-1} for phosphate (Ahlgren 1978, Zevenboom 1980). The k_s values for ammonium-limited growth of various natural phytoplankton populations in Plußsee (Germany) range from 0.29 to 1.01 μmol l^{-1} (Sommer 1991).

Certain cyanobacteria can utilize molecular nitrogen (N_2) as a source of nitrogen by *nitrogen fixation*, whereas eukaryotic algae and all higher plants are dependent on nitrate or ammonium (occasionally urea). Nitrogenase, the enzyme needed for nitrogen fixation, can only function in an oxygen-free environment. Pelagic cyanobacteria (Family Nostocaceae) create sites for nitrogen fixation by forming specialized cells called *heterocysts*, which release dissolved organic substances. Attached bacteria respire the dissolved organic matter, creating an oxygen-poor microenvironment around the heterocysts. Many species of Nostocaceae produce heterocysts in proportion to the amount of nitrogenase activity. Production and maintenance of heterocysts for nitrogen fixation are processes that require energy and are only beneficial when bound nitrogen sources are scarce. On the other hand, the atmosphere represents an almost inexhaustible supply of molecular nitrogen for nitrogen fixers (Paerl 1988).

The k_s values for silicon-limited growth of diatoms at 20 °C are between 0.88 μmol l^{-1} (*Stephanodiscus minutus*) and 19.7 μmol l^{-1} (*Synedra filiformis*). The last value is extremely high and indicates that silicon can also become limiting during seasonal maxima (many lakes have no more than 70 μmol l^{-1} Si). It is interesting that those diatoms that have a higher k_s for silicon also have a lower k_s for phosphorus (many pennate diatoms, especially *Synedra* and *Asterionella*), whereas diatoms with low k_s values for silicon have a relatively high k_s for phosphorus (*Cyclotella, Stephanodiscus*). Such differences in nutrient uptake ability represent "tradeoffs" that result in differing competitive outcomes and resulting differences in phytoplankton species

composition, depending on trophic condition of the lake (phosphorus concentration) as well as the availability of silicon.

The use of Monod formulas for field data can lead to erroneous results, in particular for phosphorus and nitrogen. Many planktonic algae can store nutrients during short periods of high nutrient availability, enabling growth rates that are higher than would be predicted by the Monod equation during successive periods of decreasing concentrations. In this case the growth rate is a function of the concentration of nutrients within the cell according to the Droop equation (see Box 4.2). Typical minimal *cell nutrient quotients* (q_0) for phosphorus are about 0.0014 mol P/mol C (Sommer 1988a); the extreme values are 0.02 mol P/mol C (*Microcystis aeruginosa*) and 0.0002 mol P/mol C (*Asterionella formosa*). Typical values for nitrogen are about 0.02 mol N/mol C. Phytoplankton that are neither nitrogen nor phosphorus limited often have a stoichiometric C:N:P ratio of about 106:16:1 (*Redfield ratio*) (Goldman *et al*. 1979). The stoichiometric composition of the plankton biomass is thus a reasonably reliable indicator of the nutrient status (Sommer 1990), even though some species are exceptions. If one of the two nutrients is present in the biomass in noticeably smaller concentrations than the Redfield relationship predicts, then there is a good probability that this nutrient is limiting, at least for the species that make up most of the biomass.

The Droop model implies a highly variable stoichiometry of phytoplankton biomass, minimal cell quotas of phosphorus being about one order of magnitude smaller than the phosphorus content of algae growing at maximal growth rates. This is in contrast to the much greater physiological stability of animal stoichiometry. In zooplankton, interspecific differences in C:N:P ratios exceed physiological variability within species. *Daphnia* spp. and some other cladocerans represent the most phosphorus-rich freshwater zooplankton (C:N:P = *c*.90:14:1) while adult copepods are particularly poor in phosphorus (*Acanthodiaptomus*: C:N:P = *c*.220:38:1; Andersen and Hessen 1991, Sterner and Elser 2002). The nitrogen content is primarily determined by the protein content of biomass, while the phosphorus content depends to a great extent on the content of ribosomal RNA, the single most important pool of biomass phosphorus. Fast-growing animals like *Daphnia* have a higher RNA content than otherwise similar but slow-growing animals (Elser *et al*. 2003). The inflexibility of animal stoichiometry implies a potential for growth limitation of herbivores by mineral nutrients, if food is abundant but very poor in the content of a particular nutrient. Mineral nutrient limitation of herbivores can easily be induced experimentally (Sommer 1992), but its frequency *in situ* and its relative importance compared to other aspects of food quality is still a matter of debate (cf. Section 4.3.11).

Most other *macronutrients* (calcium, magnesium, potassium, sodium, sulfur, chlorine) are not limiting, as they are present in excess. There are, however, examples of limitation by *micronutrients* (trace elements). One such example is iron, because of the low solubility of Fe^{3+} ions in neutral and alkaline water (*c*.10^{-8} to 10^{-14} mol l^{-1}). On the other hand, normally some iron can be released from complexes it has formed with dissolved organic substances (primarily humic acids). Some algae, especially cyanobacteria, even release complexing compounds (*siderochromes*) that take up the iron complexes and cannot be utilized by other species (Simpson and Neilands 1976).

Iron has attracted the attention of researchers since it has been found to be the limiting nutrient in some regions of the ocean. It is suspected that iron may also be limiting phytoplankton production in offshore regions of large lakes. A study of Lake Superior has shown that phytoplankton growth was limited by phosphorus, but when small amounts of phosphorus were added to increase the phytoplankton growth rate by 0.1 d^{-1}, iron became limiting (Sterner *et al*. 2004). Addition of iron in Lake Erie (Twiss *et al*. 2000) and Lake Erken, Sweden (Hyenstrand *et al*. 1999) stimulated the production of phytoplankton, in particular cyanobacteria. Hence iron may be limiting in lakes under summer stratification conditions.

Studying the effects of iron on phytoplankton growth is rather difficult as it requires ultra-clean analytical techniques. Even collecting water with a water-sampler containing metal parts can contaminate the water with traces of iron. Metal-free sampling and filtering devices must be used. In addition,

the chemical analysis of iron concentrations does not tell us whether the measured iron is really biologically available for the phytoplankton. Therefore, modern molecular techniques have been used to construct "*bioreporters*" indicating bioavailable iron concentrations. For example, a strain of the picoplanktonic cyanobacterium *Synechococcus* has been genetically engineered to emit light under conditions of iron deficiency (Durham *et al*. 2003).

4.3.8 Inorganic sources of energy

There are autotrophic bacteria that obtain the energy needed for biosynthesis from exergonic chemical reactions rather than from light (see Table 4.1). These *chemolithoautotrophic* organisms use chemical energy sources, inorganic electron donors, and carbon dioxide as a carbon source. Some of these organisms are extremely important in the nutrient cycles of lakes. Chemolithotrophic bacteria often live in the boundary between oxic and anoxic zones, such as in the sediment–water boundary and in the thermocline of lakes with anoxic deep water. The anoxic water provides a constant supply of reduced compounds into boundary layers.

In the case of bacterial nitrification, ammonium, which comes from the aerobic and anaerobic decomposition of nitrogen-rich organic compounds, is first oxidized to nitrite and then further oxidized to nitrate. Both of these reactions are carried out by two genera of chemolithoautotrophic bacteria:

- *Nitrosomonas*:

$$NH_4^+ + \tfrac{3}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow NO_2^- + 2H^+ + H_2O,$$

energy gain of 276 kJ/mol

- *Nitrobacter*:

$$NO_2^- + \tfrac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow NO_3^-, \quad \text{energy gain of 75 kJ/mol}$$

In the absence of oxygen, the newly discovered anaerobic oxidation of ammonium ("anammox") by nitrate can also serve as a chemolithoautotrophic pathway of energy gain (Strous *et al*. 1999):

$$5NH_4^+ + 3NO_3^- \text{ ® } 4N_2 + 9H_2O + 2H^+$$

Flagellated bacteria of the genus *Thiobacillus* get their energy by oxidizing reduced sulfur compounds. Most species can use many different sulfur compounds. Many are obligatory chemolithoautotrophs, but some can also utilize organic carbon sources. Examples of sulfur-oxidizing reactions are:

$$H_2S + \tfrac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow S + H_2O$$
$$S^2 + H_2O + \tfrac{3}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow SO_4^{2-} + 2H^+$$
$$S_2O_3 + H_2O + 2O_2 \longrightarrow 2SO_4^{2-} + 2H^+$$

Thiobacillus denitrificans, which occurs in anoxic environments, uses nitrate instead of oxygen as an oxidizing agent (see Section 4.3.9).

Iron-oxidizing bacteria (*Ferrobacillus*, *Galionella*, *Leptothrix*) oxidize reduced *ferrous iron* (Fe^{2+}) to *ferric iron* (Fe^{3+}):

$$4Fe^{2+} + 4H^+ + O_2 \longrightarrow 4Fe^{3+} + 2H_2O$$

Most of the resulting oxidized iron precipitates out. The oxidation and precipitation of manganese (Mn^{2+}) is often accompanied by the occurrence of conspicuous, complex structures that look like bacterial aggregations encrusted with manganese oxide. These structures have been suggested to be bacteria catalyzing the oxidation process, and they have been named *Metallogenium*. Although there is evidence that bacteria are involved in the formation of "*Metallogenium*-like structures" (Miyajima 1992), it has been impossible so far to obtain cultures of them. Hence there is disagreement as to whether *Metallogenium* is a real organism.

Oxyhydrogen gas bacteria (e.g., *Alcaligenes eutrophus*) are facultative autotrophs. They obtain their energy from the oxidation of elemental hydrogen and are able to get their cellular carbon from carbon dioxide:

$$6H_2 + 2O_2 + CO_2 \longrightarrow CH_2O + 5H_2O$$

These bacteria can grow just as well, and sometimes even better, with organic carbon sources.

4.3.9 Electron acceptors in anaerobic respiration

Anaerobic, *heterotrophic* bacteria use DOCs as sources of carbon and energy, but cannot use oxygen as a terminal electron acceptor in respiration. Anaerobic respiration refers to the use of oxygen-rich compounds (nitrate, sulfate) instead of oxygen to oxidize organic

matter. In such cases, the compounds used as terminal electron acceptors can take on the features of a limiting resource.

In *nitrate respiration*, nitrate is transformed in several reduction steps to either ammonium (nitrate ammonification) or to nitrogen (denitrification). Organic compounds are simultaneously oxidized to carbon dioxide and water. The energy gain here is only about 10% less than for aerobic respiration. The steps in the reduction of nitrate are:

$$NO_3^- \rightarrow NO_2^- \rightarrow \begin{cases} \nearrow NH_2OH \rightarrow NH_3 \\ NO \\ \searrow N_2O \rightarrow N_2 \end{cases}$$

Denitrification is especially important for the nitrogen cycle of lakes, as it causes a loss of bound nitrogen that might otherwise be used by eucaryotic organisms.

Sulfur respiration (desulfurication) refers to the reduction of sulfate to hydrogen sulfide:

$$8(H) + SO_4^{2-} \rightarrow H_2S + 2H_2O + 2OH^-$$

Here, unlike nitrate respiration, the organic compounds are not completely oxidized and acetic acid is usually produced as the final product. If bacteria that respire sulfate also have hydrogenase (e.g., *Desulfovibrio*), they can follow the pathway of oxyhydrogen bacteria, oxidizing hydrogen instead of organic substrates as a source of energy. Such bacteria are called *chemolithoheterotrophs*.

These specialized chemical reactions lead to characteristic vertical stratification of bacterial types in lakes with an anoxic hypolimnion (Fig. 4.21). The various nutritional types of bacteria actually depend upon one another, since they transform nitrogen and sulfur into the different forms.

4.3.10 Dissolved organic substances

Use by heterotrophic aerobic bacteria

Most of the organic matter in lakes is in the dissolved form. In clear lakes with few humic acids the concentration of dissolved organic carbon (DOC) is from 2 to 25 mg l^{-1}, increasing with the trophic state of the lake. In these lakes the ratio of dissolved to *particulate organic carbon* (POC) is usually from 6:1 to 10:1 (Wetzel 2001). Humic lakes have DOC concentrations that are about an order of magnitude higher. Sources of DOC include *excretion* by living organisms, cell breakdown (*autolysis*), and microbial *decomposition* of dead organisms, as well as the contribution from allochthonous sources. Dissolved organic carbon is most important as sources of energy and carbon for aquatic bacteria, although it is also used by other protists and even pigmented mixotrophic algae. Dissolved organic substances utilized by organisms fall into the category of substitutable resources, but with differing nutritional value.

DOC is a mixture of various substances whose qualitative and quantitative composition cannot be completely explained. Often it is sufficient to give a very general characterization, such as fractionation according to molecular size based on ultrafiltration

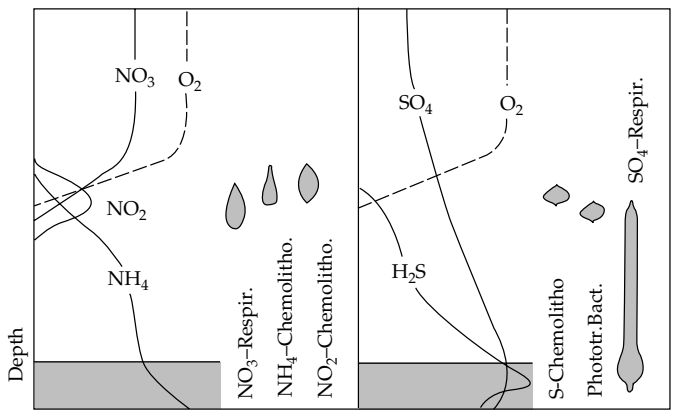


Figure 4.21 Relationship of the vertical distribution of O_2, NO_3, NO_2, NH_4^+, H_2S, and SO_4^+ to the depth distribution of nitrate-respiring heterotrophic bacteria, nitrite-using and ammonium-oxidizing chemolithoautotrophic bacteria, sulfur bacteria and sulfate-respiring bacteria in a lake with an anoxic hypolimnion.

or by gel chromatography. Heterotrophic bacteria prefer monomeric substances (monosaccharides, free amino acids, etc.). These always make up only a small fraction of the DOC. Amino acids in the open water as well as in interstitial water of the sediments are in very low concentrations (usually $<10\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$ and up to $50\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$ for short periods in eutrophic lakes). The concentrations of monosaccharides, oligosaccharides, and simple organic acids are almost always less than $10\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$. Dissolved polysaccharides are present in higher concentrations. Bacteria rapidly break down the most easily decomposed parts of the DOC. For this reason, the main component of DOC is "aquatic humus", which consists of a mixture of fulvic acids, humic acids, and humins, the remains of decomposition of plant material of both autochthonous and allochthonous origin. Such humic substances are recalcitrant to biological degradation, if not impossible for bacteria to utilize (Geller 1985).

One can also describe the uptake kinetics of DOC by the Michaelis–Menten model (see Fig. 4.14). Half-saturation constants of the uptake rate are in the same range as natural concentrations. Wright and Hobbie (1966) found that pelagic bacteria in Lake Erken (eastern Sweden) had k_t values of 2–3 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$ for glucose and 8–15 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$ for acetate. In a more comprehensive study in Plußsee (Holstein, Germany), Overbeck (1975) found that k_t for glucose ranged from 3.8 to 47 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$. Half-saturation constants for amino acids in Lake Constance varied seasonally between 2.65 and 44 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$ (Simon 1985). The net uptake of a particular carbon source is essentially the same as the new production of biomass. It is therefore possible to use the k_t value to predict half-saturation constants for growth (k_s).

The comparison between k_t values for oligomeric substances and their concentrations in water may suggest at first glance that the growth rates of pelagic bacteria must be carbon limited. Oligomeric substances, on the other hand, are usually substitutable resources to which the law of the minimum does not apply. The degree to which aquatic bacteria are carbon limited cannot be estimated reliably, since neither the quantity nor the exact composition of useable DOC is known and also the Michaelis–Menten kinetic has only been determined for a few substances.

Uptake of radioactively labeled oligomeres, mainly glucose, has been used as a method of determining the *bacterial production* (Sorokin and Kadota 1972). This method is only superficially analogous to the method for measuring photosynthesis using ^{14}C-CO_2. ^{14}C-Bicarbonate introduced into the water quickly changes into the fractions carbon dioxide, bicarbonate, and carbonate according to the pH, whereas with ^{14}C-glucose only one of the many substitutable resources is labeled. The total uptake rate can be estimated only if one of two strict assumptions is met: first, if all other substitutable resources are taken up with the same efficiency and their total concentration can be determined or, second, if glucose is the only substrate taken up by the bacteria. Neither of these two assumptions is fulfilled in lakes. Glucose uptake rates are thus only a rough indication of bacterial activity and are sometimes referred to as *heterotrophic potential*.

To avoid these difficulties, a more recent approach is to use carbon sources that are required in only small amounts and whose uptake is directly related to the new formation of biomass. The most widely used substrate of this type is ^{3}H-labeled *thymidine*, a DNA nucleotide (Fuhrman and Azam 1980). At this time, there is no method for determining bacterial production that has the recognized status of the ^{14}C and oxygen methods for measuring photosynthesis.

Specific growth rates from the thymidine method are rarely greater than $0.69\,d^{-1}$ (Güde 1986). This is much lower than one would expect for maximum growth rates for such small organisms (see Section 5.2). One can conclude that natural populations of bacteria are substrate limited, assuming there are no major methodological errors. This conclusion can also be confirmed by another method. Lake water passed through a membrane filter with a 1 μm pore size allows bacteria, but not bacteria grazers (protists and zooplankton), to pass through. After incubation of this filtrate *in situ* the actual growth rate of the bacteria in the absence of grazers can be measured by counting the number of bacteria under an epifluorescence microscope. Using this method, Güde (1986) found bacterial growth rates that were in relatively good agreement with the thymidine method.

Use of DOC by anaerobic bacteria

Obligate and facultative anaerobic microorganisms can obtain energy through *fermentation* in the anoxic environment of the sediments, and hypolimnion of eutrophic lakes and in the monimolimnion of meromictic lakes. This process involves redox reactions in which polymers are hydrolyzed into monomeric organic molecules such as simple sugars, amino acids, and fatty acids. These monomers are then split, with one part being reduced and the other part being oxidized. The end product of the oxidation is carbon dioxide and the end products of the reduction are alcohols, organic acids, or very reduced gases (hydrogen, methane, hydrogen sulfide). Ammonium is also the end product of amino acid fermentation. Relatively little energy is gained from fermentation, compared to aerobic respiration and nitrate respiration. When glucose is oxidatively respired, there is a gain of 2802 kJ mol^{-1}, whereas fermentation to ethanol releases only 67 kJ mol^{-1} and fermentation to lactic acid 111 kJ mol^{-1}. Thus the fermentation of organic substances is important only in anoxic environments.

Methane production and oxidation

Methane (CH_4) is an example of an organic substance that is both an end product of anaerobic decomposition and a resource for aerobic bacteria. Procaryote producers of methane are frequently called *methanogenic bacteria*, but that is not correct. They belong to the domain Archaea, i.e., they are phylogenetically as different from the real bacteria (Eubacteria) as from plants and animals (Woese *et al*. 1990). Methanogenic archaea are strict anaerobes. Although all of them produce the end product methane, they belong to many taxonomic groups. They can use different substrates, but only one-carbon compounds or acetate can be used as terminal electron acceptors. The most important transformations are:

$$4H_2 + CO_2 \longrightarrow CH_4 + 2H_2O$$

$$CH_3COO^- + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_4 + HCO_3^-$$

About two-thirds of the methane produced in nature goes through the acetate pathway (Vogels *et al*. 1988). Being dependent on small organic compounds, methanogens are entirely dependent on other anaerobic microorganisms providing the substrate. The hydrogen + carbon dioxide pathway depends on an interaction between hydrogen-producing bacteria and hydrogen—consuming methanogens living in close association. The consumption of hydrogen by the methanogens is important, as the accumulation of hydrogen would inhibit the growth of the hydrogen producer. Anaerobic bacteria using nitrate and sulfate as electron acceptor (see Section 4.3.9) compete with methanogens for organic substrates or hydrogen. In particular, high concentrations of sulfate favor sulfate reducers and inhibit methane production in sediments. Methane production in anoxic water and sediments is an important component of the carbon cycle and has global impact on the climate as a "greenhouse gas" (see Section 8.7.2).

Methane-oxidizing (*methanotrophic*) bacteria are aerobic bacteria that use the methane produced by methanogenic bacteria as a carbon source and electron acceptor. They are also heterotrophic bacteria that specialize in using one-carbon compounds (methane, methanol, methylamine, formaldehyde, formic acid) and are therefore referred to as *methylotrophic* bacteria. The equation for methane oxidation is summarized as:

$$5CH_4 + 8O_2 \rightarrow 2(CH_2O) + 3CO_3 + 8H_2O$$

Methane-oxidizing bacteria, like chemolithotrophic bacteria, occur mainly in the boundary between oxic and anoxic zones, since they depend on oxygen as an electron acceptor, but also require methane (Fig. 4.22). Most of the methane is produced in the sediments. It can then break through the sediment surface as bubbles (ebullition) and escape to the atmosphere. The larger part, however, diffuses into the hypolimnetic waters. The dissolved methane is rapidly oxidized in the anoxic/oxic transition zone, and no methane is found in the epilimnion. This produces characteristic profiles of methane that are dependent on the changing oxygen profile during summer.

Considerable effort has recently been put into research on *anaerobic methane oxidation*. Oxidation of methane under anoxic conditions has been observed in the sea, for example at methane vents. The mechanism seems to be based on interspecific electron transfer in a *consortium* of archea and

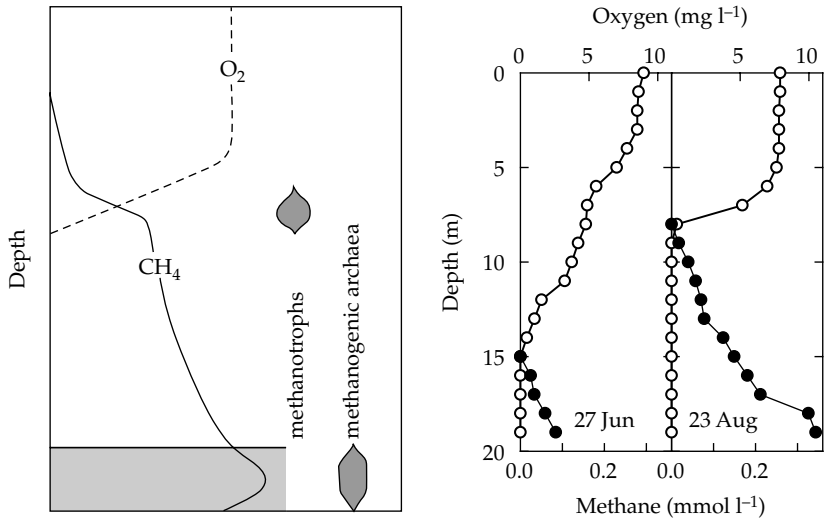


Figure 4.22 *Left:* Vertical distribution of methane-producing archaea and methane-oxidizing bacteria in relation to the profiles of oxygen and methane in a lake with an anoxic hypolimnion. *Right:* Measurements of vertical profiles of oxygen (open circles) and methane (closed circles) in Ononondaga Lake (New York, USA), at two dates (from Matthews *et al*. 2006).

sulfate-reducing bacteria forming a *syntrophic* association. The archaeal member apparently oxidizes methane and provides reduced compounds to the sulfate reducer (Valentin 2002). Little is known about the relevance of this process in fresh water, but it may not be very important because of the low sulfate contents in freshwater sediments.

Higher organisms

The use of dissolved organic substances by eucaryotes is limited to a few small organisms. The large quantity of DOC in lakes has led many researchers to test whether higher organisms can directly take up dissolved organic substances. Much of the interest in this subject was stimulated by Pütter (1911), who discovered that *Daphnia* could live a long time in water that had been filtered free of particles. He postulated that these animals could live from the direct uptake of dissolved organic substances. Later, careful testing demonstrated that this hypothesis was based on an error, for the diatomaceous filter he used was not fine enough to remove bacteria. We now know that *Daphnia* that are kept in water that has passed through a 0.2 μm membrane filter will starve in 5 days and lose about 50% of their weight. In Pütter's experiments the *Daphnia* probably indirectly used the DOC as it was actually first taken up by the bacteria, which in turn were filtered by the *Daphnia*.

Once ^{14}C-labeled organic compounds were available, it became possible to measure the incorporation of DOC into animals directly. This has been tested with radioactively labeled pure compounds (sugars, amino acids) as well as with algal cell hydrolysates. These experiments have demonstrated that the amount of DOC taken up by animals (primarily through the gut) is negligible compared to the amount of carbon they assimilate from particulate food. Larger quantities of DOC are taken up by soft-bodied worms that live in sediments where there are relatively high concentrations of DOC. Even here, however, these animals do not assimilate enough carbon from the DOC to cover a significant portion of their energy requirements. Direct uptake of DOC appears to be more important in marine than in freshwater environments.

4.3.11 Particulate organic substances

Particulate organic matter (POM) or *particulate organic carbon* (POC) occurs as either living or dead matter. The nonliving particulate matter is called *detritus*.

Detritus can be formed within the lake (*autochthonous*) or can be imported from outside the lake (*allochthonous*)—leaf litter, for example. It is often not easy to distinguish between these two sources, but new methods using stable carbon isotopes (^{13}C) can be helpful in identifying the origin of detrital particles (see Box 7.1). Soon after an organism dies it is broken up and colonized by heterotrophic microorganisms (bacteria and fungi). These small particles of organic material are usually considered to be detritus, even though they consist, in part, of living matter. Detritus can also be formed from dissolved organic matter that flocculates under certain conditions. This is especially important in estuaries, where fresh water and salt water mix.

The amount of detritus in an aquatic system may be greater than the quantity of living material. In streams the POC can be almost exclusively detritus, whereas in lakes the proportion of living matter is usually larger, due to the high standing crop of algal biomass. The composition of POC in the pelagic zone of a lake can change very dramatically. During algal blooms large amounts of living matter are present, but this may quickly change to detritus after the algal population either dies or is eliminated by grazing zooplankton. In productive lakes the sediments are covered with a thin layer of detritus, and in shallow lakes this layer can be resuspended during storms.

It is difficult to quantify the importance of detritus as a source of food for organisms. Detritus usually has a low nutritional value, simply because it is a product of the feeding activities of higher organisms and microorganisms. On the other hand, the bacteria and fungi that live in the detritus may have a high nutritional content. It is not easy to discern whether organisms consume detritus for its own sake, or to get the microorganisms that are attached to it. Many organisms cannot avoid eating detritus along with living food, because the detritus is so abundant. Sometimes it is the only source of nutrition for benthic organisms, especially for those that live in forest streams where litter input in fall is the major source of organic carbon. Leaves falling into the water are rapidly colonized by microorganisms, but the decomposition of the dead organic matter is accelerated by detritivorous animals (Gessner 1999). These "shredders" that break up large leaves into small particle can account for more than 50% of leaf mass loss (Hieber and Gessner 2002).

Very special particles have been discovered in the ocean as well as in lakes. These particles have long been overlooked as they are too fragile to be collected with conventional sampling and filtration methods. Being large and very abundant (up to 50/liter in Lake Constance), they look to divers like snow flakes, hence they have been named "*lake snow*". The flakes can only be collected individually by divers to be analyzed. Lake snow consists of *transparent exopolymers* (TEP) formed from dissolved organic substances. A TEP matrix binds to algae, detritus or shed skins (*exuviae*) of zooplankton, and then "glues" these particles together to form aggregates. The surface of these aggregates is densely covered with bacteria releasing *exoenzymes* to utilize the organic substance, which makes the flakes hotspots of microbial activity (Grossart and Simon 1998).

Size structure of particles

There is a great range of sizes of POM. The smallest particles that can be used by the smallest heterotrophic organisms are about 0.2–0.5 μm. Such small particles, often bacteria, can only be eaten by heterotrophic flagellates that themselves are only a few micrometers in size. The flagellates in turn are eaten by filter-feeding animals, thereby transforming the smallest particles into larger, edible particles. On the other hand, some organisms produce small particles from large ones, making them available for other animals. Such "*shredders*" are especially important in benthic communities. Gammarid amphipods, for example, transform the leaves that fall into the water into delicate skeletons. Shredding of leaves also increases the surface area of the particles so that they are more easily colonized and decomposed by microorganisms.

All *particulate feeders* are adapted to feeding on a specific range of sizes that correlates with their feeding structures. Many are very selective, having specialized filtering devices that detect or collect only specific types of food (see Sections 6.4 and 6.5). The size structure of POM is thus an important parameter for describing the resources of particulate feeders. Organisms are dependent on the occurrence of certain particle sizes. In streams, particulate

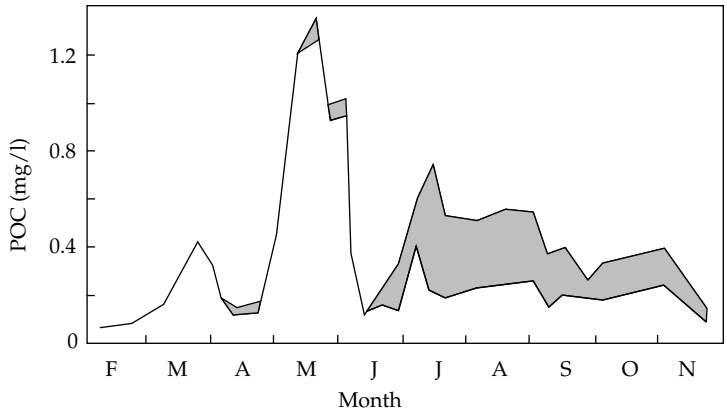


Figure 4.23 Seasonal changes in the size fractions of the particulate organic carbon in Lake Constance. The white region under the curve indicates the fraction <35 μm; the shaded area indicates the fraction between 35 and 250 μm (from Schober 1980).

feeders use a gradient of particle sizes shifting from large to small particles as one moves downstream (see Section 7.6.2). Fine filter-feeders are often abundant in standing waters where small particles that sink slowly are more abundant (see Section 4.2.6).

Recently it has become more and more common to characterize aggregate parameters such as POC and chlorophyll by their size structure. This is easily accomplished using membrane filters with defined pore sizes (e.g., Nuclepore filters, <10 μm) or nylon netting (e.g., Nitex >10 μm). One can also measure the fraction of particles that are in a particular size category (Fig. 4.23). Automatic *particle counters* provide a rapid analysis of particle sizes with very high resolution. These measurements are made by drawing water through a capillary tube containing an electrical field. Each particle that passes through the capillary tube alters the electrical field, causing a pulse to be recorded. Some systems are also based on the interruption of a light beam by the particle. Since the pulse size is dependent on the size of the particle, the particles counted can also be categorized according to size (Fig. 4.24). Such counters estimate the volume of a particle, but cannot distinguish its shape. Size classes of particles are expressed as *equivalent spherical diameter* (ESD), which is the diameter of a sphere with the same volume as the particle. Modern laser-based optical flow cytometers not only measure numbers and sizes of particles, but can also sort them into classes according to pigments and fluorescence. This provides additional information on the quality of the particles, making it possible, for example, to discriminate between living algae and detritus.

Microscopic analysis of particles has also become automated. Computers can analyze the number and size of particles using digitized video images, and can also recognize and count algal types. Species identification is possible in species-poor mixtures with clear interspecific differences in size, shape or fluorescence properties. Fluorescence methods can be used to distinguish cyanobacteria and algae. There is, however, no substitute for the human eye and a knowledge of the shapes of particles for detailed analysis and taxonomic identification.

Types of feeding

There are many mechanisms for the uptake of particulate organic matter. Protozoans encompass entire food particles in their cell vacuoles. Higher organisms usually concentrate or break up the particles before they ingest them.

Feeding categories such as *carnivore* (meat eater), *herbivore* (plant eater), and *detritivore* (detritus eater) are based on the type of organic matter eaten. Strictly speaking, the term *herbivore* means "foliage eater" and cannot be correctly used for most aquatic animals. However, the expression has become well established in reference to algal-eating animals. There are no sharp boundaries between these feeding categories. Many organisms are *omnivores*; that is, they eat both plants and animals. Calanoid

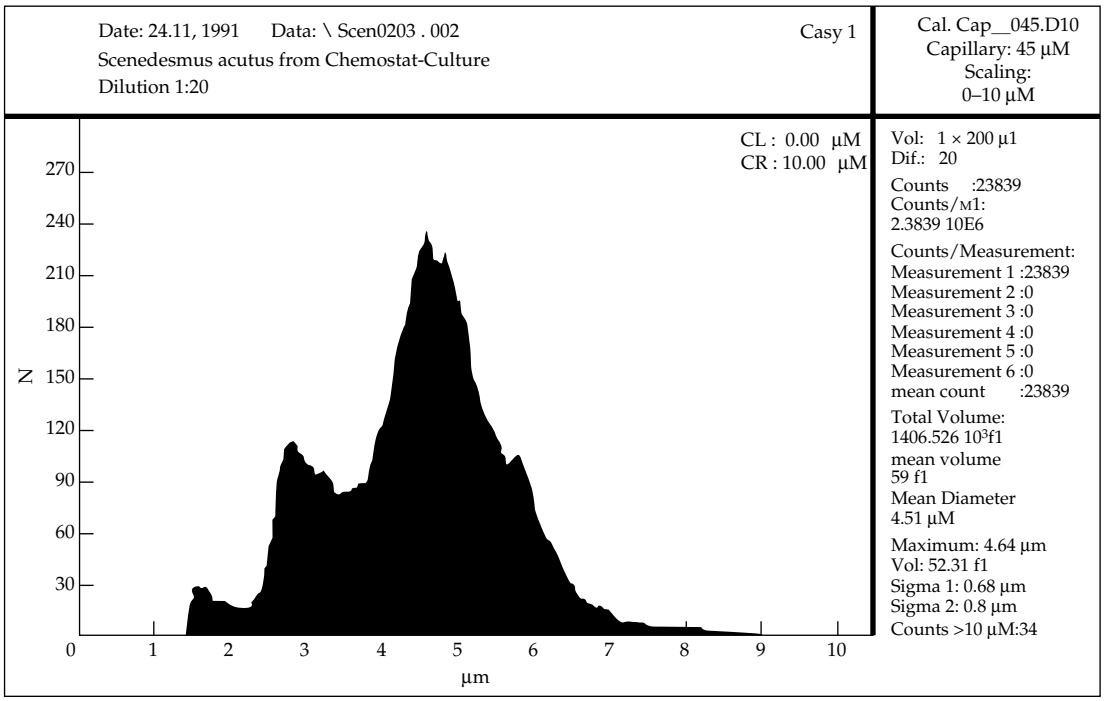


Figure 4.24 Size spectra of particulate organic matter in an algal culture, determined with an automatic particle counter.

copepods, for example, can eat algae as well as small invertebrates. Cyclopoid copepods are herbivores in the juvenile stages and become carnivorous as adults, although even then they continue to eat some algae (Adrian and Frost 1993). Filter-feeders often do not distinguish between living algae and detritus, making classification of their feeding difficult. "Herbivores" feeding on phytoplankton are less distinguished physiologically from carnivores than herbivores feeding on higher plants, because the biochemical composition of phytoplankton differs less from animal biomass than higher plant biomass. Phytoplankton have higher nitrogen and protein contents and lower contents of structural polymers, such as cellulose and lignin, than higher plants.

Clearer divisions can be made according to the mode of food collection. *Predators* must search for food and capture it (see Section 6.5.1). *Collectors* must also search, but their food does not try to escape or defend itself. There are many animals in the benthic community that "graze" on the algae of the periphyton and on microorganisms. These animals are called *scrapers*. Their mouthparts are highly specialized for scraping and collecting particles from substrates (Arens 1989). Many insect larvae and snails with rasping radula are scrapers. Also found exclusively in the benthic habitat are the *shredders* previously mentioned, which often feed on particles that are larger than themselves. Amphipods and isopods, as well as certain insect larvae such as caddisflies, live on or in leaf packs lodged in streams and are important in the initial breakdown of leaves.

Animals that live in the fine sediments are either collectors or *sediment feeders*. Chironomid larvae live in woven tubes in the mud and collect organic matter from the surface of the sediments immediately surrounding their tubes. Tubificids have their anterior end stuck in a tube, and their posterior end waves freely in the water. They ingest the sediment from several centimeters deep, assimilate the organic matter, and release their feces on the surface of the sediment. This results in a mixing of the sediments referred to as *bioturbation*.

If food particles are suspended in the water, they must be concentrated before they are eaten. Many organisms in both the benthic and pelagic regions are *filter-feeders*. For filter-feeding, a water current is used to bring the particles to the animal. Filter-feeders either use existing water currents or create the current themselves. Stream organisms can simply place their filter in the water current. There are several ways of doing this. Blackfly larvae (*Simulidae*) have their filtering surface on their head. They attach their abdomen to a substrate and hold their filtering antennae in the water current. The larvae close their filters from time to time, depending on the particle concentration, and ingest all of the particles. *Hydropsyche*, a caddisfly without a case, spins a fine net that it attaches between the rocks (Fig. 4.25a). The water current carries particles into the net, which are then eaten by the larva. In streams with a heavy load of organic matter, *Hydropsyche* can become so abundant that the entire stream bottom is covered with their nets. In still water filter-feeding animals must create their own water current. Mussels pump large amounts of water across their gills, where they retain food particles. Many zooplankton are filter-feeders. The thoracic appendages of cladocerans form a complicated suction-pressure pump that forces the water through the filtering surfaces of the third and fourth appendages (Fig. 4.25b). Rotifers and copepods are also considered filter-feeders, since they remove small particles from the water, although they capture individual particles in the water current and in this sense do not actually "filter."

The hydromechanics of different filters is very complicated, and the precise mechanisms of many are not understood. In most cases, it is probably not a case of pure "sieving" of the water, as this would be difficult with the very small Reynolds numbers that occur at the filtering structures (see Section 3.1.5). The "mesh" of the filter is often very small (a few micrometers), and some cladocerans have mesh widths of less than 1 μm. Due to the overlapping of the boundary layers, only water under sufficient pressure will be forced to pass through the filtering structures (see Fig. 3.2). Cladocerans can create such an overpressure because they have a closed filtering chamber, but high-magnification, slow-motion videography provides evidence

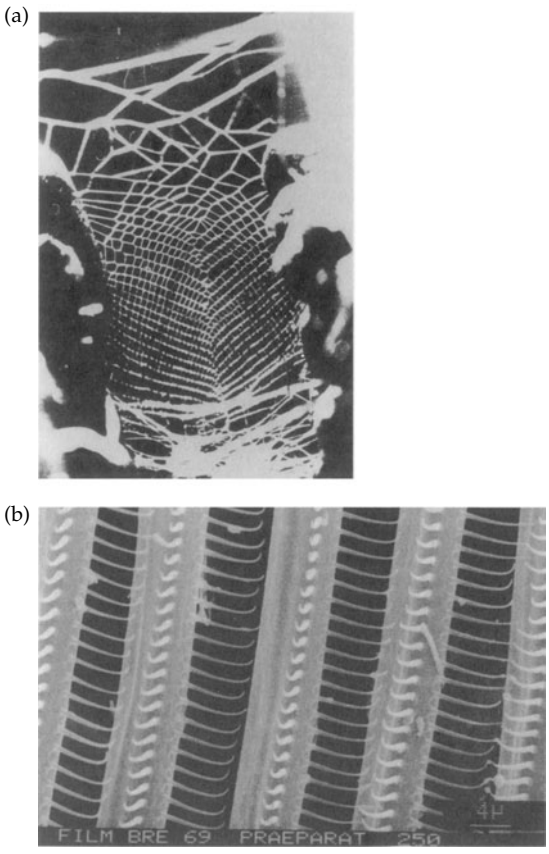


Figure 4.25 Filtering devices of aquatic animals used to collect fine particles. (a) Net of caddisfly larva *Hydropsyche*, which stretches between rocks and filters out particles as the water moves through the net. Height c.10 mm (photo I. Schreiber). (b) Fine structure of the third pair of thoracic appendages in the filtering chamber of *Daphnia*. The filtering setules arising from the supporting structures (setae) are usually hooked at the end. Preparation for the scanning electron microscope has caused the adjacent setules to become unhooked. Scale bar = 4 μm (photo H. Brendelberger).

that particles may nevertheless not stick to the filter screens before being concentrated. Blackfly (*Simuliidae*) and other insect larvae that have open filtering mechanisms use the pressure of water moving against the feeding surfaces. Other mechanisms, such as electrical charges, may also be involved in attaching particles to the filter (Rubenstein and Koehl 1977).

The type of filtering mechanism determines the types of particles that are retained and thus the mortality of the different species of algae due to

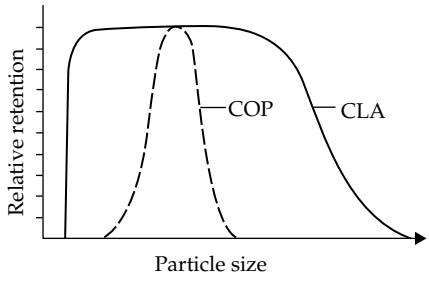


Figure 4.26 A model comparing particle selection by a cladoceran (CLA) that filters water and a copepod (COP) that actively selects particles (from Gliwicz 1980).

filter-feeding (cf. Section 6.4.2). Figure 4.26 shows a graphic comparison of the size spectra of particles removed from the water by coexisting *Daphnia* and calanoid copepods. Differences in the spectra can be accounted for by the filtering mechanisms of these zooplankters. *Daphnia* uses a sieving method in which the lower size spectrum is determined by the mesh size of the filter. Particles smaller than the mesh simply pass through the filter (Brendelberger 1991); all larger particles are retained, except for those that are too large to enter the filtering chamber. The upper size limit is not so sharply defined, for it depends on both the shape and size of the particle. The copepod is much more selective. Its filter is smaller and is not enclosed in a chamber. The copepod uses the filter to enhance the capture of a particle, rather than as a passive sieve. The copepod's mouthparts create a water current. When the copepod detects an approaching algal cell, the water current is shifted to move the cell toward the second maxilla, which then captures it (Koehl and Strickler 1981). The particle spectrum depends on how the copepod handles each particle and not on the mesh size. Copepods can test the edibility of each particle and then either eat it or discard it (DeMott 1988).

Nutritional value and energy content

The types of POM in water are too variable to be described by a single *nutritional value*. The nutritional value of a class of POM can only be defined for a specific consumer. Important nutritional features include ease of handling (size and shape), digestibility, energy content, and the content of essential nutrients. Since POMs are substitutable resources, a larger quantity can sometimes compensate for lower nutritional value. This is not always the case, and we can therefore assume that the energy and metabolism of animals can be limited by the quality as well as the quantity of food particles.

The *biochemical composition* and nutritional value of algae depend on environmental conditions. Zooplankton growth can be inhibited by feeding them with algae grown under nitrogen or phosphorus limitation that results in low N:C or P:C ratios. There are also strong diel variations in nutritional content of algae in the epilimnion. Daytime storage of food reserves results in a higher content of carbohydrates and lipids in the evening that are lost by morning through respiration. There is a recent debate concerning whether phosphorus can act as a limiting resource for zooplankton. Changes in the nutrient content of the water can cause considerable variation in the mineral content of algae (cell quota, see Box 4.2). For example, under phosphorus-limited conditions the algal cells may have a very low phosphorus content. On the other hand, zooplankton maintain a rather constant C:N:P ratio (Hessen and Lyche 1991), suggesting phosphorus availability might limit their growth as well. Phosphorus-starved algae could therefore have a low nutritional value for zooplankton, even though the algae provide an abundance of carbon and nitrogen. In fact, *Daphnia* grow more slowly when cultured with phosphorus-starved algae (Sterner 1993). Phosphorus deficiency may also have indirect effects on food quality. For example, phosphorus -deficient algae can be difficult to digest (Van Donk and Hessen 1993) or lack certain highly unsaturated fatty acids (commonly called *PUFAs, polyunsaturated fatty acids*) that the zooplankton cannot synthesize. Some phytoplankton considered to be poor food for zooplankton (e.g., cyanobacteria) also lack these PUFAs. Particularly important are long-chained fatty acids with 18 or more carbon atoms and more than 2 double bonds, as they are precursors of molecules regulating metabolism and growth, and components of biological membranes. If animals cannot synthesize such PUFAs, they must acquire them from their diet, i.e., PUFAs can be essential resources. Experiments with enriched

algae have identified *eicosapentaenoic acid* (EPA), a PUFA with 20 carbon atoms and 5 double bonds, as limiting factor in *Daphnia* (Von Elert 2002). Some green algae do not contain EPA. Although *Daphnia* can synthezise small amounts of EPA from other PUFAs, this is not sufficient for optimal growth when only green algae are available. Hence the inclusion of other types of algae (e.g., diatoms, chrysophytes) in the diet improves the nutritional value of the food. The availability of PUFAs in the seston of a lake varies seasonally, depending on the nutrient conditions and the phytoplankton composition. The growth rate of *Daphnia* in the field is closely correlated with the amount of EPA contained in the seston (Müller-Navarra 1995). Nutrient stoichiometry and essential fatty acids both have effects on consumer growth (Becker and Boersma 2005), but the real nutritional value of a food resource depends also on ingestibility, digestibility and inhibiting biochemical components. The stoichiometric theory needs to be integrated with theory on plant defenses against herbivores (DeMott and Tessier 2002).

Organic matter provides energy as well as essential elements for heterotrophic organisms. Thus *energy content* is also used to characterize food quality. Energy content can be measured as a combustion value in a calorimeter, but, of course, not all combusted heat is available to the animal. Chitin and cellulose, for example, can be utilized by only a few highly specialized organisms. The energy content of organic particles in water is quite variable. Values measured for algae are between 10 and 20 kJ g^{-1} dry wt. Much of the variation is caused by the different ash content. To measure the organic content of particulate matter one must first combust a preweighed sample for several hours at 550 °C. The weight of the remaining ash is then subtracted from the dry weight to obtain the ash-free dry weight (organic matter). Particles with a high mineral content, such as diatoms with siliceous shells, have a high proportion of ash (>30%), whereas flagellates have a very low ash content (<5%). This gives diatoms a correspondingly low energy content per unit dry weight and flagellates a high energy content.

Much more meaningful values are obtained if the energy content is related to the organic matter or carbon content. There is a strong correlation between the energy content and the organic or carbon content of particles, and POM in lakes has on the average an energy content of about 23.5 kJ g^{-1} ash-free dry weight. Variations are caused by differing biochemical composition of the organic matter. A more precise energy content can be estimated if one knows the percentage of carbohydrates, proteins and fat (lipids) in the organic matter. Typical values are:

- carbohydrates: 17.2 kJ g^{-1}
- proteins: 23.7 kJ g^{-1}
- lipids: 39.6 kJ g^{-1}.

Since lipids have a relative high carbon content (80%) and carbohydrates and proteins have a low carbon content (40%), one can see from the above list that carbon content and energy content are highly correlated. Particles of animal origin often have a relatively high energy content because they contain more fat.

Energy content is only one aspect of the nutritional value of POM. In addition to the possible importance of PUFAs discussed earlier, essential amino acids and vitamins can also be limiting factors. In nature, animals usually eat a variety of foods, thereby avoiding the deficits of any one food type. The food of detritus feeders, for example, includes bacteria and fungi that live on the dead organic matter.

Mixotrophy

Many flagellates can live as both autotrophs and heterotrophs. They are able to photosynthesize as well as take up dissolved organic matter and ingest particles (*phagocytosis*). It is well known that some pigmented flagellates can grow on dissolved organic substances while in the dark, but photosynthesize when in the light. Recently, the ability of pigmented flagellates to ingest particles has received much attention, since these organisms, along with unpigmented flagellates and ciliates, can regulate the abundance of bacteria. This mixture of nutrition from photosynthesis and particulate matter is referred to as *mixotrophy* (Sanders and Porter 1988). Switching between energy sources gives mixotrophic flagellates a competitive advantage over autotrophic algae under low-light conditions,

and over heterotrophic flagellates when bacterial densities are low (Palsson and Daniel 2004).

The uptake of particles has been observed in several groups of flagellates, dinoflagellates, cryptophytes, chrysophytes, and flagellated green algae. Some of the best known examples are the chrysophytes *Dinobryon, Ochromonas*, and *Chromulina*, the dinophyceans *Gymnodinium* and *Peridinopsis*, and the cryptophycean *Cryptomonas*. It is evident that mixotrophy occurs primarily in those groups that also have many representatives that are unpigmented and purely heterotrophic.

As with protozoans, many mixotrophic flagellates have a variety of mechanisms with which they can take particles into the cells, including the formation of pseudopodia. A flagellate can ingest up to 70 bacteria per hour, resulting in uptake rates of 5×10^3–10×10^4 bacteria per milliliter of lake water per hour. Mixotrophic feeding by flagellates can have a significant effect on the population dynamics of bacteria (Bird and Kalff 1993).

The contribution of phagotrophy to the growth of flagellates differs. Some species apparently obtain a large part of their energy requirements from heterotrophic sources, and others are primarily autotrophic. Uptake of particles can be important as sources of nitrogen and phosphorus, especially when these are in short supply (Stibor and Sommer 2003), as well as a source of vitamins. It appears that some flagellate species require the ingestion of food particles and therefore cannot be cultivated in the absence of bacteria (*axenic*).

4.4 Energy utilization

4.4.1 Net and gross production

Production is defined as the new formation of body substances from inorganic matter or organic raw materials (*anabolic processes*). The energy needed for synthesis comes from photo- or chemosynthesis or from the decomposition of organic compounds through oxidation and breakdown into small molecular substances (*catabolic processes*). Organisms need additional energy for mechanical work and, in the case of homeothermic animals, for the maintenance of body temperature. This energy requirement is also covered by catabolic reactions. Catabolism is a loss process in the metabolism of an organism, since it results in a decrease in mass. It is important to distinguish between this internal loss, which results from the organisms metabolic activities, and external losses, such as those due to feeding by other organisms and mechanical damage. Temporal changes in biomass are the net result of both simultaneously occurring anabolic and catabolic reactions, even if external losses have been excluded. The concept of *gross production* refers to a potential, but never realized, production that excludes catabolic losses. *Net production*, in contrast, describes the difference between gross production and catabolic losses, which are the observed changes in mass, without correction for external losses. Although it is possible to exclude external losses experimentally, this is rarely possible in nature.

4.4.2 Energetics of photosynthesis

In photosynthesis, as in all energy transfers, only a portion of the energy is converted into a usable form (second law of thermodynamics). The utilization of light energy can be described by the yield coefficient of quanta capture (ϕv), which is defined as the molar quantity of fixed carbon per mol of absorbed light quanta. The quantum yield coefficient is constant (ϕv_{max}) in the light-limited region of the *P–I* curve (see Section 4.3.5). In the light-saturated part of the curve the quantum yield coefficient decreases with the reciprocal of light intensity, since the rate of photosynthesis stays constant, despite increasing light intensity. For phytoplankton, ϕv_{max} values of 0.03–0.09 have been found (Tilzer 1984a). Assuming a caloric equivalent of 468 kJ for 1 mol C and 218 kJ for 1 mol of photosynthetically active radiation (PAR) with a wavelength of 550 nm (mean value of the PAR spectrum), the efficiency of energy use works out as 6.3–19.3%. The maximum possible quantum yield based on biophysical limits is 0.125, which corresponds to an energy efficiency of 26.8%.

For the energy yield of the total photosynthesis per unit surface area of a lake, the utilization of light energy is much less (see Box 4.3). Much of the phytoplankton is located in water strata that have light saturation or even inhibitory light intensities. Thus a large portion of the total photosynthesis occurs under light conditions where ϕv_{max} is not

reached. Nutrient limitation can also prevent a maximum use of available light energy. Also, the yield coefficient is related only to the light absorbed by living chlorophyll. In natural waters there are also light losses due to dissolved substances, suspended particles, and inactive breakdown products of the photosynthetic pigments. In Lake Constance, the planktonic chlorophyll absorbed between 6% (biomass minima) and 50% (biomass maxima) of the light energy penetrating the lake. The efficiency of light utilization varied seasonally from 0.16 to 1.65%, at least an order of magnitude below the maximum possible yield. These values are as high as those measured in most other lakes (Bannister 1974, Tilzer 1984a).

4.4.3 Energy balance by heterotrophic organisms

Secondary production

The meaning of production is very different for heterotrophic and autotrophic organisms. Production by heterotrophs (*secondary production*) involves the transformation of organic matter, rather than its formation (*primary production*). Heterotrophs take up organic substances (*assimilation*) and use part of it for metabolism. Only the remaining matter can be incorporated into the organism's own body. Simply written:

production = assimilation–metabolic losses

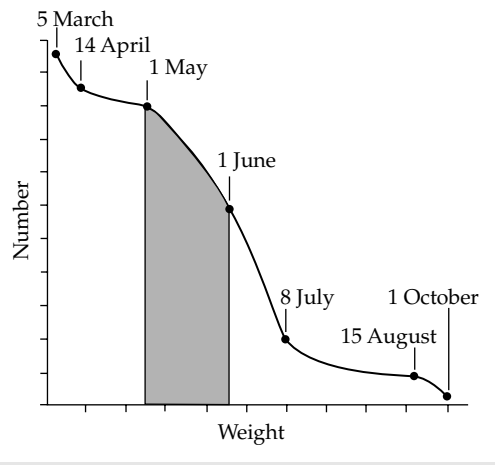
The above equation describes a change in mass or energy, but in this form can only be used to estimate production of individual organisms in the laboratory. One cannot follow each organism in populations of small species in nature. In this case, we measure the production of populations (see Section 5.2). Under field conditions, the observed changes in biomass do not necessarily equal the total production, since during the period of observation a portion of the production may have been eliminated—by predators, for example. If the rate at which the biomass is "harvested" exactly equals the rate of production, there will be no change in biomass, even if the production is high. Indirect methods must be used to determine secondary production in nature, for seldom can one directly measure the eliminated biomass (Box 4.4).

Box 4.4 Estimating secondary production

Secondary production is difficult to determine for field populations, since usually only the change in biomass is visible, not the proportion of production that was eliminated due to loss processes in the time interval. Indirect methods must therefore be used to include the eliminated production. Many methods for estimating secondary production were developed and tested as a result of the International Biological Program (IBP). These methods have been summarized in several different books (e.g., Edmondson and Winberg 1971, Winberg 1971, Downing and Rigler 1984). All these methods have fairly large errors due to the difficulties in obtaining quantitative samples and other uncertainties. It is thus probably better to refer to secondary production results as "estimates" than "measurements." Below are two typical examples:

Allen curve

A graphic method (Allen curve) can be used for situations in the field where there is a class of animals of the same age, for example, a year class of fish (cohorts, see Section 5.2.7). It is based on the concept that animals grow over time, but their numbers continually decline as a result of mortality (see



continues

Box 4.4 ***continued***

Fig. 5.7). By sampling the same cohort at different times, the number of animals at each sampling time can be compared to their weight. The surface area under the curve represents the production. In the hypothetical example shown, the sampling dates are plotted against the average weights. The shaded surface area shows the production for May and the area under the entire curve represents the yearly production.

Sum of increments

Often generations overlap and it is not possible to follow cohorts. In this case the entire population can be divided into developmental stages or size classes, after it has been experimentally determined how long it takes the animals to grow from one class to the next. From these times and the increase in weight, one can then calculate the daily growth increment of an individual. This growth increment is then summed for all individuals. Below is an example of how this is done.

1 A growth curve is experimentally determined for an individual (thick line). The method depends strongly on the shape of this growth curve.

2 The field population is divided into five size classes.
3 The number (N) is determined for each size class.
4 The average weight (W) is determined for each size class.
5 The time (T) in days that it takes to grow from one class to the next is determined from the curve.

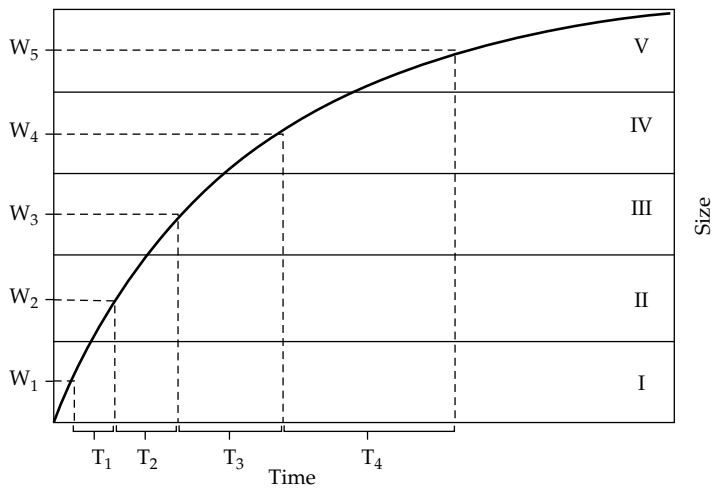
The daily growth increment of class 1 is then:

$$P_1 = \frac{N_1(W_2 - W_1)}{T_1}$$

The total production can be estimated from the sum of all classes:

$$P = \frac{N_1(W_2 - W_1)}{T_1} + \frac{N_1(W_3 - W_2)}{T_2} + \cdots + \frac{N_i(W_{i+1} - W_i)}{T_i}$$

The specific production or mass produced per unit biomass and time (e.g., $mg\,mg^{-1}\,d^{-1}$) can be used as a measure of organism activity. Specific production of individuals is usually related to weight. For population production it is common to use the *P: B ratio* (the ratio of production to biomass). It is a measure of the *turnover rate*, since it describes what portion of the biomass is renewed per unit time.



Heterotrophic microorganisms

For microorganisms, energy use is always measured for populations. The methods used to determine production of bacteria and protozoans are generally the same as are used for measuring population dynamics. For cultures, the reproduction of cells is measured and then multiplied by the mass of each individual. It is also sometimes possible to provide the microorganisms with a radioactively labeled substrate and measure its incorporation into the cells (see Section 4.3.10).

All parameters of the mass balance equation can be measured for cultures grown on defined media in the laboratory:

- production from growth of biomass
- assimilation from uptake of the substrate or from incorporation of a tracer
- metabolic losses from use of oxygen (respiration) or carbon dioxide build up.

If one knows the production and respiration (metabolic losses), it is possible to calculate the *efficiency* (K_2) of transformation of organic matter into microbial biomass (as a percentage):

$$K_2 = (P/A)100 = (P/(P + M))100$$

where P is production, A assimilation, and M metabolic losses. Efficiencies of approximately 25% have been measured for natural populations of bacteria (Sorokin and Kadota 1972), indicating that 25% of the energy consumed was transformed into biomass and 75% was lost through respiration.

Animals

The *energy balance equation* must be expanded to be used for animals that ingest particulate organic matter that is only partially useable:

$$P = I - F - R - E$$

where I is *ingestion*, the amount of organic matter (energy, carbon) that is eaten; $F$is *defecation* (egestion of unused food); R, *respiratory losses*; and E, *excretion losses*. R and E are as a rule combined as metabolic losses (M). *Assimilation* (A) is the difference between ingestion and defecation ($I-F$). Assimilation refers to the uptake of organic molecules through the gut wall. It is dependent on how much the animal has eaten and whether the ingested food can be digested. The *assimilation efficiency* can be used as a measure of digestibility:

$$AE = (A/I)100\ (\%)$$

If the feces can be collected, assimilation can be calculated as the difference between rates of ingestion and feces production. An example for this is the development of an energy balance for *Asellus aquaticus*. Small discs were cut from leaves, weighed, and offered to the animals. The leaf discs were weighed again at the end of the experiment to determine the quantity of leaves eaten. All feces were also collected and weighed. The energy content and the assimilation in energy units were calculated by combusting the leaf discs and the feces (Prus 1971).

It is not usually possible to collect all the feces of aquatic animals, since they may disperse or dissolve. Even if only a portion of the feces is found, one can still determine the percentage mineral ash content in both the food and the feces. From this one can estimate the assimilation efficiency from the relative ash content of the food and feces, since only the organic portion can be used in digestion, leaving a higher percentage of ash in the feces. If no feces can be recovered, as for Cladocera, the assimilation rate can be measured as the rate of incorporation of ^{14}C from labeled food into body tissues. This is a very sensitive method, but requires a correction for $^{14}CO_2$ respired (Peters 1984).

Metabolic losses are usually determined as *respiration* (O_2 consumption). It is difficult to measure the excretion of carbon dioxide in buffered water, since there is little change due to the large pool of bicarbonates and carbonates. The *respiratory quotient* (RQ), which expresses how many moles carbon dioxide are liberated per mole of O_2 consumed, is used as a measure of conversion of oxygen into carbon dioxide production. The RQ depends on the type of substrate respired and ranges from 0.7 for respiration of fat to 1.1 for the respiration of carbohydrates and synthesis of fat (Lampert 1984).

Most animals are large enough to allow energy balance estimates to be made for individuals. Note that production is divided into body growth and reproduction. This *allocation of energy* to body and reproductive products is an important parameter that can be optimized through the evolution of life history strategies (see Section 6.8.2). Some animals grow their entire life and invest only a part of their production in reproduction. Others, such as the copepods, do not grow at all after becoming sexually mature, then investing their entire secondary production in egg mass.

The efficiency of energy use may be related to either the quantity of food eaten or the energy assimilated: The *gross efficiency* is

$$K_1 = (P/I) \times 100\ (\%)$$

This expresses the percentage of the energy ingested that flows into production. The *net efficiency* (%) (K_2; calculated as for microorganisms) is an expression of the percentage of assimilated energy that is available for production.

There are many published values of K_1 dealing with fish culture, since this tells how much food is needed to produce a given quantity of fish. The value of K_1 depends heavily on how well the food is assimilated and digested and is thus quite variable. Typical values range from 10 to 15% and occasionally higher under laboratory conditions. The value of K_2 also depends on the quality and quantity of the food. Aquatic animals can achieve K_2 values of over 70% with high-quality food, but in most cases it is 30–40% (Winberg 1971). Summaries are given by Winberg (1971), Grodzinski *et al*. (1975), and Zaika (1973). Figure 4.27 shows an example of the cumulative energy budget for *Simocephalus*, a littoral cladoceran. All parameters of the energy budget are summed over time in this figure. It is clear that after reaching sexual maturity at 9 days the animals invest energy almost exclusively in reproduction. Examples of energy balances for some different types of animals are given in Table 4.2. This comparison shows how energy utilization can differ. The cladoceran *Daphnia magna*, a filter-feeder, had the highest efficiency under optimal food and temperature conditions. *Hyalella azteca*, an amphipod that eats detritus from the surface of sediments, had the lowest efficiency.

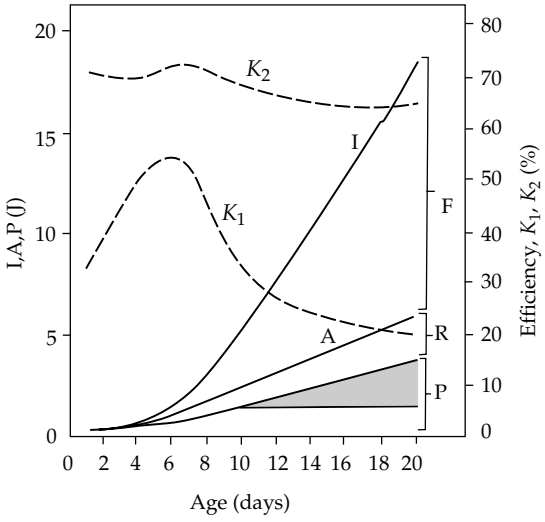


Figure 4.27 The cumulative energy balance for the first 20 days in the life of the cladoceran *Simocephalus vetulus*. I, ingestion; A, assimilation; F, defecation; R, respiration losses; P, production. The shaded area indicates the proportion of production that is invested into reproduction. The efficiencies K_1 and K_2 are shown as dashed lines (from Klekowski and Duncan 1975).

Threshold concentrations

Feeding and assimilation rates are proportional to the amount of available food in the lower food concentrations. Maximum ingestion of food occurs above an *incipient limiting concentration* (functional response, see Section 4.3.2). The respiration rate is only slightly dependent on the amount of food available and never reaches zero, even for starving animals. This indicates that, below the incipient limiting concentration, the energy balance of an animal is dependent on the amount of food. At a certain food concentration, the animal assimilates the same amount of energy as it respires. At this point the production is zero. Figure 4.28 illustrates this for a filter-feeder. Ingestion and assimilation rates increase with increasing food concentration. The point where the assimilation and respiration rate curves cross is where production equals zero. Above this concentration (threshold) the animal can grow and produce offspring, whereas below this level it loses weight and eventually dies. The *threshold concentration* is thus an important parameter for the survival of an individual. There is also a minimal food concentration for the population

Table 4.2 Energy balance parameters for *Daphnia magna* (food: green alga *Scenedesmus acutus*), river perch *Perca fluviatilis* (food: sludge worms *Tubifex*) (from Klekowski 1973) and the amphipod *Hyalella azteca* (food: detritus) (after Hargrave 1971).

Parameter	*Daphnia* (μg C ind^{-1}h^{-1})	*Perch* (J ind^{-1}h^{-1})	*Hyalella* (J ind^{-1}h^{-1})
Ingestion	0.90	392	0.220
Defecation	0.16	255	0.180
Assimilation	0.74	137	0.040
Metabolic losses	0.18	63.4	0.034
Production	0.56	73.6	0.006
AQ (%)	82	35.0	18.0
K_1 (%)	62	18.8	2.7
K_2 (%)	76	53.7	15.0

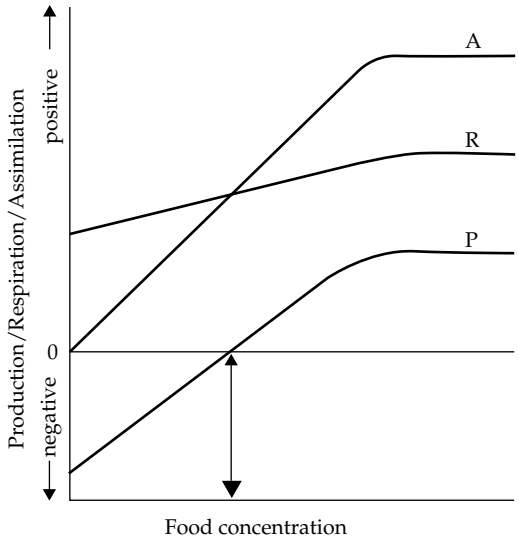


Figure 4.28 The effect of food concentration on the rates of assimilation (A), respiration (R), and production (P) of a filter-feeder. The production rate is calculated as (A–R). The arrow indicates the threshold concentration at which there is zero production (from Lampert 1987b).

growth. If a population is subject to mortality, the threshold concentration must be higher than for an individual, since the animals must not only maintain their weight, but also produce enough offspring to compensate for population losses. It is especially interesting to look at threshold concentrations for animals that compete for the same resources. The species with the lowest threshold concentration has the advantage under scarce food conditions (see Fig. 6.36).

Optimization of feeding

Foraging incurs costs for search, handling, digestion, and biochemical transformations of the food. One could thus predict that behaviors should have evolved that keep the relative costs of foraging as low as possible. In other words, the evolved behavior makes maximum profit from the available food (Pyke *et al*. 1977). Many behaviors have been described for terrestrial organisms, especially birds and insects, that optimize foraging (*optimal foraging*). Very few examples of foraging in fresh water can be interpreted in this way.

One opportunity to optimize energy gain is by selecting the best prey. A fish gets more energy from a large *Daphnia* than from a small one. As long as there are enough large prey, the fish should concentrate on the large ones and not waste its time hunting for small animals. Werner and Hall (1974) demonstrated this with sunfish. They offered the fish three size classes of *Daphnia*. The fish ate exclusively the largest size class as long as the time between encounters with these prey was less than 0.5 min. With encounter intervals of 0.5–5 minutes, they concentrated their feeding on the two largest size classes. When the large *Daphnia* became so rare that it took more than 5 min for a fish to see one of them, the fish ate animals from all size classes. It no longer paid to wait for large tidbits.

DeMott (1989) observed a similar behavior for the copepod *Eudiaptomus* when offered a mixture of algae of high and low food quality. When the concentration of food particles was high, the copepod selectively ate the high-quality algae. At low food concentrations, however, it abandoned the selective behavior and ate everything it could find.

Drift-feeding stream fish are dependent on prey items (e.g., insect larvae) that are carried toward them by the currents (see Section 4.2.5). The faster the current, the greater the number of prey passing by a certain point per time. Hence, fish will encounter more prey in fast-flowing than in slow-flowing water. On the other hand, swimming against strong currents to stay in place requires more energy (see Section 4.2.6), and because of the restricted visual field of the fish, the capture success decreases with increasing flow velocity. This must result in an optimal flow velocity where the number of prey captured per time is highest. Grossman *et al*. (2002) constructed a model to predict the optimal water velocity for drift-feeding minnows. They tested the model by measuring flow velocities in habitats preferred by minnows in a stream. In most cases, the minnows selected the habitat providing optimal energy gain as predicted by the model.

Predators can optimize the time they have to spend on an individual prey item. The water scorpion *Ranatra dispar*, an aquatic bug, is an interesting example. *Ranatra* is an ambush hunter that sits quietly on a plant and waits until its prey passes by. Then it grabs the prey, injects a digestive fluid and sucks out the body contents. At the beginning

of the sucking process the *Ranatra* gets a lot of food per unit time, but the profit per unit time decreases as the prey is sucked empty. The water scorpion optimizes the relationship between the time it must wait for a prey and the time it spends eating the prey. If the density of prey is low, the time waiting for a prey to appear is long. Then the water scorpion completely empties the captured prey. If new prey appear frequently, it only partially sucks out the captured prey and catches a new prey before the old one is completely used up. In this way it produces much waste, but still obtains more energy by spending half as long on each prey (Bailey 1986).

It may even be more profitable to give up looking for food altogther when food is very rare. For example, it costs a filter-feeding zooplankter energy to create water currents and run its "filtering pump." The filter-feeder should really stop feeding when the particle concentration is so low that it costs more energy to pump water than is brought in with the food collected, checking only from time to time whether the situation has changed. If it is not filtering, it will starve, but at a slower rate than if it also were spending energy on pumping. Such behavior would alter the line of the functional response curve (see Box 4.1) relating feeding rate to food concentration so that it would no longer pass through the origin (zero feeding at zero food) and would begin feeding above a food threshold value. Such a threshold value has been found for marine copepods, but not for lake zooplankton (Muck and Lampert 1980). Direct observation of the movement of filtering legs of *Daphnia* offered varying concentrations of algae, however, indicate that *Daphnia* can regulate the beat rate of the appendage to optimize energy uptake (Plath 1998). It cannot shut down filtering completely as the movement of the filtering appendage is important for oxygen acquisition, but it can reduce the beat rate of the appendage to a certain degree. This would result in a Holling type III functional response (see Fig. 4.13) as observed by Chow-Fraser and Sprules (1992).

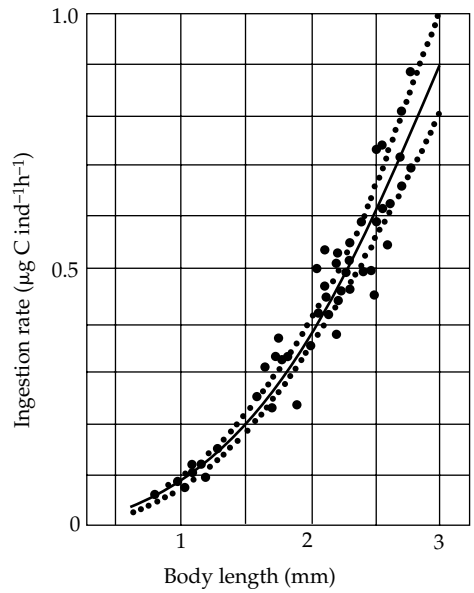


Figure 4.29 The effect of size on the feeding rate of *Daphnia pulicaria* at 15 °C (food: *Scenedesmus obliquus*, 0.17 mg C l^{-1}). Each data point represents an individual animal. Dotted lines are the 95% confidence limits for the regression line (from Geller 1975).

4.5 The importance of body size

Body size is one of the most important parameters that determines the ecological and physiological characteristics of an organism. Many examples are described in this book, such as the flotation ability of plankton (see Section 4.2.6). Size differences between species can cause differential mortality through size-selective predation (see Section 6.5.6); they can also cause differences in competitive abilities (see Fig. 6.36). Size is important for niche selection and coexistence of similar species. Peters (1983) has summarized the extensive literature about the physiological and ecological consequences of body size.

Often, the size dependency of each of the parameters of the energy balance equation (see Section 4.4.3) is determined, since body size has large effects on the energy balance of organisms. Some surprisingly constant relationships have been found. For example, using a linear dimension such as body length as a measure of size, both the mass and the physiological performance can be described according to an exponential function (*allometric function*)

$$F = aL^b \quad \text{or} \quad W = aL^b$$

where L is length W, weight; F, any physiological activity; and a, b are constants). The exponent b is often between 2 and 3. An example is shown in Fig. 4.29.

A straight line plot is obtained by plotting the data on double logarithmic axes as

$$\log F = \log a + b \log L$$

The slopes (b) and intercepts (a) can then be determined by linear regression. The equation for a specific case (ingestion rate I) in Fig. 4.29 is

$$I = 0.08L^{2.19}$$

If the weight of an individual is used instead of length, the exponential function is:

$$F = aW^b$$

In this case the exponent is usually less than 1. For the example given in Fig. 4.29, the corresponding equation is (W in μg)

$$I = 0.015W^{0.74}$$

The physiological rate can be expressed as a rate per unit body weight (specific rate)

$$F/W = aW^{(b-1)}$$

For our example we get:

$$I/W = 0.015W^{-0.26}$$

These relationships hold for different species as well as for different-sized individuals within a species. This principle can be demonstrated by an example. The respiration rates (R) at 20 °C of different species of aquatic animals are plotted against body weight (Fig. 4.30). Weights range over four orders of magnitude, from rotifers (c.0.2 µg) to amphipods (c.1 mg).

When plotted on a double logarithmic graph the points lie on a straight line with a slope of 0.794. Including all values up to 0.8 mg dry weight, we get the equation

$$R = 3.04W^{0.794}$$

Other physiological parameters also produce equations with exponents close to 0.75. Peters (1983) gives numerous examples of this. The ecological significance of this relationship is that, per unit biomass, large organisms have a slower metabolic rate than small organisms. They therefore use less resources, but grow more slowly.

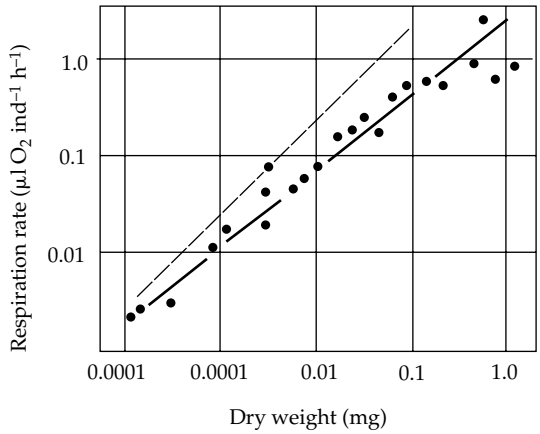


Figure 4.30 The effect of body weight on the respiration rates of various aquatic animals at 20 °C. The slope of the line is 0.794. The dashed line has a slope of 1 (from Lampert 1984).

It must be stressed, however, that this is only a general trend. Differences between organisms of similar size are not easy to see when the data over several orders of magnitude are plotted on double logarithmic graphs. The points in Fig. 4.30 appear to lie close to the regression line, but when converted to absolute values the deviations from the regression line are considerable. The measured respiration rates for a body weight of 3 µg dry wt, for example, lie between 0.02 and 0.07 µl O_2 ind^{-1} h^{-1}. Within a narrow size range, there may be a negative relationship between metabolic rate and size for a particular species, but often not between species. In a comparison of species it is possible that the really important ecological adaptations are even reflected by the variability around the regression line.

Ecological factors also show trends with body size. Small species, for example, usually have higher densities per unit surface area than large species (other examples in Peters 1983). Sheldon *et al*. (1972) described an interesting rule for the marine pelagic region. If the organisms that live there are divided logarithmically according to their weight into classes and the biomass in each class is calculated, the biomass in each class is almost identical. This means that there is as much biomass per unit surface area in the size class of bacteria as there is in the size class of whales. The range is not as large in fresh water as in the ocean, but this phenomenon can be

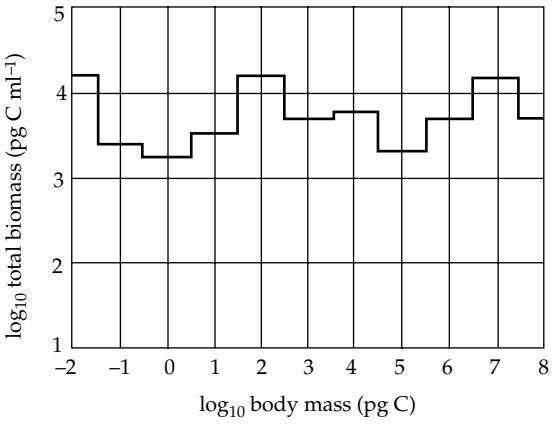


Figure 4.31 The size class distribution of biomass in the pelagic region of Lake Constance (yearly average) (from Gaedke 1992).

seen in the pelagic region of large lakes. In Lake Constance, for example, the size differences between the smallest and the largest organisms nevertheless cover 10 orders of magnitude (Fig. 4.31).

Review questions

1 Why is tolerance to freezing less important for the distribution of aquatic organisms than for terrestrial organisms?
2 Chironomid midge larvae are important animals in the sediments of lakes. Members of the genus *Tanytarsus* are brownish, whereas members of the genus *Chironomus* are red because of their high hemoglobin content. Which chironomid genus would you expect in very eutrophic lakes and why would you expect them there?
3 Examine Stokes' law graphically. Draw a graph showing the effect of the radius of a spherical particle on its sinking velocity. Assume that water has a density of $1000\,kg\,m^{-3}$ and a viscosity of 1×10^{-3} Pa s. Construct graphs for a diatom with a density of 1.20 and a nonsiliceous alga with a density of 1.03. Calculate the sinking velocity for diatoms with a radius of 5, 10, and 20 μm. How large would nonsiliceous algae have to be to have these same sinking velocities?
4 A phytoplankton species has a half-saturation constant of phosphorus uptake of $1\,\mu mol\,l^{-1}$. At what phosphorus concentrations does it achieve 10%, 30%, and 90% of its maximal uptake velocity?
5 The minimal cell quota of phosphorus-limited growth of many phytoplankton species is strongly size dependent. This variability can be reduced if the cell quota is expressed as phosphorus content per unit biomass. For example, using carbon as a measure of biomass, the cell quota is about 0.001 atoms P per atom C. At what cell quota do such algae achieve 90% of μ_{max}?
6 A population of phytoplankton is grown in a chemostat until it reaches a steady state. Its μ_{max} is $1.4\,d^{-1}$ and its k_s is $0.1\ \mu mol\,l^{-1}$. The phosphorus concentration in the inflow medium is $3\,\mu mol\ l^{-1}$. How high is the remaining concentration of dissolved phosphorus in the culture vessel at dilution rates of 0.1, 0.3, 0.7, and $1.0\,d^{-1}$, respectively?
7 A phytoplankton species has a *P–I* curve characterized by the following cardinal points: compensation point at 10, saturation coefficient a 100, onset of light inhibition at $500\,\mu E\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$. The surface light intensity is $1000\,\mu E\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$. Calculate the compensation depth and the depth range of optimal photosynthesis for the following lakes: (a) an oligotrophic lake, extinction coefficient $0.2\,m^{-1}$; (b) a mesotrophic lake, extinction coefficient $0.5\,m^{-1}$; (c) a eutrophic lake, extinction coefficient $1.5\,m^{-1}$.
8 Why do purple bacteria and green sulfur bacteria grow at the lower margin of the euphotic zone of eutrophic and meromictic lakes, even though their photosynthetic rates might be higher at higher light intensities?
9 The chemolithoautotrophic sulfur bacterium *Beggiatoa* frequently forms thin layers of dense mats at the sediment surface. Under what chemical conditions would you expect such mats? Why are they so thin?
10 The "heterotrophic potential" of bacteria is estimated by measuring the uptake of radioactively labeled glucose. Why is this not identical with the actual production of heterotrophic bacteria?
11 In a feeding experiment, *Daphnia* are fed radioactively labeled algae with a specific activity of 4500 dpm/mg C (dpm = disintegrations of radioactive decay per minute, a measure of radioactivity). Each individual *Daphnia* can filter radioactive food for 10 min. In a series of food concentrations, the following results are obtained:

Algal conc. (mg C/l)	dpm/individual *Daphnia*
0.1	145
0.2	300
0.5	400
1.0	390

Calculate the *Daphnia* filtering rates ($ml\,ind^{-1}\,h^{-1}$) at each food concentration. Construct a graph showing the effect of algal concentration on filtering rate. What is the maximum filtering rate for *Daphnia*? What is the incipient limiting concentration (mg C/l) for *Daphnia* filtering rate?
12 For daphniids, the feeding or ingestion rate increases as a power function of body length. The ingestion

rate of a *Daphnia* 2.5 mm long has been measured as $3\,\mu g\,C\,ind^{-1}\,h^{-1}$. Calculate the ingestion rate of a *Daphnia* 2 mm long, assuming an exponent of 2.3 in the length–ingestion rate relationship.

13 More is not always better: Explain why zooplankton feeding on a large biomass of nutrient-limited algae toward the end of a bloom might grow worse than zooplankton feeding on a smaller biomass of nutrient-replete algae at the beginning of a bloom.

14 The respiration rate of an amphipod of 0.7 mg dry mass has been measured as $0.09\,\mu mol\,O_2\,h^{-1}$. Estimate the respiration rate of an immature animal of 0.1 mg dry mass.

15 A fish pond is stocked with 2500 1-year-old carp (20 g each) on May 1. When the pond is drained on October 31, 1600 fish with an average weight of 250 g are recovered. Calculate the individual growth rate, the yield, and the total production. Estimate the amount of food consumed by the fishes during the season.

CHAPTER 5

Populations

5.1 Features of populations

Natural selection works on the phenotype that is carried by the individual. But, clearly, evolution does not take place at the level of the individual. For selection to occur, there must be a group of individuals that differ in their characteristics. Such a group of individuals of the same species that occupies a particular location at a given time is called a *population*.

The definition of a population is not a trivial point, because it can vary with the objective of the observer. In theory, all members of a species belong to one population; there is good reason, however, to view them as a collection of local populations. Groups of individuals that live in different geographical regions may very likely have very different selection pressures acting upon them. Thus it is useful to define a population as a group of individuals that form a *reproductive system* or *gene pool*. Most important is whether they actually interbreed, not whether it is theoretically possible. Individuals of a fish species in two different lakes, for example, can be viewed as two different populations, even though they belong to the same species and could easily reproduce if they were exchanged. Normally, however, there is no opportunity for the two populations to exchange. The fish in each lake form a reproductive system and can be seen as independent populations. This example makes two important points:

- A population is rarely completely closed; there is usually some degree of gene flow between populations.
- The space taken up by a population depends on the size and mobility of the species.

Scale is an important parameter for defining populations. For example, in a collection of small ponds each pond may have its own population of ostracods. Most frogs may return to their home pond for breeding, but there may still be some exchange between ponds. For more mobile species such as flying insects (e.g., dragonflies), specimens in all the ponds may be considered a single population; ducks that visit these ponds would be only part of a population that occupies a much larger region. In limnology the distinction is often clear, for the boundary between water and air effectively isolates many species, enabling distinct populations to develop in each water body.

Although lakes and ponds have a certain "island" character, populations of organisms that can move between ponds (e.g., amphibia, flying insects) or have other dispersal mechanisms (see Section 5.8) are often interconnected and form larger *metapopulations* with a geographical structure (Harrison and Taylor 1997). There are two extremes of possible metapopulations. Assemblages of small water bodies (ponds, rock pools) where the risk for extinction of a local population is high (e.g., when a pond dries out) can form a classical (Levins) metapopulation (Fig. 5.1A). Local extinctions can be random, but recolonization will appear from neighboring water bodies. Hence, the existence of local, interconnected populations assures the persistence of a species that may occur in a pond in one year, but not in the next, i.e., the geographical population structure changes continously. An alternative is the core–satellite (or mainland–island) population (Fig. 5.1B). This consists of a large, permanent lake where the extinction of species cannot happen by chance, and small water bodies in the neighborhood. If extinctions occur in the small ponds, recolonization will originate from the large lake source. Although gene flow from the small to the large system can occur, it will not be important for the large core population.

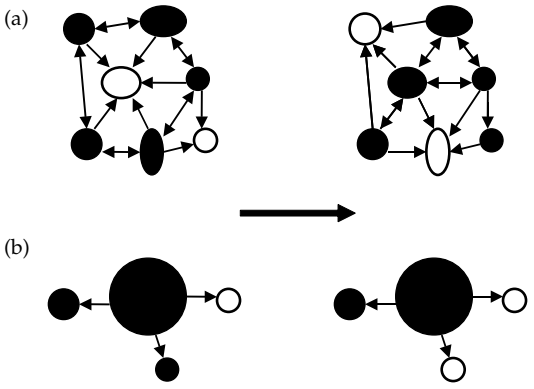


Figure 5.1 Schematic development of the structure of two types of metapopulations in time. Black and white areas symbolize isolated water bodies of different size and their spatial arrangement. Black areas are inhabited by a certain species while white areas are presently not inhabited due to local extinctions. Small arrows indicate routes of colonization. (a) classical (Levins) metapopulation spreading over many small ponds; (b) core–satellite metapopulation occupying a large lake (core) and adjacent ponds.

Berendonk (2002) demonstrated the two population models with two phantom midge species that live in the same area with many lakes and ponds. The relatively large larvae of *Chaoborus crystallinus* cannot exist in the presence of fish, as they are their preferred prey. Females can detect the "smell" of fish with receptors in their feet, and they avoid laying their eggs in "fishy" water. The larvae live in small, often temporary ponds where fish cannot live because of occasional drying or severe oxygen depletion. *C. crystallinus* form a classical metapopulation with frequent extinctions and recolonization. The rate of observed extinctions and recolonizations in a particular pond is dependent on the distance to the neighboring ponds, but the total metapopulation can be rather large, as the individual ponds serve as "stepping stones".

On the other hand, larvae of the smaller *Chaoborus flavicans* live in deep lakes, where they can coexist with fish by performing diel vertical migrations (see Fig. 7.12). They are also occasionally found in adjacent small ponds, but undergo frequent extinctions. The pond populations are genetically similar to the lake population as the ponds are colonized from the lake. The population structure is closer to a core–satellite metapopulation and the geographical size of the metapopulation is limited by the distance the short-lived midges can fly to deposit their eggs.

Even the concept of the population as reproductive system is not perfect. In fresh water there are many species, probably the majority, that rarely, if ever, reproduce bisexually. They reproduce by division or parthenogenesis. Except for the effect of mutations, such gene pools consist of a multitude of genetically uniform clones, rather than genetic recombinations. For practical reasons, we usually view these clones as a single species, even though they cannot cross. Under such conditions *subpopulations* can arise that differ in certain features, such as their ability to undergo diel vertical migrations.

Since populations consist of many individuals, they have characteristics relating to the totality of the individuals:

- They have a size or density that can change.
- They exhibit phenotypic or genotypic variation.
- They can have an age structure.
- They have a specific spatial distribution pattern.

5.2 Control of population size

5.2.1 Fluctuations in abundance

Ecologists usually describe a population in terms of the density of organisms in a defined surface area or volume of water (*abundance*), whereas a population geneticist would be interested in the total number of individuals in a population. With microorganisms one must sometimes assume that all individuals of the population are identical and substitute simpler measurements, such as units of biomass (dry weight, carbon, cell volume), or other surrogate parameters, such as chlorophyll, for phytoplankton biomass.

The abundance of populations changes temporally and spatially. Typical temporal patterns include irregular fluctuations around a more or less constant level, increases over long periods, decreases over long periods, cyclic *oscillations*, and occasionally explosive increases by populations that normally exist at a low level. Frequent and long-term observations are needed to depict the actual development of populations and are an important aspect of ecology (Edmondson 1991).

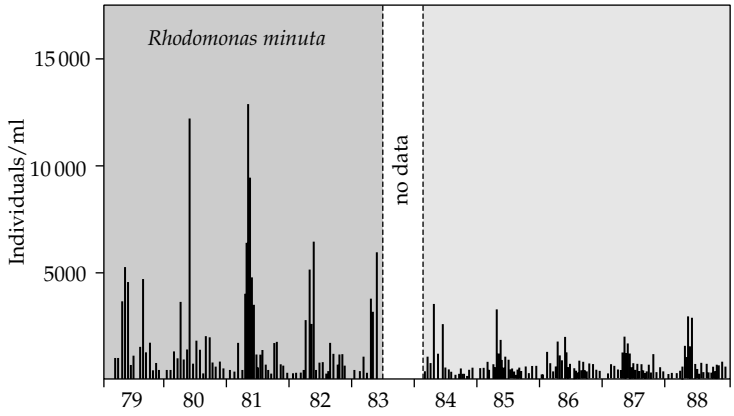


Figure 5.2 Long-term changes in the abundance of the phytoplankter *Rhodomonas minuta* in Lake Constance. Concentrations (no. ml^{-1}) are averages for the upper 20 m.

Phytoplankton densities in the temperate zone may fluctuate over four orders of magnitude with the seasons. Yearly maxima or averages may be relatively constant over a long period, or they may show well-defined trends (e.g., *Rhodomonas minuta* in Lake Constance after 1981, Fig. 5.2). Zooplankton, such as cladocerans and rotifers, also have similar yearly changes in population density, whereas planktonic bacteria generally have noticeably smaller fluctuations (about one order of magnitude).

Longer-lived species (higher plants, fish, mussels) usually fluctuate much less and over a time-scale of years. This is because these long-lived species consist of several year classes that compensate for "good" and "bad" years. These species may also show long-term trends. For example, reeds were only found in a few isolated locations in Lake Neusiedl (on the border between Austria and Hungary) in 1872. Gradually they spread, and today a dense population of reeds occupies half of the lake.

5.2.2 Mechanisms of change in abundance

It is not easy to identify the causes of population changes simply from the pattern and rates of fluctuations. Constant population density within the period of observations may actually indicate that the changes are very slow. If the reeds in Lake Neusiedl had been observed for only a few years, no changes would have been seen. It is also possible that a population is very *dynamic*, but appears static because the processes of population increase and decrease are in balance. This is likely the reason for the relatively small fluctuations of the bacterioplankton.

The most important process of increase is *reproduction*, that is, the birth of new individuals of multicellular species or the cell division of protists. A population can also increase through *import* of individuals from outside. This can occur by active immigration or by passive transport. Import for one population means *export* for the original population.

Individuals are not only born, imported, and exported; they also die. There are various causes for *mortality*, such as being eaten by predators or death due to disease, hunger, or lethal chemical and physical conditions. Multicellular organisms may die from old age not related to environmental conditions, but this does not occur in protists.

5.2.3 Population growth rate

We introduced growth rate in Section 4.3.3 as a way of characterizing the activity of organisms under natural conditions. The concept of *growth rate* is paramount for describing population dynamics and therefore must be clearly defined. For multicellular organisms, it is used to describe *numerical* (increase in numbers of individuals) as well as *somatic* growth of the individual (mass gain per unit time). The meaning of growth rate is usually clear from the context of its use; so most authors refrain

from referring more precisely to "body" or "population growth."

Zoologists generally use the term *growth rate* to mean the net change in abundance that result from additions and losses. For microbiologists and phytoplanktologists working with cultures, on the other hand, growth rate means the *rate of reproduction* (corresponding to μ; see Section 4.3.3), since there is negligible mortality in cultures lacking predators. This is equivalent to *birth rate* in zoological nomenclature. Phytoplanktologists who work in the field usually use *gross growth rate* for the reproduction rate and *net growth rate* to describe the observed changes in abundance.

Today, population growth rate is generally understood to mean *relative* (synonyms: *specific, per capita*) growth rate. This use refers to the temporal changes in a population expressed as numbers of individuals produced per individual and not the change in numbers per unit surface area or volume. An increase from 1 to 2 has the same growth rate as a change from 1000 to 2000. The (net) growth rate (r) is defined as:

$$r = \frac{\mathrm{d}N}{\mathrm{d}t}\frac{1}{N}$$

where t is time and N the number of individuals per surface area or volume. It has the dimension t^{-1}.

There are two different types of increase and loss: Multicellular organisms produce a series of offspring and then die, whereas unicellular organisms reproduce by division and are therefore potentially immortal. This has led to the use of two different sets of terms in reference to population growth rate. Ignoring import and export, the (net) growth rate can be defined as:

- In zoological terminology

$$r = b - d$$

where b is the *birth rate* and d the *death rate* (unit: t^{-1})

- In microbiological–phytoplanktological terminology

$$r = \mu - \lambda$$

where μ is the *gross growth rate* and λ symbolizes the *loss rate*.

The resulting *net growth rate* can be either positive (increasing abundance) or negative (decreasing abundance).

If a population grows at a constant growth rate, its size can be calculated for a future time (N_t) based on its initial size (N_1), the time interval, and the growth rate. If the population grows in discrete steps, the growth can be expressed geometrically:

$$N_t = N_1(1 + R)^{(t-1)} = N_1(N_2/N_1)^{(t-1)} \ldots N_t$$

This formula can be used, for example, if the births occur at a particular time of the year or are in some other way synchronized at regular intervals. In each of the time intervals the population increases by a certain fraction (R) of the existing population. The time interval in the exponents must be an integer multiple of the time interval between the two reproductive periods. The formula can only be applied when the organisms develop in discrete generations (*cohorts*) that can be clearly distinguished. Examples of this include fish and insects that have one generation per year or copepods with long development times and few nonoverlapping generations per year (see Section 5.2.6).

Often births and deaths occur randomly through time, and there are thus no discrete pulses in population growth. Population changes then follow a smooth exponential curve rather than the stepwise curve of the geometric series. This can be expressed as an extreme case of geometric growth, with an infinite number of small time intervals:

$$N_2 = N_1 \mathrm{e}^{r(t_2 - t_1)}$$

An exponential population curve can be changed to a straight line plot by a log transformation of the abundance. The population growth rate can then be estimated from the logarithms of the abundance:

$$r = (\ln N_2 - \ln N_1)/(t_2 - t_1)$$

Doubling time, the time it takes for a given population density to double in size, is frequently used as a graphic measure of the intensity of reproduction. Since the natural log of 2 is 0.69, an r of $0.69\,\mathrm{d}^{-1}$ is the same as one doubling per day and an r of $-0.69\,\mathrm{d}^{-1}$ describes a population decreasing by

50% per day. The doubling time of an increasing population (t_d) is $\ln 2/r$.

5.2.4 Exponential and logistic growth

A population cannot continue to exist if its net growth rate is always negative. It follows that all species that exist today have to be capable of positive growth rate under certain conditions; that is, they must be able to produce more offspring than are lost through mortality and export. When the growth rate is constant, the abundance follows an increasingly steep exponential curve (see Box 4.2). Obviously, even a slow-growing species would eventually completely overpopulate its habitat, so it is not possible to have unlimited exponential growth. Exponential growth that is sustained for some time occurs only in special situations, such as the new colonization of an environment free of competitors, the recolonization of a habitat following a catastrophic event, or the inoculation of batch cultures of microorganisms. Normally, there is an upper limit for the population density due to a limit in available resources. This is referred to as the *carrying capacity* of a population.

There are two ways of keeping a population below the carrying capacity:

- *Density-independent limitation*: This occurs when the exponential growth is interrupted by external factors that are unaffected by the density of the population. These factors represent "catastrophes" for the population. They could be sudden changes in physical conditions (temperature, conditions during lake circulation, washout due to flooding, drying out of the system) or rapid chemical changes (e.g., poisons). Population control exclusively by population-independent factors is only possible if the catastrophic events occur frequently enough to keep the population from approaching its carrying capacity. This control is most important in disturbed habitats. Population-independent regulation does not, however, lead to nearly constant population levels, since catastrophes occur randomly.
- *Density-dependent regulation*: Regulatory mechanisms that reduce the net growth rate of increasing populations are called density dependent. They can affect either the reproductive rate or the rate of mortality. Increasingly scarce resources with increasing population level can reduce the reproductive rate (resource limitation) as well as increasing the mortality (lower life expectancy, starvation). Mortality is the critical factor when high population density leads to higher risks of infection by parasites and disease, or to a shift in predator preference to the most frequent prey species. The effect of parasites and predators is usually dependent on the absolute density, whereas the effect of resource limitation usually depends on the relationship between population abundance and carrying capacity. Density regulation for mobile animals may also involve emigration.

Density-dependent factors can be viewed as genuine regulators, for they keep the abundance of a population near the carrying capacity. If the population exceeds the carrying capacity, the growth rate becomes negative and the population decreases. Below the carrying capacity, the growth rate becomes positive and leads to a population increase. The size of the positive or negative growth rate depends on the distance of the population density from the carrying capacity. The simplest mathematical expression for density-dependent regulation is the logistic growth curve introduced in Section 4.3.3. In most of the literature, r with a numerical index for the species is used to denote the (maximal) growth rates at population densities close to zero. For the sake of consistency with the use of the symbol r in population dynamics, where r just means the instantaneous net growth rate, we prefer here to use the symbol r_{max}:

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = r_{max}N(K-N)/K \text{ or } N_t = \frac{K}{(1+[(k-N_0)/N_0]e^{-r_{max}t})}$$

The negative feedback between the population density and the net growth rate sometimes involves *time lags*. For example, the number of eggs produced may depend on the amount of resources available, but the offspring first begin using the resource after a certain period of development. A population may produce more offspring than the food resources can support. The food requirements of the population then exceed the carrying capacity, and the growth rate declines proportionately.

Such time lags lead to regular population oscillations around the carrying capacity (Fig. 5.3). The effect of time lags can be expressed as:

$$\frac{dN_t}{dt} = r_{max}N_t(K - N_{t-T})/K$$

where T is the lag period and t the time at which N is measured.

Oscillations around the carrying capacity may or may not eventually dampen, depending on the length of the time lag (Fig. 5.4). In this way population densities may undergo many types of fluctuations independent of outside forces. The product of r and T is critical in determining the shape of the curve. Stable oscillations with a constant amplitude develop if rT is larger than $\omega/2$. Curves with steep peaks of short duration and long periods between them arise when there are long time lags ($rT \approx 2$). There is the danger to a population that during these long periods of very low density random events may lead to its extinction ("random extinction").

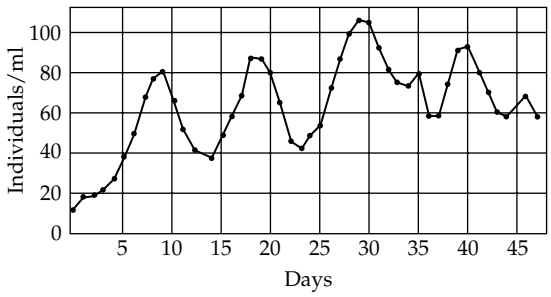


Figure 5.3 Regular population oscillations in a culture of the rotifer *Brachionus calyciflorus* with daily renewal of the culture medium and a constant amount of food (from Halbach 1969).

5.2.5 The generation of deterministic chaos by density-dependent regulation

The classic form of the logistic growth curve assumes continuous reproduction, just as the exponential growth curve in the absence of density regulation. For populations where reproductive events occur in synchronized pulses, a stepwise version of the growth curve might be more realistic. In this case, the logistic growth equation is:

$$\frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t} = \frac{R_{max}NK - N}{K}$$

where R is the relative rate of increase from step to step or $(1 - N_2/N_1)$ at infinitely small values of N. For many freshwater organisms such as fish and aquatic insects, the length of the time interval (T) is 1 year.

The behavior of the growth curve depends on the product of RT. At $RT < 1$ the abundance gradually approaches the carrying capacity (Fig. 5.5). Between $RT = 1$ and 2 there are damped oscillations between one value above K and one value below K. If $RT > 2$,

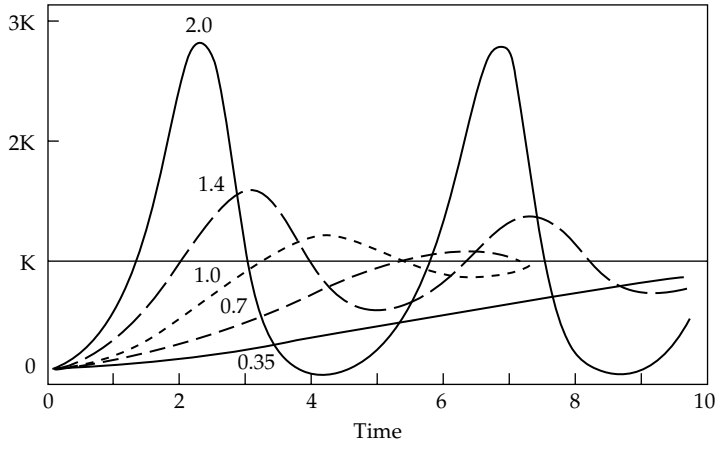


Figure 5.4 Population growth according to a logistic growth curve with a lag period T. Curves represent various products of $r_{max}T$. K, carrying capacity (from Hutchinson 1978).

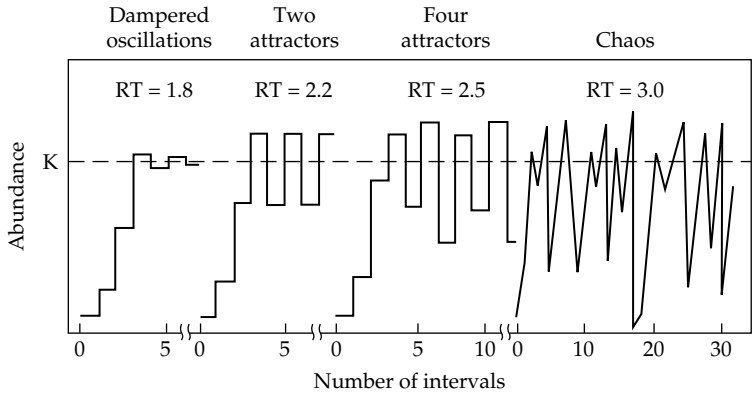


Figure 5.5 Fluctuations in the abundance of a population around the carrying capacity (K) at various values of RT (R, relative rate of population increase; T, time lag). Note that at $RT = 3.0$ the population changes around the carrying capacity become irregular.

there is no damping, but stable oscillations between two "attractors" (one $<K$, one $>K$). If $RT > 2.4495$, the time series becomes more complicated. The number of attractors between which N oscillates increases to 4 ("period doubling"). Further period doubling occurs at $RT = 2.56$ (8 attractors) and at 2.569 (16 attractors).

If $RT > 2.5699$, the growth curve loses its periodicity and becomes completely irregular. Because it is produced from a completely deterministic equation, the resulting pattern is called *deterministic chaos* (May 1974). Before the discovery of deterministic chaos, irregular fluctuations were usually explained as the effect of random factors. Irregularity is no longer a feature that can be used to distinguish between determinism and randomness.

According to the concept of deterministic chaos, even small differences in the initial conditions of an experiment can result in major differences after some time has passed in the experiment. This phenomenon, known as *weak causality*, leads to the question of whether true replicates have indeed been used in an experiment. Strictly speaking, experimental replicates must have identical initial conditions that, in turn, lead to identical results. In most sciences, and especially in ecology, where there is much variability, this concept of replication cannot be strictly adhered to.

The discussion of deterministic chaos has relatively recently entered theoretical ecology (May 1974). It has been found that other relatively simple models besides the stepwise version of the logistic growth equation (e.g., predator–prey models with three populations) produce chaotic behavior if parameter values are chosen appropriately. At present the question of the importance of deterministic chaos in real-life ecological processes is still unresolved (Scheffer 1991). Some scientists consider it the new paradigm of complex systems analysis, while others simply view it as a game mathematical modelers play.

Experimental evidence for deterministic chaos is still rare, and restricted to very simple systems. Recently, Becks *et al*. (2005) demonstrated chaos in populations consisting of two bacterial species and one ciliate feeding on the bacteria. The two species of bacteria competed for dissolved resources (cf. see Section 6.1). The ciliate predator fed preferentially on the bacterial species with the better competitive ability. Hence, the predator prevented one prey species from outcompeting the other. The three species were cultured in chemostats (see Box 4.2) under constant conditions. The flow rate of the chemostat controls the growth rate of the organisms under equilibrium conditions. The dynamic behavior of the system over time (i.e., the changing numbers of organisms and their relative contributions) depended strongly on the preset flow rates. At the highest flow rates (higher than the maximum growth rate of one species of bacteria), one species went extinct and the remaining predator and prey reached a stable equilibrium. A stable equilibrium of all three species developed at slightly lower flow rates. At the lowest flow rates,

all three species fluctuated in regular cycles (stable limit cycles, see Section 6.3.2). However, the fluctuations became completely irregular at intermediate flow rates. Mathematical analysis of the fluctuations showed that no regularities could be detected, i.e., the behavior of the system was chaotic.

5.2.6 The concept of dynamic equilibrium or steady state

The fact that a population maintains its density at a constant level near the carrying capacity does not mean that the processes of population dynamics have stopped. It only means that reproduction (plus import) and mortality (plus export) are in balance. There is constant replacement of the population, without a change in its density. One can imagine this type of dynamic equilibrium or "steady state" occurring at the level of abiotic resources. Chemical substances can be simultaneously used and regenerated by import (solubilization, excretion by organisms). A population of autotrophs can be in steady state only when there is also a steady state of the limiting abiotic resources.

Although a perfect steady state is rarely if ever found in nature, this concept has become important in ecological modeling. Even only moderately complex models often can be solved analytically only by assuming equilibrium conditions ($dN/dt = 0$). Often transition conditions can only be calculated by numerical simulation. The most perfect experimental approach to the concept of steady state is the chemostat culture of microorganisms (see Section 4.3.3). Resource regeneration is provided by import of medium into the culture vessels and mortality occurs as export of organisms through the outflow (see Box 4.2).

Conditions similar to the steady state of a chemostat are sometimes found during the summer in the epilimnion of stratified lakes. Despite high rates of photosynthesis, there may be little change in the biomass of the phytoplankton. The newly formed organic matter is eliminated at about the same rate as it is formed and therefore does not accumulate. This also applies to individual populations of phytoplankton: The actual increases remain well behind the rate of cell division. While new phytoplankton are being formed by cell divisions, they are also being eaten, killed by parasites, sinking out of the epilimnion, or dying from stress conditions at roughly the same rate. Zooplankton populations are also very similar. Even chemical substances that cannot reproduce, in contrast to organisms, can approach steady-state conditions: Changes in concentration are the net result of consumption processes (uptake by phytoplankton) and supply processes (excretion by zooplankton, addition from inflow, mixing from the hypolimnion).

Zooplankton have a role similar to that of the flow-through in a chemostat. The more algae they eat, the more nutrients they excrete (phsophorus as orthophosphate, nitrogen as ammonium and urea). This is analogous to the chemostat, in which increased flow rate causes increased removal of algae and a proportionate increase in the supply of nutrients.

5.2.7 Estimating the parameters of population dynamics

Phytoplankton and other protists

The gross growth rate (μ) can be determined most easily in cultures in which population losses are either excluded or experimentally controlled. When there are no population losses, μ can be estimated simply from changes in the population density (N_1, N_2) between two observation times (t_1, t_2):

$$\mu = (\ln N_2 - \ln N_1)/(t_2 - t_1)$$

where μ is a function of the limiting resource (see Box 4.2). The resource-saturated ("maximum") growth rate (μ_{max}) is a species-specific parameter that is also dependent on the temperature. The maximum growth rates of planktonic algae at 20 °C vary from *c*.0.25 d^{-1} (large dinoflagellates) to 2.5 d^{-1} (very small green algae and cyanobacteria). The maximum growth rate generally decreases as the cell or colony size increases. This trend only holds, however, over a wide range of sizes of many orders of magnitude in cell volume, and not for a comparison of two species whose volumes differ by less than two orders of magnitude (Banse 1982).

Population losses can never be excluded under natural conditions. Thus only the net growth rate (r) can be observed in the field (see Section 5.2.3).

It consists of both the reproduction rate (μ) and the loss rate (λ) and can also be negative:

$$r = \mu - \lambda$$

The loss rate can be divided into various parts, all of possible importance:

$$\lambda = \gamma + \sigma + \delta + \pi + \omega$$

where γ is the grazing rate (loss due to feeding by zooplankton); σ, the sedimentation rate; δ, the physiological mortality; π, the mortality from parasites; and ω, the washout loss to the outflow.

It is possible to determine r directly from counts, but in most cases it is extremely difficult to include all components of the equation. Rarely is it possible to measure the gross growth rate in the field directly. One of the most reliable field methods involves determining the frequency of dividing cells (*mitotic index*; Braunwarth and Sommer 1985).

The sedimentation rate (σ) can be estimated from the rate of sinking (v_s) and the average depth of mixing (z) (see Section 4.2.6). If there are no data available for the sinking rates, one can directly measure the losses due to sedimentation by suspending sediment traps just beneath the euphotic zone (Sommer 1984). Cells that collected in open tubes over a period of days are then counted. For example, a sedimentation rate (V_s/z) of $0.5\,d^{-1}$ would be in the same range as nutrient- or light-limited growth rates for phytoplankton (see Section 4.2.6). Even with relatively high levels of resources, it is difficult for heavy algae such as diatoms and desmids to stay in the epilimnion, especially if the mixing depth is shallow. If, on the other hand, the mixing depth were 10 times as large as the daily sinking distance, sedimentation could cause a collapse of the population only under extreme resource limitation (i.e., low growth rates).

Grazing rates (γ) are estimated from the clearance rate (filtering rate) of the total zooplankton community (G) and the coefficient of selectivity (w) for the specific alga that is being considered:

$$\gamma = Gw$$

The total zooplankton clearance rate describes the proportion of the water volume that is cleared of particles, assuming that the food particles are eaten optimally ($w = 1$). It is the sum of all the individual clearance rates (individuals/volume) and has the dimension t^{-1}. The term *filtering* is used to mean the removal of algae, even though many zooplankton do not actually filter their food (see Section 6.4.1). Clearance rate is a preferable term, as it does not imply a specific feeding mechanism. The coefficient of selectivity corrects for the differences in the edibility of different algal species. The grazing rate on species i is calculated relative to the grazing rate on the most edible algal species:

$$w_i = \gamma_i / \gamma_{opt}$$

It is difficult to estimate grazing rates accurately, since the coefficient of selectivity varies for different species of phytoplankton as well as for each species and growth stage of the zooplankton. This is least problematic for those species of phytoplankton that can be eaten optimally or nearly optimally by most zooplankton, such as flagellates and thin-walled coccal algae 3–30 μm in size. These phytoplankton may experience grazing rates of up to $2.5\,d^{-1}$ or more during periods of maximum zooplankton biomass (Haney 1973, Lampert 1988a). This is equivalent to a daily population loss of 91.8% due to grazing alone ($N_1 = N_0 \times e^{-2.5} = N_0 \times 0.082$). Most algal species cannot reproduce rapidly enough to compensate for such high losses, so grazing can eliminate even phytoplankton populations that have optimal nutrient and light conditions.

Physiological mortality (δ) can be determined only if recognizable remains of dead plankton, such as empty shells of diatoms, can be found. The bodies or "corpses" sinking out of the epilimnion can be captured in sedimentation traps. Physiological mortality is an undefinable mixture of processes. *Mortality due to parasitism* (π) is also included in δ, because at present there is no way to distinguish those cells that have died because of parasites.

Losses due to washout (ω) can be estimated from the ratio of outflow to volume of the epilimnion. In most lakes this is a comparatively unimportant process, although it can become significant during periods of flooding, such as following a snow melt.

There are major species differences in the importance of the different loss factors (Fig. 5.6). Flagellates < 30 μm, for example, are especially susceptible to grazing, but sink very slowly; large colonial diatoms are hardly grazed, but sink rapidly

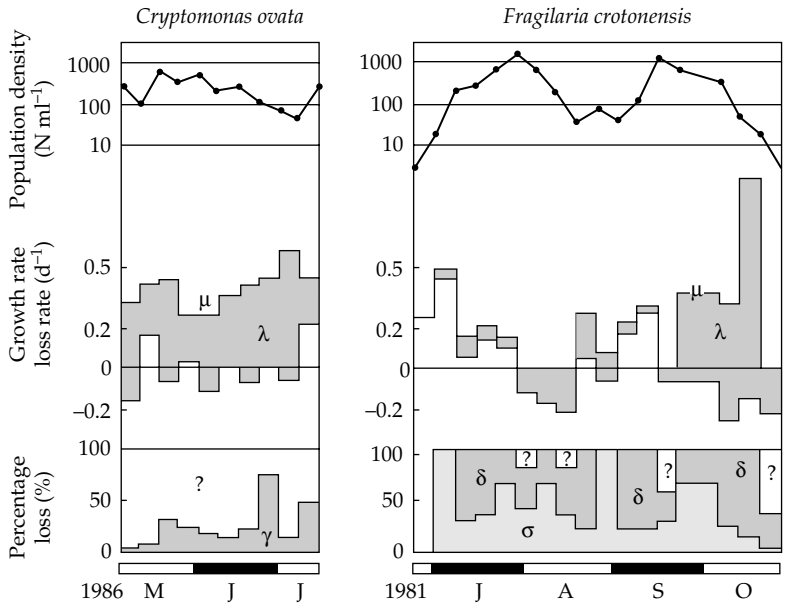


Figure 5.6 Comparison of the population dynamics of highly edible nonsinking flagellates (*Cryptomonas ovata*; from Braunwarth 1988) with an almost completely inedible rapidly sinking diatom (*Fragilaria crotonensis*; from Sommer 1984) in Lake Constance. *Top:* Population density in the euphotic zone. *Middle*: Gross growth rate (μ), net growth rate (r), and loss rate (g; difference between μ and r). *Bottom*: Percentage contribution of each component to the loss rate: g, grazing by daphniids; s, sedimentation; d, physiological death, in this case caused mainly by parasites; ?, unexplained losses.

and are often parasitized. The loss factors for large, motile dinoflagellates that are resistant to both grazing and sedimentation are not yet understood.

It is rarely possible to determine all the components of the population dynamics of phytoplankton in nature. There are also large errors in many of the measurable parameters (counting errors, sampling error due to patchiness, errors in measuring sinking rates, coefficients of selectivity, etc.). Because of these problems, other approaches are often used. With enclosures (see Fig. 2.1b) a particular parameter can be held constant and the changes compared with the control. For example, grazing effects can be eliminated by removing the zooplankton; fungicides can be used to suppress parasitism by fungi; the enclosure can be mixed artificially to avoid the effects of sedimentation. Care must be taken, since any reduction in loss factors will lead to an increase in biomass. This, in turn, may cause an increase in the effect of resource limitation of μ, so that the gross growth rates in the control and manipulated treatment are no longer identical.

Animals

Changes in the animal populations are also the result of processes of reproduction and loss (see Section 5.2.3). The growth rate of a population (r) results from the difference in birth rates (b) and death rates (d):

$$r = b - d$$

In contrast to bacteria, protozoans, and algae, one can distinguish the juvenile, reproductive, and adult stages of most aquatic animals. Thus birth rate can often be measured directly, although usually there is no way of obtaining reliable estimates of death rate and its various components (predation, natural death). The death rate in such instances can be estimated from the difference between birth rate and the growth rate of the population.

It is important to consider two different modes of reproduction:

Discrete reproduction Some animals reproduce in discrete pulses, producing individual age classes or

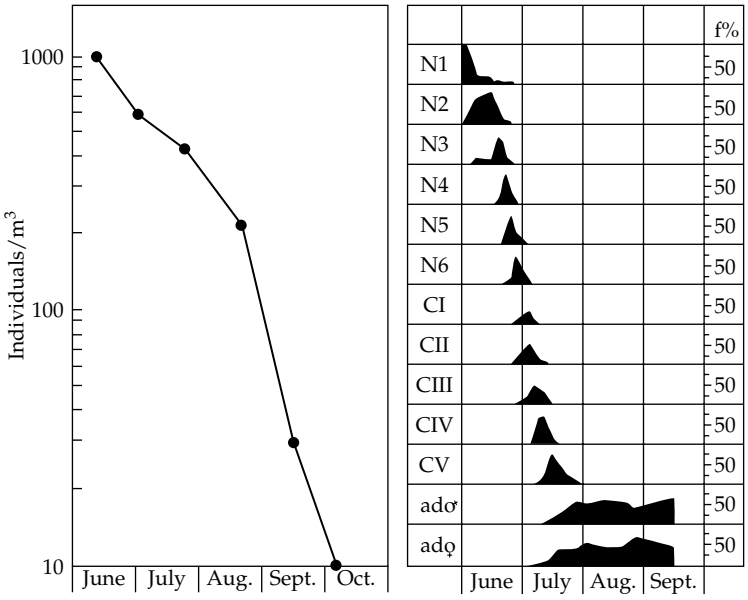


Figure 5.7 Typical development of a cohort. The calanoid copepod *Heterocope saliens* has only one generation per year in the Norwegian Lake Øvre Heimdalsvatn. The nauplii hatch in June. *Left*: Decrease in the number of copepods throughout the summer. *Right*: Temporal appearance of the various stages. (from Larsson 1978).

cohorts that can be tracked. The simplest situation is if each animal reproduces only once during its life and the reproduction of all the individuals is synchronous. Many insects, some copepods, and the Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus*) follow this pattern. By following each cohort, from the hatching of the young to the dealth of the adults, the parameters of the population changes can be estimated directly. Theoretically, it is enough to get two measurements of the population density during the time the young are produced. However, if it is possible to follow what happens to a cohort, valuable additional information, such as the mortality rates of the different stages, can be obtained. Figure 5.7 shows an example of a cohort of copepods that reproduce only once per year. It is easy to see how the population density decreases as the cohort of the copepod gets older. Species with several synchronized generations per year show a similar pattern.

The situation is more complex for long-lived animals that produce several times in their life, but in discrete pulses. An example of this type of reproduction is a fish species in the temperate zone that spawns once a year. Here the population consists of many year classes that form cohorts. It is possible to determine the exact cohort age by capturing a fish and counting the growth rings on its scales, otoliths (ear bones), or other bones. Using this information one can estimate the average death rate of the population, even without precise estimates of the total population size. As long as one has a sample that is representative of all the age classes, the relative age distribution is sufficient to permit an estimate of the death rate, averaged over several years. In the example shown in Fig. 5.8, whitefish (*Coregonus* sp.) were examined in an unfished population in Schluchsee, a lake in the Black Forest (Germany). Relative age classes were determined based on samples of fish captured in a gill net with variable size meshes. For fish older than 3 years, there is a linear decrease in the logarithm of the proportion of each age class in the population with age class. The first two year-classes are underestimated by the use of gill nets, which do not capture small fish efficiently.

Since we are dealing with cohorts, any newly hatched fish will belong to the age class 0. Thus all other age classes can only decrease with time. In this case $r = d$ and the negative slope of the regression line provides an estimate of the death rate. In the example above, the death rate was $0.87\,a^{-1}$,

which corresponds to a loss of about 58% of the population per year. The variability of data around the regression line is caused by measurement errors as well as fluctuations in the size of each of the age classes, brought about by variable reproductive success.

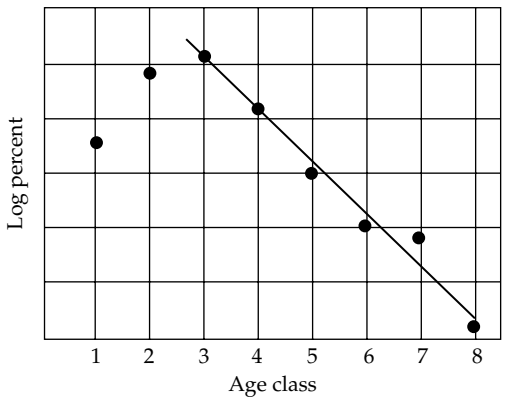


Figure 5.8 The composition of age classes of a population of whitefish *Coregonus* sp. in Schluchsee (Black Forest, Germany). The annual loss rates were determined by regression of the age classes 3–8. The age classes 0–2 are not quantitatively represented. (from Lampert 1971).

Continuous reproduction Animals with frequent reproduction and overlapping generations lack cohorts and have *continuous reproduction*. It is impossible to determine from a field sample which young came from which adults. Both birth rates, in response to food, and death rates, in response to predators, can change rapidly in such populations.

Many zooplankton with continuous reproduction also carry their eggs with them, and these can easily be enumerated. Since the mothers do not provide the eggs with nutrition during their incubation, the time to hatching is determined by the temperature at which the mothers were living. The relationship between temperature and egg development time can be determined experimentally. Egg development time decreases with increasing temperature (cf. Section 4.2.1). By knowing the number of eggs per animal and the temperature at which the animals resided, we can calculate the *instantaneous birth rate* (Box 5.1). The development

Box 5.1 Calculation of the birth rate for continuous reproduction by the egg-ratio method

The instantaneous birth rate for continuous reproduction can be estimated by the *egg-ratio method*. The principle can be most easily explained by the procedure introduced by Edmondson (1968). It assumes a uniform age distribution of eggs—that is, there are equal proportions of eggs from each age class, freshly laid eggs as well as nearly developed embryos. In that case, a certain proportion of eggs will hatch in each time interval. This proportion equals the ratio of the time interval to the time needed by an egg for complete development (egg development time D). For example, if the egg development time is 3 days, then at the end of day 1 all eggs will have hatched that were >2 days old at the beginning of the day—that is, one-third ($1/D$). The number of eggs in the population does not decrease during this period because hatched eggs will be replaced by freshly laid ones. If the average number of eggs carried per animal (egg ratio) is E, we can predict the proportional increase of the population as:

$$B = E/D$$

This proportion is called the *finite birth rate*. In fact, eggs hatch at any moment, not in daily pulses. Hence, we must consider infinitely small time intervals to estimate the *instantaneous birth rate* (b). If mortality is zero, the instantaneous birth rate will equal the rate of population increase:

$$b = r \quad \text{or} \quad b = (\ln N_2 - \ln N_1)/t.$$

Edmondson used an approximation to relate B to b. If $N_1 = 1$, then 1 day later $N_2 = 1 + B$. The formula above will then read:

$$b = [\ln(1 + B) - \ln 1]/1 = \ln(1 + B) \quad \text{or}$$

$$b = \ln(1 + E/D).$$

This is only an approximation, as it is not a mathematically correct integration because the age distribution of eggs is not uniform in growing or declining populations. The correct formula, which is now widely used to calculate instantaneous birth rates, was given by Paloheimo (1974):

$$b = \ln(E + 1)/D \quad (\text{dimension } d^{-1}).$$

of this concept has been discussed by Edmondson (1993). Although several models have been proposed for the estimation of the instantaneous birth rate, the formula given by Paloheimo (1974)

$$b = \ln(E + 1)/D$$

has proved to be the most robust against violations of the underlying assumptions (e.g., uniform age distribution) and is easy to use (Gabriel *et al*. 1987). The instantaneous birth rate can be estimated if the number of eggs and embryos in the population can be counted and the number of female animals D obtained from the literature (e.g., Bottrell *et al*. 1976), as long as the ambient temperature experienced by the eggs is known. The average temperature may be difficult to determine if the ambient temperature changes in a diel cycle in very shallow ponds, or because egg-carrying females migrate vertically in a temperature gradient (see Section 6.8.4).

For continuously reproducing species, we can use two sequential measurements of population density to determine the population growth rate (r), as discussed earlier for the algae:

$$r = (\ln N_2 - \ln N_1)/(t_2 - t_1)$$

where N_1 and N_2 are the population densities at the times t_1 and t_2.

There is no direct method for measuring death rates, and they must be estimated from the difference: $d = b - r$. To calculate birth and death rates of animals with continuous reproduction, it is necessary to make population measurements over short time intervals (a few days). It is therefore possible to observe seasonal changes in the population parameters and attempt to relate them to changes in the environment. *Daphnia* are good examples of populations with continuous reproduction. The birth rate of *Daphnia longispina* (Fig. 5.9) is high in the early spring, since the number of eggs per animal is high during the spring pulse of algae. As the clear-water phase develops (see Section 6.4) and the food conditions for the *Daphnia* worsen, the egg number and therefore the birth rate decline. Birth rate increases in the summer, but as a response to high temperatures and shortened development times and not because of high egg numbers. The death rate is low at first, but becomes as high as the birth rate later in the summer when there are many predators. This results in population growth rates (the difference between birth and death rates) that are high in the spring and low in the summer. If r approaches zero, there is no change in population size. Accordingly, the *Daphnia* population in Fig. 5.9 shows little change in July and August.

Figure 5.9 illustrates several problems with the estimation of death rates. Negative death rates appear in the spring, although technically these are not possible. The likely reason is that the death rate itself was not actually measured, but calculated from ($b - r$). Thus all errors that were made in estimating b and r accumulate in d. Hatching of young *Daphnia* from resting eggs deposited in the lake sediments the previous season and not included in the egg counts of the population would contribute to the negative death rate, as the population would grow more rapidly than the birth rate predicts. Other reasons include nonuniform egg age distribution, incorrect estimates of egg development time, or incorrect estimates of r due to low abundance and patchiness.

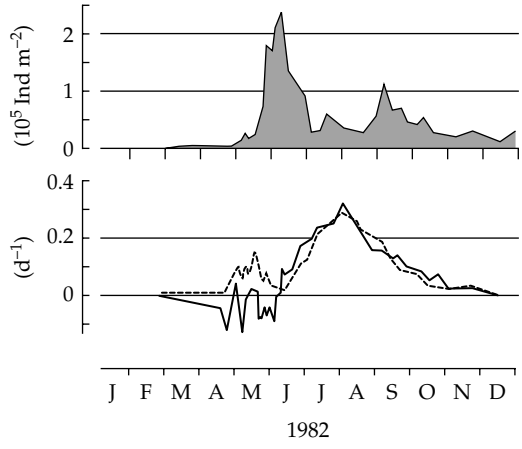


Figure 5.9 The population dynamics of *Daphnia longispina* in Schöhsee (Holstein, Germany). *Top:* Seasonal changes in abundance. *Bottom*: Birth rates (dashed line) and death rates (solid line). (from Lampert 1988b).

5.3 Ecological genetics

5.3.1 Phenotypic and genotypic variability

Phenotypic and genotypic variability are important features of populations. Individuals in a population are not all identical. Part of the variability is caused by individual genetic differences. A gene occupying a certain place on the DNA (*locus*) can be represented in different forms (*alleles*). Hence individuals in a population differ slightly in their genetic properties (*genotypes*). These lead to different reactions (*differential reaction norms*) under the same environmental conditions, which are inheritable. Variability is also caused by the fact that identical genotypes (with identical reaction norms) have not all been living under the same environmental conditions. Thus, identical genotypes may look or behave differently (*phenotypes*). Such environmental *modifications* do not alter the genome and are therefore not hereditary.

If we consider natural selection as the driving force of evolution, then we must be concerned with the selection of inheritable traits. Clearly, selection works upon a population of phenotypes that respond to environmental factors, but these phenotypes are an expression of the corresponding genotypes. Thus evolution can take place only when there is genetic variability. Ecological physiologists may be interested solely in the phenotypic reactions and adaptations of organisms to environmental conditions, but the ecological geneticist must be interested in the effects of environmental factors on the gene pool of a population—that is, natural selection.

The approach can be easily illustrated with an example: There are many highly productive farm ponds in Illinois (USA). The high nutrient levels lead to extremely high densities of algae in the summer. In the day, there is much primary production in the surface water, but in the deep water and at night also in the surface water there is severe oxygen depletion. The cladoceran *Daphnia pulex* is a common inhabitant of these ponds. Under low oxygen conditions they have the ability to form hemoglobin, which allows them to extract oxygen out of the water, even at extremely low concentrations. It is easy to recognize the poor oxygen conditions in the summer by the pink color of the normally pale *Daphnia*. This is a phenotypic reaction.

A population of parthenogenetically reproducing *Daphnia* in a pond consists of many clones. Each clone consists of genetically identical individuals and differs from the other clones. Some clones are able to produce significantly more hemoglobin than others, under the same conditions. Hence, the genotype of an individual decides how much hemoglobin can be produced, but the environmental conditions determine how much of this ability is being utilized, i.e., how reddish an individual will be under certain conditions (phenotype). Population genetic methods such as allozyme electrophoresis can be used to demonstrate that throughout the summer there is an increase in frequency of clones that produce much hemoglobin and a decrease in the other clones (Weider and Lampert 1985). This is evidence that there has been a shift in the genetic composition of the population: We have observed the process of natural selection. Note, however, that no genotype has disappeared, for there was only a shift in the relative composition of the population. Although genotypes that do not produce much hemoglobin are rare, they survive in habitats that still have tolerable conditions, such as close to the surface of the pond. There appear to be costs for maintaining high hemoglobin (energy, higher visibility to predators). Thus the other genotypes will have an advantage when the oxygen conditions improve, and from fall to spring there will be a shift in genotype distribution back to the low hemoglobin producers.

Recently, many ecologists have begun to investigate the *genetic structure* of populations to get a better understanding of the selective factors and the mechanisms regulating the distribution and gene exchange between populations. Genetic variability means that certain characteristics of the organism can be expressed to differing degrees. For example, if one gene appears in several alleles, it is referred to as *polymorphic*. If a locus appears as two alleles, a and b, a diploid individual can have any one of the three possible genotypes aa, ab, or bb. The relative occurrence of an allele in a population is called its *frequency*. For example, if allele a occurs in 10% of all of the individuals investigated, it would have a frequency of $p = 0.1$. Allele b must have a frequency of $q = 0.9$, for there are only two alleles, and $p + q$ must equal 1. The relative frequency of certain

genotypes (*gene frequency*) depends on the frequency of the alleles. Under equilibrium conditions genotype frequencies follow the Hardy–Weinberg law; that is, the frequency of genotypes follows the equation:

$$1 = p^2 + 2pq + q^2$$

This holds only for ideal conditions, in which:

- the population is large
- all individuals have equal opportunity to reproduce
- there is no mutation
- there is no natural selection, and
- there is no immigration or emigration.

Note that there will be no evolution in a population in which all these conditions are found. Certainly, natural conditions in freshwater systems rarely meet these conditions. If the conditions are not fulfilled, identification of the causes for the deviation from the Hardy–Weinberg equilibrium can suggest which selective forces are at work.

Ecologists are usually interested in two aspects of population genetics: *genetic diversity* and *genetic differentiation*. Genetic diversity describes the genetic variability within a population, just like species diversity on the community level (see Section 7.4). It is important for stabilizing populations under fluctuating environmental change, and for the response of populations to persistent changes of the environment (microevolution, see Section 5.3.4). Genetic differentiation compares the similarities or dissimilarities of populations, i.e., it is an inter-population feature. It can provide information on colonization processes, gene flow by dispersal, and local selection pressure (local adaptation).

5.3.2 Estimating genetic variability

Most morphological characteristics of organisms are controlled by several genes. It is rarely possible to distinguish clearly between alleles, since there is also phenotypic variability. The genetic structure of populations can be measured by testing the response of individuals (or clones) in "common garden" experiments where they are all kept under carefully controlled, identical environmental conditions. Apart from some unavoidable experimental noise, the differences in the individual performance reflect differences in genotypes. An example of such an approach was given in Fig. 4.3, where clones isolated from the same pond were subjected to different temperatures. The individual reaction norms differ, particularly at high temperatures (heat stress). This technique is extremely laborious, and it reveals only information about the trait under study. Nevertheless, it is still the only way of studying genetic variation of specific traits, which is of great interest if we want to predict consequences of environmental change.

However, all genetic information is contained in nuclear or mitochondrial DNA. Recent years have seen enormous progress in techniques for reading the structure of DNA, and this development has spawned numerous molecular genetic tools, which can be applied to answer ecological questions. Comparing the structure and amino acid sequence of certain portions of nucleic acids or their primary products (proteins) between individuals, clones, and species provides direct evidence for the amount of genetic variability within a population, the genetic relatedness (*kin*) of individuals, and the similarities or differences between groups and species. Only in exceptional cases is it possible to assign a functional role to genes studied in a population genetic context. Molecular data are used to identify patterns in genetic variability, not its function. The segments of DNA or the proteins under study are selected for practical reasons. They are *molecular markers*. Many molecular markers are now available to be used as powerful tools for population genetics, population ecology, evolutionary ecology, and phylogeography (Avise 2004). Such studies using molecular tools are often called *molecular ecology*, although they do not deal with the ecology of molecules (Moya and Font 2004). This is a turbulent time in the development of ecological genetics. It is of great importance that ecologists bridge the gap between descriptive population genetics, which describes the temporal and spatial changes in genetic structure of populations, and ecophysiology, which attempts to quantify fitness.

There are many different methods for revealing genetic markers, and details may be found in specialized books (e.g., Avise 2004). They range from protein electrophoresis (*allozymes*) to DNA-based

methods. The development of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification of DNA fragments has made DNA analysis available for very small sample sizes. However, no single method is ideally suited for all purposes. Allozyme analysis detects primarily changes in amino acid composition of proteins, i.e., variation in the coding regions of DNA. Nucleic acid based methods provide many more possibilities as they detect not only changes in amino acid sequence but also structural changes of the DNA, e.g., deletions, additions, and rearrangements. Many DNA-based markers refer to noncoding regions that tend to accumulate mutations due to the absence of purging selection, and thus show larger variability. This may be an advantage if a high resolution is required, e.g., for intraspecific studies of kinship and genetic parentage. On the other hand, less variable (conserved) regions are better suited as diagnostic markers for species identification and phylogenetic studies.

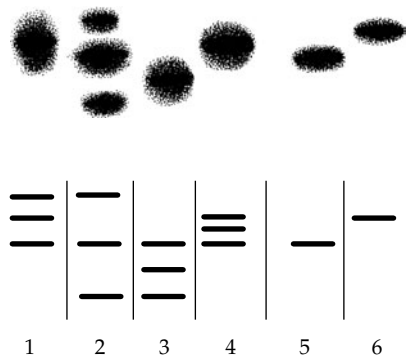


Figure 5.10 The allozyme pattern of glucose phosphate isomerase for six individual *Daphnia cucullata*. *Top:* Bands visible after electrophoresis on a starch gel. *Bottom:* Diagrammatic representation of the individual bands.

5.3.3 Application of molecular markers in ecological genetics

Protein electrophoresis

Protein (allozyme) electrophoresis has been used in medical research since the mid 1960s and has since been adapted for the study of aquatic organisms. The technique became popular in ecology when protocols were developed for small sample sizes (e.g., individual zooplankton) using easy-to-handle cellulose acetate gels (Hebert and Beaton 1989). Although allozymes are being replaced more and more by nucleic acid based markers, they are well suited to explain some basic principles. Hence, we will review some typical questions of ecological genetics that have been addressed using allozymes. Allozymes are enzymes that have the same function, but differ somewhat in their structure. When placed on an appropriate carrier gel in an electrical field, they migrate with differing speed (*electrophoresis*). After a certain time the migration is stopped and the enzymes are made visible as bands with a dye. The specific type of enzyme one has isolated can be determined by the distance it has traveled (Fig. 5.10). Only if an enzyme is polymorphic in a population will there be different bands for the different individuals. It is possible for an enzyme to be polymorphic in one population and monomorphic in another; i.e., only one band will be found on electrophoresis. There are often two alleles of a polymorphic enzyme in one population, but rarely more. A diploid organism can have either only one of the two possible bands, meaning the organism is homozygous, or both bands, meaning it is heterozygous. If polymorphic enzymes are examined in a large number of individuals, one can estimate the frequency of both alleles and then determine whether the population is at or near the Hardy–Weinberg equilibrium (see Section 5.3.1). The tissue homogenate of an individual can be applied to several gels stained with different enzyme-specific dyes. Sometimes it is even possible to stain two enzymes on a single gel. This provides information on multiple enzymes (loci) for one individual, which results in the identification of a *multilocus genotype*.

There have been many studies of aquatic organisms using electrophoretic techniques. The genetic structure of a population can indicate whether there is strong natural selection or whether different populations are exchanging genetic material. However, one important point should be noted: Temporal and spatial differences in allele frequencies and the genotype composition indicate only that changes have taken place in the gene pool; they say nothing about the causes or types of selection factors. Let us examine once again the example of *Daphnia* under oxygen stress: The allozyme analysis

tells us that there is a shift in the gene pool during the summer, but it cannot tell us why, since we have not investigated the gene that controls the synthesis of hemoglobin. The allozyme data allow us to identify specific genotypes that we can in turn examine physiologically. This would enable us to show that the adaptation to oxygen deficiency is not only a phenotypic reaction, for the best-adapted clones have been selected for from the spectrum of genotypes that were present.

Chance plays an important role in small populations. Rock pools that fill with rainwater along the rocky ocean coast are a well-known example. These are very unstable habitats. The small pools can dry out and/or they may become saline from the ocean spray. As rainwater fills them, they gradually freshen again. These changes represent catastrophes that can cause populations to go extinct. Then re-population becomes a dominant force. Chance determines which genotypes arrive first. Because of this *founder effect* there are great differences in the genetic structure of neighboring pools.

The harpacticoid copepod *Tigriopus californicus* lives in rock pools on the coast of California (USA). Individual populations often die out during catastrophes, as this species does not produce a resting stage. The rock pools are often found in small groups that are separated from one another by short distances of beach. Allozyme analysis indicates that these groups differ genetically, but there is little difference in genetic structure within a group of pools. Shortly after a catastrophe, founder effects lead to major genetic changes in the pools. However, this is quickly countered by new genotypes that come from the adjacent rock pools. Not all pools are hit by a single catastrophic event, since the pools differ in their height above the sea level (Burton and Swisher 1985). There is much gene flow between pools within a group, but very little between groups of pools. It is therefore reasonable to consider the animals within a group of pools as a population, whereas the animals in the next group could be considered as a different population.

Founder effects can be overlaid by *selective factors*. The rock pools are also a good example of this effect. Rock pools have variable salt content. Pools that are near the high water level are saltier than pools farther inland that receive some salt from spray carried by the wind. The pools have a clear gradient of salt content, moving from the water line toward the interior. The genetic structure of populations of the cladocerans *Daphnia pulex* and *Daphnia magna* has been investigated in detail in the coastal region of Alaska (Weider and Hebert 1987). There was a clear effect of the salt content. The ponds nearer the coast had a higher frequency of salt-tolerant genotypes. Accidental colonization is also the important first step in these salty ponds following a catastrophe. Those genotypes that enter the pool but are not salt tolerant will not survive. This continues until by accident a salt-tolerant genotype arrives. The result is that there is greater genetic similarity of pools along the coastline than between these pools and the ones farther inland. There is a gradient of genotypes, and it appears that the salt content is the selective force responsible for this.

Populations in neighboring large lakes are usually more similar genetically than populations from small ponds. In large lakes selection is more important than the founder effect or chance genetic drift. Nevertheless, one can compare the genetic structure of populations of lakes by using allele frequencies as a statistical measure of genetic distance. Figure 5.11 illustrates an example with *Daphnia galeata* in lakes in Holstein, Germany. Lakes that are connected by streams are genetically more similar than those that are isolated. The fourth in the chain of lakes (Großer Plöner See) differs considerably from the others. The allele F^+ (one that moves rapidly in the electrophoresis), which is rare in the other lakes, is frequent in the Großer Plöner See. Apparently, the genetic exchange between populations through the stream is not enough to outweigh the selective effects.

Microsatellites

Microsatellites are the most recent molecular markers used in ecological genetics. Although they can be used to study the same types of questions as allozymes, their properties are very different. The DNA of animals and plants contains short units of 2–6 base pairs that are tandemly repeated like a chain of pearls. Such loci can be highly polymorphic, but polymorphism is not caused by the exchange of amino acids; it is the result of varying

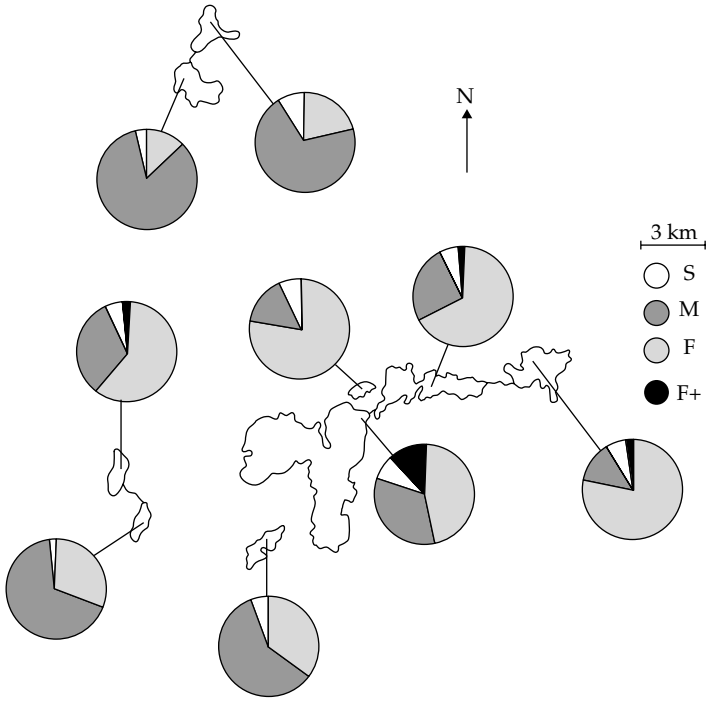


Figure 5.11 Allele frequencies of phosphoglucose mutase of *Daphnia galeata* in neighboring lakes in the "Holstein Schweiz" (Germany). The segments of each pie represent the relative proportion of the four possible alleles. Lakes in the central group are connected by the small Schwentine river, which flows from east to west (from Mort and Wolf 1986).

numbers of repeats (i.e., the length of the chain). A typical microsatellite may have the structure $(CTAG/GATC)_n$. CTAG on one strand, paired with GATC on the other strand, is repeated n times. For example, a microsatellite with four repeats may read:

CTAG	CTAG	CTAG	CTAG
GATC	GATC	GATC	GATC

The number of repeats varies between individuals, and is inherited in a Mendelian way. Microsatellites have a very high mutation rate (often 10^{-3} to 10^{-4} per locus per generation), hence population variability is high. There are often more than 20 polymorphic loci, which results in a very good resolution on the population level.

Microsatellites are well suited for the detection of small genetic differences. A typical application is shown in Fig. 5.12. The genetic differentiation between populations of the calanoid copepod *Eudiaptomus graciloides* in lakes located along the southern coast of the Baltic Sea has been studied to test the hypothesis of "*isolation by distance*" (Zeller *et al*. 2006). This hypothesis proposes that with restricted gene flow populations should become more and more genetically dissimilar the farther apart they are. The 17 lakes under study range from northern Germany to St. Petersburg (Russia) over a distance of nearly 1400 km. They are all of the same age, as they originate from the retreat of the Scandinavian ice shield at the end of the last ice age (approximately 12 000 years ago). The copepods were genotyped with 10 polymorphic microsatellite markers. A statistical estimate of genetic differentiation was calculated for each pair of lakes, and plotted against the distance between the lakes.

The results of this study support the hypothesis of isolation by distance. The larger the geographic distance between lakes, the more they are genetically dissimilar. However, closer inspection of the data reveals some difficulties in the interpretation. The statistically significant relationship between

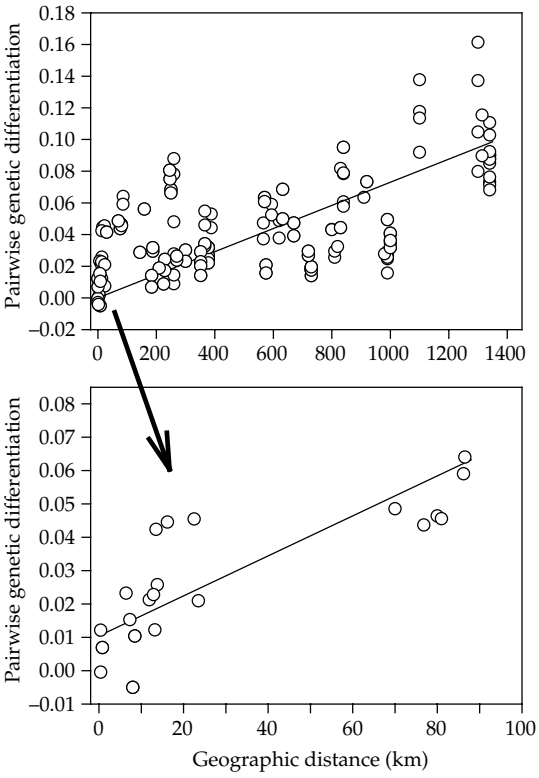


Figure 5.12 "Isolation by distance" of populations of the copepod *Eudiaptomus gracilis* in lakes along the southern shore of the Baltic Sea. Genetic differentiation was calculated from microsatellite markers. Each dot represents the difference between two lake populations separated by the distance indicated at the *x*-axis. The lower the index of differentiation the more similar are the populations. *Top:* complete data set spanning 1340 km. *Bottom:* subset of data from lakes within a distance of 100 km (data from Zeller *et al*. 2006).

distance and differentiation holds only when distances over 1000 km are included. All population pairs with distances exceeding 1000 km include one of the two populations sampled near St. Petersburg. There is no trend visible in the range of 1000 km. On the other hand, there is a clear relationship in the 100 km range. Overall, genetic differentiation increases sharply to medium levels within 100 km distance, then varies around this level for distances up to 1000 km, and finally shows a sudden increase for the pairs more than 1000 km apart.

This example demonstrates clearly what genetic markers can provide, and what their limitations are. *E. graciloides* definitely forms separate populations in different lakes, even when the lakes are geographically not distant. Consequently, gene flow between lakes must be restricted. On the other hand, markers tell us that there are differences, but they do not tell us why. This study cannot explain why genetic differentiation does not increase further in the medium range. There may be a hidden process of genetic exchange independent of the geographic scale, but the large variability may also be a consequence of colonization processes from different sources after the retreat of the ice. Local adaptation due to differing environmental conditions is more likely to explain the genetic dissimilarity of the lakes near St. Petersburg. They are not only the most easterly lakes, they are also located farther north (60°); all other lakes are at lower latitudes (54°). Consequently the St. Petersburg lakes experience much harsher winter conditions, being ice-covered for 6 months per year. *E. graciloides* has only one generation per year in these lakes, whereas it can have 2–3 generations per year in the other lakes.

Restriction fragment length polymorphism

Restriction enzymes that cleave DNA at particular oligonucleotid sequences (*endonucleases*) provide another tool for analyzing DNA. Such enzymes cut DNA precisely wherever specific sequences of 2–6 base pairs occur. Hundreds of such enzymes, all cleaving at different specific sites, are available and can be applied in restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) assays. Basically, DNA is cut ("digested") with one or more endonucleases, which results in fragments of various lengths. The fragments are separated by gel electrophoresis according to their molecular weight. They must then be visualized by chemical staining or radiolabelling and autoradiography (for details see Avise 2004). Each endonuclease results in a typical banding pattern, and individuals (or taxa) can show differences that result from base substitution within cleavage sites, sequence rearrangements, and additions or deletions of DNA. The "digestion profiles" represent a genetic fingerprint.

RFLPs have often been used to analyze mitochondrial DNA. For example, Routman (1993) studied populations of the tiger salamander *Amblystoma tigrinum* in North America. This species exists in two "subspecies" with very different life histories.

One of them is obligately metamorphic, i.e., larvae metamorphose and leave the water to breath air. The other is paedomorphic, i.e., it reproduces as a larval form, continues to breath with gills and, thus, does not leave the water. It is clear that the paedomorphic form can only exist in permanent water bodies, while the metamorphic form can live in temporary waters, leaving the habitat before it dries out. Routman (1993) analyzed mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) of salamander populations with 13 restriction enzymes. There was greater genetic differentiation between than within the "subspecies", which suggests that they were really separate and evolved allopatrically.

RFLP analysis can also be applied to specific genes following PCR. The technique is useful as a diagnostic tool to identify species. A typical example was given by Sharley *et al*. (2004). Midge larvae of the genus *Chironomus* are used as indicator species in water quality assessment in the northern hemisphere and in New Zealand. This technique requires identification of taxa to the species level (see Section 8.4.7). However, there are difficulties in Australia due to "cryptic" *Chironomus* species. The larvae are so similar that they cannot be discriminated morphologically. Correct identification would require sophisticated caryological methods or raising the individual larvae to adulthood, which renders the technique unsuitable for routine use.

Sharley *et al*. (2004) developed a molecular identification tool. They amplified a 710 base pair fragment of the mitochondrial cytochrome oxidase I subunit (COI). Amplified fragments from all (otherwise identified) reference taxa were sequenced, and the sequence data were subjected to a simulated restriction enzyme digestion, using the characteristic cutting sites of a large number of restriction enzymes. This resulted in digestion profiles for every enzyme and species. Three restriction enzymes were sufficient to separate all 10 *Chironomus* species. Species can now be identified routinely by amplifying COI and performing an RFLP analysis with the three enzymes. The technique can be applied to identify *Chironomus* species in water quality monitoring. It is also an example of the application of DNA "bar coding" of species suggested as a way of cataloging all metazoan taxa (Hebert *et al*. 2003).

Sequencing

In recent years, sequencing of DNA has become very popular due to automatization and cost reduction. The advantage of this method is that it provides information on the primary structure of the DNA. On the other hand, it detects every single point mutation. Consequently, the selection of the length of DNA to be sequenced is important for the problem to be studied and the level of resolution required. Many studies trying to relate phylogeny, evolution, and ecology of aquatic organisms have sequenced parts of the mtDNA.

The method has become famous from the studies on phylogenetic relationships and adaptive radiation (splitting into different species) of cichlid fishes in the East African lakes (reviewed by Meyer 1993). These cichlids show very distinct differences in morphology, colouration and behavior, but some other fish populations can only be discriminated by molecular tools. For example, the species complex of the European whitefish *Coregonus lavaretus* is difficult to resolve. One morphological differentiating feature is the number of spines on the gill arches (gill rakers) that are related to the fishes' feeding mode. A sequencing study of a fragment of the mtDNA comprising part of the cytochrome b gene and the NADH dehydrogenase subunit revealed the existence of three separate groups (clades) in northern Europe, Siberia, and southern Europe, which reflect the colonization history of these areas after the last glaciation (Østbye *et al*. 2005).

Phylogeographical studies reveal basically the results of historic events of dispersal and selection, but mtDNA data can also help to elucidate the basis of "ecotypes". It is often not clear if differences between populations have a genetic background or are phenotypic reactions to differences of the habitat. For example, fire salamanders *Salamandra salamandra* in Germany breed either in streams or in ponds. Pond and stream populations differ in life history and metabolism. Salamanders in ponds metamorphose earlier, but at a smaller size than in streams. Common garden experiments found evidence for a genetic determination of the life-history differences. An analysis of mtDNA D-loop sequences (Weitere *et al*. 2004) showed that both stream and pond populations are derived from a single lineage that recolonized the area after

the last glaciation. This suggests that pond breeding occurred very recently.

One more example for the use of sequencing data relates to the spatial structure of populations (metapopulations, see Section 5.1). Dryland rivers in western Queensland, Australia, show an unusual hydrologic regime. Except for episodic floods, there are long periods when the river channels are dry, and only a series of isolated waterholes persist. These holes are refugia for aquatic species. They are of different sizes and depths, i.e., they can persist for different periods during a drought. Small holes have a considerably greater probability of drying out before the next flood. After the next rain, they need to be recolonized from large holes. The question is whether the isolation of the waterholes is sufficient to produce genetic population differentiation. In particular, we might hypothesize that populations in small holes show reduced genetic diversity due to founder effects. A comparative sequencing study of the mtDNA COI was performed for two species, the shrimp *Macrobrachium australiense* and the snail *Notolpa sublineata*. The two species differ in their dispersal capacity as the shrimp is more mobile and has pelagic larvae, while the snail has no larval stages and limited vagility. Surprisingly, for both species genetic diversity was not lower in the small ponds, and genetic differentiation was not detected. This suggests that the level of connectivity among waterhole populations and gene flow between habitats is higher than expected.

5.3.4 Microevolution

The first step to evolutionary change of a population is a change in the composition of the gene pool. Intraspecific change in the gene pool through selection from the existing genetic variation is called *microevolution*. One might assume that under constant selective pressure there should be a reduction in the variability of characteristics that are not selection neutral. This raises the question involving both ecology and population genetics: Why is there so much genetic variability? Possibly the most important reason is that selective pressures are not constant; environmental conditions are constantly changing, giving different genotypes advantages at different times and in different locations. Also, there are newer models in population genetics, such as *frequency-dependent selection*, that explain how rare genotypes can gain an advantage, by not being selected by a predator that specializes in feeding on the most frequent genotypes.

Although evolution is often associated with long time periods (million of years), this normally applies to *macroevolutionary* processes on the species level. *Microevolutionary* processes on the population level can be very fast (Thompson 1998). The development of resistance to pesticides is a good example. The classic case is Clear Lake in California where methylparathion was used many years to control phantom midge *Chaoborus* larvae. After 13 years of applications the insecticide was no longer effective. Toxicity testing showed that the lethal concentration had to be increased, since the larvae had developed a resistance. Between 1962 and 1975 the midge larvae became 10 times less sensitive to the poison (Apperson *et al*. 1978).

Anthropogenic factors can be strong selective forces in aquatic systems. It has been reported several times that aquatic organisms can develop resistance to harmful substances, as can terrestrial organisms. Maltby (1991) reported on an English stream containing the aquatic pillbug *Asellus aquaticus* that received mine drainage through a canal. The population of *Asellus* living above the mine drainage was sensitive to the wastewater, but could produce a large number of offspring in clean water conditions. Another population of *Asellus* living only a few meters downstream, below the discharge, could produce few young in clean water, but was resistant to the pollution. Surprisingly, the two populations were genetically distinct, despite the short distance separating them and the continuous drifting of *Asellus* downstream. It appears that selection by acidity and heavy metals was strong enough to maintain a stable genetic separation. Adaptations to metal pollution have been described for a variety of aquatic organisms (for a review see Klerks and Weis 1987). Although the genetic background of the adaptation could not always be demonstrated, there is concern about the importance of microevolutionary processes in environmental assessments.

Microevolutionary changes in response to differing environmental conditions are called *local adaptation*. The genetic basis for differing properties of organisms found in different localities (e.g., lakes) can be tested in the laboratory when all isolates are raised under identical conditions ("common garden experiments"). Local adaptations occur when the average conditions in a habitat persist or change at a slow rate, which is mostly the case for natural environmental factors. The comparison of populations in differing lakes provides a snapshot of adaptations in the past. However, studies observing the population change directly are rare. Progress has recently been made with the development of new techniques exploiting diapause stages of zooplankton in lake sediments (see Section 6.8.3). These resting stages are very hardy. They can survive many years, but even if they have been dead for thousands of years they can still contain sufficient DNA to produce a genetic fingerprint of individuals that lived so long ago (Limburg and Weider 2002). This offers new applications of molecular techniques to *paleolimnology*.

Resting stages offer a unique possibility of observing gradual functional adaptation in populations, as they can survive for decades in the sediments. If the sediment is not disturbed by physical processes or bioturbation, resting stages that sink to the bottom will be deposited in layers corresponding to the year when they were produced. After carefully taking a sediment core from a lake, the individual sediment layers can be dated by counting annual lamination, metal traces (e.g., zinc), or radioactive isotope analysis (^{210}Pb, ^{137}Cs). Resting stages can then be isolated from the individual dated sediment layers, and eventually hatched in the laboratory. This technique has been used mostly with *Daphnia* diapausing eggs in ephippia that can still be viable after many decades (up to 100 years). It is now called *experimental paleoecology* (Kerfoot and Weider 2004).

The suitability of this approach for the interpretation of historical changes in lakes has been demonstrated by Hairston *et al*. (2005). Early studies on Onondaga Lake (New York State, USA) had observed a shift in phytoplankton dynamics from a typical spring clear-water phase (see Section 8.7.1) to a clear-water phase during maximum cyanobacteria abundance in late summer after 1930, and the return to the original state after 1980. The analysis of the *Daphnia* ephippia bank showed that, due to industrial saltwater pollution in the 1930s, the native *Daphnia* species (*D. pulicaria and D. ambigua*) were replaced by two exotic salinity-tolerant species, *D. exilis* and *D. curvirostris* that differed in their seasonal dynamics. After the shut-down of industrial activities between 1970 and 1980, the original *Daphnia* species reappeared, and with them the original phytoplankton cycle. Fifty years ago, limnologists were not aware of the importance of *Daphnia* grazing for phytoplankton dynamics, hence they did not study this problem at the time. Egg bank analysis has been able to explain the changes in the lake ecosystem in retrospect.

Pioneering studies have been performed with *Daphnia galeata* populations from Lake Constance (Germany) by Weider *et al*. (1997) and Hairston *et al*. (1999). Lake Constance is a large, deep lake with a famous eutrophication history (see Section 8.6.2) but is also a restoration success story. Having been oligotrophic, it became nutrient enriched in the 1960s and showed signs of eutrophication. Severe pollution control measures finally reduced the nutrients again, so that the status of the lake returned to the 1960 situation, where it currently remains. The peak of the eutrophication, including the occurrence of cyanobacteria blooms, was about 1980. During the period of eutrophication and re-oligotrophication, *D. galeata* changed in abundance and seasonal pattern, but it was always present in the lake. This raised the question whether the *Daphnia* populations had adapted to the changing food conditions due to different algal species. Unfortunately, this question could not be answered in retrospect, as nobody had asked it at the beginning of the eutrophication period to start a long-term project. But a new chance arose, when Weider *et al*. (1997) succeeded in hatching diapause eggs from sediment layers covering the period 1963–97 and studied population genetics of *D. galeata* with allozymes. At this time molecular techniques were not yet sensitive enough to analyze individual diapause eggs directly, hence clones of the individual genotypes had to be established. That is why parthenogenetic *Daphnia* are so useful for this purpose. Weider *et al*. (1997) discovered that the

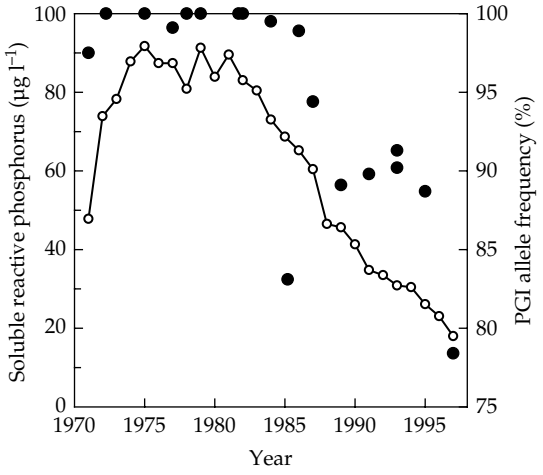


Figure 5.13 Changes of the frequency of one allele (M) of phosphoglucose isomerase (PGI) in populations of *Daphnia galeata* (closed circles) in relation to the phosphorus content (line) in the water of Lake Constance, which is a proxy for the trophic state, during eutrophication and re-oligotrophication. The genetic composition of the *Daphnia* populations was inferred from allozyme analysis of clones of hatched dormant eggs isolated from dated sediment layers. (data from Weider *et al*. 1997).

frequency of one allele of the enzyme phosphoglucose isomerase was positively related to the phosphorus in the lake, an indicator of the trophic state (Fig. 5.13). This was evidence that the genetic composition of the *D. galeata* population had changed with the eutrophication, although no causal relationship could be established. However, clones of *D. galeata* that lived in the lake before eutrophication, at the peak phosphorus levels, and during the re-oligotrophication process were now available in the laboratory. They spanned about 35 years in eutrophication history.

Hairston *et al*. (1999, 2001) tested the performance of these clones under "conditions of eutrophication". One of the characteristics of eutrophication is the occurence of cyanobacteria (see Section 8.6.1). Some of those, for example strains of *Microcystic aeruginosa*, can be toxic. They inhibit feeding and growth of zooplankton (cf. Section 6.4.2). Although *Microcystis* has never been a bloom-forming species in Lake Constance, it increased in numbers during the peak eutrophication time. One of the toxic strains that had been isolated from Lake Constance in 1972 was still maintained in the laboratory when Hairston *et al*. began their experiments. The *Daphnia* clones were cultured under exactly identical conditions in the laboratory. They were given the same concentration (in terms of carbon) of two types of food, pure green algae (*Scenedesmus*) considered "good" food, and a diet composed of 80% *Scenedesmus* and 20% toxic *Microcystis*, supposed to simulate eutrophic food quality. The juvenile growth rate of *Daphnia* was used as a good fitness proxy, and the relative growth inhibition was calculated from comparison of growth rates in the two food types. The higher the growth inhibition, the more sensitive was a genotype (clone) to the toxic cyanobacterium.

The genotypes from 1978–80 were on average less sensitive to dietary toxic cyanobacteria than the pre-eutrophication genotypes (Hairston *et al*. 1999). The microevolutionary change can be seen more clearly (Hairston *et al*. 2001) when the norms of reaction for the individual clones are plotted (Fig. 5.14). This graph shows clonal differences between maximum growth rates as well as the sensitivity of the clones (a steep slope means high sensitivity). There is greater genetic variability, both in growth rate and slope during the pre-eutrophication time. The variability is reduced during the peak eutrophication due to the missing slow-growing and toxin-sensitive genotypes. During the restoration period, variability seems to increase again although the mean responses are not yet different. We are evidently observing natural selection acting. The changing slopes suggest that adverse cyanobacteria effects have been a selective force during eutrophication. But why do all 1978–80 clones have higher maximum growth rates? Or, why are there so many slow-growing clones during the 1960s? Slow growth should be a fitness disadvantage in parthenogenetic animals. A possible explanation is the existence of a second section factor. Eutrophication results also in reduced water clarity, i.e., poorer visibility of large *Daphnia* by planktivorous fish (cf. Section 6.5.3). Slow-growing *Daphnia* mature at a smaller size than fast-growing ones. Hence, there was probably selection against fast growth and large maturation size in the oligotrophic Lake Constance, i.e., slow-growing genotypes were favored. This example demonstrates that microevolutionary changes are often caused by multiple factors.

5.3.5 Molecular analysis of bacterial communities

The composition of bacterial communities is notoriously difficult to determine, as the few morphological criteria visible under a microscope are normally not related to functional types. So far, bacteria have had to be cultivated in order to be identified. However, there is evidence that only a small percentage of bacteria visible in a fluorescence microscope are culturable (for review see Amann *et al*. 1995). Consequently, conventional methods grossly underestimate bacterial diversity. The development of molecular methods for *in situ* bacterial

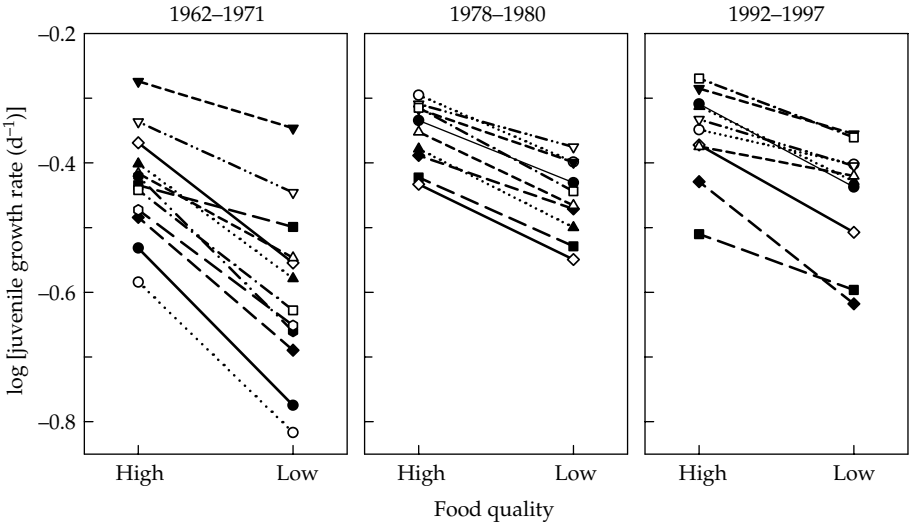


Figure 5.14 Reaction norms of clones of *Daphnia galeata* that lived before, during, and after the peak eutrophication period in Lake Constance. Each symbol and line represents a single clone isolated from dormant eggs in the sediments. The juvenile growth rate, a proxy for fitness, was measured with the same quantity, but different qualities of food. High-quality food is a suspension of pure green algae, low-quality food contains 20% of a toxic cyanobacterium to simulate eutrophic algal assemblages (data from Hairston *et al*. 2001).

Box 5.2 Molecular analysis of bacterial *in situ* diversity

DGGE analysis of 16S rDNA

The method of analyzing bacterial diversity based on the structure of the subunit 16S of the ribosomal DNA (rDNA) is now one that is used frequently in microbial ecology. The bacterial community is filtered from a water or sediment slurry sample, and the total DNA is extracted. The DNA is then subjected to a PCR using a specific primer that amplifies a fragment of the 16S rDNA. The PCR product is a mixture of slightly different copies of the fragment, each representing a different type of bacteria. The fragments can be separated by denaturating gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE) on a polyamide gel (Muyzer *et al*. 1998), as they migrate differently in an electric field. The result is a *genetic fingerprint* of the bacterial community. Each band on the gel represents a fragment type, which is called an *operational taxonomic unit* (OTU) as we cannot be sure of detecting a real species.

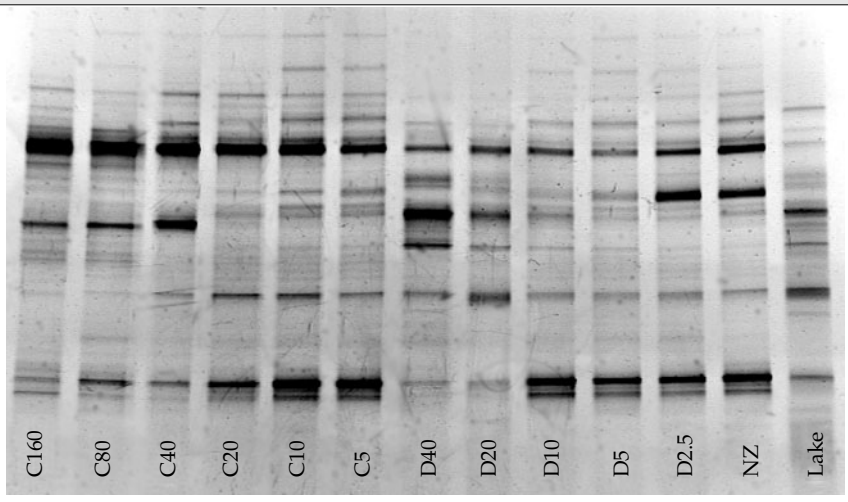
OTUs can be used to estimate bacterial diversity (see Section 7.4.1). The banding pattern provides information about OTUs shared by different environmental samples. The degree of similarity between samples can be determined by statistical methods. However, it is not possible to directly assign individual bands to bacterial species. In order to identify the species represented by a band, the band must be excised from the gel and the fragment must be sequenced. This is normally only done for the most dominant OTUs. Using an

continues

Box 5.2 ***continued***

appropriate alignment program, the base sequence can be compared to thousands of sequences stored in a computer data bank. With a little luck, the sequence is already known, and the OTU can be identified.

The figure shows a DGGE gel with genetic fingerprints of 13 bacterial communities. Each vertical lane represents one sample from a field enclosure experiment. Bands show the amplified fragments of bacterial 16S rDNA (OTUs). Identical OTUs occupy the same vertical position. The banding pattern reflects the bacterial community composition. For information on the questions to be studied with this analysis, see text.



community analysis was a breakthrough in this area. A now commonly used method is based on the structure of a small subunit (16S) of the ribosomal DNA (Box 5.2). It allows the analysis of bacterial communities from different habitats, seasons and environmental conditions (e.g., nutrients or predation).

The principle of the analysis can be demonstrated using the DGGE patterns shown in Box 5.2 (Fig. 5.15). This is the result of an experiment designed to study the impact of different grazers on natural microbial communities (Zöllner *et al*. 2003). Twelve enclosures of the type shown in Fig. 2.1b were set up in a lake and inoculated with varying numbers of either *Daphnia* (D) or copepods (C). The numbers indicate the original zooplankton density (ind l^{-1}). One bag (NZ) received no zooplankton at all, and lane 13 (Lake) is a lake sample from outside the bags. The samples were taken on day 15 after the start of the experiment. Visual inspection of the gel shows very different patterns of operational taxonomic units (OTUs). Some OTUs are present in all bags, but with different intensity. Others were

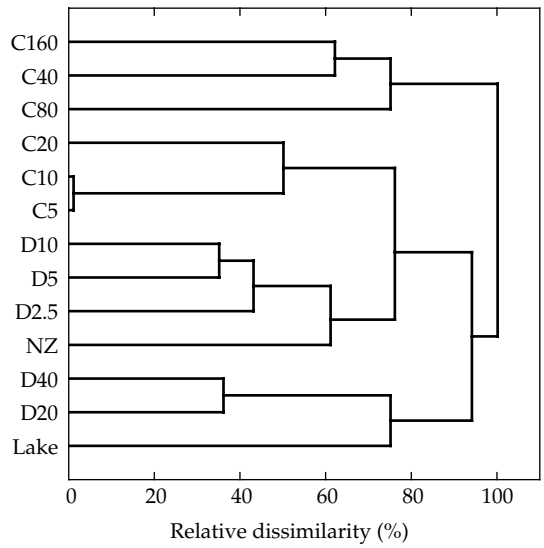


Figure 5.15 Quantitative analysis of the DGGE gel shown in Box 5.2. The dendrogram is derived from a statistical cluster analysis that takes into account the presence and absence of bands. The branching points identify groups of treatments (see Box 5.2 for key) with similar results.

detected in only part of the bags. Some of the patterns are rather similar. For example, the low-*Daphnia* samples are similar to the no-zooplankton control, but not to the low-copepod samples. The communities that developed under high *Daphnia* densities are similar to the lake communities. The three low-copepod samples and the three high-copepod samples exhibit clearly separated groups. A more quantitative analysis can be achieved if the lanes are read by a gel scanner that quantifies the location and intensity of the bands. The data can then be subjected to a cluster analysis that shows the relative similarity of the samples as a dendrogram (see Fig. 5.15). Clustering confirms the visual impression. The final microbial communities are not the result of direct grazing impact (see Section 6.4). This experiment looked at various ecosystem components, e.g., nutrients, phytoplankton and zooplankton. The molecular technique made the integration of the microbial component possible.

Large amounts of DNA sequence information for many species is presently collected and assembled in data banks. Progress in localization of genes on the DNA makes it possible to develop primers for *functional genes* that are not just markers. Functional genes code for enzymes in a specific biochemical pathway, and they can be used to detect metabolic types of bacteria in field samples. For example, the methane monooxygenase gene (*mmo*) is specific for methane-oxidizing bacteria (cf. Section 4.3.10), ammonia monooxygenase (*amo*) for nitrifying bacteria (cf. Section 4.3.8), and nitrite reductase (*nir*) for denitrifying bacteria (cf. Section 4.3.9). When field samples are collected from various depths of a lake or at different times, the DNA can be extracted and a functional gene can be amplified with the appropriate primer (there is often more than one type of a particular enzyme). The PCR product can be analyzed by DGGE to separate different species with the same function, and the individual bands can be sequenced to identify species by comparing the sequence with information in a data bank. This allows the description of the spatial (e.g., vertical) and seasonal pattern of abundance of important types of bacteria.

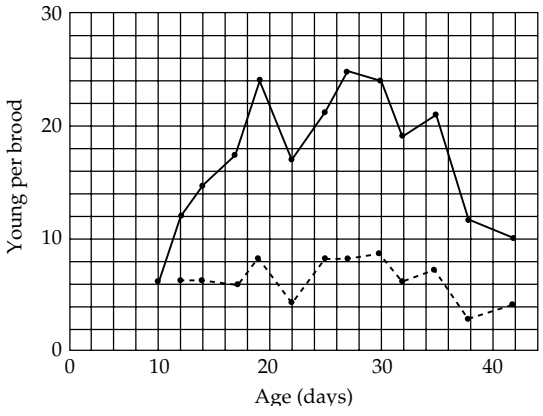


Figure 5.16 Age-specific fecundity of *Daphnia pulex* at high (solid line) and low (dashed line) food concentrations (from Richman 1958).

5.4 Demography

In considering population dynamics (Section 5.2.6) we considered all members of the population to be equal. We were concerned with rates of reproduction and loss from the entire population, looking only at the numerical response. This suffices for single-celled organisms that reproduce by dividing and are potentially immortal. For populations of multicellular organisms, however, individuals are not all equal. Reproduction always produces individuals of the youngest age class, and different age classes have different probabilities of dying.

A useful feature of a population is therefore its age structure. Of course, it is not possible to predict exactly how long any individual will live, but by looking at the entire population, we can assign to each individual a probability of its living after a given time. From Fig. 5.7, it can be clearly seen that we can estimate the probability that a copepod in larval stage (x) will reach stage ($x+1$) from the decreasing population size of each of the larval stages. If we refer to the *survival probability* from nauplius 1 to nauplius 2 as p_1, and the subsequent probabilities as p_2, etc., the probability (L_x) that the copepod will reach stage x is:

$$L_x = p_1 p_2 \cdots p_{x-1} p_x$$

The survival probability must get smaller and smaller with age, since the p of each older stage is <1.

The changes in the effect of age on survival probability differ for different species. These can be categorized into three general *survival curves*. In the first type, there is a brief phase of high mortality for

juveniles, followed by a long period of relatively constant high survival; near the end, all remaining individuals die within a relatively short period. This type of curve applies to practically all mammals that care for their young, and when they pass the juvenile phase, have few predators. Few aquatic organisms fit this pattern.

In the second curve, the survival probability is the same rate for each age class, and the curve therefore declines as a negative exponential. This means that the losses occur randomly and affect all age classes equally. It is likewise difficult to find examples of freshwater metazoans that exhibit this type of survival for their entire life cycle, except perhaps for some rotifers. Parts of the life cycle, however, may have this type of curve; for example, fish after the second year, as shown in Fig. 5.8.

The third model of survival is most commonly found in fresh water, where first the juveniles have high mortality rates, but after they reach a critical age, the probability of surviving becomes high and mortality occurs randomly amongst the remaining age groups. Copepods (Fig. 5.7) fit this type, for the nauplii have a higher mortality than either the copepodids or adults. Animals that do not care for their young, but produce large numbers of offspring, such as mussels, insects, and even fish, roughly follow this survival curve.

Rarely in nature is any one of these patterns strictly followed, and usually organisms have some combination of all three curves. The fish population in Fig. 5.8 is an example of this; after the third year there is an exponential decrease (type 2), but in the first 2 years that are not quantitatively represented in this study, the mortality is much higher, typical of type 3.

Not all individuals contribute equally to the maintenance of the population. Juveniles do not contribute any offspring. Later, the number of young produced depends on the age of the individual. Organisms that reproduce only once and then die, such as many insects and the Pacific salmon *Oncorhynchus*, are exceptions, since their reproduction occurs in a single pulse. Age-specific fecundity curves can be drawn for organisms that reproduce frequently (Fig. 5.16). These curves show the average number of female offspring produced by an individual of a specific age class. Until sexual maturity, the age-specific fecundity (designated as m_x) is zero. After that it often increases, and as the females grow larger they are able to produce more and more young. Finally, as the females become old, m_x decreases. The sum of the female offspring of an individual is simply the sum of all values of m_x.

As a population colonizes a new habitat, its age structure depends on random factors. As the first young are born, the age distribution shifts toward the young animals. After sexual maturity, there follows a new pulse of juveniles. The age distribution and mean age of the population is therefore constantly changing. Since there are overlapping generations, the population can approach an equilibrium condition after several generations, as long as the environmental conditions do not change. The population approximates a *"stable" age distribution* that corresponds to the survival curve (see Fig. 5.8). Box 5.3 illustrates this stabilization process by a graphical model.

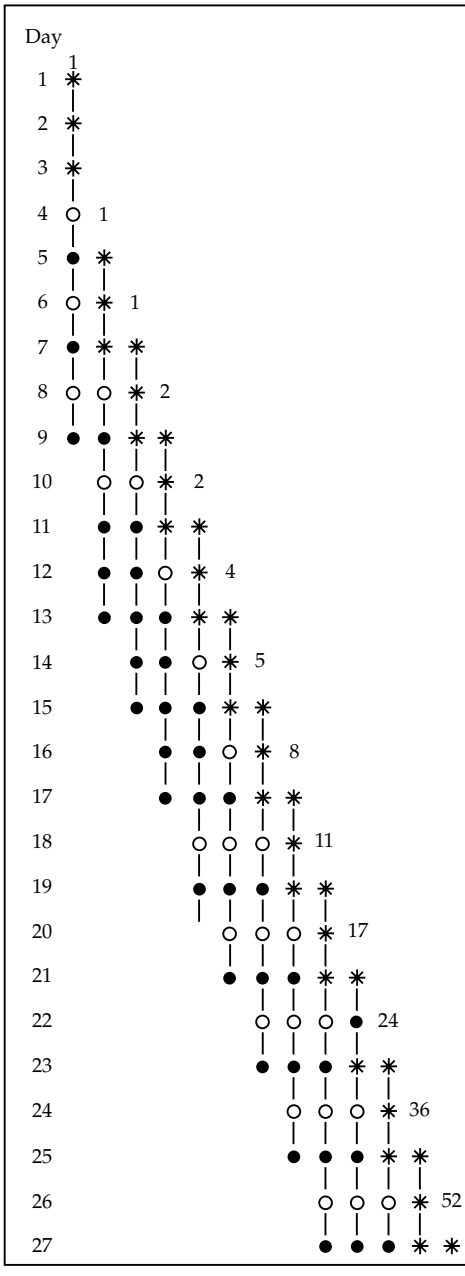
A high age class does not necessarily make a large contribution to the population, even if its age-specific fecundity is high. Depending on the specific type of survival curve (see Fig. 5.7), only a small fraction of the population will reach the older age classes. Even though each individual of the older class may produce more offspring, the total number of offspring produced by the age class may be small. The total number of female offspring produced by an individual in the population (R_0) depends, therefore, on the age-specific fecundity (m_x) as well as on the probability of surviving to that particular age class (L_x):

$$R_0 = \sum_{x=0}^{n} L_x m_x$$

In field populations this value must be smaller than an individual could attain if it were in a situation where it would die a natural death (e.g., laboratory culture). We cannot use R_0 directly to estimate the growth rate of the population (r), which depends also on the temporal distribution of m_x. When young animals reach a high m_x value, the population growth rate is larger than if most of the reproduction were by the older age classes, but with the same R_0. Offspring that were born earlier can contribute to the population while their siblings born later are still not reproductive. Rapidly growing populations therefore have a relatively young average age.

Box 5.3 Development of a stable age distribution

The graphical model (Edmondson 1968) describes the fate of any individual in a population. The vertically connected symbols represent overlapping cohorts of hypothetical animals. A juvenile (asterisk) matures on day 4 (open circle) and gives birth (dark circle) to one offspring on each of the days 5, 7, and 9. It then dies and disappears from

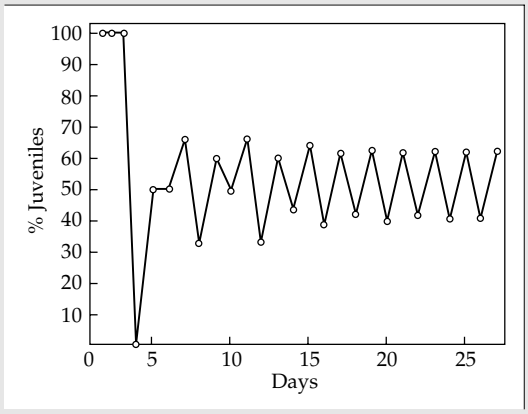


Day	Juvenile	Adults	Total	% Juvenile
1	1	0	1	100
2	1	0	1	100
3	1	0	1	100
4	0	1	1	0.0
5	1	1	2	50.0
6	1	1	2	50.0
7	2	1	3	66.7
8	1	2	3	33.3
9	3	2	5	60.0
10	2	2	4	50.0
11	4	2	6	66.7
12	2	4	6	33.3
13	6	4	10	60.0
14	4	5	9	44.4
15	9	5	14	64.3
16	5	8	13	38.5
17	13	8	21	61.9
18	8	11	19	42.1
19	19	11	30	63.3
20	11	17	28	39.3
21	28	17	45	62.2
22	17	24	41	41.5
23	41	24	65	63.0
24	24	36	60	40.0
25	60	36	96	62.5
26	36	52	88	40.9
27	88	52	140	62.9

continues

Box 5.3 ***continued***

the population. All the offspring added to the population are indicated by the numbers placed above each cohort. The number of juvenile and adults in the population is the sum of all individuals presented in a horizontal row. For example, on day 11, two adults give birth to two juveniles, which are added to two 3-day-old juveniles already in the population. At that point in time the population consists of two adults and four juveniles. Sums of juveniles, adults and the percentage of juveniles in the population for each day are presented in the right-hand columns. When the proportions are plotted against time (below), it becomes evident that the fluctuations quickly become regular and slowly approach an equilibrium (stable age distribution). The time required to reach the stable age distribution depends on the life history of the individuals.



This fact is incorporated in the Euler formula, which is used to estimate population growth rate from demographic parameters:

$$1 = \sum_{x=0}^{n} L_x m_x e^{-rx}$$

This equation cannot be solved analytically, but an iterative solution is easy using modern computers.

Demographic parameters are very important in the population ecology of animals in fresh water. Parameters such as the time of the first reproduction and species-specific fecundity curves greatly affect the growth rate of the population and are therefore under strong selection pressure. To understand the evolution of the life histories of organisms, one must also understand the effects of changes in the demographic parameters (Stearns 1992). For example, we can estimate stepwise the contribution of each of the broods of *Daphnia* to the total population growth rate (r) using the fecundity curve illustrated in Fig. 5.16. By the third brood, *Daphnia* already had reached over 90% of the maximum r. The fourth and all subsequent broods contribute very little to r. Actually, few daphniids ever experience more than three broods in nature, since older (and therefore larger) animals are under heavy predation pressure. Thus it is adaptive that the first broods are the most important for population growth.

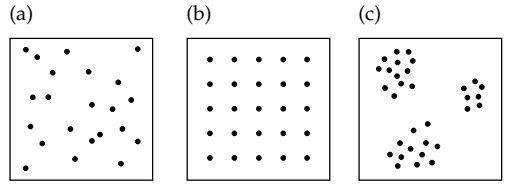


Figure 5.17 General types of distributions of organisms in a habitat. (a) random; (b) even (infra- or underdispersed); (c) clumped (super- or overdispersed).

5.5 Distribution

If we were to toss a square frame into a stream and count all the organisms of one species within the frame, a different number of organisms would be counted with each toss. We would find the same number only if the organisms were sufficiently small and evenly distributed.

There are three general patterns to describe the spatial distribution of organisms (Fig. 5.17):

- The distribution may be *random*. Individuals have different distances from one another. If one measured the distance of adjacent organisms, rarely would two organisms be very close to one another or very far apart. The frequency of the distances follows a random distribution (Poisson distribution).
- Organisms may be *evenly distributed*. In the most extreme case, all individuals would be exactly the same distance apart.

- The distribution may be *clumped*. Such organisms tend to live in aggregations.

Random distributions can be expected for species that do not control their movements, such as small algae and free-suspended bacteria in the epilimnion of a lake. This also can be true for very small spatial scales of up to about 1 m. For distances of even a few meters it becomes less likely. Water movements can cause even passively transported plankton to form "clouds." For example, water masses moving in opposite directions and passing one another can create vortices that aggregate plankton.

A distribution that is more even than random usually means that the organisms have some negative influence on one another; for example, competition for space. This distribution can be seen in streams, but it is not so common in lakes as in oceans. Net-spinning caddisflies are an example (see Section 6.2.2), or chironomid midge larvae that build tubes in the sand.

Clumped distributions occur where the habitat of the organisms is very heterogeneous, providing many microhabitats. Streams are an excellent example of this type of habitat. Zones of high and low stream velocity create a variety of substrate types (see Section 3.4). Organisms accumulate at those sites that offer the best habitats. Aggregations can also be formed purely by physical forces. In strong currents animals that are washed away may accumulate in protected areas. Such patches are very dynamic. While currents continuously accumulate new organisms, interference by competing organisms and the presence of predators may force some of the animals to leave the patch (Lancaster 1990). The distribution of food can strongly affect the distribution of stream invertebrates (Hildrew and Townsend 1982). For example, Shannon *et al*. (1994) studied the distribution of *Gammarus lacustris* in a dammed portion of the Colorado River. These amphipods showed a strong preference for patches of the filamentous alga *Cladophora*, but only if the filaments were colonized by epiphytic diatoms that they actually fed on. Clumped distributions are also common in the littoral zone of lakes, where biotic (e.g., macrophytes) as well as abiotic factors (e.g., wave action) create heterogeneous habitats.

Clumped distributions also occur in the relatively homogeneous pelagic region of lakes. Here plankton are seldom randomly distributed vertically, and often even the small organisms form pronounced layers (see Fig. 3.9). Such layers can be formed by active swimming or by vertical differences in growth rates or loss rates. Zooplankton can swim well enough to select their depth, even in a well-mixed epilimnion (see Section 6.8.4). Algae that move with flagella (flagellates) or gas vacuoles (certain cyanobacteria) may also stratify sharply at certain depths. Often organisms accumulate at the thermocline, where their sinking rate is slowed as they encounter rapid changes in water density.

In many lakes, phytoplankton aggregate in summer below the thermocline, where mixing is reduced. This phenomenon is not rare, particularly in nutrient poor lakes where light penetrates down to the hypolimnion (Fee 1976, Abbott *et al*. 1984). There can be a considerable amount of phytoplankton biomass that is often called the *deep chlorophyll maximum* (DCM). Traditionally this has been interpreted as a result of higher nutrient concentrations in the hypolimnion (see Section 8.3.5). Phytoplankton can only grow where nutrients and light overlap (Klausmeier and Litchman 2001). However, the unequal distribution may also be caused by predation losses in the epilimnion, e.g., by grazing of mixotrophic (see Section 4.3.11) flagellates (Tittel *et al*. 2003).

A DCM is often composed of chrysophytes, a good food source for herbivorous zooplankton. Hence, zooplankton can follow their food and show unequal vertical distributions, too. If the food is below the thermocline, however, they face a dilemma. The number of offspring zooplankton can produce depends on food availability. But the rate of development of eggs and offspring is strongly dependent on temperature (see Section 4.2.1). The DCM produces a trade-off for zooplankton: below the thermocline, they can produce many eggs, but the eggs develop slowly; above the thermocline, eggs develop fast, but only few of them can be produced. Zooplankton should have evolved to find a compromise and select the optimal habitat where they have the largest relative fitness. This is an interesting problem to test hypotheses about the distribution of free-ranging animals, for example

the "ideal free distribution" model (Lampert *et al*. 2003, Lampert 2005). Figure 5.18 shows the results of an experiment in the Plön plankton towers. As predicted, *Daphnia* accumulate in the thermocline just above the food maximum where they have access to both warm water and food. Depending on the hypolimnetic temperature, they select the depth providing maximum fitness (optimal habitat). However, not all *Daphnia* accumulate at the same (optimal) depth. Some are always away from the crowd. The distribution is dynamic, i.e., individuals swim up and down the water column, but they spend more time at the preferred depth. The distribution we see is the result of many individual swimming tracks. It appears stable, but individuals replace each other. There are probably two reasons for this behavior:

- The individuals do not really know if they are in the best habitat; they need to probe the environment by swimming up and down. The better they like it, the longer they stay in a certain place.
- The higher the zooplankton density in one place, the stronger are competition and interference between individuals. This makes the habitat less suitable. Consequently, there are other places that have the same suitability as the former maximum. Some individuals will then leave the maximum and spend more time in neighboring places. Indeed, the distribution shown in Fig. 5.18 becomes broader if the *Daphnia* population size increases.

Zooplankton often occur in clouds or swarms (*patchiness*). They can actively form swarms in addition to being passively aggregated by water movement. Cladocerans sometimes form dense collections in quiet water, where they orient to submerged structures, such as light patches. The significance of these swarms is not clear. It is likely that, just as for birds or fish, swarms offer planktonic organisms protection from predators. Predators tend to attack individuals that are outside a swarm, for they cannot concentrate on a single organism within the mass. Inexperienced sticklebacks have difficulty catching daphniids when they are together in a swarm (Milinski 1977). The zooplankton within the swarm are safer, since the fish always feed on the outside of the swarm. The swarm is maintained by the constant attempts of animals to move to its center.

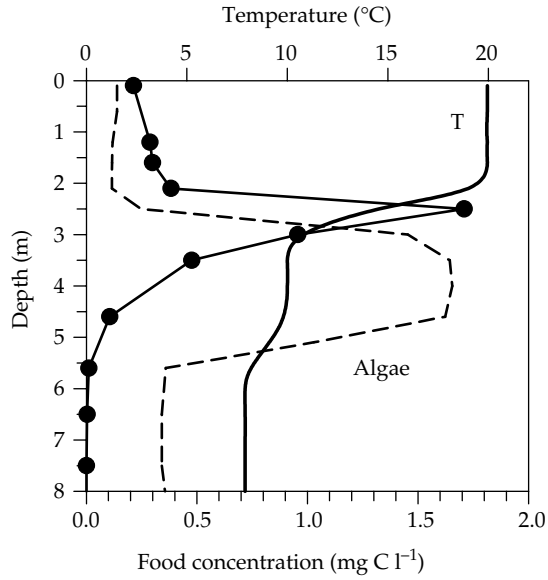


Figure 5.18 Vertical biomass distribution of *Daphnia pulicaria* (closed circles, thin line) in response to a trade-off between a deep algal maximum (dashed line) and temperature stratification (thick line). Experiment in the Plön plankton tower system. The maximum of the dynamic *Daphnia* distribution indicates the optimal habitat where the combination of food and temperature yields the highest fitness (data from Lampert 2005).

Jacobsen and Johnsen (1987) suggested that dense swarms (over 9000 individuals/liter) of the cladoceran *Bosmina longispina* in the littoral of a Norwegian lake served as protection against sticklebacks, which were abundant. The swarm must have a considerable protective effect, for there are also disadvantages in being inside it. *Bosmina* is a filter-feeder that depends on the concentration of particles for food. The concentration of food particles is significantly lower in the center of a swarm of *Bosmina*, as a result of the collective filtration by so many animals. This is another example of the conflict between maximization of reproduction (requiring much food) and the reduction of mortality (protection). It is likely that the swarm breaks up in the dark, when fish can no longer orient optically. Swarms of fish that serve as protection against predatory fish and birds disperse at night so that the individual fish can search for food. These examples of uneven distributions point out the need to discriminate between the proximate causes (how do the animals orient to produce a

swarm?) and ultimate causes (what is the fitness gained by having a clumped distribution?).

Fish swarms are also a good example of how scale can influence the observed distribution. Within a swarm, there is a remarkably even distribution with a constant distance between individuals. From the perspective of the entire lake, however, the fish are extremely clumped. The choice of which scale should be used in a study depends on the question being posed.

5.6 Classification of life-history strategies

Although it is obvious that many different demographic traits contribute to fitness in a given environment, there has been a demand to condense the diversity of the different possible trait combinations into a few "strategy" types. Notethat the word "strategy" is used in a metaphoric sense here and does not imply a planned adaptation in the sense of teleology. The most simplified classification scheme is the concept of "r- and K-strategy" or "r-and K-selection" introduced by MacArthur and Wilson (1967), named after the parameters of the logistic growth curve (Section 5.2.4). It starts from the simple assumption that very different selection factors operate in a scarcely settled habitat that is well below its carrying capacity and a densely populated habitat near its carrying capacity. The winner of a contest of populations in an undercolonized habitat will be the species that has the highest maximum net population growth (r_{max}) and a superior ability to disperse. On the other hand, in a habitat that is already fully colonized (near *K*), efficient use of resources, ability to compete, and avoidance of mortality are important.

Originally, there was an attempt to categorize all species and even major groups as either *r* or *K* strategists. Grasses and insects were given as examples of *r* strategists and trees and mammals as typical *K* strategists. It is more common today to consider a continuum of types. Generally, species and genotypes are no longer characterized as either *r* or *K* selected and are more likely to be described as "more or less" compared to one another, especially within a group of functionally similar organisms, such as phytoplankton, zooplankton, and fish.

Pianka (1970) has listed a number of traits typical for *r*-strategists (rapid development, high r_{max}, early reproduction, small body size, semelparity (i.e., reproducing only once in a lifetime), short life cycle) and *K*-strategists (slow development, lower resource thresholds, delayed reproduction, larger body size, iteroparity (i.e., reproducing several times in a lifetime), long life cycle). A more recent criticism is that these traits are not sufficiently tightly correlated to justify a one-dimensional classification scheme (e.g., Stearns 1992). This is particularly evident at the *K* end of the gradient. Although it is easy to imagine the ideal *r*-strategist (small, short-lived, rapidly growing), the different possible adaptations to a densely settled environment cannot be maximized simultaneously: defense against of predators, resource storage, successful acquisition of strongly limited resources, starvation tolerance. Moreover, there are tradeoffs in the ability to compete for different limiting resource (cf. competition theory, Section 6.1.3).

Although the concept of *r*- and *K*-strategies and some other simple concepts (e.g., Grime's tripolar typology of plant strategies, adapted to phytoplankton by Reynolds 1988) have inspired a lot of empirical research in the past, interest in them has dwindled since the 1990s. Nevertheless, it is foreseeable that the demand for simplified classification will persist. Recently, there has been a plea to replace preconceived functional classification schemes by multivariate statistical analyses of quantified functional traits and to search for correlations and clusters within the *n*-dimensional trait space instead (Petchey and Gaston 2006).

5.7 Dispersal and colonization

The ability of a population to persist in the long term depends on the balance of reproduction and mortality. The early representatives of a species must first of all be able to populate a particular habitat. This colonization can result from active movement or from passive transport. Many organisms have special dispersal stages that are especially well suited to being transported.

One can view *lakes as islands* that are separated from one another by a completely different habitat. Even when lakes are connected by streams, the

flowing water creates an effective boundary. Many lake organisms are not able to survive the turbulent water or move upstream against the water current, and waterfalls may even interfere with the migrations of fish. For this reason, most of the high mountain lakes in the European Alps originally lacked fish populations before stocking was begun (often as early as the Middle Ages).

Streams are *continuous systems*, in contrast to lakes. Physical transport is obviously unidirectional, resulting in a dominance of colonization from upstream. Thus the *drift* (see Section 4.2.5) of organisms in streams is an effective means of dispersal that is not simply an accident. Open areas of streams are colonized very rapidly. For example, a new stream bed was dug during the relocation of a stream in Canada. Only 1 day after the flooding of the new section of the stream, 22 taxa of benthic animals were already present. Of these, 16 taxa had drifted in from upstream. Further colonization progressed more slowly; after 7 days there were 26 species, and after 1 year there were 41, 18 of which did not come from the drift (Williams and Hynes 1977).

Fortunately, such rapid recolonization makes streams considerably more resilient to environmental catastrophes than lakes. One of the most spectacular events of this sort was caused by a fire at the Sandoz Corporation in Basel, Switzerland, in November, 1986. This catastrophe resulted in the release of 10–30 tons of toxic chemicals, including insecticides, fungicides, and herbicides into the river Rhine. As a consequence, thousands of fish, especially eels, were killed as far as 400 km downstream from Basel, and the communities of macrozoobenthos were also adversely affected. Regular sampling demonstrated that the bottom-dwelling animals returned rapidly. Almost certainly, they migrated in from the Upper Rhine and tributaries. Another dramatic case that was less well publicized was the accidental poisoning of the Breitenbach stream in the town of Schlitz (Germany), where a few grams of cypermethrin, a pesticide used against bark beetles, was introduced into the brook by foresters. A single exposure to the poison killed all the insect larvae and amphipods downstream for a distance of 2 km. The effect on the stream was striking. Green filamentous algae soon covered most of the rocks in the stream, because of the absence of grazing larvae. The stream quickly recolonized, however, and within a year it once again had its "natural" communities.

Fish that migrate between the ocean and streams (eel, salmon) can act as connectors between different stream systems. However, even areas of the oceans may be impassable: For example, eels cannot migrate through the meromictic Black Sea, because of its anoxic deep water. Without artificial stocking there would be no eels in the Danube river system.

Opportunistic species rapidly colonize newly created water bodies. This can easily be observed in garden ponds. Flying insects, such as midges, water bugs, and beetles, are often the first colonizers. Other species may be dispersed from pond to pond by passive transport. Microscopic organisms (algae, protozoans) can disperse in aerosols. Many species have resistant resting stages that can be transported directly by the wind, attached to the feathers of waterfowl, or even in the digestive tract of birds (for review see Figuerola and Green 2002).

Pelagic rotifers and cladocerans are very easily dispersed. After many generations of parthenogenic reproduction, they can produce a bisexual generation that results in resting eggs. Cladocerans often encase these eggs in a thickened brood pouch called the *ephippium*, which is expelled as the animal molts (Fig. 5.19). Ephippia are extremely resistant to unfavorable conditions. They can survive drying out, freezing, and lying for several years in the anaerobic sediments. Because the surface of the ephippium is hydrophobic, they often float in the water surface and attach to the feathers of waterfowl, allowing them to be transported. Females hatch from the resting eggs under favorable conditions and begin a new population through parthenogenesis.

The colonization potential of cladocerans has been measured directly (Louette and De Meester 2005) when a series of 25 ponds was newly created in various areas of northern Belgium for amphibian conservation purposes. They were dug in open fields, at varying distances from existing ponds. The new ponds were not connected, and care was taken that they were not located in former wetlands where resting stages could still be in the soil. Hence all new colonizers must have come over land. Colonization of the new pond with cladocerans

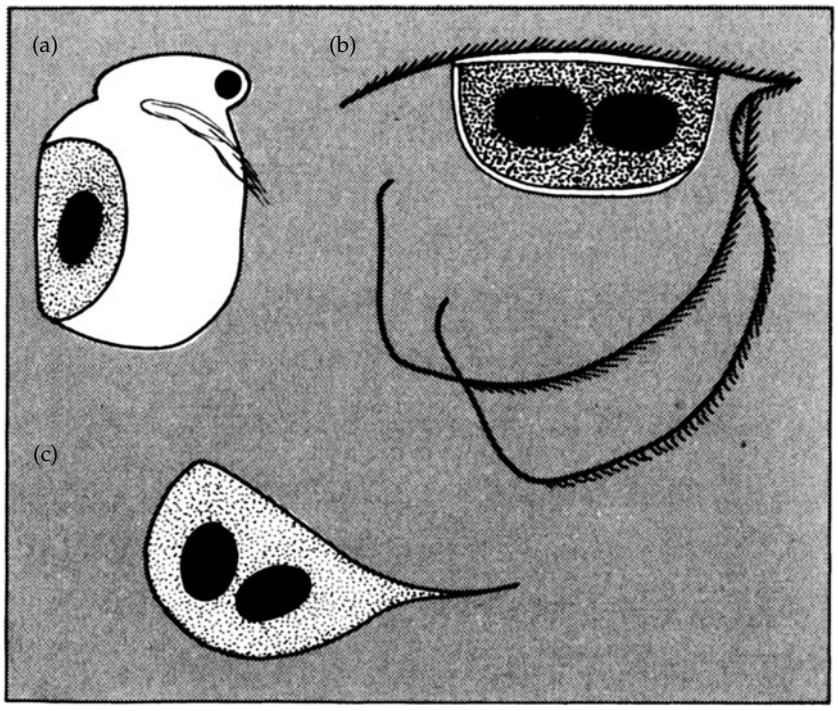


Figure 5.19 Ephippia, the dispersal stage of Cladocera. (a) An ephippial female *Ceriodaphnia* sp.; (b) an ephippium of *Daphnia magna* that has retained part of the carapace; (c) an ephippium of *Daphnia longispina*.

was very rapid. An average of 4.2 cladoceran species (but not always the same ones) colonized a pond within 15 months after establishment. *Daphnia* species were especially successful. Almost half of the 25 ponds were colonized by *D. obtusa* within 4 months.

Visiting waterfowl are often considered to be the main dispersal vectors for zooplankton resting stages, but there are various alternatives. Caceres and Soluk (2002) covered containers with increasing mesh sizes to successively exclude different vectors. They found that small organisms were the fastest colonizers. Rotifers were already present after a few days, while *Daphnia* needed some months. As large vectors such as ducks and mammals were excluded by the experimental design, no differences were found between the different mesh size treatments. Consequently, wind was the most important dispersal vector in this experiment.

The colonization of a habitat has two components: (1) a species must arrive in the new habitat through dispersal, and (2) it must find suitable conditions to establish a population. Both *regional* factors (existence of source populations, distance to travel) and *local* factors (abiotic conditions, interactions with existing communities) are important. If the habitat is empty, as with the new ponds, colonization is easy if the abiotic conditions are suitable. If the habitat is already populated by other species, competition and predation may make it difficult for a new invader to establish itself. For example, Louette *et al*. (2006) observed that the rate of occurrence of species in the new Belgian ponds slowed down considerably in the second year, when the pond contained already an established community. The effect was even more dramatic in pond experiments by Shurin (2000). He added a mixture of 13 new zooplankton species from the region to large *in situ* enclosures with intact resident communities in seven ponds in Michigan (USA). The colonization success of the new species was very low: 91% of the introduced species went extinct quickly. To test if

species interactions were really the reason for the low colonization success, resident zooplankton were diluted by filtering the water before the new species were introduced in the following year. With the reduced species interactions, 3.8 times more new species survived, and their biomass was 16 times higher than in the treatment with the intact community. These experiments show that zooplankton communities can be saturated, and biotic interactions can exclude potential invaders.

Based on observations that neighboring ponds often contain very few, but different, genotypes of readily dispersed species (rotifers, cladocerans), De Meester *et al*. (2002) expanded these ideas to the genotype level. The low genetic diversity and strong differentiation is a paradox, as high dispersal means high gene flow between the ponds. To explain it, De Meester *et al*. (2002) formulated the *monopolization hypothesis*. Early-arriving genotypes of cyclic parthenogens (see section 6.8.2) can build up large populations and establish a large resting propagule bank in the sediments. Individuals arriving later will always be outnumbered by the existing large population, both present in the water column or hatching from the sediments. Competition will be fierce, and the probability that an invading genotype will survive is low. This is called *a priority effect*. The authors argue that patterns of regional genetic differentiation (see Section 5.3.1) may often be caused by historical colonization events (*founder effects*) rather than by recent gene flow.

Humans, as they become more mobile, are also becoming dispersal mechanisms for aquatic organisms. Planktonic organisms are very often introduced during the stocking of fish. A spectacular case occurred during the 1980s, when the predatory cladoceran *Bythotrephes cederstroemi* was accidentally introduced into the North American Great Lakes (Sprules *et al*. 1990). Until then, *Bythotrephes* was the only European species of plankton for which there was no counterpart in North America (Lehman 1987). *Bythotrephes* was quickly distributed throughout all these large lakes and, because its preferred prey was *Daphnia*, caused a major change in the plankton community. It appears that *Bythotrephes* crossed the Atlantic Ocean in the ballast water of ships from eastern Europe. Since then well over 100 alien species have invaded the Laurentian Great Lakes (Ricciardi and MacIsaac 2000) and more than 70% of them are estimated to have come with contaminated ballast water (Holeck *et al*. 2004). Invasive species have become a major threat for aquatic communities worldwide. Human activities often accelerate the process, either directly through deliberate introduction of species supposed to be harvestable or indirectly through habitat modification, e.g., by the building of ship canals or by global climate change. Introduced species can often been considered *keystone species* (see Section 7.3.4) that have a strong effect on whole ecosystems. The stocking of Lake Victoria with the Nile perch (*Lates nilotica*) is a well-known example of the dramatic effect of introducing a keystone species on the native fish fauna. Other examples are crayfish invading new areas where they exert strong negative effects on submerged macrophytes, which affects the whole ecosystem structure (Rosenthal *et al*. 2006).

Rapid dispersal of the zebra mussel *Dreissena polymorpha* is made possible by its free-swimming veliger larvae, albeit only downstream. Although this species had been long established in the lower Rhine and its tributaries, its sudden appearance in the 1960s in Lake Constance was a surprise, since this was upstream from a waterfall on the Rhine at Schaffhausen that should have prevented the larvae from passing. The mussels first appeared in a harbor in Lake Constance, suggesting that they had attached themselves with their byssal threads to the underside of small boats and had been transported over land to the lake. Zebra mussels also appeared in the Great Lakes of North America in the 1980s, where their populations exploded because of the veliger larvae. It is very likely that here also ships were the means of transport across the ocean (Hebert *et al*. 1989). They are now widespread all over the Great Lakes and their tributaries. Just as with many other species that invade a new territory, the zebra mussel developed enormously high population densities, probably well above the carrying capacity.

As passive transport is especially effective for small organisms, *geographical distribution boundaries* are much less important for phytoplankton than for many animals. There is little difference in the phytoplankton in comparable lakes of the northern and

southern temperate zones (e.g., southern South America; Thomasson 1963). There are only a few species (and not a single genus) that are found exclusively in the southern or northern hemisphere. Zooplankton are more distinct biogeographically than phytoplankton. There are generally fewer species of zooplankton in the southern temperate zones than in the north temperate lakes. One copepod genus (*Boeckella*) is exclusively found in the southern hemisphere, except for one species in the region of Mongolia and eastern Siberia.

Endemism is the extreme opposite of the cosmopolitan distribution seen for the phytoplankton. This concept is used to describe a taxon that is restricted to a particular location, even though habitats with similar conditions are found elsewhere. Endemic species are frequently found in the deep graben (fault block depression) lakes of the Tertiary period (Lake Baikal, Lake Tanganyika, Lake Malawi, Lake Ohrid) that are much older (*c*.5–20 million years) than most other lakes (10 000–20 000 years). It is easy to imagine that some species that used to be widely distributed are now found in just a few lakes, since only these few lakes persisted through the Ice Age. At the same time, the continued existence of these lakes over long periods has allowed for much speciation within each lake (Martens *et al*. 1994).

Cichlid fishes are a particularly good example in the large East African lakes. Although it is less than 1 million years old, Lake Victoria alone had about 200 species of these "haplochromine" fish before many of them almost went extinct due to stocking of the lake with the predatory Nile perch (*Lates nilotica*) (Goldschmidt 1996). There has been a debate over whether these fishes all evolved in this one lake or in separate localities. Recent molecular studies using mitochondrial DNA have shown that this "species flock" is probably monophyletic. Some Lake Victoria species are morphologically very similar to species in Lake Tanganyika and Lake Malawi, but genetically they are more closely related to other species in Lake Victoria that look very different from the morphologically similar "foreign" species (Meyer *et al*. 1990).

Lake Baikal in southern Siberia is the oldest lake (probably 20 million years old), with the highest degree of endemism. According to Kozhov (1963), 708 of 1219 species (58%) of the animals found within the lake are endemic, compared with 12 of the 150 phytoplankton species (8%). Varying degrees of endemism can be demonstrated within the animals. Rotifers (5 of 48 species; 10.4%), cladocerans (none of the 10 species; 0%), and calanoid copepods (1 of 5 species; 20%) have a noticeably low degree of endemism. Animals that can move actively over large distances have an intermediate degree of endemism: flying insects make up 24 of the 98 species (24%), and fish make up 23 of the 50 species (46%). Organisms with a strong association with the bottom sediments have a stronger tendency toward endemism than free-swimming species. For example, all endemic fish found in Lake Baikal belong to the benthic dwelling suborder of the Cottoidei, and none of the coregonids, salmonids, cyprinids, accipenserids, and other families has endemics. Extreme endemism is found in the turbellarians (all 90 species), harpacticoid copepods (38 of 43 species; 88%), ostracods (31 of 33 species; 94%), gammarid amphipods (239 of 240 species; 99.6%), and mollusks (56 of 84 species; 67%), all of which are animals associated with bottom sediments.

Review questions

1 Two phytoplankton species are growing exponentially at net growth rates of 0.7 and 0.8 d^{-1}, respectively. The starting abundance of both species is 1 ind ml^{-1}. Calculate the abundance of both species after (a) 1; (b) 2; (c) 5; and (d) 10 days.

2 A phytoplankton species grows for 1 week at the exponential rate of 1.0 d^{-1}. Because of counting and sampling errors, there are 95% confidence intervals of ±20% around both abundance estimates. Calculate the net growth rate for each of the following conditions: (a) the starting abundance (N_0) is 100 ind ml^{-1} and the final abundance (N_7) is 1000 ind ml^{-1}; (b) use the lower margin of the confidence interval for N_0 and the lower margin for N_7; (c) use the upper margin of the confidence interval for N_0 and the lower margin for N_7.

3 A population is growing according to the logistic growth equation with a carrying capacity of 1000 ind m^{-2}. The relative growth rate, $dN/(dtN)$, is the highest when the abundance is as close as possible to zero. At which abundance is the absolute growth rate (dN/dt) highest?

4 Two phytoplankton species have the same reproductive rate ($\mu = 0.9\,d^{-1}$). One species is a diatom that sinks quickly ($v_s = 2\,m\,d^{-1}$), but resists grazing ($w_i = 0.1$). The other species

is a green alga that sinks slowly ($\omega_s = 0.1\,\mathrm{m\,d^{-1}}$) and is sensitive to grazing ($w_i = 0.8$). Calculate for each phytoplankton species (a) the grazing rates for optimal food algae (γ_{opt}) at which the population of that species would stop growing ($r = 0$) at a mixing depths of 0.5, 1, 2, and 10 m; (b) the mixing depth at which the population of that species would stop growing at γ_{opt} of 0.5, 1.0, and $2.0\,\mathrm{d^{-1}}$.

5 In a *Daphnia* population consisting of only females, the average daphniid carries 6 eggs. The development time of the eggs is 4 days. Calculate the birth rate according to Paloheimo's equation. Calculate how the birth rate would change (a) if the egg number were doubled; (b) if the development time of the eggs were reduced by one-half.

6 You are investigating the population dynamics of the rotifer *Keratella cochlearis* in a lake. A net haul yields 375 females with one egg each, 180 females without eggs, and 25 *Keratella* eggs unattached. Three days later, using the same sampling system, you catch 880 females and 790 eggs. At the lake temperature of 20 °C at the time of sampling, the time required for the development of a *Keratella* egg is 17 h. Calculate the population growth rate (r), the birth rate (b), and the mortality rate (d). How many *Keratella* rotifers would you expect on the second sampling date if there had been no mortality?

7 The seasonal abundance of *Daphnia* in many lakes typically follows a bimodal pattern, as shown in Fig. 5.9. How would you infer from field sampling which of the following factors caused this pattern: physical factors (e.g., high temperature), interference by inedible algae, fish predation, invertebrate predation? How would you design an experiment to test your hypothesis?

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER 6

Interactions

It is well known that most species have a more limited distribution than would be predicted by their physiological tolerances. In many cases one can exclude historical events as the cause of an organism's distribution. Explanations then often involve interactions between populations. By consuming a resource, an organism may reduce the availability of the resource or it may itself become food for other organisms. The interaction between organisms that use a common resource is called *competition*. Such interactions may be indirect, involving the exploitation of common resources, or direct, where the competitors directly harm or disable one another. Interactions where one population serves as food for another population are either *predator–prey* or *parasite–host* relationships. Competition and predator–prey relationships result in a negative impact on at least one of the partners. There are also *symbiotic* relationships, where both partners benefit. For example, the nitrifying bacteria *Nitrosomonas* and *Nitrobacter* have metabolic end products that are resources for each other (see Section 4.3.8).

6.1 Competition for resources

6.1.1 Historic concepts: competitive exclusion principle—niche

When organisms of the same or different populations use the same resource, the resource may become scarce, causing decreases in reproductive rate, physiological stress, and even death from starvation. This type of interaction is called *exploitative competition*, as it involves the exploitation of a common resource. Exploitative competition is an indirect interaction, since the reduction in the reproductive ability or vitality of the competitors is not caused by direct effects such as antibiosis and aggression. When two populations are considered to be competing, it is important to define which resource or resources are being competed for.

The first competition experiments under controlled laboratory conditions were carried out with the ciliates *Paramecium aurelia* and *P. caudatum*, which competed for yeast as a common food resource (Gause 1934). Both species reproduced well and reached comparable population densities when grown separately, but *P. caudatum* was suppressed by *P. aurelia* in mixed cultures (Fig. 6.1). This and similar experiments led to the development of the *competitive exclusion principle*: If two or more species compete for the same resource in the same habitat, only one species will survive.

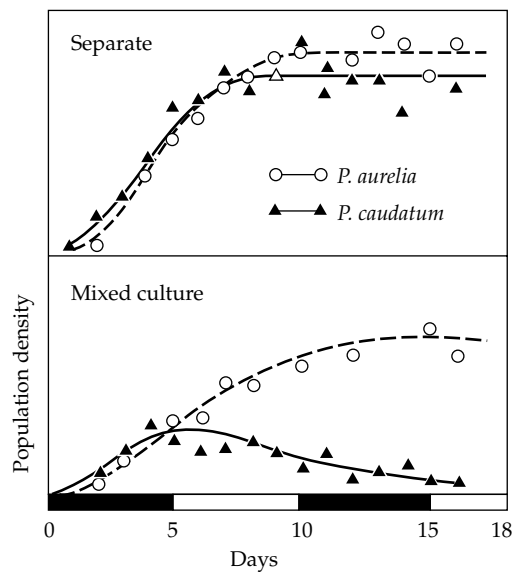


Figure 6.1 Competition experiments of Gause (1934). *Top:* Growth of *Paramecium aurelia* and *P. caudatum* in separate cultures (food: yeast). *Bottom:* Growth of both species in a mixed culture.

The concept of the ecological *niche* is derived directly from the competitive exclusion principle: To coexist for an extended period, different species must live in different habitats, use different resources, obtain the same resources from different sources (e.g., shallow- or deep-rooted plants), or have different requirements in the physical environment. The sum of all of these requirements is defined as the species-specific niche (see Section 4.1.2). According to the competitive exclusion principle, only one species can occupy a realized niche although there might be overlap of fundamental niches. The evolution of distinct niches is thus a mechanism for avoiding competition.

There is much debate over the concept of the niche, with arguments on theoretical as well as empirical grounds. Critics concerned with its theoretical validity point out that because of the *n*-dimensionality of the niche, the competitive exclusion principle cannot be tested empirically (see Section 2.1). If a study comparing two species shows no differences in their habitats, their resource requirements, or their physical requirements, it can always be said that the decisive niche dimension that separates the two species has simply not yet been found.

It can also be argued that, based on the niche theory, there should be no competition today. Species that were once competitors should have developed differences during the course of their evolution, or, if they differed enough behaviorally, they would have avoided one another. Connell (1980) called this idea the "ghost of competition past." Actually, the concept that past competition would lead to an absence of competition in the present is a violation of *Lyell's principle*, originally developed in geology and later used by Darwin for the theory of evolution. According to Lyell's principle, only those processes whose effects can be currently observed can be used to explain past events.

In reality, it is very difficult to conceive of applying the principle "one species—one niche" to plants. The several hundred thousand plant species with their different organs, seeds, and flower nectar could provide several million animal species with perfect resource specializations. Plants, on the other hand, have relatively few resources (light and nutrients), and a major part of these are almost always in excess. This problem is especially obvious for phytoplankton suspended in a turbulent medium, with no means of avoiding competition while using their resources. Hutchinson (1961) described this contradiction between the competitive exclusion principle and the large diversity of species in the phytoplankton, even in tiny samples of water, as the "*paradox of the plankton*." His paper stimulated a series of theoretical and experimental investigations of interspecific competition that eventually led to the mechanistic theory of competition (Tilman 1982).

The controversies about the niche concept stimulated a great deal of empirical research. Much of the controversy, however, was caused by a misunderstanding, especially disregard for the time dimension. This can be easily seen from Gause's *Paramecium* experiment. Even when both species were in the same container and were using the same food, the complete exclusion of one of the species required 16 days or almost 16 generations. Clearly, it takes time to replace the unsuccessful competitor. The slower the reproductive rate and the less the difference in the abilities in the competitors, the longer the exclusion will take. It is also easy to imagine that for two species with very similar competitive abilities, small changes in environmental conditions (e.g., temperature) could cause shifts in the dominance before the slightly inferior species is eliminated. One cannot conclude anything about the niche of species from distributional data, since the time dimension is lacking (see Section 4.1.2). It is impossible to tell from a snapshot in time whether a species is stable or is about to be displaced. Even if one observes a declining trend, it is still possible that the particular species may eventually stabilize at a lower population density.

The possibility that under fluctuating environmental conditions there may be temporary or long-term coexistence suggests that competitors need not evolve toward divergence of features (niche specificity). Competitors may also evolve greater similarities, thereby minimizing the rate of exclusion. Species that differ greatly but share common resources need not have a higher probability of coexisting, since the rate of exclusion is higher. Very similar species that have identical requirements and similar capabilities can coexist due to a fluctuating advantage or the deceleration of the rate of

replacement, whereas dissimilar species can coexist because of their differing requirements (niche specificity). Least likely to coexist are species with moderate differences, which have essentially the same requirements but differ in their abilities to satisfy their requirements.

6.1.2 The competition model of Lotka and Volterra

The first mathematical description of competition was derived from an expansion of the logistic equation for growth (see Section 5.2.4). In its simple form, this equation describes the negative feedback effect of increasing density of a population on its own growth rate. The Lotka–Volterra model extends the effect of increasing density on growth rate to a competing species. The mathematical expression for two species is:

$$\frac{dN_1}{dt}\frac{1}{N_1} = r_{\max 1}\frac{(K_1 - N_1 - \alpha N_2)}{K_1} \tag{6.1}$$

$$\frac{dN_2}{dt}\frac{1}{N_2} = r_{\max 2}\frac{(K_2 - N_2 - \beta N_2)}{K_2} \tag{6.2}$$

Here N_1 and N_2 indicate species 1 and 2, and K_1 and K_2 are their respective carrying capacities.

In most of the literature, r with a numerical index for the species is used to denote the (maximal) growth rates at population densities close to zero. For the sake of consistency with the use of the symbol r in population dynamics, where r just means the instantaneous net growth rate, we prefer to us the symbols $r_{\max 1}$ and $r_{\max 2}$ here. The coefficients α and β are a measure of the effect of one species on the other. Growing populations will follow the logistic equation and reach an equilibrium at the carrying capacity, where the growth rate is zero. Each species represents a certain proportion of the total population, since the carrying capacity depends on the available resources and the two competing species must share these resources. If one species does not reach its carrying capacity, that capacity can be filled by the other species. One can determine the relationship between the two species by solving equations (6.1) and (6.2) for the condition of zero growth ($dN_1/dt = 0$ and dN_2/dt) as:

$$N_1 = K_1 - \alpha N_2 \tag{6.3}$$

$$N_2 = K_2 - \beta N_1 \tag{6.4}$$

From these equations one can create a graphic model that clearly demonstrates the result of competition between species with differing competition coefficients. Given a certain number of individuals of species 1, we can use (6.3) to calculate how many individuals of species 2 are necessary to bring the total number to the carrying capacity. A straight line called a *zero-growth isocline* will be formed by placing all possible combinations where species 1 does not grow on a coordinate system with N_1 on the x-axis and N_2 on the y-axis (Fig. 6.2A).

If no individuals of species 2 are present, from (6.3) we have $N_1 = K_1$; that is, species 1 will be at its

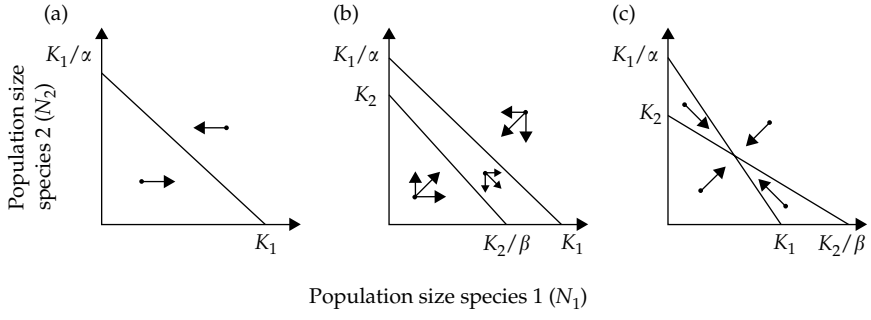


Figure 6.2 A graphic model of competition according to Lotka and Volterra. The lines connect all equilibrium combinations of species 1 and 2. The population size of each species is shown on the axes of the graphs. (a) Changes in the population density of species 1, which competes with species 2. When a combination appears that does not occur on the line (point), the population develops in the direction indicated by the arrow. (b) Development of both species. Here, the arrows indicate the direction of both species and the resulting direction for the total population. The population moves into the space between the lines for both species and then in the direction of the x-axis. Species 1 wins. (c) If both lines cross, this intersection represents the point of stable coexistence.

carrying capacity. For $N_1 = 0$, we can derive from (6.3) the point of intercept of the line with the *y*-axis:

$$N_2 = K_1 - \alpha$$

If, by chance, there is a combination that does not fit on the straight line, the numbers of each species will increase or decrease until the carrying capacity has been reached; that is, the total population will move along the line.

A similar line can be constructed for species 2 using the β coefficient. The position of the line will determine the pattern of the competition. Figure 6.2 illustrates two such possibilities. In case (B) the equilibrium line of species 1 is higher than that of species 2. If the total population is below the carrying capacity for species 2, its population will increase until it has reached zero growth for species 2. Now species 2 will no longer grow, but species 1 can continue to increase. If the total population is above both lines, the populations of both species will decrease until they reach the topmost line. Species 1 will then remain constant, while species 2 continues to decline. Between the two lines species 1 will increase and species 2 will decrease. The result is always a movement of the total population in the direction of the starting point toward K_1 on the *x*-axis, where only members of species 1 will remain. Species 2 will be excluded.

The crossing of the two lines (Fig 6.2C) indicates a very different situation. In the example shown ($K_1 < K_2/\beta$ and $K_2 > K_1/\alpha$), the entire population tends to move toward the point of interception. Both species have a stable coexistence at the point. If the isoclines intersect, but $K_1 > K_2/\beta$ and $K_2 > K_1/\alpha$ (not shown in Fig. 6.2), the equilibrium is unstable. Arrows will move away from the intersection point. The initial conditions will determine which species drives the other to extinction. There are several additional possibilities, depending on the location of the lines, but coexistence is possible only if one species is at its maximum density (*K*) and the other species has a positive value. This can be expressed mathematically as:

$$\frac{K_1}{K_2} > \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad K_2 > \frac{\beta}{K_1}$$

This means that the density-dependent effect must be larger within a species than between species. The exclusion of species 2 by species 1 follows from:

$$\frac{K_1}{K_2} > \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{K_2}{K_1} < \beta$$

For the reverse, where species 2 excludes species 1:

$$\frac{K_1}{K_2} < \beta \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{K_2}{K_1} > \alpha$$

The coefficients α and β express some type of negative interaction between two species, but they do not take into account the actual mechanism of competition. They must be derived experimentally from a comparison of population growth rates in mixed- and monocultures. This makes it impossible to use the coefficients to make predictions in nature.

6.1.3 Mechanistic theory of resource competition

Early competition experiments (Gause) and the early mathematical models of competition (Lotka–Volterra) treated competitive abilities as a "black box." One could only identify the winner of a competition experiment at the end of the experiment. No additional definition of competitive ability, such as physiological ability to utilize a resource, could be derived from such experiments. Using circular logic, competitive ability was simply defined as the ability to exclude a competitor. Tilman's (1982) *mechanistic theory of competition*, developed from the principles of chemostat cultures (see Box 4.2), solved this problem. The salient feature of this model is that the competitive ability of a species is derived from its physiological characteristics, such as its growth kinetics under resource limitation and its loss rates (mortality and emigration). A graphical model can be used to show the predicted outcome of a competitive interaction.

The simplest model is presented in Fig. 6.3: competition for *one common resource*. The two hypothetical competitors differ in their growth kinetics. Species A reaches higher reproductive rates at higher resource concentrations and species B at lower resource concentrations. The net growth rate

is the difference between the reproductive rate and loss rate (see Section 5.2.3). It is assumed in this example that both species have the same loss rates. This can be accomplished experimentally in a chemostat culture by adjusting the flow-through rate to control population losses. Shortly after inoculation, when the organisms have not yet reduced the limiting resource, both species reproduce at nearly maximal rates. This allows the population of species A to grow more rapidly. As the resource is reduced by increasing consumption of the growing populations, their reproductive rates decline.

When the loss rate is high (2 in Fig 6.3), species B will first reach its equilibrium point, where the rates of reproduction and loss are identical (R^*_{B2}). There is a zero net growth rate. If there were no competition, species B would reach a steady-state equilibrium in which there would be a balance between new production and elimination of organisms as well as between consumption and supply of the resource ("*steady state*"). The resource may be imported or supplied by remineralization (for inorganic resources) or new growth (for live resources). However, at the equilibrium concentration of species B, species A still reproduces faster than its rate of loss, and its population therefore increases. As species A continues to increase, the resource decreases until it reaches the equilibrium concentration for species A (R^*_{A2}). At R^*_{A2} species B has a reproductive rate that is lower than its loss rate, meaning the growth rate is negative. Population B will be excluded eventually, and A maintains its steady state.

On the other hand, if the loss rate is lower (1 in Fig. 6.3), increasing consumption of resources would lower the resource concentration first to the equilibrium for species A (R^*_{A1}). At this level of resources, species B can continue to have a positive growth rate until the concentration of the limiting resource drops to the value R^*_{B1}. Species A is then excluded, and species B will stay in steady-state equilibrium. From this example we can see that the competitive strength of a species is defined by the equilibrium concentration of the limiting resource (R^*) at the point where the curves for growth and loss rates cross. If several species compete for the same limiting resource, the successful species will be the one that drives the concentration of the limiting resource to the lowest level (minimization of R^*). The R^* criterion is also valid if the competing species differ in their loss rates.

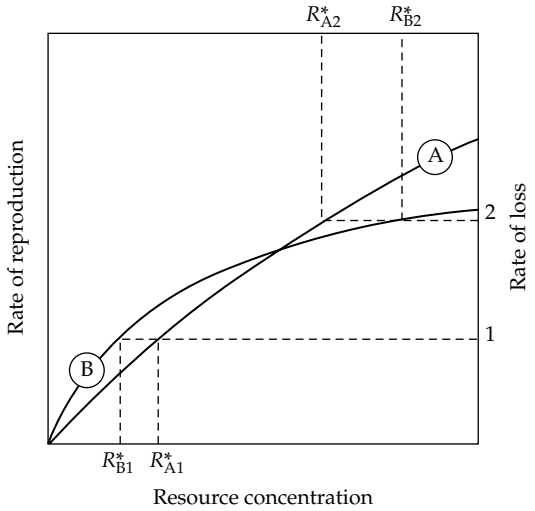


Figure 6.3 A graphic model of competition between hypothetical species A and B for a common limiting resource. In systems with low loss rates (1), species B wins; in systems with high loss rates (2) species A wins. The competitive strength is defined by the equilibrium value R^*, the point where the growth kinetics intersects the loss rate. The species with the lowest R^* wins, since the loser species can only achieve a negative growth rate at this resource concentration (loss rate > production rate) (from Tilman 1982).

Sommer (1986) tested this theory experimentally. Monod uptake kinetics for phosphorus were determined for several green algae in Lake Constance. A natural inoculum from Lake Constance was cultured in a chemostat at very low silicon concentrations to exclude the diatoms. In every experiment, after several weeks only one particular species remained, irrespective of how abundant it had been in the inoculum. The winner of this competition was in fact the species predicted by the Monod kinetic model.

This clearly illustrates the major difference between the competition models of Lotka–Volterra and Tilman. In the Lotka–Volterra model the competitive abilities of the species involved are determined by the outcome of the experiment. In the Tilman model, the mechanisms of the competition

(resource use) are used to predict the winner for a set of conditions. This is why we refer to it as a "*mechanistic*" model.

When the competition experiment with the Lake Constance phytoplankton was repeated with high concentrations of silicon, the diatoms always became dominant. The green algae were able to compete successfully for phosphorus as long as the diatoms were excluded by the shortage of silicon. The theory must be expanded to include several resources. Would it be possible to balance the supply of silicon and phosphorus so that green algae and diatoms can coexist? The predicted patterns of *competition for several resources* can also be presented graphically, as shown in Fig. 6.4 for two essential and two substitutable resources. The axes in the diagram (called the *resource plane*) represent the concentrations of both resources. Instead of a single R^* value there is a *ZNGI* (*zero net growth isocline*, line of zero net growth). This line (isopleth of growth) links all the concentration combinations at which the reproductive rate equals the loss rate. With only essential resources the ZNGI forms a right angle that does not cross either of the axes. The position of each of the lines is determined by the equilibrium concentration (R^*) of the respective resource. If one of the two resources is at a concentration to the left of or below the angle, the species cannot grow at all.

In a chemostat system resources are supplied at fixed rates (see Box 4.2). The concentrations of the two resources in the inflow can be plotted as a point on the resource plane. This point is called the *supply point* (Fig. 6.4). Note that the supply point is fixed, since the resource concentrations in the inflow are independent of what happens in the chemostat. The actual concentrations of the resources in the chemostat (*resource availability*) can change, depending on the biological activity, and will eventually reach a steady state. Without any consumption, the actual concentration must approach the supply point after the chemostat vessel has been flushed several times. In this case, the direction of movement of the actual concentration on the resource plane over time (trajectory) will be described by the *resource supply vector*, which always points toward the supply point.

If the chemostat contains organisms, these will consume resources as they grow. Essential resources are consumed in an *optimal ratio* (see Section 4.3.7), equivalent to the stoichiometric ratio of the resources in the growing tissue of the organism and consequently, to the ratio of the two R^*s. Without a

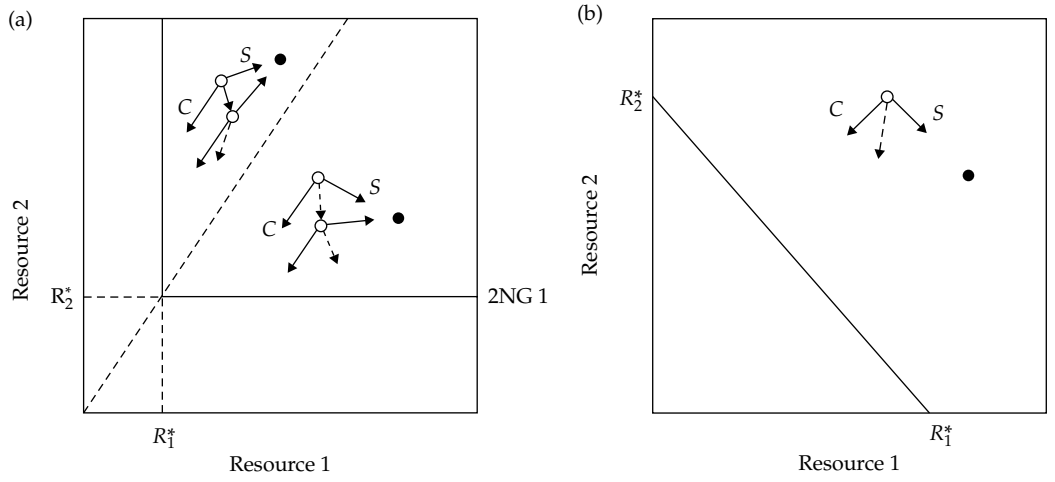


Figure 6.4 Limitation of one species by two resources. All ratios of the two resources form a resource plane. (a) Essential (nonsubstitutable) resources. ZNGI, zero net growth isocline. Solid dots are different supply points. Open circles represent resource availability points. The initial resource availability point will move in the direction resulting from the combined effects of the supply vector (*s*) and the consumption vector (*c*) when the population grows and consumes resources (dotted vector). The availability point (actual concentrations in the chemostat system) will follow a trajectory until it hits a ZNGI. The dashed line is the optimal resource ratio of the species that determines the consumption vector. (b) The same situation for perfectly substitutable resources.

new supply of resources, the change of the actual concentrations would be described by a *consumption vector* with the slope of the optimum resource ratio. The real change in the concentrations (resource availability trajectory) is the result of the combined supply and consumption vectors. Unlike the fixed slope of the consumption vector, the slope of the supply vector will change with the actual concentrations, so that the direction of the resultant vector will also change.

The location of the supply point determines the equilibrium conditions. If the supply point lies between the ZNGI and the origin of the graph, the species cannot grow and will disappear. However, if the supply point lies on the other side of the ZNGI, the concentrations of both resources are above R^*, and the population can grow. With continued population growth the resource trajectory will eventually hit the ZNGI. At this point, net population growth is zero, the population remains at the carrying capacity, and there will be no further reduction in the resource concentrations. The trajectory of nutrient concentrations will not cross the ZNGI. The location of the supply point and the direction of the consumption vector determine where the ZNGI is hit; that is, which of the two resources will eventually be the limiting resource. Both resources can be limiting simultaneously if the consumption vector hits exactly at the intersection of the two lines forming the right angle. This is only possible when the supply point lies on the line of the optimum resource ratio. This line divides the resource plane into two fields that determine which resource is finally limiting. If the supply point is above the line, R_1 will be the limiting resource; if the supply point is below the line, R_2 will be limiting.

The ZNGI looks different for completely substitutable resources (Fig. 6.4B). Organisms may grow with either resource (see Section 4.3.4), but one of the resources may be more nutritious. Consequently, R^* for the more nutritious resource must be lower. The ZNGI forms a line that intersects each of the axes in the positive region. Supply points and consumption vectors can also be constructed for this graph, but the slope of the consumption vector must be determined experimentally, as it cannot be predicted from the stoichiometry.

We can now use this model to predict the outcome of competition between two species for two resources, by combining the ZNGIs of the two species into one graph. As the ZNGIs of all species differ, there are several possible combinations (Tilman 1982). For example, if the ZNGIs of competing species are parallel to one another, the successful species will be the one with the ZNGI closest to the axes (both R^* are lower). The most interesting case involves a trade-off, so that the better competitor for R_1 is a poorer competitor for R_2 (Fig. 6.5A). In this case the ZNGIs cross and delimit four areas on the resource plane. None of the species can exist if the supply point lies between the axes and the combined ZNGIs. In the areas with incomplete overlap, one of the two species is unable to grow even in the absence of competitors and the other species will monopolize the resources. In the area of complete overlap of both ZNGIs, the availabilities of R_1 and R_2 are above the respective R^*s for both species, i.e., both species can grow. As they grow they consume the resources according to their own optimum ratios. The resource availability trajectory will now depend on both consumption vectors and the supply vector. Unlike the single-species situation, the slope of the combined consumption vector will not remain constant. If the resource concentrations cross the ZNGI of one species, this species will no longer grow, but the second species whose ZNGI has not yet been reached will continue to utilize the resources. Consequently, the combined consumption vector will approach the optimum resource ratio of the species that is still growing. Resource consumption will proceed to the equilibrium point of this species.

Again the location of the supply point determines the resource availability trajectory and the final equilibrium condition (Fig. 6.5B). The optimum ratios of the two species delimit three areas within the field of possible growth for both species. If the supply point lies above the optimum ratio for species 1, the trajectory will finally cross the ZNGI of species 2, and species 2 is replaced by species 1. The opposite will happen if the supply point lies below the optimum ratio for species 2. However, if the supply point lies between the two optimum ratios, the trajectory will always end at the intersection point of the two ZNGIs. The trajectory may be

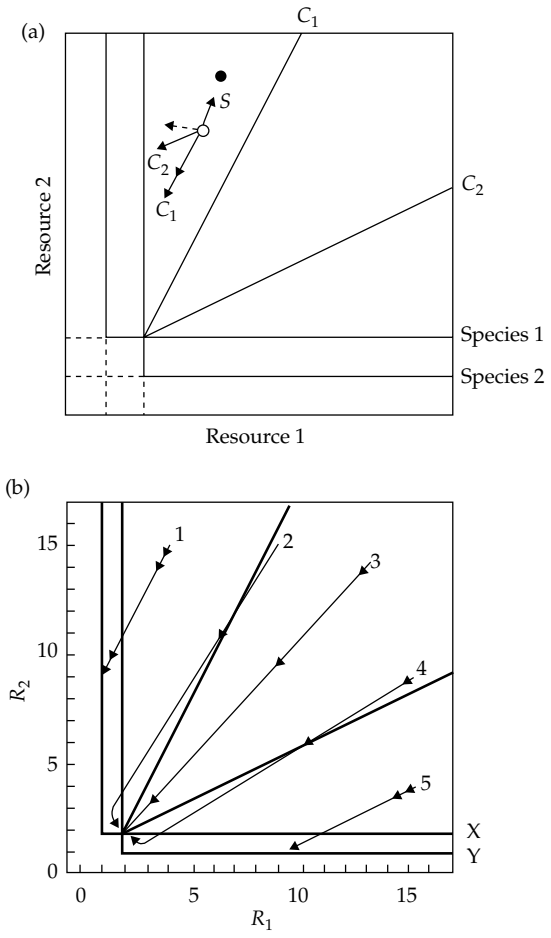


Figure 6.5 (a) Crossing ZNGIs for two species competing for two essential resources. Species 1 is the better competitor (lower R^*) for resource 1 and species 2 is the better competitor for resource 2. C_1 and C_2 denote the consumption vectors for the two species. The full circle is the supply point. The movement (dashed vector) of the resource availability point (open circle) is determined by the combined effect of the two consumption vectors and the supply vector (dashed). (b) Resource availability trajectories originating at various supply points located in different areas of the resource plane.

curved and may transiently cross an area where only one species can exist in the long run, but the combined effects of consumption and supply eventually draw it back to the intersection point. At the intersection point of the ZNGIs, both species are in equilibrium. This is a point of stable coexistence. The two species will finally coexist, if the supply point is located within the area delineated by the individual consumption vectors (optimum ratios). For essential resources, to which Liebig's law of the minimum applies, this is the region within which both species are limited by different resources.

There are now six areas defined on the resource plane (Fig. 6.6a). The outcome of the competition between the two species is predicted by the location of the supply point. None of the species can persist if the supply point lies in the area adjacent to the origin of the graph. Only one species can exist *a priori* in the rectangles between the ZNGIs. In each of the two areas delimited by the ZNGIs and the consumption vectors, one species will competitively displace the other. Finally, if the supply point lies between the consumption vectors, the two species can coexist. The closer the supply point is to the area of sole dominance of one species, the larger the proportion of this species when both are in equilibrium. A similar graphical model can be constructed for substitutable resources if the ZNGIs of the two species intersect (Fig. 6.6c).

Note that it is the *ratio of the limiting resources* and not the absolute amount of resources that defines the boundaries of coexistence and exclusion in the model. The maximum number of species that can coexist in equilibrium within the region of coexistence is equal to the number of limiting resources (extending the concept of the competitive exclusion principle). Even though no more than two species can coexist at a particular ratio of two resources, coexistence of more than two species is possible if there is a gradient in the resource ratio. Figure 6.6b and 6.6d illustrate the conditions under which this is possible: The intercept of two "neighboring" species must be in the region where no other species can exist (for a detailed derivation of his prediction see Tilman 1982). This would occur if species are inversely ranked in their competitive abilities for both resources. Species that coexist at a particular resource ratio are "neighbors," having relatively similar optimal resource ratios, i.e., species 1 and 2 in Fig. 6.6B and 6.6D could form a pair of coexisting species, but not species 1 and 4.

This competition model has also been tested many times using chemostat experiments with planktonic algae (essential resources; usually silicon and phosphorus, but also nitrogen and phosphorus) and once with rotifers (substitutable resources; two species of algae as food). Figure 6.7 shows the first

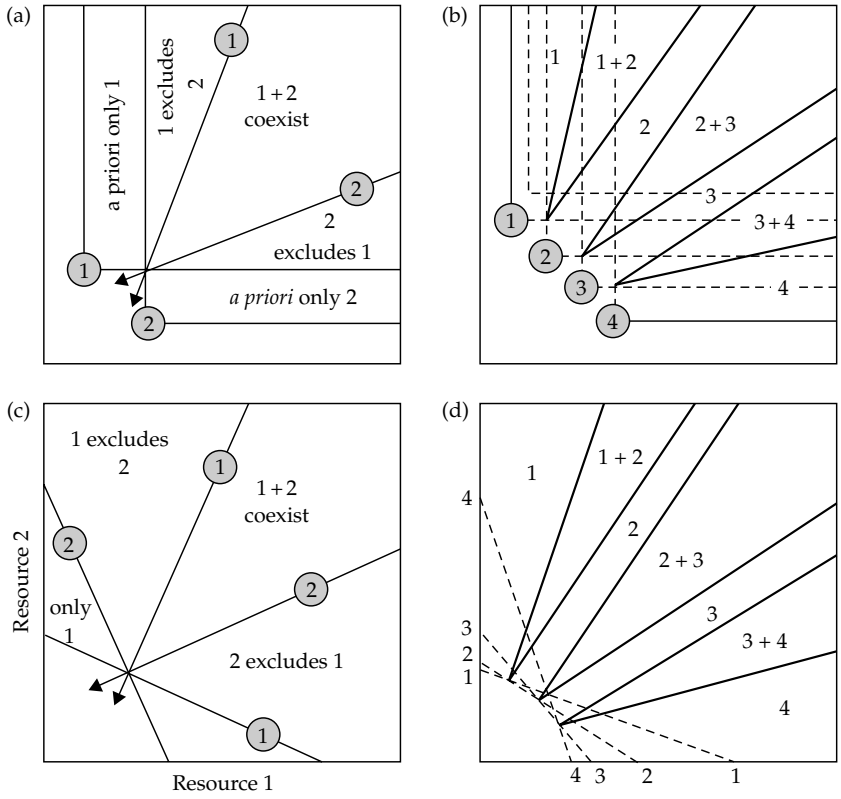


Figure 6.6 The theory of competition for two resources (from Tilman 1982). A and B are essential resources; C and D are substitutable resources. (a) Competition between species 1 and 2 for two resources. Delineation of regions of exclusion and coexistence by ZNGIs and consumption vectors. (b) Several species (1, 2, 3, 4) share the gradient of the R_1/R_2 ratio. The numbers indicate the regions of coexistence and sole dominance. The dashed line represents the ZNGI of each species. (c) Competition of two species for two substitutable resources. Regions of exclusion and coexistence are delineated by ZNGIs and consumption vectors. (d) Several species (1, 2, 3, 4) share the gradient of the R_1/R_2 ratio; cf. (b).

published example (Tilman 1977) using the diatom *Asterionella formosa* (higher silicon and lower phosphorus requirements) and *Cyclotella meneghiniana* (opposite) for silicon and phosphorus as limiting resources. The ZNGIs were derived from the Monod curves for both species; the consumption vectors were drawn so that the resources were consumed in an optimal ratio for the algae. The supply points in the competition diagram correspond to the concentrations in the inflow to the chemostats (S_0). The predictions were supported in 11 of the 13 experiments. The diagram clearly demonstrates that the controlling factor is actually the resource ratio and not the absolute concentration.

Many other studies followed, some using two or more cultured species and some using natural phytoplankton as the inoculum. Taxonomic trends were consistent, irrespective of the geographical origin of the species used: Diatoms were dominant at high Si:P ratios. Within the diatoms there was a consistent order from centric to pennate species that followed the increasing ratio of Si:P. When nitrogen and phosphorus were manipulated as limiting resources, cyanobacteria became the dominants at low N:P ratios and high temperatures (>15 °C) and green algae and diatoms dominated at high N:P ratios, depending on the availability of silicon.

As algae absorb light, they "consume" this resource. Models based on Tilman's concept can therefore be used to describe competition for nutrients and light. In a mixed water column, on average

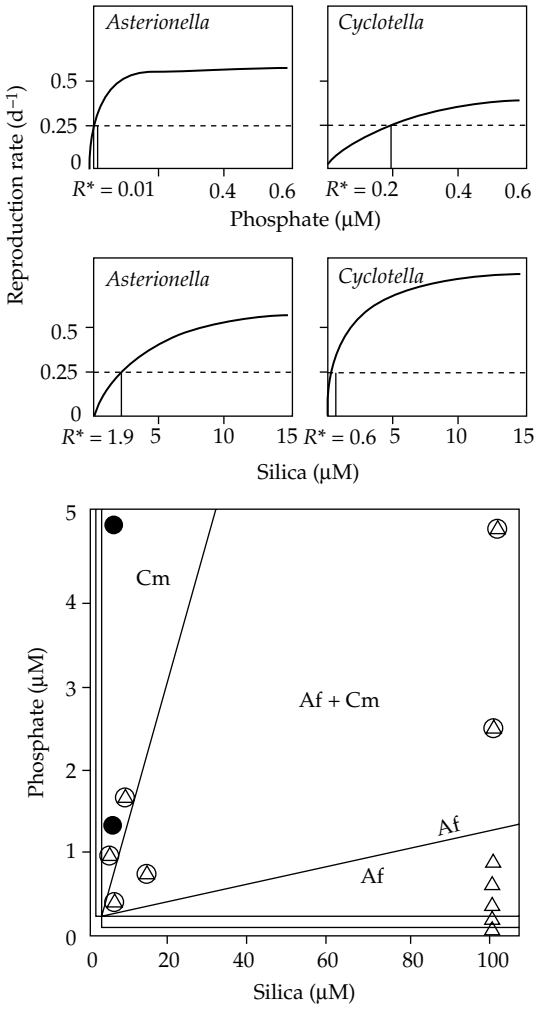


Figure 6.7 Summary of the competition experiments of Tilman (1977) with *Asterionella formosa* and *Cyclotella meneghiniana* at a dilution rate of 0.25 d^{-1}. *Top:* Monod kinetics of phosphorus- and silicon-limited growth, determination of the R^* values. *Bottom:* A competition diagram with ZNGIs and consumption vectors. The symbols characterize the supply points (composition of the medium in the inflow) of each experiment and the taxonomic outcome of the competition. Circles: *Cyclotella* dominant; triangles: *Asterionella* dominant; combined symbols: coexistence.

all algae will be exposed to the same light conditions, ranging from high light intensity at the surface to low light intensity in the deep water. Analogous to the R^* concept, each species has a minimum light intensity, I^*, needed to maintain its population size. As algal populations grow, they reduce the light intensity in the deep water. Under these light conditions, the species with the lowest I^* would win the competition. Graphical models can be constructed for simultaneous competition for light and nutrients (Huisman and Weissing 1994). The basic difference between the two types of resources is that nutrient consumption depends on resource concentration (amount per unit volume), whereas light absorption is related to a resource flux (irradiation per unit area). Therefore, the consumption vectors depend on the mixing depth (z) and on the turbidity caused by nonalgal particles. Passarge *et al*. (2006) have tested the predictions of a model combining competition for light and phosphorus in great detail. As in Tilman's study, they first ran monoculture experiments in phosphorus- or light-limited chemostats to estimate the model parameters for five phytoplankton species. Then they tested the predictions in competition experiments with a broad rage of phosphorus levels mimicking oligotrophic to eutrophic conditions. As in earlier experiments with two different nutrients, competition for phosphorus and light could be accurately predicted. However, there were no trade-offs between competitive abilities for light and nutrients, i.e., species that were good competitors for phosphorus were good competitors for light as well. Consequently, no stable coexistence was found, and all experiments led to competitive exclusion. The authors argue that competition for light is not a mechanism explaining Hutchinson's paradox.

Figure 6.8 illustrates an experimental test for substitutable resources. The two rotifer species, *Brachionus calyciflorus* and *B. rubens*, can both feed on the flagellated green alga *Chlamydomonas* as well as on the coccal green alga *Monoraphidium*, but they differ in their ability to utilize these resources (Rothhaupt 1988). *B. calyciflorus* grows better with *Chlamydomonas*, and *B. rubens* grows better with *Monoraphidium* with the same carbon content of each food. This results in lower R^* values for the more efficiently used resource. Consumption vectors and ZNGIs were used to predict that *B. rubens* would dominate at low ratios, whereas *B. calyciflorus* would dominate at high ratios, as well as the regions where the two species would coexist (Fig. 6.8). Long-term experiments then tested the competitive abilities at two rates of loss. The results

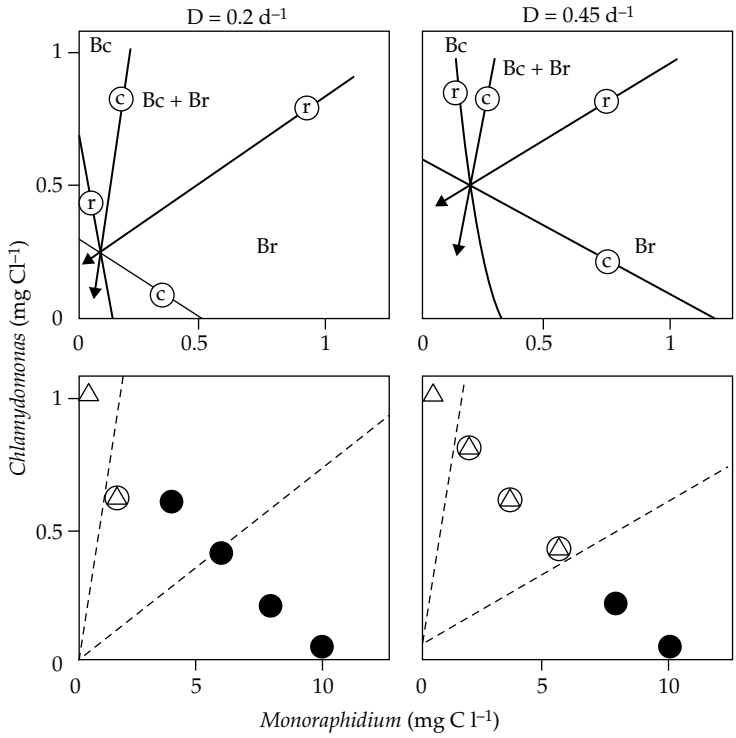


Figure 6.8 Competition between the rotifers *Brachionus rubens* (Br, r, circles) and *B. calyciflorus* (Bc, c, triangles) for the substitutable resources *Chlamydomonas* and *Monoraphidium* (from Rothhaupt 1988). (*Above*) Region near the origin; position of the ZNGIs and the consumption vectors, as well as predictions of coexistence and exclusion regions for the dilution rates of 0.2 and 0.45 d^{-1}. (*Below*) Actual results of the experiment; the symbols show the location of the supply points as well as the outcome of the competition (circles: Br; triangles: Bc; combined symbols: coexistence). The dashed lines delineate the regions of coexistence and exclusion defined in the upper graph.

of the experiments agreed with the predictions in 11 of the 12 cases. There was only one experiment where coexistence was predicted, but *B. rubens* dominated.

Animals larger than rotifers cannot be cultured in chemostats as they avoid being washed out. Hence a direct application of Tilman's model for larger zooplankton is not possible. However, in analogy to Tilman's R^*, we can use the physiological concept of the *threshold food concentration* (see Section 4.4.3, Fig. 4.28) to predict the outcome of exploitative competition between larger animals that share a common resource, e.g., filter-feeding zooplankton. The species with the lower threshold will be the superior competitor. An application of this concept is shown in Fig. 6.36.

Filter-feeding zooplankton are often cultured in flow-through systems where food is added with the inflow, but animals are prevented from leaving the vessel. Populations in flow-through vessels can grow, but their loss rate is determined only by natural mortality, not by external factors. Swimming in a flow-through vessel, zooplankton consume the inflowing algae, thus the algal concentration in the vessel and in the outflow will be lower than in the inflow. As long as the algal concentration in the vessel is higher than the threshold for growth, individual zooplankton will grow and reproduce, and the population in the vessel will grow. Consequently the algal consumption rate will increase. As the algal input is fixed, this must result in a reduction of the algal concentration to the level of the threshold concentration. At this point, the filter-feeder population can no longer grow, hence the system has reached an equilibrium between algal input and consumption. If an individual dies, the filtering

capacity of the population is reduced, which will result in a small increase in food concentration and compensating growth of the animals. The threshold concentration for growth of an individual is now the equilibrium concentration for the population.

This *equilibrium food concentration* has been termed C^* by Kreutzer and Lampert (1999) by analogy to Tilman's R^*. They determined C^* for differently sized *Daphnia* species feeding on *Scenedesmus* in single-species experiments, and found that larger species had lower values of C^*. For example, C^* was $40\,\mu g\,C\,l^{-1}$ for the larger *D. pulicaria* compared with $54\,\mu g\,C\,l^{-1}$ for the smaller *D. galeata*. Hence they predicted that *D. pulicaria* should outcompete *D. galeata* in a mixed population. Figure 6.9 shows the results of a competition experiment. As the combined inoculum of *Daphnia* consumes more algae than are replaced by the inflow, the algal concentration drops below C^* of *D. galeata*. It then remains between the two values of C^*. Being food limited, both species are reduced in numbers, but when its C^* has been crossed, *D. galeata* continues to decrease, while *D. pulicaria* (being still above its C^*) maintains the population. Finally, when *D. galeata* has nearly gone extinct, *D. pulicaria* can still grow slightly. It will probably reach the equilibrium soon.

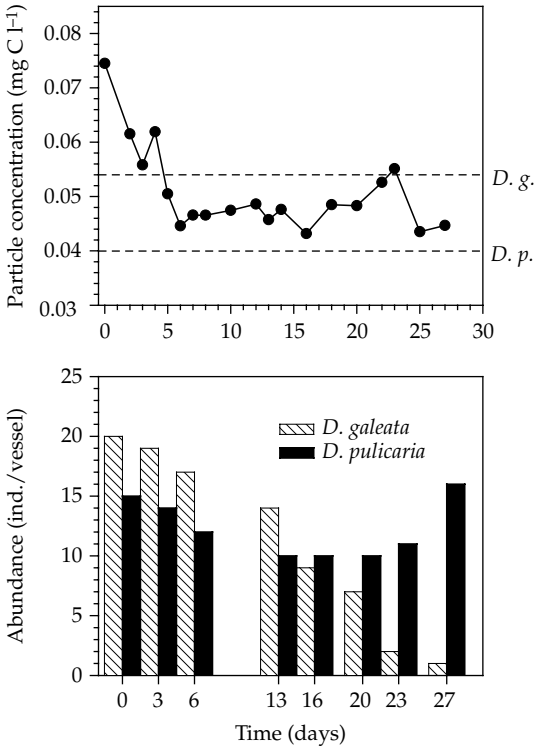


Figure 6.9 The concept of threshold food concentration used to predict the result of competition of two filter-feeding *Daphnia* species. *D. pulicaria* is larger than *D. galeata*. *Top:* Algal concentration in a flow-trough experiment, when both species are present. The horizontal dashed lines indicate the equilibrium algal concentrations (C^*) determined for the individual species in an earlier experiment. *Bottom:* Abundances of the two *Daphnia* species during the experiment. *D. pulicaria*, the species with the lower C^*, replaces *D. galeata* (from Kreutzer and Lampert 1999).

Note that despite the different loss factors involved, R^* and C^* are both population properties and their meaning is similar. Although alga have "package character" (see Section 6.1.5) and cannot be treated as nonsubstitutable resources, the model is applicable in this case if only one algal species (resource) is available for both *Daphnia* species. *Daphnia* filter a rather broad size spectrum of algae (see Fig. 4.26), hence the concept of C^* can be applied to mixtures of food algae as long as the mixture stays constant. Both concepts are mechanistic, but they are also both equilibrium models, which make their application in a variable environment difficult. Nevertheless, it is encouraging that the basic predictions derived for equilibrium conditions often hold for variable conditions in nature.

6.1.4 Competition under variable conditions

Equilibrium conditions do not occur in nature in the way that they do in chemostat cultures. In addition to the regular diel and annual cycles of light, there are a number of less regular or irregular fluctuations in the supply of resources as well as in boundary conditions that influence phytoplankton competition. Some fluctuations cause indirect effects. Temperature changes in the epilimnion, for example, influence the mixing depth and therefore the availability of light, the addition of nutrients to the epilimnion, and the sedimentation losses. Zooplankton feeding, an important cause of phytoplankton mortality, varies with the time of day (vertical migration) and with the changes in the abundance of the zooplankton. The supply of nutrients from zooplankton excretion also fluctuates. The excretion of nutrients by zooplankton creates microzones of elevated concentrations of nutrients

that can be exploited by nutrient-starved cells with higher uptake rates (see Section 6.4.4). Such temporal variability in resource supply can lead to shifts in the competitive advantage of different species.

Some authors believe that competition theory cannot be applied to natural systems because they are too variable. Accordingly, many species can coexist because the competitive advantages of different species are constantly changing. Harris (1986) argued against this concept, asserting that there is no competition under variable conditions. One might also propose that the complete exclusion of a species occurs only as the final result of the process (competition) and that competition under constant conditions usually does not proceed long enough to reach this final condition. This raises the question whether the patterns observed in chemostats would stay the same if the competition conditions were varied temporarily.

The speed of the changes in the environmental conditions is of critical importance. "Fast" and "slow" are relative concepts that must be viewed in relationship to the rate of exclusion of the losing competitor. If changes in conditions come very infrequently, they may not occur in time to provide the inferior species with some possible advantage that would slow its exclusion. If the conditions fluctuate too rapidly, there may be short-term physiological changes, but these may have little influence on the competitive interaction, since all the species may simply respond to the average conditions. This leads to the hypothesis that both very slow and very rapid fluctuations offer no changing competitive advantages that will lead to few coexisting species, but intermediate frequencies of disturbance should promote the coexistence of the most species and exclusion of the fewest. This is the major point of the *intermediate disturbance hypothesis* (IDH) of Connell (1978).

This hypothesis was tested with phytoplankton in chemostats where the addition of nutrients and removal of cells was done at specific intervals, rather than continually (Gaedeke and Sommer 1986). When the dilutions were done at intervals less than one generation time, the experiment did not differ from steady-state experiments in the number of coexisting species and the diversity index (see Section 7.4.1). The maximum diversity occurred at intervals of approximately three mean generation times. This result lies exactly on the line of the intermediate disturbance hypothesis. Support comes also from experiments in microcosms (see Fig. 2.1A), which tested the coexistence of different clones of *Daphnia pulex*. The greatest clonal diversity occurred also at intermediate disturbance intervals, independent of the intensity of the disturbance (Weider 1992).

The intermediate disturbance hypothesis was also tested under more natural conditions by using large enclosures 15 m deep with artificial mixing of the water column at various intervals as disturbance (Flöder and Sommer 1999). Mixing diluted the epilimnetic populations and brought fresh nutrients to the epilimnion. Also here, maximal species richness and diversity were found at intermediate disturbance intervals (6–10 days).

Fluctuating additions of limiting resources allow for additional strategies for minimizing R^*. Species with high maximum reproductive rates can use a brief but plentiful supply of a resource to increase reproductive rates in order to compensate for losses at times when resources are in short supply. Another method of taking advantage of favorable conditions is to form reserves that enable species to reproduce adequately as resources decline. This does not work for all types of resources: Algae can store phosphorus in great quantities and to some degree also nitrogen and the products of photosynthesis (polysaccharides, lipids), but not silicon, which is essential for diatoms. The storage of reserves (e.g., lipids) is very important for animals. By living longer, animals are more likely to encounter a new supply of the limiting resource. For many animals that are unable to increase their reproduction rapidly when food conditions improve, the formation of reserve energy pools allows them to maximize food utilization during brief periods of food abundance.

One can recognize different strategies from the response of populations to fluctuating resources. Species with high maximum rates of reproduction follow resource maxima with rapid pulses of growth, whereas species that are capable competitors for low resources and specialize in forming reserves are more likely to have stable population densities. This was demonstrated by a competition experiment using continuous cultures of phytoplankton

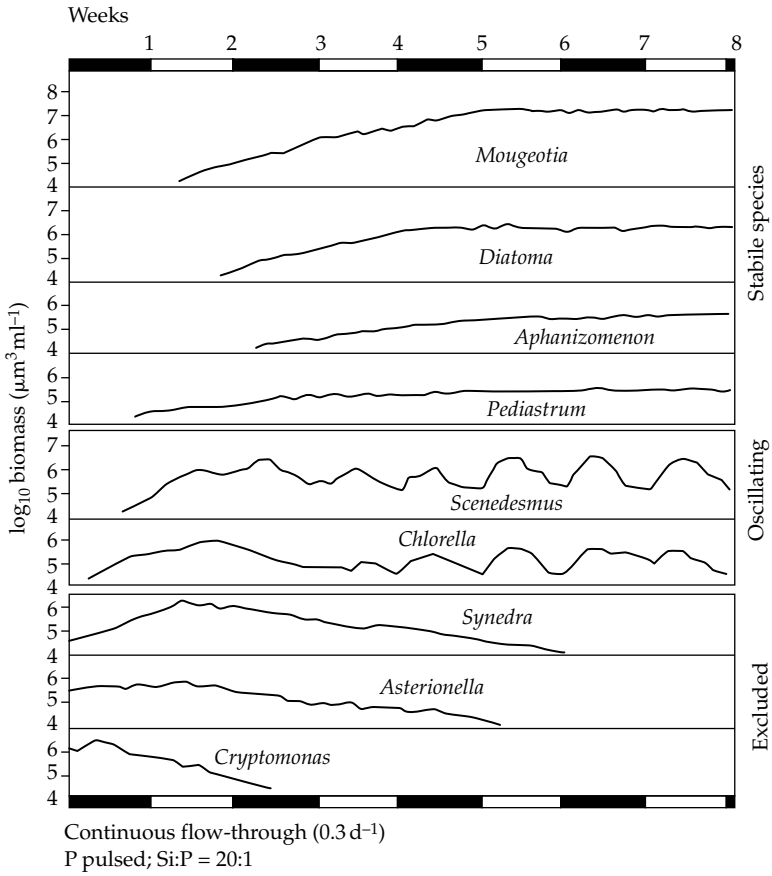


Figure 6.10 Competition experiments with Lake Constance phytoplankton, continuous culture ($D = 0.3\ d^{-1}$), addition of phosphorus in weekly pulses, Si:P ratio 20:1. Biomass changes (logarithmic scale) of the species that persisted and of three of the species that were excluded (from Sommer 1985).

(Sommer 1985). Phosphorus was withheld from the continuously added nutrients and added separately in pulses once a week. In this experiment both phosphorus and silicon were potentially limiting resources. If these nutrients had been added continuously, two species should have coexisted. The pulsed addition of nutrients, however, led to a significant increase in the number of species (Fig. 6.10). Four species had nearly stable population densities (phosphorus storage), but the densities of two species fluctuated regularly following each pulse of phosphorus. The pulsing of nutrients not only resulted in an increased number of species; it also caused a clear shift in the species composition. Despite such shifts, the general pattern for equilibrium conditions held qualitatively: the tendency of the diatoms to increase with increasing Si:P ratios, especially the Fragilariaceae.

The robustness of this pattern can be seen in the seasonal shifts in the composition of the phytoplankton community in two lakes (Fig. 6.11). In both lakes, the Fragilariaceae followed the Si:P ratio with a lag time of 1–2 weeks. This correlation is surprisingly close, considering the potentially masking effects of numerous other factors that could alter the competitive outcome in nature, such as the normal seasonal variability in environmental conditions as well as species-specific differences in losses due to grazing and sinking and vertical gradients in the availability of resources. Cyanobacteria abundance is correlated with the P:N ratio in Schöhsee (northern Germany)

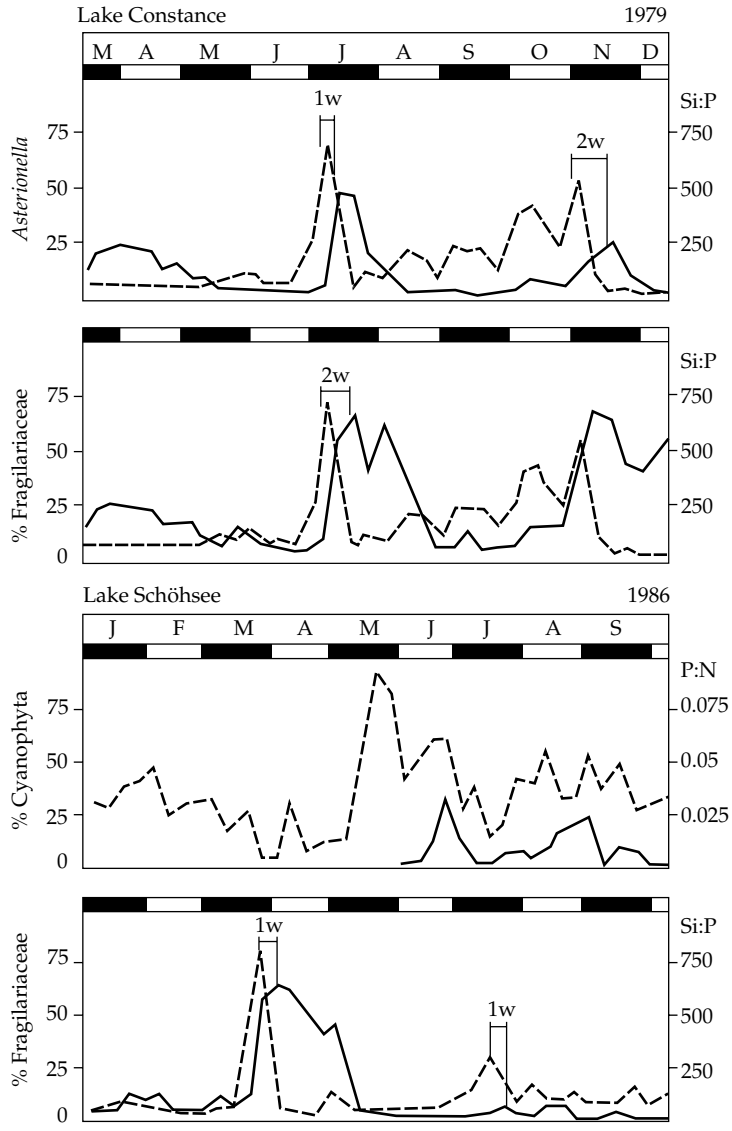


Figure 6.11 A comparison of the seasonal changes in the Si:P ratio and the percentage biomass of diatoms (*Asterionella formosa* or Fragilariaceae) in Lake Constance and the Fragilariaceae in Schöhsee. Also, the seasonal changes in the percentage of cyanobacteria in Schöhsee are compared to the P:N ratio. Algal taxa: solid line; nutrient ratio:, dashed line.

only after June, when the water has warmed up adequately.

Resources can also vary spatially as well as temporally. The resources of animals are frequently distributed heterogeneously. The algae of the periphyton community often form mosaics, and plankton can occur in clouds or patches. For consumers, moving through resources heterogeneously distributed in space is much like moving through time. The effects of spatial and temporal variability are identical. If the consumer lives in a *fine-grained environment* where the spatial variability is small relative to its body size, it is able to integrate the variability over short time intervals. In a *coarse-grained*

environment, the consumer may never leave its large resource patch and, in fact, may never perceive that there is heterogeneity. At intermediate granularity the consumer is faced with changing resource availability. In this case, the outcome of the competition may depend on the ability of the consumer to make use of resources as they suddenly become available, as well as its ability to survive a period of starvation after it has left the resource patch.

Spatial and temporal heterogeneity are especially pronounced in streams. Resources may differ profoundly from rock to rock in a small stream, depending on the type of local disturbance. Even the stream bed is constantly changing due to floods and deposition of sediments. These conditions have led many researchers to believe that competition is a relatively unimportant process in streams. There is growing experimental evidence, however, that competition can strongly influence the distribution of stream organisms (Hart 1983). For example, the species richness of the fauna dwelling on stones in an upland stream was found to be highly correlated with the surface area and structure of the stones. Larger stones and grooved stones harbored more species of invertebrates, indicating that more microhabitats allowed more species to coexist (Douglas and Lake 1994). Often there is direct competition (interference) for space (see Section 6.2), but exploitative interactions also appear to be important. These interactions are difficult to demonstrate *in situ*.

6.1.5 Other concepts of competition for substitutable resources

Unlike plants, animals usually compete for substitutable resources, since they ingest their food in "packages" that contain many substances. If animals cannot eat their optimal food, they can sometimes compensate by eating a larger amount of a poor food. Animals normally have a broad spectrum of food available to them in nature. This makes it impossible to determine average ZNGIs for possible competitors. Instead, attempts are sometimes made to estimate the intensity of competition from the so-called *niche overlap* (Giller 1984). Every species utilizes a specific part of the entire spectrum of resources (Fig. 6.12). The resource gradient in this schematic representation could consist, for example, of invertebrates of increasing size. Two benthos-feeding fish species may prefer different-sized prey, but also can eat both larger and smaller forms. There is no competition for food between these two species if their spectra of food do not cross. However, the more similar the spectra, the greater the overlap. The extent of the overlap can be used as a quantitative index of competition.

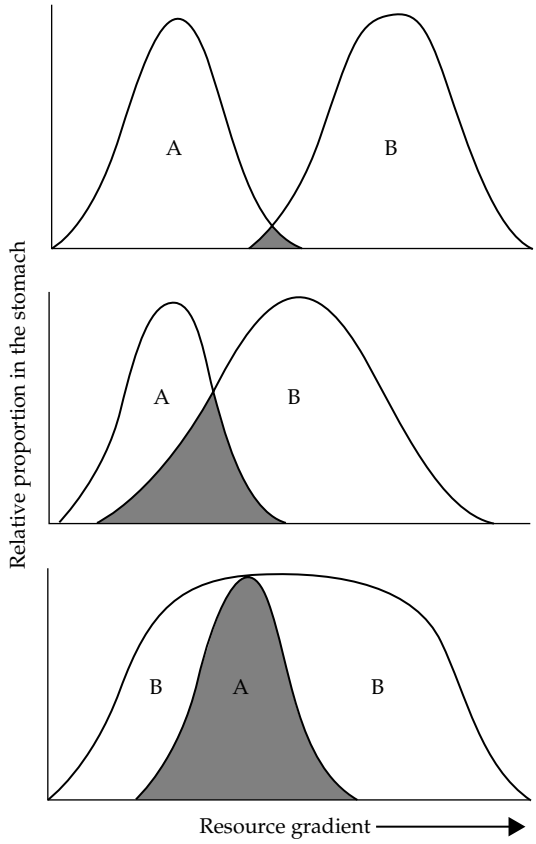


Figure 6.12 Overlap of the food spectra of two species (A and B) as a measure of potential competition. Various food resources are arranged along the *x*-axis (e.g., according to size). The curves indicate the utilization of the resources by both species. *Top:* Both species are very specialized. There is no significant overlap. *Middle*: The food spectra overlap; i.e., both species use a common part of the resources and may compete. Species A is more affected than species B. *Bottom:* A case of "inclusive overlap." Species B is a generalist with a very broad food spectrum, whereas B is specialized. The overlap is 100% for species A and it is under very strong competitive pressure.

The food spectrum can be measured easily by investigating the stomach contents of coexisting species, as Zaret and Rand (1971) demonstrated with 11 tropical fish in a small stream in Panama. Most species overlapped very little in their food spectra, although the overlap ranged from 0 to 90%. There was much seasonal variation. The overlap was small during the dry season when the stream had little water and there was little food available; at that time the fish were more specialized.

The overlap of food spectra need not be symmetrical. Many filter-feeding zooplankton have very similar food spectra (algae) that may, however, differ greatly in breadth. Kerfoot *et al*. (1985) describe a case of "inclusive overlap" (see Fig. 6.12) for coexisting zooplankton. They revealed through gut analysis that *Daphnia pulicaria* used a very broad spectrum of algae, whereas other zooplankton were more specialized. The food spectrum of *Daphnia* completely encompassed the spectra of the other species. In this case, the specialized species had complete overlap with *D. pulicaria*, but *Daphnia* only had a partial overlap with the other species. One can conclude, therefore, that the daphniids were important competitors for the other species, but not the reverse.

One must be careful not to equate the overlap index with the α and β coefficients of the Lotka–Volterra equation. The overlap index defines only a single niche dimension, whereas the competition coefficient describes the result of all of the interactions between two species. It is impossible to be certain that the overlap index one has measured represents the entire interaction. A large overlap may mean nothing, if the resource measured is not limiting. In fact, it is easy to imagine that species would be more likely to use similar resources when there is a surplus of those resources. Furthermore, the overlap index is dependent on the availability of the resources and therefore changes along environmental conditions.

Individuals of the same species might be expected to have very similar food spectra (large overlap). Such competition is called *intraspecific*, in contrast to *interspecific* competition between different species. We have already learned about intraspecific competition as the basis of the logistic growth curve. These definitions are oversimplified, for competition actually occurs between phenotypes rather than between species. The effect of competition is usually seen, however, only at the population level. There are many examples illustrating the importance of intraspecific competition. During the clear-water phase (see Section 6.4.1) intraspecific competition between daphniids becomes so strong that they completely exhaust their resources and the *Daphnia* population collapses. An important question for fisheries management is whether fish populations are controlled by intraspecific competition or by external factors. If intraspecific competition is important, the harvesting of more fish will reduce the competition and result in improved production.

Intraspecific competition differs from interspecific competition, because, although it may cause large population fluctuations, it cannot result in a complete exclusion of the species. Hamrin and Persson (1986) give an example of this with *Coregonus albula*, a small whitefish that occurs throughout much of northern Europe. Regular fluctuations of a population of this obligate plankton feeder were followed over 8 years in a Swedish lake. Only the first two year-classes are numerically important. The fish spawn in their second year. The abundance of fish fluctuated from year to year by a factor of 10. Every other year the first year class was abundant and the second year class was scarce, and in the alternate years it was reversed. The consistent pattern of fluctuations was the result of intraspecific competition, since these fish overlapped greatly in their food spectra within a year class as well as between year classes, with an index of overlap of 0.8–0.9. A strong year class of juveniles results in strong competition for the second year class. As a result the older fish grow slowly and produce few offspring, which are still relatively small at the end of the growing season. Thus in the following year the adult year class is correspondingly weak; the survivors from the previous year therefore experience little intraspecific competition. They grow rapidly and produce many offspring, repeating the cycle once again. The cycle is maintained by this intraspecific competition.

6.2 Direct interactions of competitors

6.2.1 Chemical factors

The direct effect of competitors through the release of chemicals that inhibit other species is called *allelopathy* or *antibiosis*. One of the best-known examples of this type of interaction is the suppression of bacteria by the fungus *Penicillium*, which secretes penicillin into its surroundings. Terrestrial organisms have some advantages over aquatic organisms in the use of allelopathic substances. For example, if a plant excretes an allelopathic chemical from its own roots, the substance will stay concentrated in this area and provide a protective zone. Substances released into water, on the other hand, are quickly diluted and dispersed. This restricts the effectiveness of this mechanism in water, so one might not expect this process to be so important in this environment. Nevertheless, in recent years there has been increasing interest in the "chemical warfare" between aquatic plants, phytoplankton, and macrophytes. Chemical inhibition of competitors would be particularly effective in plants as they compete for few resources: nutrients and light. The interest may come from the hope of finding "natural" chemicals to control algal blooms and exuberant macrophyte growth. A review of Gross (2003) lists nearly 300 references dealing with numerous possible allelopathic interactions, active organisms, and mechanisms.

Although many field observations and laboratory studies under controlled conditions suggest antagonistic interactions between aquatic plants (Wium-Andersen 1987), the importance of allelopathic interactions in nature is still under debate. There are obvious difficulties in the interpretation of results. For example, it is often observed that shallow lakes with many submerged macrophytes have very clear water and lack phytoplankton, or the water is clearer in parts of the lake with macrophytes. It has been suggested that this might be due to the macrophytes excreting allelopathic substances to suppress phytoplankton, but it is difficult to disentangle effects of allelopathic interactions and competition for nutrients (Van Donk and van de Bund 2002). It would be much easier if the allelopathic substances were isolated from the lake water, but this is rarely been done.

Macrophytes contain many substances that can be extracted and have been found to inhibit growth of other plants (for review see Gross 2003), but these substances are normally not released into the water by the intact plant. They may rather function as deterrents to defend the plant against herbivore attacks. The active compounds are often phenolic or lipophilic substances that may be better applied by direct contact than through the water. For example, higher plants usually provide an excellent substrate for periphytic algae. These inhibit the exchange and nutrient uptake by the macrophyte leaves and may also cause reductions in light. Sand-Jensen (1987) estimated that between 7 and 70% of the light that reached the surface of the submerged macrophyte *Littorella uniflora* was absorbed by periphyton, depending on the periphyton biomass. A chemical defense to keep the surface clean would therefore be an advantage to the plant. Quite surprisingly, young macrophytes are often free of periphyton, even though the algae can grow more rapidly than the macrophyte. It is possible that the young plants "protect" themselves chemically, but this is still speculative.

Direct contact between competitors and diffusion of chemicals over short distances in a gelatinous matrix make substrate-attached biofilms and benthic cyanobacterial mats particularly suitable for allelopathic interactions (review in Jüttner 1999). Many case studies are reported in Gross *et al*. (1999). As an example, the benthic cyanobacterium *Fischerella* produces a substance with two nitrogen-containing rings that, when isolated, can inhibit or at high concentrations kill other cyanobacteria. In nature, *Fischerella* covers rocks as a thick layer. Quite possibly, allelopathy may be responsible for the development of such monocultures (Gross *et al*. 1991).

Evidence for the exudation of water-soluble substances that inhibit phytoplankton growth by macrophytes has been accumulated through laboratory experiments. A striking example is the water-soldier *Stratiotes aloides*, which grows in spiny leaf rosettes floating at the surface of calm waters. It is often associated with filamentous green algae that form dense layers. However, the filamentous algae do not grow in the close vicinity of *S. aloides*, which produces a very conspicuous gap around a rosette (Fig. 6.13). By contrast, artificial plants are completely

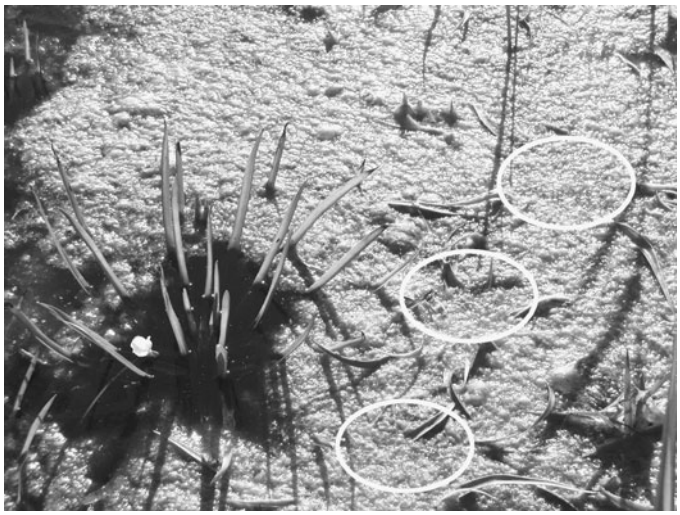


Figure 6.13 Water soldier *Stratiotes aloides* growing in a dense cover of filamentous green algae. The live plant (left) grows in an algal gap, while three artificial plants (in the white circles) have been completely overgrown by the algae (permission of G. Mulderij).

overgrown. In the laboratory, exudates of *S. aloides* proved to have a strong allelopathic potential against various phytoplankton species (Mulderij *et al*. 2006) and against filamentous algae.

There are few, if any, known allelopathic interactions between aquatic animals. There are hints (e.g., Goser and Ratte 1994) that *Daphnia magna* produce fewer offspring when grown in water that had contained *Daphnia* of their own or a different species; nothing is known, however, about possible mechanisms involved.

Chemical ecology is poorly developed in freshwater ecology compared to what is known for terrestrial systems. It would be extremely interesting to know whether allelopathic processes are involved in the development of communities and whether they are involved in the regular changes in algal species that occur during seasonal succession. This is a challenge for cooperation between aquatic ecologists and natural product chemists.

6.2.2 Mechanical interactions

Competition for space is an important process in marine littoral communities. Especially in fast-flowing streams, sessile freshwater species form similar-type communities where space can become a limiting resource. The overgrowth of encrusting algae on the surface of rocks can lead to the slow exclusion of certain species. Sponges and bryozoans may also overgrow and thereby exclude other sessile species. Such interactions are so slow that they can only be seen from maps or photographs documenting the changes over long periods.

Many native large bivalves in North American lakes and rivers have become endangered by overgrowth of the introduced zebra mussel *Dreissena polymorpha* (see Section 7.5). Although the native mussels were already threatened by environmental degradation, the invasion of *Dreissena* accelerated local extinction rates of the mussels by 10-fold (Ricciardi *et al*. 1998). The planktonic larvae of the zebra mussels require a hard substrate on which to settle before they metamorphose. With a limited amount of hard surface available, many larvae settle on the shells of larger bivalves (e.g., Anodontidae). The burden of growing zebra mussels on the shells reduces the fitness of the larger bivalves by mechanical interference as well as exploitative competition for suspended food particles (Haag *et al*. 1993).

Insects also may directly defend their territories. The larvae of the caddisfly *Leucotrichia pictipes* live in silk cases that are attached to the rocks. They defend a region around each case against intrusion by larvae of their own species as well as other species (Hart 1985a). This leads to a uniform spatial distribution (see Section 5.5). The larvae graze on the periphyton. This defense provides each larva with its own protected "pasture." More algae

tend to grow in such "private territories" than in areas where there are many grazing larvae. The size of the territory is related to the body size of the larva. The area can be viewed as a resource, as resource availability and area are closely coupled. This can be demonstrated nicely with the following experiment: If one removes algae from the territory of a caddisfly larva, it responds by enlarging its territory.

Predatory stonefly larvae catch fewer mayflies when they live on rocks where other larvae of their own or other species are present. This mutual disturbance occurs only at intermediate prey densities, and not when prey are rare (extremely long search time) or when prey are in excess (Peckarsky 1991).

Another example is the blackfly larva *Simulium piperis*, which sits attached to rocks and places its filtering fans in the current to catch drifting particles (see Section 4.3.11). These larvae also defend the space from which they can filter out particles. It is interesting that the larvae are aggressive only toward larvae that sit upstream, as these are the only ones that can "filter away" their food. It can also be demonstrated experimentally that the larvae actually eat more once they succeed in driving away the upstream larvae (Hart 1986).

Interference competition between individuals may even effect ecosystem processes. Leaf litter is the major source for a group of stream invertebrates (shredders). By breaking the dead material into small pieces, these organisms prevent the accumulation of large amounts of allochthonous organic matter in the stream (see Section 4.3.11). However, leaves occur usually in patches that are colonized by shredders. One might assume that the decay of a leaf patch is faster the more shredders are feeding on it, but this is not always the case. Boyero and Pearson (2006) performed experiments with increasing densities of four shredder species (caddisfly and mayfly larvae). They found interference at higher shredder densities. The *per capita* feeding rate decreased exponentially. The effect was strong enough to compensate for the increasing biomass of shredders, so that the decay rate of the whole leaf patch was unaffected by shredder density.

Interference competition may be more widespread than can be seen directly, as aggressive behavior between individuals is rarely observed after a hierarchy has been established. The habitat where a species lives need not be its preferred habitat, but may be the result of competitive interactions. For example, Sone *et al*. (2006) describe the distribution of two closely related benthic fish species (gobies) in Japanese rivers. The two species partition the habitat and do not seem to interfere. One of them lives in places with stronger currents and coarser substrate while the other one dwells in areas with slower currents and finer sediments. However, if the species living in fast currents is removed experimentally, the other species moves into this (more profitable) habitat. Evidently, the spatial separation of the two species is the result of ongoing interference competition, causing the weaker competitor to use the less profitable habitat.

Although mechanical interference has more often been demonstrated in benthic systems (two-dimensional space), it can also be important in pelagic systems. The competition between large cladocerans and rotifers for common resources (algae) has been investigated extensively. It is often observed in the field that large daphniid species and rotifers are mutually exclusive. Rotifers often appear early in the season, followed by *Daphnia*. When *Daphnia* populations fluctuate, the rotifers become abundant at times when the *Daphnia* are scarce. When planktivorous fish decimate the large *Daphnia*, the rotifers dominate. Even when the daphniids are killed by an insecticide, the rotifers quickly develop enormous populations (Hurlbert *et al*. 1972).

At first, it was suspected that this was a case of exploitative competition. It was assumed that the *Daphnia* were the more efficient competitors for the algae, and, in fact, rotifers do need higher food concentrations than the *Daphnia*. Later, it has been demonstrated that *mechanical interference* is also involved (Gilbert 1988). While filter-feeding, *Daphnia* sucks small rotifers into its filtering chamber, where they are damaged or even ingested along with the algae. *Daphnia* densities of as few as five animals per liter can result in heavy mortalities for the rotifers. This requires, however, that the *Daphnia* are large ($>$1.2 mm) and the rotifers are small. Large rotifers, such as the armored *Keratella quadrata*, are damaged very little, and such resistant rotifers tend to co-occur with *Daphnia*. Large

rotifers, on the other hand, have a higher food threshold for reproduction than the small species, and are often excluded by exploitative competition under food-limited conditions. It is difficult to determine whether exploitative competition or mechanical interaction is more important in any specific situation, since both processes lead to the same result. In the laboratory, it has been shown that the mechanical effect is more important for large *Daphnia*, but small cladocerans such as *Ceriodaphnia* suppress rotifers by exploitative competition (MacIsaac and Gilbert 1991). The reverse situation, where rotifers suppress cladocerans, has never been observed.

6.3 Predator–prey relationships

6.3.1 Causes of mortality

The fitness of an individual is determined both by its mortality and by its reproduction. Except for unicellular organisms, which are potentially immortal, all other organisms have a division of labor between somatic and germ cells and must therefore die. *Natural death* from aging is of relatively minor importance in an ecological context, since under natural conditions the vast majority of individuals never reach an age where they would die without outside influences. Most individuals die as a result of some clash with either the abiotic or biotic environment. Such external mortality also occurs in potentially immortal single-celled organisms.

Abiotic factors are frequently a source of mortality when they exceed the physiological limits of an organism. Massive die-offs may occur when unusual climatic events cause the temperature to go above the tolerance range, or the oxygen concentration to fall below the minimum level. Erosion and scouring caused by flooding can cause mechanical mortality for stream organisms.

Lack of resources can be another cause of mortality. Life requires a supply of energy. Microorganisms will die if they do not have sufficient substrate, and algae will die if they are placed in the dark; animals starve without food. Mortality can also result from negative interactions between organisms, which we referred to earlier as lowered reproductive rates resulting from competition for common resources (Section 6.1) or direct effects (Section 6.2).

Almost every organism is potential food for some other organism. Thus "being eaten" is perhaps the most important biotic cause of mortality. In the classical sense, a *predator* is a carnivore, an animal that eats other animals. This concept is, however, too narrow to be functional. We will therefore consider under the general heading *predator–prey relationships* all interactions that result in energy transfer from one organism to another, and with few exceptions, represent a mortality factor for the prey. This definition can be applied to *flagellates* that consume bacteria, *herbivores* that eat algae or macrophytes, *carnivores* that feed on other animals, and *parasites*. This broad definition is justified, since each of these interactions has the same end result for the prey, namely, mortality, except for benign forms of parasitism where the host suffers only reduced vitality and growth. There are basic similarities between a population of algae that are eaten by filter-feeding zooplankton and chironomid larvae that are hunted by fish: The populations become decimated, creating a selection pressure that favors those individuals that are best protected against the mortality factor and have a higher relative fitness. Even though the mechanism of feeding is very different for the various nutritional types, the effect of the interaction on the population and the evolutionary consequences are the same.

6.3.2 Predator–prey models

Lotka and Volterra also constructed a simple model for predator–prey relationships that was similar to their competition model (see Section 6.1.2). They derived two equations, describing the population growth rates of the prey and the predator. Each equation contains both growth and loss terms. Changes in the population of the prey are described by the equation

$$\frac{dN_1}{dt} = bN_1 - pN_1N_2$$

Growth is the product of the unlimited birth rate in the absence of predation losses (b) and the number of prey present (N_1). The losses are proportional to the number of prey (N_1), the number of predators (N_2), and a coefficient of predation (p).

Changes in the predator population are described by

$$\frac{dN_2}{dt} = apN_1N_2 - dN_2$$

Predator growth is the product of the losses of the prey (pN_1N_2) and a coefficient a, which defines how many prey a predator must eat in order to produce offspring. The losses are proportional to the number of predators (N_2) and the death rate (d).

The ability of this model to predict *cycles* of alternating prey and predator abundance has aroused much interest. If both populations are in equilibrium so that $dN_1/dt = 0$ and $dN_2/dt = 0$,

$$bN_1 = pN_1N_2$$

and

$$dN_2 = apN_1N_2$$

The constant equilibrium densities will be

$$N_1^* = \frac{d}{ap} \quad \text{and} \quad N_2^* = \frac{b}{p}$$

where N_1^* is the number of prey at which the death rate of the predator can be compensated by growth and N_2^* is the number of predators at which the growth rate and death rate of prey balance. When $N_2 > N_2^*$, the prey population will decrease; when $N_1 > N_1^*$, the predator population will decline. If by some chance the populations move away from the equilibrium point, they will oscillate around these densities without damping.

The primary difference between the predator–prey model and the competition model are the coefficients (see Section 6.1.2). The coefficients a, b, p, and d of the predator–prey model are physiological parameters of the organisms that can be measured experimentally, whereas the competition coefficients α and β describe the combined effects of one species on the other. One can easily measure the effects of temperature and food conditions on the birth rate (b) or the effect of prey density on the predation coefficient (p). The latter parameter describes the capture success of a predator under specific conditions. The coefficient a corresponds to the gross production efficiency (see Section 4.4.3). The death rate of the predator can also be measured experimentally and independently of the predator–prey experiment. The following sections will go into some detail concerning the mechanisms involved in predator–prey interactions.

Regular fluctuations of population densities are easy to explain, if a time lag exists between the response of the prey and the predator. As the prey can be considered a resource for the predator, the model of logistic growth with a time lag (Section 5.3.4) can be applied to a predator–prey system. The result is an oscillation of the predator population around the carrying capacity, as shown in Fig. 5.4.

The Lotka–Volterra model is quite unrealistic because it is oversimplified. There is, for example, no *feedback* between the prey and their food resources. Such feedback would affect b. Also, the death rate of the predator (d) is independent of predator density. It would also be more realistic to assume that the death rate of the predator is in turn controlled by a higher-level predator in a density-dependent way. The model does not include a time lag between predator and prey. Finally, the model assumes a linear correlation between the *per capita* feeding rate of the predator and the prey. Since many of these assumptions are not valid (see Sections 6.4 and 6.5), it has been replaced by better models.

More general predator–prey models are based on the concept proposed by Rosenzweig and MacArthur (1963). Included in their model is self-regulation of prey and predator, as well as the functional response of the predator. The growth rate of the predator population is dependent on its density. With increasing prey density the *per capita* predation rate and thus prey mortality reaches a plateau when the predator is satiated (see Box 4.1), unlike the Lotka–Volterra model, where predation rate is independent of the prey density. This model is very flexible, for it allows one to build into it the specific types of functional responses as well as threshold values that represent a refuge for the prey. The model can also include changes in the behavior of the predator due to changing prey densities, such as the shift to alternate prey species.

One can predict the changes in the predator and prey populations by examining their isoclines of zero growth. These two lines are analogous to the ZNGIs (Section 6.1.3) and connect all possible numerical combinations of predators and prey at

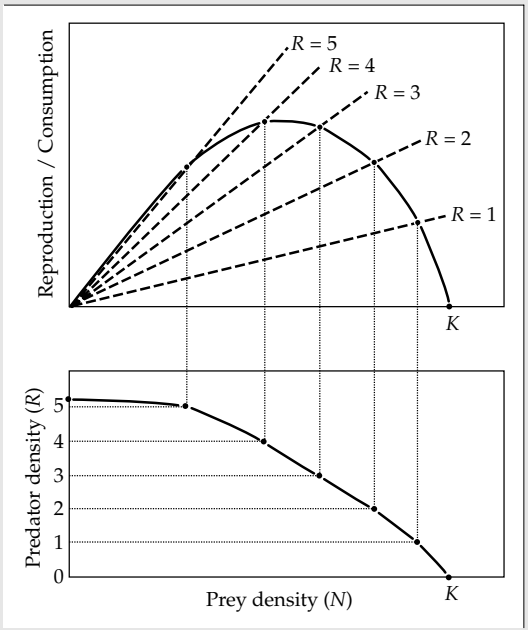
which there is no net growth of either the predator or prey population. Where the two zero-growth isoclines cross there is an equilibrium point where neither population will change. Figure 6.14 shows what happens when the equilibrium is disturbed—for example, by a disease that decimates one of the populations. If the population returns to the equilibrium point, it will become stable once again; both predator and prey will live in stable coexistence.

Box 6.1 illustrates how one can construct zero-growth isoclines. The characteristic features

Box 6.1 Construction of zero-growth isoclines

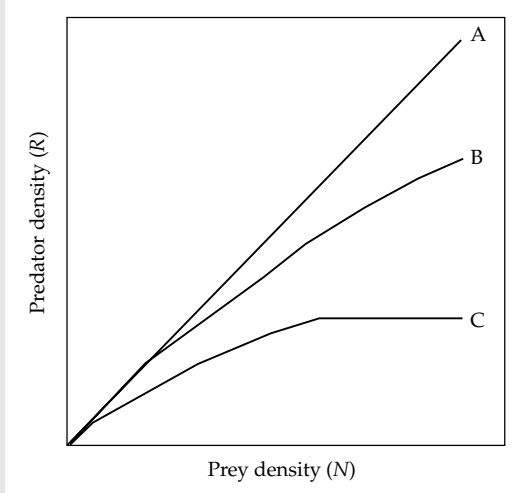
For the prey

If a prey population grows exponentially without any losses (Section 5.2.4), its reproductive rate follows an optimum curve related to the population density (heavy line). The intersection on the right with the *x*-axis gives the capacity (*K*). The net population growth rate is the difference between the rate of reproduction and the mortality rate. The mortality rate is determined by the consumption rate (dashed line). The predator shows a functional response to increasing prey density. For simplicity, only the increasing portion of the curve is shown in the figure. The population growth rate is zero where the functional response curve intersects the reproductive rate. As the predator becomes more abundant, the consumption rate increases, increasing the steepness of the curve. There is a point of intersection for every predator density, indicating zero growth of the prey population. It is therefore possible to define for all prey densities the consumption rate (predator density) at which the prey population achieves only zero growth. The line connecting these points is the zero-growth isocline for the prey. At any given predator density the prey population will move toward the isocline. If the prey population is above the isocline, it will decrease, and if it is below, it will increase.



For the predator

It is easy to see how in an equilibrium the changes in predator population depend on the number of prey, for each predator requires a certain amount of prey to grow. The zero-growth isocline for this situation is therefore an increasing straight line (A). At higher prey densities the predators can have density–dependent effects on one another that result in some form of self-regulation. This causes the zero-growth isocline to begin to level off, bending downward (B). Finally, the predator density may be regulated by factors that have nothing to do with the prey, such as the availability of space. In this case, above a certain density the isocline becomes horizontal and the maximum number of predators (population growth rate is zero) is independent of the prey density.



of predator–prey systems produced by the Rosenzweig–MacArthur model are shown in Fig. 6.14. The prey zero isocline is combined with various zero isoclines of the predator. A steeper predator zero isocline indicates a more efficient predator, requiring fewer prey to grow. This could occur if the predator is a more efficient hunter or utilizes its prey more efficiently. The leveling off of the isoclines that can be seen on Fig 6.14 indicates there is self-regulation by the predator, such as would occur if the predators begin to interfere with one another, for example.

Predator and prey populations will either increase or decrease—that is, move toward their zero isoclines—depending on their respective densities. If, for example, the population of predators is controlled by other factors and remains constant at low prey densities (A), every combination of predator and prey will move directly to the equilibrium point. Thus, whenever anything disturbs the predator–prey ratio, it will try to move directly back to its original equilibrium condition without fluctuations. In case (B), the trajectory of the predator–prey ratio does not move directly toward the equilibrium point. At first it misses the equilibrium, but then gradually approaches it. This means that following a disturbance the predator and prey would at first oscillate around the equilibrium density, but the oscillations would dampen with time, eventually reaching the equilibrium condition once again. The duration of the oscillations is directly related to the steepness of the slope. If the predator zero isocline is very steep, the trajectory may form a closed cycle around the equilibrium point. This is referred to as a *stable limit cycle* within which the predator and prey oscillate continually around the equilibrium, without ever reaching it. The amplitude of the oscillations depends on the size of the disturbance. A final case can be considered, where at low population densities of the prey its zero isocline becomes lower. This could occur, for example, if the prey can only find mates at some threshold density. If the predator isocline crosses to the left of the maximum of such a prey isocline, the result is a spiral that becomes increasingly larger, moving further and further away from the equilibrium point. This type of system is unstable.

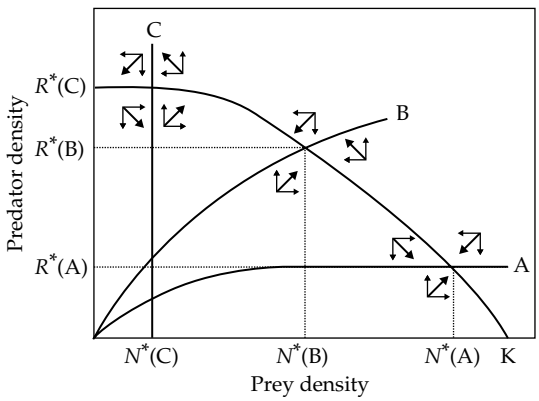


Figure 6.14 Equilibrium conditions for a zero-growth isocline for prey with self-regulation (solid line) and various zero-growth isoclines of predators (A, B, C). The intersection points indicate the equilibrium densities for prey (N^*) and predators (R^*) at which both populations are constant. The trajectories show the directional movements of predator–prey densities following a disturbance that pushes the population out of equilibrium. The zero-growth isoclines of the predators are shown for the following cases: (a) predators regulated by external factors; (b) predators with self-regulation; (c) predators without self-regulation that switch from negative to positive population growth at a fixed prey density.

Two conclusions can be drawn from this model:

- The more efficient a predator is, the more persistent the population oscillations and the greater the likelihood that one of the populations will go extinct.
- The stronger the self-regulation by the predator, the more the oscillations are dampened, until eventually they disappear. Self-regulation therefore leads to a stabilization of the predator–prey system.

It is uncommon to find regular cycles of predator and prey in nature, and in freshwater systems they are very rarely found. McCauley and Murdoch (1987) analyzed numerous time series of *Daphnia* and their "prey," algae, where *Daphnia* was not regulated by predators. In such instances, there were cycles caused by the predator–prey interactions and not by outside factors. In the normal seasonal succession in a lake, only the beginning of an oscillation is seen (see Fig. 8.19). In the spring, the population of algae (prey) then grows to a maximum, followed by a pulse of filter-feeding zooplankton (predators). Eventually, the zooplankton

become so abundant that their feeding exceeds the algal growth rate and the algae decline (the clear-water phase). The growth rate of the zooplankton then decreases and their population also declines. The algae can once again increase, but in early summer the cycle is interrupted, because the zooplankton, especially the *Daphnia*, can now no longer increase as they are under other controls such as fish predation and food limitation caused by the inedibility of or interference by large algae (Carpenter *et al*. 1993).

The Rosenzweig–MacArthur model is also mechanistic, since all its parameters can be experimentally defined. With such a model one can attempt to determine why predator–prey cycles are so rare in nature. A simple model of this sort, with functions that describe the effects of environmental conditions on the coefficients, can serve as a basis for complex simulation models (see Section 2.5).

6.3.3 Evolution of defense mechanisms

In the predator–prey models described above all prey are identical and have the same probability of being eaten. In reality, this is, of course, not correct. Individual prey differ genotypically and phenotypically, and some of this variation will influence the success of the predator (coefficient p). Prey with characteristics that lower the predator's success (e.g., protective coloration, rapid escape) have a smaller probability of being killed. The gene pool of the prey will thus shift in the course of evolution toward predator-resistant genotypes. This causes the predator to become more and more inefficient. To prevent its own eventual extinction, the predator must either undergo a similar evolution or find an alternative prey.

The first strategy involves an "arms race" between predator and prey. Individuals in the predator population also vary in their efficiency and thus their selective advantage. For example, if a prey becomes more transparent, the predator must evolve a better sense of sight. These processes can take place almost simultaneously, since a more efficient predator has a selective advantage, even if the prey has not yet evolved changes. Such *coevolution* is, in fact, most often the result of predator–prey interactions. Many features of the morphology, life history, and behavior of aquatic organism can be explained as defense mechanisms (O'Brien 1987, Walls *et al*. 1990).

These conclusions are usually derived from comparisons of populations under different predator threats. The basic assumption is that defenses are costly and should only be present if there is a real predator threat. For example, it does not pay off to invest in defense against fish in a fish-free lake. If populations differ in their level of defense under different predator threat we consider them to be "locally adapted" (see Section 5.3.2). As long as the predator pressure is continuously present, the prey may always be defended. Such fixed properties of the prey are called *constitutive defenses*. On the other hand, when predation activity varies, e.g., seasonally or between years, it is advantageous to carry defenses only when the predator is active. Such conditions will select for genotypes that are phenotypically plastic, i.e., develop defenses only when needed. This requires information about predator activity for the individual. The phenotypic responses are called *inducible defenses*. The number of known incidences is rapidly growing in terrestrial as well as aquatic ecology (Tollrian and Harvell 1999). Examples of defense strategies are presented in Section 6.5.5. A change in the predator environment has different consequences for the two defense strategies. For constitutive defenses, selection will always act on different genotypes, i.e., genetic variability is essential for microevolutionary change. For inducible defenses, selection will act on phenotypic plasticity. On a short time scale, a population can react to predator variability even if it consists of a single genotype. However, maintaining the biochemical machinery for phenotypic plasticity is also costly. Consequently, phenotypically plastic genotypes will disappear from a population after a long absence of predators, i.e., the population will no longer be defended.

The process of adaptation for each of the partners in coevolution generally stops before it is complete, since fitness is influenced by many factors and every adaptation has its costs as well as its physiological and genetic constraints. In such cases the

prey may actually be removed from the immediate effects of the predator so that predator and prey no longer interact. It then becomes impossible to say whether a particular feature that prevents the predator from attacking the prey was the result of coevolution or whether it was an adaptation to some other environmental factor. For example, copepods that have a summer diapause are not affected by fish predation. One should not assume, however, that this is an avoidance of predation; the diapause may well have evolved as a response to the drying out of small ponds in the summer. However, the fact that the diapause disappears in the absence of fish suggests strongly that fish are at least necessary to maintain this behavior.

Due to time constraints, the evolutionary change in predator–prey interactions can only be observed directly in organisms with very short generation times. An example has been given by Yoshida *et al*. (2003). They studied a system of one rotifer species (predator) and one algal species (prey) in chemostats. If the algal food consisted of a single genotype (clone), predator and prey oscillated in short cycles as predicted by the predator–prey model. The predator lagged regularly behind the prey (see Section 5.2.4). If the prey population consisted of multiple clones, the population cycles became much longer and predator and prey densities were nearly out of phase. The reason was differences of the algal clones in food quality for the rotifers. There was a trade-off between algal growth rate and suitability as food. Clones with low food quality (defended) had a lower growth rate and were inferior competitors compared to nondefended clones. Defended algal clones became dominant whenever the rotifer density was high, which affected the rotifer growth rate negatively. If the rotifer density was low, the algal composition shifted to dominance of nondefended genotypes. Consequently the rotifer growth rate increased again. This is an example of ecological and evolutionary dynamics occurring on similar time scales.

There is a rapidly growing body of evidence that predator–prey interactions play a key role in aquatic ecosystems. Our better understanding of the mechanisms involved has allowed us to interpret the possible defense function of many features of aquatic organisms, from protists to vertebrates. This has also led to the development of *a priori* hypotheses that can be tested experimentally.

6.4 Grazing

6.4.1 Grazing in the plankton—quantitative aspects

Grazing refers to the predator–prey interactions in water where algae and bacteria are the prey organisms (see Section 5.2.6). The importance of grazing by herbivorous zooplankton on the development of phytoplankton populations became recognized by the 1970s. Demonstration that grazing was directly involved in the *clear-water phase* provided valuable field support for this concept (Lampert 1978a). The clear-water phase describes the very regular occurrence of a minimum density of phytoplankton in the middle of the growth period (in northern temperate latitudes usually in May or June), most frequently in meso- and eutrophic lakes. In lakes with a moderate amount of turbidity due to abiotic particles this period can be recognized by a summer maximum water transparency, similar to the transparency normally seen in the middle of winter. There is usually an abrupt decrease in the phytoplankton density, in eutrophic lakes commonly dropping within a week to about one-tenth the densities found during the spring maximum (see Fig. 4.23, first week of June).

The clear-water phase occurs during the time of maximum solar radiation and longest day length. During the spring phytoplankton maximum there is usually only weak evidence of nutrient limitation, but during the clear-water phase the nutrient concentrations actually increase. Also, during the clear-water phase phytoplankton have their highest rate of specific photosynthesis (photosynthesis/biomass), indicating that at least the dominant algal species have high rates of reproduction. Thus the decline in the phytoplankton densities can only be attributed to higher mortality. The clear-water phase also corresponds to the time of the yearly maximum of herbivorous zooplankton, implicating zooplankton grazing as the major cause of phytoplankton mortality. There is direct evidence that the feeding rates of the zooplankton during the clear-water phase exceed the production rates of the phytoplankton (Fig. 6.15).

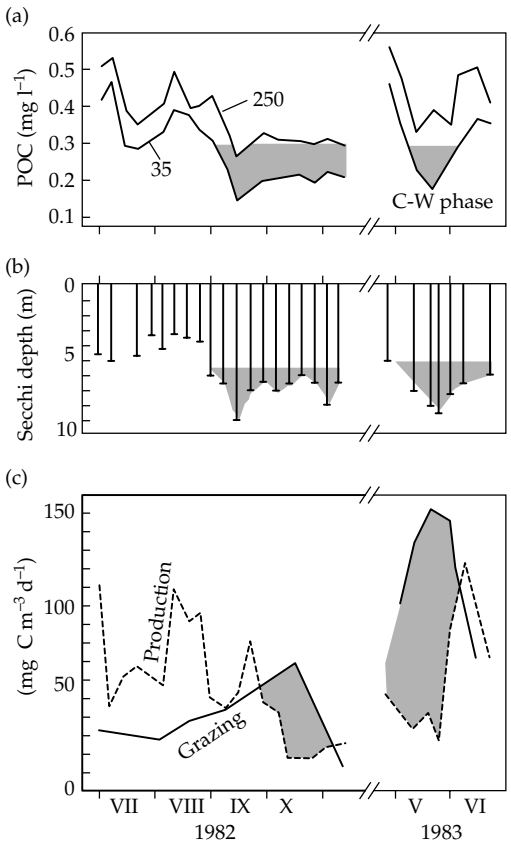


Figure 6.15 The effect of zooplankton biomass on the phytoplankton in Schöhsee. (a) Particulate organic carbon (POC, includes both phytoplankton and detritus), particle sizes <250 and <35 μm. Particles <35 μm are considered edible. (b) Water transparency. (c) Photosynthetic rates of phytoplankton (dashed line) and the feeding rates of the zooplankton (solid line). Periods where the grazing rates of the zooplankton exceed the production rates of phytoplankton are shaded. The clear-water phase occurs in mid-May (from Lampert 1988a).

Herbivorous zooplankton feed on algae by phagocytosis (protozoans), filtration (cladocerans and rotifers), and raptorial capturing of specific cells (copepods). It is common to refer to *filtration rates*, since cladocerans are often the functionally dominant zooplankton in many lakes. Filtration rates are determined by measuring the uptake of radioactive food in short-term (minutes) experiments or by measuring the decrease in food suspensions in long-term (hours) experiments (Peters 1984). It is necessary to correct for the simultaneous growth of food when live particles are used. If some of the food particles survive passage through the gut and are resuspended, the two methods can produce very different results.

The ingestion rate (I) tells how many food particles (N) or the mass of food (M) that is eaten by an individual per unit time (t), with the dimensions $N\ \mathrm{ind}^{-1}\mathrm{t}^{-1}$ or $M\ \mathrm{ind}^{-1}\mathrm{t}^{-1}$. To estimate the total feeding rate, which can be compared to the phytoplankton production rate, the ingestion rates are summed for all individuals of all species in a specific water volume (V) or under a specific unit surface area of the lake (A), with the units $\mathrm{M\,V}^{-1}\mathrm{t}^{-1}$ or $\mathrm{M\,A}^{-1}\mathrm{t}^{-1}$.

The filtration rate (F) describes the volume of water that contains the amount of food eaten. This measure does not actually refer to the quantity of water passing through the filtering appendages, since it is calculated from the particles taken out of the water or the decrease in particle number and the particles are usually retained with <100% efficiency. It is also often applied to species that do not actually filter. *Clearance rate* is another expression for filtration rate that better describes that it is the volume of water cleared of particles per unit time. The individual filtration rate can be calculated by dividing the ingestion rate by the food concentration, with the units $\mathrm{V\,ind}^{-1}\mathrm{t}^{-1}$:

$$F_{\mathrm{ind}} = I/C$$

or determined directly from the decrease in particle concentration (after correction for the control without animals):

$$F_{\mathrm{ind}} = V\,\frac{\ln C_2 - \ln C_1}{NT}$$

where C_1 and C_2 are the particle concentrations at the beginning and end of the measurement, N is the number of animals in the experiment, and V is the volume of suspension used in the experiment (Peters 1984).

One can determine the filtration rate of a population (F_{pop}) by multiplying the individual filtration rates of each age category (size classes) by the abundance of each age category and adding these products. The sum of the filtration rates of the entire herbivore population is the *community grazing rate* (G). This *grazing rate* (shortened form) provides a measure of the grazing-induced mortality rate for algae that have no defenses (γ_{opt}). It has the dimension t^{-1} and expresses the proportion of the

water volume that is "filtered" per unit time (see Section 5.2.6).

The community grazing rate can also be measured *in situ* with specialized incubation chambers (Haney 1973) that allow one to measure spatial (depth distribution) and temporal (diel rhythms) variations of grazing under natural temperature, light, and food conditions. These measurements can then be integrated over the entire day. During the clear-water phase grazing rates reach values of 1.0–2.5 d^{-1}, greater than the maximum growth rates of many algal species. Such high rates, however, appear only for the few weeks during the clear-water phase; more often in the summer they are around 0.2 d^{-1} (Lampert 1988a).

6.4.2 Feeding selectivity of the herbivorous zooplankton

It should be noted that strict herbivory, common in terrestrial ecosystems, is not found in zooplankton. Most zooplankton traditionally defined as herbivores are in fact omnivores and also consume protozoa or bacteria if they are in the same size range as their algal food. This widespread omnivory is facilitated by the fact that plant and animal biomass in the plankton differ less in their protein content, C:N ratio, and content of refractory structural polymers than animal and plant biomass on land. Nevertheless, for the sake of compatibility with most of the relevant literature, we will use the term herbivores in the following.

Even if all phytoplankton were eaten with the same efficiency, grazing would still exert a selective pressure on the composition of the phytoplankton, similar to increasing the flow-through rate in a chemostat (see Fig. 6.3). Uniformly high grazing rates would favor those phytoplankton with high maximum growth rates (μ_{max}), whereas uniformly low grazing rates would select for species that have a steep initial rise in their growth kinetic curve. Zooplankton do not actually eat all phytoplankton with the same efficiency, since many algae can avoid being either eaten or digested. Both methods of protection result in lower mortality, compared to species that are optimally eaten. This can be expressed as the selection coefficient

$$w_i = \gamma_i / \gamma_{opt}$$

The selection coefficient is not a fixed characteristic for a particular phytoplankton species. It varies with the zooplankton species and age class and therefore depends on the composition of the zooplankton. Figure 6.16 shows a comparison of the selection coefficients for several algal species with differing morphology when eaten by *Daphnia magna*.

Grazing selectivity also implies a selection factor in evolutionary terms. One can expect the evolution of mechanisms that reduce the vulnerability to grazing, since resistant genotypes of algae have lower mortality losses. Many features of phytoplankton do appear to be defense mechanisms against grazing. Particle size (cell or colony size including the gelatinous sheath) is an important attribute of grazing resistance. The lower boundary of edible particle sizes for filter-feeding zooplankton is determined by the mesh width of the filtering apparatus (see Fig. 4.26 and Gliwicz 1980). For filter-feeding cladocerans this is the distance between the secondary spines (setules) of the filtering comb of the third and fourth pair of thoracic legs (see Fig. 4.25b). The mesh widths of various species of cladocerans range from 0.16 to 4.2 μm (Geller and Müller 1981). The cladocerans with the finest mesh widths (*Diaphanosoma brachyurum, Chydorus sphaericus, Ceriodaphnia quadrangula, Daphnia magna*) can even filter free-living bacteria, whereas the species with coarse meshes (*Holopedium gibberum, Sida cristallina*) have lower size limits in the range of small phytoplankton. Most *Daphnia* species have an average mesh width of approximately 1 μm, which allows some protection for the smallest phytoplankton ("picoplankton," *c*.0.5–2 μm) and the bacterioplankton (Brendelberger 1991). Such small particles are the preferred food of many protozoans such as zooflagellates and ciliates that feed by phagocytosis. Copepods generally eat larger particles than cladocerans, and rotifers have pronounced species-specific differences in food.

The other end of the particle size spectrum that can be eaten is determined by the opening width of the mandibles and/or the opening width of the carapace gape in cladocerans (see Fig. 4.26). The upper boundary for small cladocerans and rotifers is about 20 μm and for larger cladocerans and copepods about 50 μm (Burns 1968). This upper size can be achieved by large single-celled organisms (*Peridinium*), body extensions (*Staurastrum*), colony

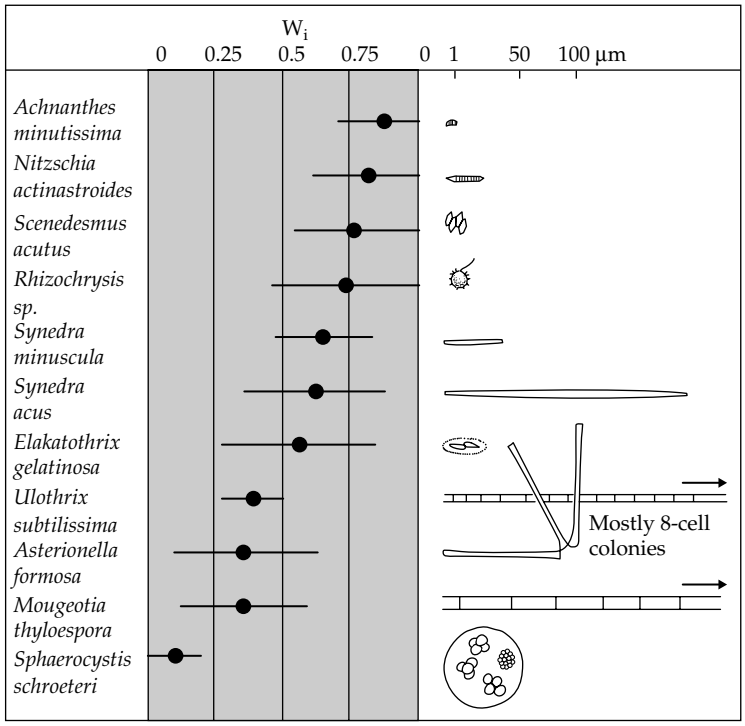


Figure 6.16 Selectivity coefficients (W_1, mean value and standard deviation) for various phytoplankton species in microcosm experiments with *Daphnia magna* as the grazer. The sketches of the algal species are scaled according to actual size; large and species with gelatinous sheaths are grazed poorly (data from Sommer 1988b).

formation (*Pediastrum*), or the production of mucilage (*Planktosphaeria*). Size alone, however, cannot account for the differences in edibility. Particles that exceed the upper size limit in only one dimension (needle-like cells or thin straight threads) can be eaten when they are oriented lengthwise. Fragile colonies (e.g., *Asterionella, Dinobryon*) may be broken up during the process of feeding. Cells that are mechanically stable and exceed the critical size in at least two dimensions are almost perfectly protected. They may, however, be attacked by specialists. For example, the highly specialized rotifer *Ascomorpha* can eat the large and generally inedible dinoflagellate *Ceratium hirundinella* by piercing the cell wall and sucking the cell contents.

Unlike filter-feeding zooplankton that select their food primarily on the basis of size, raptorial herbivores are capable of selecting on the basis of chemical qualities ("taste"). Cladocerans (with the exception of *Bosmina*) that are offered a mixture of synthetic particles and algae of the same size will ingest the algae and the artificial particles at the same rate. Herbivorous copepods, however, can test each particle and decide whether they will eat it. Figure 6.17 illustrates how the copepod *Eudiaptomus* spp. eats algae, but rejects the artificial particles. The copepods ingest the same plastic microspheres if the particles have been incubated for some hours together with natural algae to "flavor" them. This supports the hypothesis that the particles are discriminated by taste (DeMott 1986). *Eudiaptomus* can even distinguish between living and dead algal cells.

Another form of grazing protection are toxins, produced in fresh water primarily by cyanobacteria (*Microcystis, Anabaena, Aphanizomenon*). The chemical structures of some of these toxins have been described (microcystin, anatoxin, saxitoxin), since blooms of toxic cyanobacteria have created serious problems for drinking water for humans and cattle (Carmichael 1992). Only certain strains of cyanobacteria produce toxins, and both toxic and nontoxic strains can occur in the same lake. Zooplankton that eat toxic cyanobacteria either die or have reduced growth. Often they avoid eating such cyanobacteria,

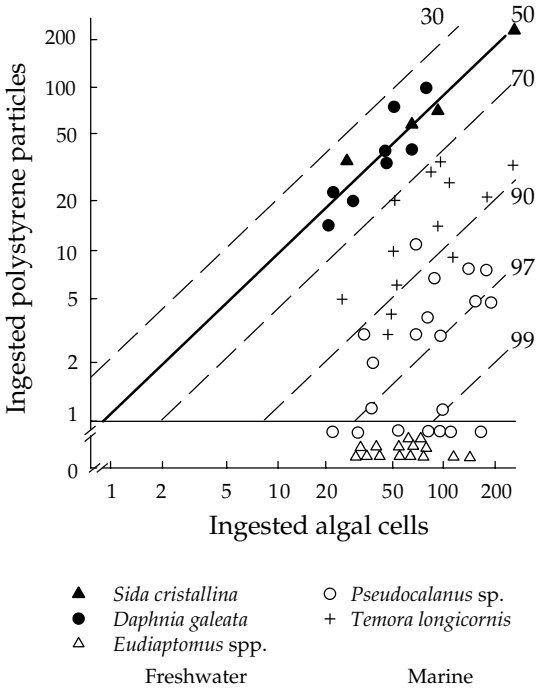


Figure 6.17 Selectivity in the food selection for cladocerans (*Sida, Daphnia*) and copepods (*Eudiaptomus, Temora, Pseudocalanus*). An equal mixture of approximately same-sized artificial particles and algal cells were offered as food. Diagonal lines: percentage of algae in the food ingested; 50% means nonselective uptake (from DeMott 1988).

apparently by recognizing their taste. By selecting individual particles copepods can reject toxic cells in a mixture and eat the other cells at a normal rate (DeMott and Moxter 1991). Cladocerans that "sort out" the algae and must simply reduce their filtering rates and increase mechanical rejection of all food when they detect toxic cells (Lampert 1987a, Haney *et al*. 1995).

Size, bulkiness, bad taste, or toxins can protect cells from ingestion. Cells that are ingested can still defend themselves by having a thick cell wall or a stable mucilaginous sheath that prevents them from being digested and allows them to be egested while still alive. This protective mechanism is especially common in the sheathed green algae (*Planktosphaeria, Sphaerocystis*) and the cyanobacteria (*Chroococcus, Microcystis*). These algae can even take up nutrients during the passage through the gut. Such forms of phytoplankton often dominate in field experiments with high zooplankton densities (Porter 1977).

6.4.3 Adverse effects of inedible algae on the zooplankton

Phytoplankton that are resistant to grazing benefit by being protected, but also interfere with the ingestion of edible phytoplankton by filter-feeding zooplankton (Gliwicz 1980). If highly inedible algal species, especially filamentous cyanobacteria and large single-cells (*Ceratium*), are drawn into the filtering chamber and then into the food groove of a cladoceran, they must be removed by cleaning movements of the postabdominal claw. This also removes edible algal species. The more frequently such interfering algae occur, the more often they must be removed and the more frequently the filtering process is interrupted. Cladocerans can reduce the gap between their two carapace halves to avoid collecting large algae. This also reduces the water current and prevents the ingestion of some of the larger edible algae. Large, inedible algae reduce the filtration rate, in any case. The otherwise highly competitive *Daphnia* are especially susceptible to such disturbances by filamentous algae and other large species, whereas small cladoceran species (e.g., *Ceriodaphnia*) that have a narrow carapace gape already are much less disadvantaged (Gliwicz and Siedlar 1980).

The grazing pressure by zooplankton leads to an increase in the abundance of grazing-resistant algae toward the late summer growth period (Sterner 1989). The increase in grazing-resistant, interfering algae, in turn, provides a competitive advantage for the smaller, less sensitive zooplankton. This leads to a reverse size trend between phyto- and zooplankton. Larger phytoplankton and smaller zooplankton tend to dominate in mid to late summer. It is difficult, however, to demonstrate clearly that the trend for decreasing zooplankton size is caused by algal interference, since increasing predation pressure by size-selective fish produces the same effect (see Section 6.5.3).

6.4.4 Nutrient regeneration and retention by herbivorous zooplankton

When zooplankton feed on algae they also release a portion of the nutrients contained in the algae. This release can occur in several ways: The nutrients may come from algae that were damaged during the

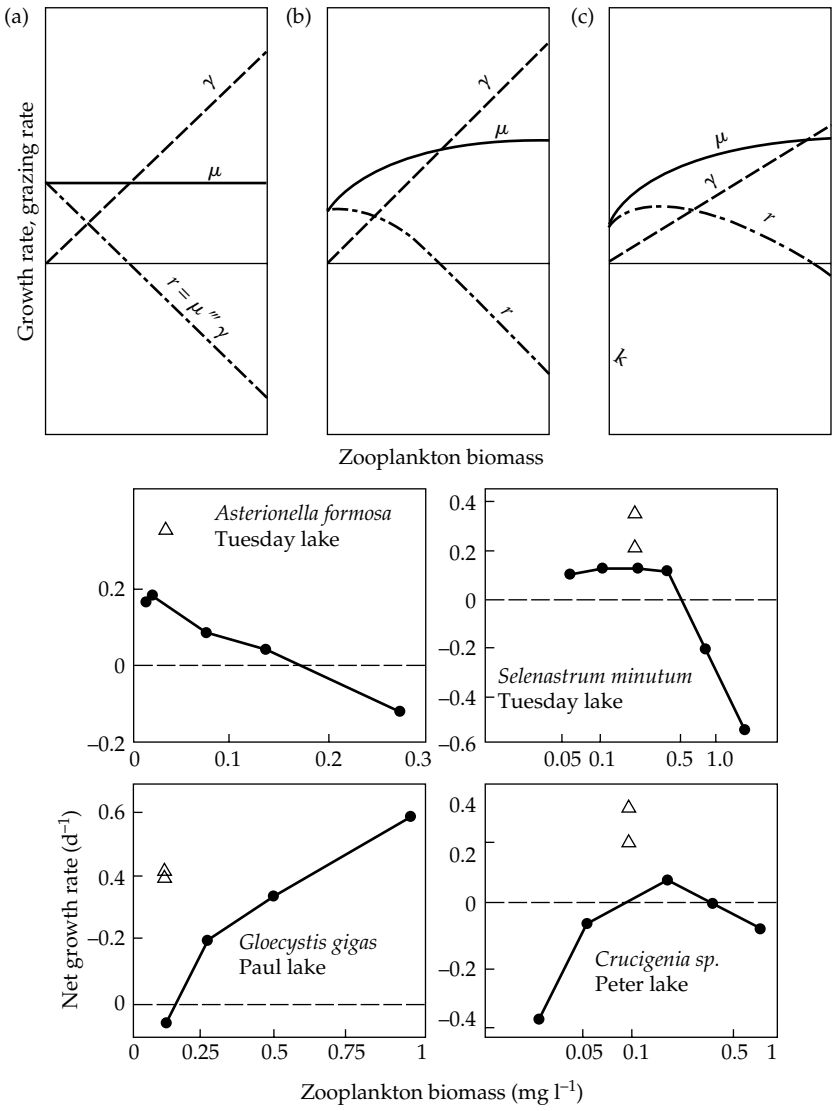


Figure 6.18 *Top:* Hypothetical effects of zooplankton biomass on the gross growth rate (μ), grazing rate (g), and net growth rate (r) of phytoplankton. (a) non-nutrient-limited; (b) nutrient-limited, highly edible; (c) nutrient limited, poor edibility. *Lower panels:* An example of net growth rates based on field experiments with manipulated densities of zooplankton. The net growth rates with unmanipulated zooplankton densities and addition of nutrients (triangles) indicate nutrient limitation for all of the species shown (after Elser *et al*. 1988).

feeding process (*sloppy feeding*), from feces, or directly from animal excretion (Lampert 1978b). Release of nutrients by zooplankton is often the most important source of *regeneration of dissolved nutrients* during the summer stagnation. Because of this, the zooplankton influence the gross growth rates of the phytoplankton as well as their mortality. Assuming that both the grazing rates and nutrient regeneration increase linearly with zooplankton density, three hypothetical cases can be postulated (Fig. 6.18):

- If a phytoplankton species is not nutrient limited, the gross growth rate (μ) will not respond to the zooplankton biomass. Since the grazing rate (γ) is increasing, however, the net growth rate (r) must decrease.

• The gross growth rate of nutrient-limited phytoplankton will increase with the zooplankton biomass as a nonlinear saturation curve because zooplankton excretion provides nutrients. If the feeding selectivity coefficient for this phytoplankton is high, the grazing rate will increase faster with the zooplankton biomass than the gross growth rate. There will thus be a nonlinear decrease in the net growth rate with the zooplankton biomass; this decrease is at first slow and then becomes more rapid.
• If the phytoplankton species is nutrient limited, but has a low feeding selectivity coefficient, at low zooplankton densities, its gross growth rate may increase more rapidly than the grazing rate. This would produce a unimodal curve of net growth rate with a maximum at a specific zooplankton biomass. In this regard, algae that are poorly eaten can even benefit by being grazed (Sterner 1986).

Figure 6.18 shows an example of net growth rates actually measured in a field experiment where the zooplankton densities were manipulated. Promotion of certain phytoplankton species, as in case C, would only be possible if a sufficient quantity of edible food organisms was also present, to provide a source of nutrients that the zooplankton could excrete. In this way, zooplankton transfer nutrients from the more edible to the less edible organisms.

The redistribution of phosphorus from bacteria to algae by grazing protozoans is a particularly efficient mechanism. Usually bacteria have a higher phosphorus content than algae, as well as a low k_s for phosphorus, allowing bacteria to compete effectively with the algae when phosphorus is limiting. Figure 6.19 shows the results of a chemostat experiment that gives insights into the interactions between bacteria, grazers, and different algae (Rothhaupt 1992). A chemostat was inoculated with bacteria isolated from a lake, the elongate diatom *Synedra*, and the small *Cryptomonas*. Grazers were not added. The diatom, which has a very low k_s (see Fig. 4.20) and the bacteria grew immediately, while numbers of *Cryptomonas*, with a high k_s, remained low. After about 1 week, the diatom remained at a constant density, as it now became silicon limited. Bacteria increased further, but *Cryptomonas* was nearly driven to extinction. Before this happened (week 3), a heterotrophic flagellate (*Spumella*) that feeds on bacteria was added to the culture as a grazer. It quickly reduced bacterial numbers and reached an equilibrium when the bacteria were at low numbers. As soon as *Spumella* began grazing, *Cryptomonas* also began to grow. The silicon-limited *Synedra* did not respond. By the end of the experiment, *Cryptomonas* became the dominant organism in the chemostat. There was no increase in dissolved phosphorus following the addition of *Spumella*, since the released phosphorus was immediately incorporated into *Cryptomonas* biomass. This experiment clearly demonstrates how a grazer can alter the outcome of a competition by keeping the superior competitor in check and redistributing the phosphorus.

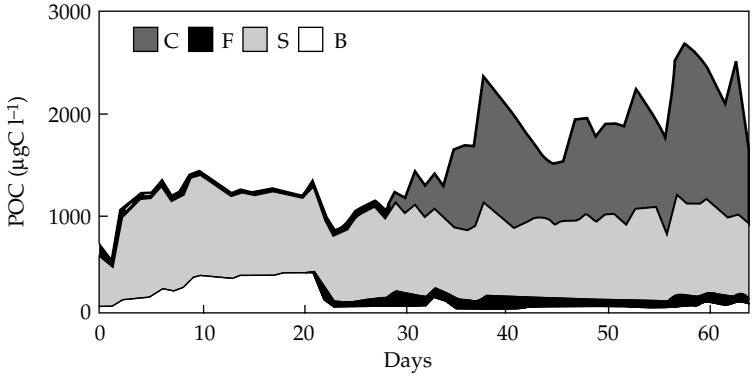


Figure 6.19 Competition of two algal species and mixed bacteria for phosphorus in a chemostat experiment. Cumulative biomass of *Synedra* (S), *Cryptomonas* (C), and bacteria (B). The addition of the heterotrophic nanoflagellate *Spumella* on day 21 results in a reduction of bacterial biomass and facilitates growth of *Cryptomonas* (from Rothhaupt 1992).

Zooplankton regenerate different nutrients with different efficiencies. Phosphorus is excreted primarily as dissolved phosphate and nitrogen mainly as ammonium. Both forms are readily available for plants. Silicon, on the other hand, is egested as particles of siliceous algal detritus, which sink rapidly out of the epilimnion before the silica can redissolve. Zooplankton feeding activity therefore tends to lower the essential resource ratios Si:P and Si:N as well as the substitutable resources NO_3:NH_4. This changes the competitive conditions for the phytoplankton (see Section 6.1.3).

This zooplankton-induced shift in the competitive conditions to the detriment of the diatoms can be demonstrated in culture experiments (Fig. 6.20). Light and dark chemostat chambers were connected in a circulation system. Phytoplankton grew and competed in the light chamber and were continuously transported into the dark chamber containing *Daphnia* that ate the phytoplankton and excreted nutrients. The inflow back into the light chamber from the dark chamber contained excreted nutrients and the algae that were not eaten. As predicted, the Si:P ratio in the recycled water was lowered, and the diatoms were replaced by the green algae. The possibility that this succession was a direct effect of selective grazing can be excluded, for the dominant diatom (*Asterionella formosa*) and the dominant green alga (*Mougeotia thylespora*) have almost the same selectivity coefficient (see Fig. 6.16). This leaves the shift in the competitive conditions caused by zooplankton excretion as the most plausible explanation.

Tiny diffusion zones with elevated nutrient concentrations form around the zooplankton and their feces. Zooplankton excretion produces small-scale variability or "micropatchiness" in available nutrients. Goldman *et al*. (1979) speculated that phytoplankton could have brief periods of high rates of nutrient uptake when they encounter such microzones. This could lead to higher gross growth rates than would be predicted from the Monod equation, using average nutrient concentrations. This speculation has been challenged, and there is still no strong experimental evidence to support the growth-promoting effect of nutrient micropatches.

Although it is obvious that zooplankton can only regenerate part of the nitrogen and phosphorus in their food algae, and have to assimilate another part to build up their own biomass, this has not been taken serious as a potentially significant drain on the pool of nitrogen and phosphorus available for the algae. However, in recent years it has become evident that under strong nutrient limitation of algae zooplankton may act rather as a nutrient trap than a nutrient source ("consumer driven nutrient limitation"; Elser and Urabe 1999, Sterner

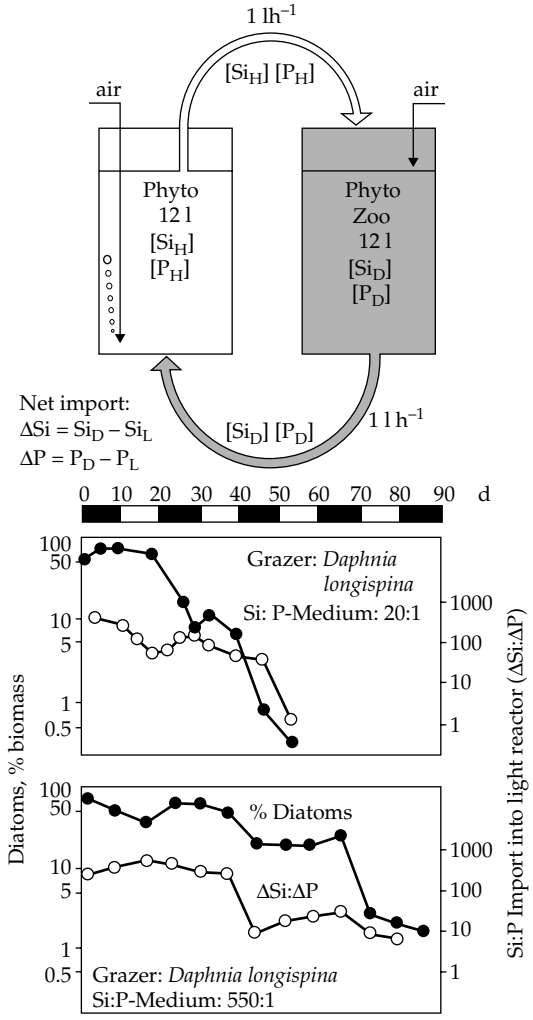


Figure 6.20 Experiments on the interaction between grazing and competition for nutrients. *Top:* Diagram of the experimental apparatus. *Lower panels:* Decrease in the Si:P ratio in the outflow in the light chamber and decrease in the percentage of the diatoms in the phytoplankton biomass (from Sommer 1988b).

and Elser 2002). Phytoplankton stoichiometry varies strongly in response to nutrient limitation (see Section 4.3.7), but zooplankton have a physiologically quite stable stoichiometry with pronounced interspecific variability. If phytoplankton is short in nitrogen (C:N high) or phosphorus (C:P high), zooplankton try to minimize the excretion of nitrogen and phosphorus in order to assimilate as much of it as possible (Olsen *et al*. 1986). This means that nitrogen-limited phytoplankton will encounter a reduced flux of nitrogen, while phosphorus-limited phytoplankton will encounter a reduced flux of phosphorus. Such a mechanism would act as a positive feedback loop, strengthening an already existing nutrient limitation instead of alleviating it. If the initial N:P ratio in phytoplankton biomass is close to a balanced supply (N:P = 16.1), phosphorus-rich zooplankton such as *Daphnia* would drive phytoplankton toward phosphorus limitation, while nitrogen-rich zooplankton such as copepods would drive it toward nitrogen limitation (Elser *et al*. 1988). These constraints also apply to benthic animals that have particular problems with food quality if they feed on terrestrially derived resources such as leaf litter or wood falling into a stream. Such materials have substantially higher C:P and C:N ratios than periphyton, but stoichiometric relationships change when the leaves are colonized by microorganism (Cross *et al*. 2005).

Under appropriate circumstances, nutrient trapping in zooplankton might even induce nutrient limitation, if the initial conditions indicated nutrient sufficiency (phytoplankton biomass close to the Redfield ratio, C:N:P = 106:16:1 (see Section 4.37). This was demonstrated in an enclosure experiment, where enclosures containing summer phytoplankton were stocked with different densities of *Daphnia hyalina* × *galeata* (Sommer *et al*. 2003). Initially, phytoplankton was nutrient saturated (C:P <100:1), but after 12 days phytoplankton C:P ratios had increased in all enclosures. The increase of the C:P ratio was strongest in the ones with the highest zooplankton densities (Fig. 6.21), where most of new zooplankton biomass production had also occurred. This transition from phosphorus sufficiency to phosphorus limitation was possible because <20% of the phytoplankton biomass was within the edible size range. Thus only a small share of the total phosphorus within the system was contained in the edible biomass, and the recycled share of it was even less and insufficient to satisfy the demand of the growing inedible algae. A mass balance showed that most of the phosphorus lost from phytoplankton biomass could be accounted for by the demand for phosphorus for *Daphnia* growth.

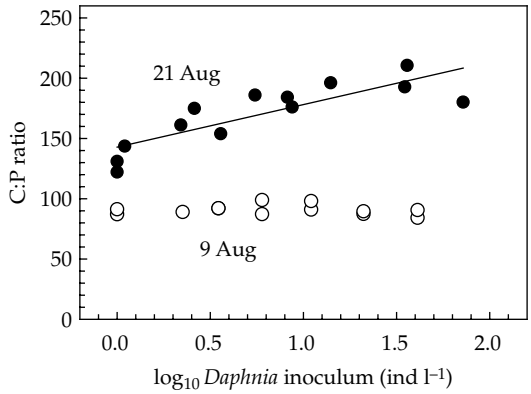


Figure 6.21 Phytoplankton C:P ratio in an enclosure experiment (Schöhsee, started August 9, 2000) where enclosures were stocked by different densities of *Daphnia* (data from Sommer *et al*. 2003).

6.4.5 Periphyton

One might assume that the same principles that apply to grazing in the plankton would also apply to grazing on microalgae that grow on submerged surfaces (periphyton). However, there are some additional complications, resulting from the fact that periphyton algae are subjected to a grazing pressure from within the periphyton community and from outside. The periphyton community contains not only algae, but also heterotrophs including herbivorous protozoa and meiofauna (small metazoans <2 mm). Benthic macrofauna that graze on the periphyton might eat algae and periphyton animals at the same time. Therefore, macrograzers can have a twofold impact on periphyton algae: grazing of algae and release from grazing pressure by protozoans and meiofauna. At times, these effects might mask each other, particularly if the response of the periphyton is studied by bulk variables (e.g., carbon, chlorophyll) and not at the species level. This was shown in an experimental study by

Hillebrand *et al*. (2002) where macrograzer exclusion by cages was combined with other factors—ambient nutrients/nutrient addition, site (Lake Erken, Sweden; Väddö, Swedish Baltic coast) and season. The expected increase of algal biomass after grazer exclusion was found only in some of the experimental combinations, e.g., early spring, nutrient addition, both sites. Nevertheless, a comparison of 85 experiments which combined macrograzer exclusion and nutrient enrichments showed an overall negative effect of grazers on periphyton bulk biomass and a positive effect of nutrient enrichment in lakes, streams, and coastal marine sites (Hillebrand 2002).

Grazing fish, which are particularly abundant in the tropics, can have a very strong impact on periphyton. In a study similar to the one mentioned above, McIntyre *et al*. (2006) separated the effects of nutrients and grazers (fish, macrocrustaceans, insects) on periphyton abundance and growth in the littoral zone of Lake Tanganyika. Although nutrients had a positive effect on periphyton growth, the effect of grazing was much larger. Grazing strongly suppressed periphyton biomass, but area-specific gross primary production was less negatively affected because of an increase in biomass-specific production.

Grazing by benthic invertebrates (insect larvae and snails) has been recognized as an important factor affecting benthic algal communities in streams. It is difficult to quantify these effects, as the water current often interferes with grazer-exclusion experiments. Experiments that have succeeded have shown that grazing invertebrates can keep the periphyton on the rocks in check. Feminella *et al*. (1989) placed artificial substrates (tiles) in a stream in California. Some of the tiles were laid on the stream bottom so that they were completely accessible to grazers. Other tiles were slightly raised off the bottom so that crawling grazers were excluded, except for a few drifting mayfly larvae that colonized these tiles. This experiment clearly demonstrated that light controlled the periphyton in the sections of stream that were under the tree canopy, but in the sunny, open sections the grazers were the dominant controlling factor.

Artificial streams have been used to study grazing effects on periphyton under more controlled conditions (McCormick *et al*. 1994). Periphyton biomass was lower in the presence of grazers (snails), but grazers indirectly also affected the periphyton downstream. Bare tiles exposed downstream of the grazed periphyton were colonized by algae at a faster rate than in control plots below ungrazed algae. This was not simply due to higher numbers of drifting algae released by the grazers. Instead, under grazing pressure, the algal cells became physiologically more active and grew faster. Cells exported from grazed reaches may have higher division rates once they attach to a new substrate than cells exported from ungrazed reaches.

We also expect a far more complicated patterns of grazing selectivity in periphyton than in plankton. There are much greater differences in the body size and taxonomic origin of the grazers on periphyton (from protozoans to snails and insects and sometimes even herbivorous fish) than in the plankton. Thus one should not expect as clear a picture as for the selectivity of the herbivorous zooplankton. In addition to protective sheaths and particle size, the edibility of periphytic algae also depends on their ability to adhere to the substrate. The stream snail *Theodoxus fluviatilis*, for example, can only scrape off and break up periphyton with its radula if the algae are growing on a hard, rough surface (Neumann 1961).

In Lake Mephremagog, Canada, Cattaneo (1983) examined the dynamics of the epiphytic algae on natural and artificial aquatic plants. She found the same pattern for both substrates: In June there was a maximum biomass of periphyton that quickly collapsed with the invasion of oligochaetes and chironomids. Thereafter, the periphyton biomass remained low, possibly due to snails that then appeared. Exclusion experiments with fine-mesh cages suggested that the periphyton biomass was actually kept at low levels by grazers. The species composition of the periphyton also changed in these exclusion experiments. Cyanobacteria dominated in the controls, but green algae and diatoms became abundant in the cages.

The importance of grazing for epiphytic algal communities on macrophytes has been clearly demonstrated by Underwood and Thomas (1990). These authors examined epiphytes on the shoots of water milfoil *Myriophyllum* from locations with and

without grazing snails. Epiphytes on grazed plants were dominated by the oval-shaped diatom *Cocconeis*, which typically grows flat on plant surfaces. Plants from nongrazed locations hosted different diatoms and cyanobacteria. In the laboratory, both epiphyte communities were kept with and without grazing snails. After 35 days, the epiphyte communities changed as predicted. Grazed treatments had a low epiphytic biomass and were dominated by *Cocconeis*, while cyanobacteria were abundant in ungrazed treatments. The differences were due to selective grazing and resistance of some algal species to digestion by the snails. Over 60% of the algal taxa present in the diet of the snails were able to survive gut passage, resettle, and grow. Thus grazing not only changes the epiphyte composition, it also benefits the macrophytes by removing competitors. Tall *et al*. (2006) investigated selective grazing in an invertebrate community that feeds on epipytic diatoms on mosses in a stream in Quebec (Canada). They found a significant positive relationship between invertebrate head width and the maximum size of ingested diatoms independent of the different taxa of grazers (insects, crustaceans, worms). This suggests that several paradigms developed for planktonic interactions may also apply to benthic communities.

Benthic grazers can be purposely selective. Hart (1985b) reports an example in a small stream in Michigan (USA) where he observed sections that varied between slowly growing periphyton algae (mainly diatoms) and dense cover of a filamentous cyanobacterium (*Microcoleus vaginatus*). The sections that were free of the cyanobacteria were the feeding territories of the caddisfly larvae *Leucotrichia pictipes*. When the larvae were removed, the areas quickly became covered with *Microcoleus*. Interestingly enough, the caddisfly larvae did not actually eat the cyanobacteria; they simply removed them, much like a gardener, to allow for better growth of the diatoms that provided their food.

Dodds (1991) observed some complicated interactions between filamentous green algae (*Cladophora*), their epiphytes (diatoms), and invertebrate grazers (insect larvae) in a stream in Montana (USA). There was no apparent nutrient competition between filamentous algae and epiphytes. However, when diatoms grew on the algal filaments they increased the frictional resistance for the water flowing past and reduced the current velocity amongst the algal strands. The poor exchange with the water caused a reduction in the photosynthesis of the green algae. Grazers eliminated 75% of the epiphytes and excreted nutrients that were available to the green algae. In this case the green algae benefitted from the activities of the grazers in a fashion similar to the grazing-resistant phytoplankton and the zooplankton.

6.5 Predation

6.5.1 Components of foraging

For a predator, successful hunting represents an increase in fitness through higher reproduction rates and improved chances for survival of its offspring, whereas for the prey it represents decreased fitness through mortality. Predators and prey have coevolved complex characteristics and tactics with which they can effectively capture prey or be protected against predation. The process of foraging can be characterized by four successive phases (Gerritsen and Strickler 1977):

1 Predator and prey encounter one another.
2 The predator recognizes the prey and attacks it.
3 The predator captures the prey.
4 The predator ingests the prey.

This sequence can be presented in the following way:

Movement of prey and predator relative to one another
$\downarrow P_E$
Encounter
$\downarrow P_A$
Attack
$\downarrow P_C$
Capture
$\downarrow P_I$
Ingestion

At each level there is a particular probability (P) that the process will continue. It then follows that the probability of a successful predatory interaction (P_{SI}) is:

$$P_{SI} = P_E \cdot P_A \cdot P_C \cdot P_I$$

The same relationship also applies to the prey, except that the success of the prey increases with the decrease in probability. The likelihood that the next step will follow depends on the adaptive abilities of both predator and prey that occur at each step. By dividing the entire process of prey capture into subcomponents, one can systematically examine the mechanisms of adaptation.

In order for an interaction to occur, predator and prey must first encounter one another. The *probability of encounter* depends on the mean velocity of movement of both predator and prey. It would be most beneficial for the prey if it remained totally still, but since animals must also search for food and mates, this is not possible. The predator has two choices. It can either wait quietly and ambush the prey as it passes by, or it can actively search for the prey. Examples of ambush predators in fresh water are the pike, *Chaoborus* larvae, and dragonfly larvae. Predators adopting an active search strategy include perch, predatory copepods, and certain stoneflies.

A predator must encounter a prey and also detect its presence. Once again, the characteristics of the prey and the predator are important. We can define a *detection radius* around the predator within which it can recognize the prey. The larger the detection radius, the greater the likelihood that the prey will be pursued. The detection radius depends primarily on the sensory capabilities of the predator. For visually orienting predators such as carnivorous fish, not only is their visual acuity important, but also characteristics of the prey such as visibility, size, coloration, and swimming movements. Environmental conditions may also affect the detection radius. For example, a visually orienting predator would have a small detection radius in turbid water.

Once the prey has been detected, the predator must decide whether it will attack. Here learning can play a role. For example, fish have a wide detection radius for conspicuously colored water mites, but they quickly learn not to eat them because of their unpleasant taste (Kerfoot 1982).

Even after detection, the prey still must be captured, subdued, and eaten, so there is still a chance that it may escape. It can, for example, flee at the last moment or be protected by armored structures that interfere with the predator's ability to handle it. In fresh water, various species of rotifers (Fig. 6.22) that come into the vicinity of a predatory copepod have different behaviors. The soft-bodied, slow *Synchaeta* has little chance of escaping, while *Polyarthra* has a number of paddle-like processes that can suddenly beat synchronously, propelling the rotifer forward in a rapid jump, allowing it to escape. *Filinia* spreads out three long spines that make it difficult for the predator to handle, and *Keratella* depends on a powerful spiny armor for protection. The most decisive factor in determining whether the prey will escape is the size relationship of predator and prey.

6.5.2 Selectivity

All components of the foraging model restrict the types of prey organisms that can be eaten by the

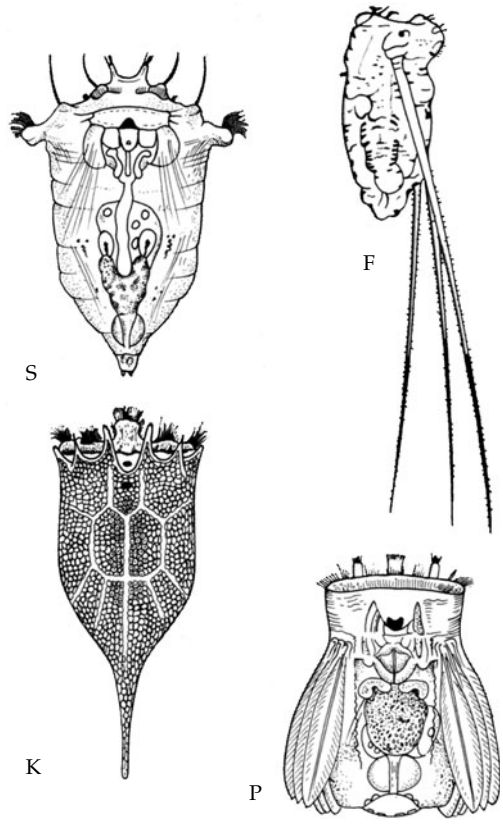


Figure 6.22 Rotifers with various defense mechanisms. The soft-bodied *Synchaeta* (S) cannot escape. *Filinia* (F) can extend three long spines. *Polyarthra* (P) can make rapid jumps with its paddle-like appendages to escape predators. *Keratella* (K) is protected by armor.

predator. If the stomach contents of a predator are compared with the composition of the possible prey animals in its environment, there are great differences; thus predators are selective. There are a number of *selectivity indices* (see Box 6.2) that allow one to characterize the "preference" of a predator for a particular prey species. These indices are all based on the relative frequency of a prey species in the environment and in the diet of the predator.

Based on the method of prey detection employed, aquatic predators can be divided into two groups with completely different patterns of prey selection. Vertebrates, in fresh water essentially fish and occasionally salamander larvae, use visual orientation

Box 6.2 Quantification of selectivity

This chapter and the next demonstrate the importance of selective feeding by predators and grazers on the community structure by imposing differential mortality on the prey. An appropriate measure is needed to express such differential mortality quantitatively. A number of indices have been developed, all of which are based on a comparison of the proportion of a specific prey category or particle class relative to all available prey found in the food consumed and in the environment. To determine, for example, whether a particular size class of food is preferred by a predator, one must first estimate what proportion or percentage this class is of the entire prey population, and then the proportion of the same size in the gut of the predator.

Using the relative proportion of a particular class in the environment (p) and the proportion in the gut (r), the electivity index (E) can be calculated (Ivlev 1961):

$$E = (r - p)/(r + p)$$

E can vary from –1 to +1, where –1 to >0 means negative selection of the prey item considered and proportionally fewer of prey type were eaten. >0 to +1 means positive selection and that this prey is eaten more frequently than other classes. When the proportion of a prey type is the same in the stomach and in the environment, there is no selection, and $E = 0$.

The classical Ivlev index is not independent of the relative proportion of the prey species and therefore cannot be used to test whether the relative frequency of prey has an effect on the prey selection by a predator (frequency-dependent selection). Jacobs (1974) recommended a modified index (D) that does not have this disadvantage and has thus been widely used. D also ranges from –1 to +1, with 0 indicating nonselective feeding:

$$D = (r - p)/[(r + p) - 2rp]$$

Another frequently used index (α) developed by Chesson (1978) uses i as the food class considered and j for all other classes. Then the proportion of the item of interest in the food is r_i or r_j, and the proportion in the environment is p_i or p_j. The electivity index for class i is then:

$$\alpha = \frac{r_i/p_i}{r_i/p_i + r_j/p_j}$$

a ranges from 0 (negative selection) to 1 (positive selection), and nonselectivity is 0.5.

Example

Three size classes of food organisms are available to a fish. A sample of the environment shows:

Class	Number	Proportion
A	600	0.60
B	250	0.25
C	*150*	0.15
Total	1000	

In the stomach of the fish we find:

Class	Number	Proportion
A	15	0.47
B	8	0.25
C	*9*	0.28
Total	32	

The stomach contents give the impression that the fish favors eating class A. When we calculate the indices according to Jacobs and Chesson, we find:

$$D_A = \frac{0.47 - 0.60}{0.47 + 0.60 - 0.564} = -0.257$$

$$\alpha_A = \frac{0.47/0.60}{0.47/0.60 + 0.53/0.40} = 0.372$$

Correspondingly, we get for B: $D_B = 0$; $\alpha_B = 0.5$ and for C: $D_C = 0.376$; $\alpha_C = 0.688$. Food type C was preferred to A, and B was eaten without selection and simply chosen in proportion to its relative abundance.

in most cases. A critical step in the foraging process is the detection of the prey. In piscivorous fish, the size of the mouth limits the maximum size of prey fish that they ingest. Planktivorous and benthic feeding fish are so large (with the exception of young stages) that the handling of prey is not a problem. For a fish, larger prey are visible at a greater distance. Thus the probability of being eaten is greater for larger prey. As a result, vertebrate predators eat the larger items from a mixed offering of food.

Invertebrate predators such as carnivorous zooplankton and insect larvae orient with mechano- or chemosensors rather than visually. Here the limiting step for success is not the visual detection, but rather the handling, of the prey. Invertebrates are relatively small and therefore require prey that are smaller than themselves. They normally select smaller objects from a spectrum of prey.

In this way vertebrate and invertebrate predators have very different effects on the community of the prey. Vertebrates prefer the relatively large invertebrate predators, further compounding the effects of predation on plankton community structure (see Section 6.5.6).

6.5.3 Vertebrate predators

Planktivorous fish

Almost all fish go through a phase when they eat zooplankton, even those that feed on benthos or become *piscivores* as they grow up. Some fish remain *planktivores* throughout their life. Pelagic coregonids (whitefish), alewife *Alosa*, and smelt *Osmerus*, for example, feed almost exclusively on zooplankton, even as adults.

Most planktivorous fish orient visually, catching individual prey. There are, however, a few fish such as the adult alewife *Alosa pseudoharengus* and the gizzard shad *Dorosoma cepedianum* that feed by filtering (Drenner *et al*. 1982). These fish feed by pumping water through their mouths and retaining the zooplankton with their gill rakers. The size of the zooplankton collected depends on the distance between the gill projections. Larger particles are more easily retained than small particles that may pass through the gill filters. This results in a selectivity for larger zooplankton.

Even visually orienting fish can retain only those particles that are larger than the width of their gill rakers, but the selection process occurs earlier. A prey must be first detected. The *reaction distance* can be used as a measure of the detectability of the prey. This is the distance at which a fish reacts by attacking the prey. A larger reactive distance indicates a more visible prey. The reactive distance depends on both the size and type of prey: Large prey can be located at a greater distance than small prey. Prey recognition actually depends on the image formed on the retina of the fish eye. A small zooplankter that is close to the fish can appear to be the same size as a large zooplankter that is farther away; the zooplankter is thus said to have an "apparent" size. Contrast with the surroundings and type of movement are additional factors involved in prey detection. Prey that have striking colors and movements are more easily detected (O'Brien *et al*. 1985).

The reaction distance is shorter in turbid or highly colored water. Light intensity is extremely important. The reactive distance quickly decreases when the light falls below a threshold intensity of several lux. Fish must then be very close to their prey in order to locate them (Fig. 6.23). For the zooplankter, this means it has a lower probability of being eaten. Different fish species have different threshold light intensities for feeding: Some have low light thresholds and can feed efficiently under

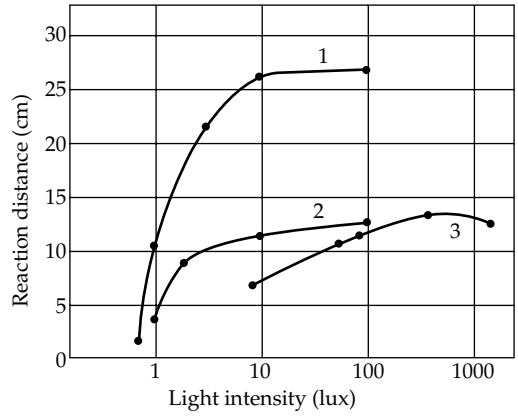


Figure 6.23 The reaction distance of fish for 2 mm *Daphnia pulex* at various light intensities. 1, sunfish *Lepomis macrochirus*; 2, white crappie *Pomoxis annularis*; 3, brook trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* (from O'Brien 1987).

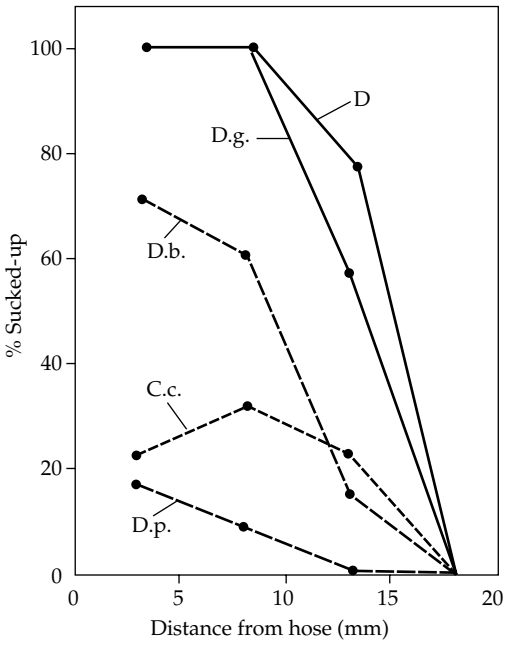


Figure 6.24 Experiments on the escape behavior of zooplankton. Percentage of zooplankton sucked up by a hose at a fixed distance. D, dead zooplankton; D.g., *Daphnia galeata*; D.b. *Diaphanosoma brachyurum*; C.c., cyclopoid copepods; D.p., *Diaptomus pallidus* (from Drenner *et al*. 1978).

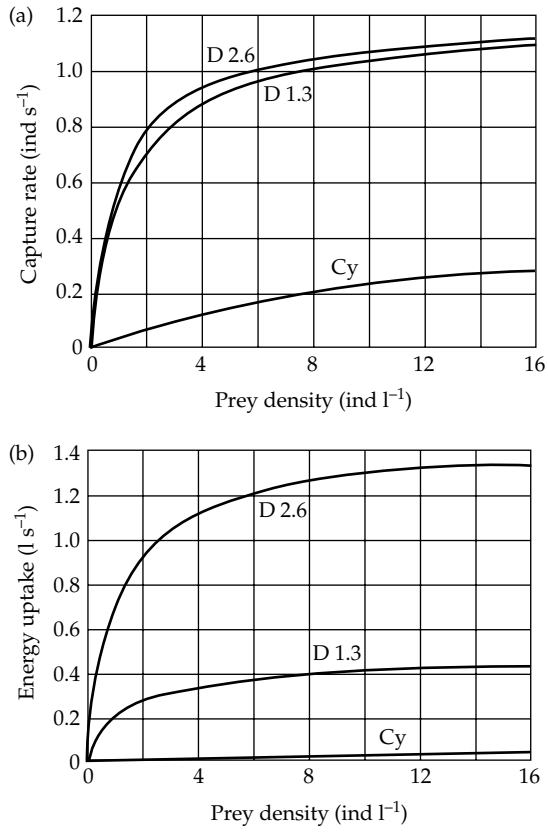


Figure 6.25 Capture rate (a) and the resulting energy gain (b) for a 1 year old perch, fed small (1.3 mm) and large (2.6 mm) *Daphnia* (D) and the copepod *Cyclops* (Cy) (after Persson 1987).

moonlight conditions. For this type of fish, all these factors lead to easier detection of larger prey.

The capture success of filtering and visually feeding fish depends also on the ability of the prey to escape. Both feeding modes involve the sucking of water containing the prey into the mouth. Some zooplankton, such as copepods and the cladoceran *Diaphanosoma*, can make powerful jumps against the current to escape capture. The fish's sucking can be simulated by siphoning water from an aquarium through a tube and observing how the zooplankton behave when they are caught in the suction. Figure 6.24 gives an example of such an experiment. All the zooplankton tested were caught more efficiently when they were near the tube. At a distance of 8 mm from the tube, all of the *Daphnia* were sucked out of the aquarium, whereas only 20% of the copepod *Diaptomus* were captured at a much shorter distance (3 mm). The end result of such a manipulation is that the *Daphnia* are sucked out of the aquarium first and the copepods last. One can predict from these results that it should be easier for fish to capture *Daphnia* than copepods and this is in fact the case (Brooks 1968).

When prey animals are so plentiful that searching time becomes unimportant, in terms of energy metabolism fish should concentrate on obtaining the best food parcels. This effect is seen with young perch, which reach a feeding plateau with increasing concentration of prey (Fig. 6.25a, b, and see Section 4.3.2). The fish can eat only a certain number of *Daphnia* per unit time, irrespective of their size. Far fewer *Cyclops* are captured during this time, simply because they are better at escaping. The rate of energy consumed is much greater if the fish concentrate on the large *Daphnia*, as a large *Daphnia* contains much more energy than a small *Daphnia*. It is beneficial for the fish to eat the

small *Daphnia* only when the density of the large prey becomes so low that the search time is too long. It can be assumed that there has been an evolution in the direction of such optimal feeding behavior, since greater energy consumption generally results in greater fitness.

Fish sometimes switch between filtering and individual particle capture, especially under poor light conditions (Janssen 1980). All morphological, sensory, and behavioral factors lead to the same conclusion: Planktivorous fish should selectively eat the largest and most easily captured zooplankton. This hypothesis has been confirmed many times by field studies. Further support for this idea can be found by comparing the size distribution of *Daphnia* in a lake with those found in the stomachs of young perch, rainbow trout, or bleak (cyprinids). The larger *Daphnia* are over-represented in the fish stomachs (Fig. 6.26).

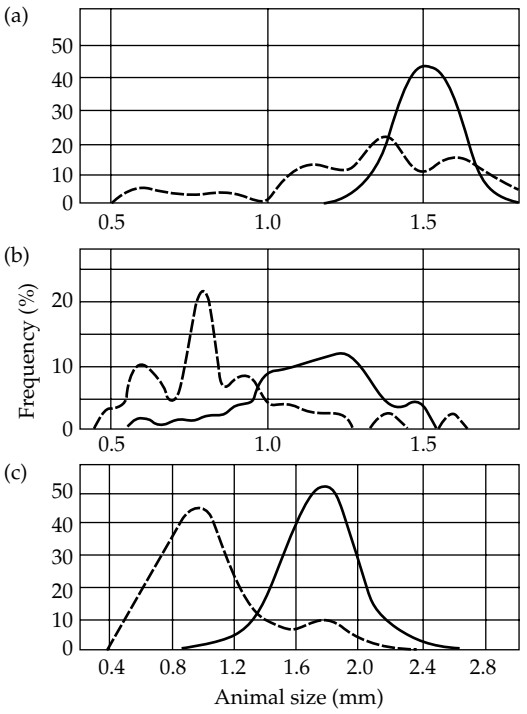


Figure 6.26 Size distribution of *Daphnia* in a lake (broken line) and in the stomach of fish (continuous line). (a) Bleak *Chalcalburnus chalcoides mento* in Mondsee (Austria) (from Wieser 1986); (b) perch *Perca fluviatilis* in the Bautzen reservoir (Dresden, Germany) (from Köpke *et al*. 1988); (c) rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus gairdneri* in Stager Lake (Michigan, USA) (from Galbraith 1967).

Planktivorous fish can also become specialists. As long as *Daphnia* are present, coregonids have hardly any copepods in their stomachs, even when they are abundant in the environment. In an experiment with mixed zooplankton (Brooks 1968), the *Daphnia* were quickly eaten, followed by the large copepods and then finally the small copepods. Such pronounced specialization cannot be completely explained by the visibility and escape behavior of the prey, and is probably related to the learning ability of fish. The fish knows after a few trials that when it sees both a *Daphnia* and a copepod it will be more likely to catch the *Daphnia*. This type of learning further strengthens the selective process.

These general rules apply to fish that are large relative to their prey size, which for young fish would be after they are several centimeters long. There are also ontogenetic changes in food preference. Larval fish and extremely small young fish are restricted to small-sized food by the size of their mouth. Small fish larvae may at first depend entirely on the smallest zooplankton, such as protozoans and rotifers. As they get larger, their food preference shifts next to larval stages of copepods and finally to cladocerans. During their early development period fish follow the rule of eating the largest prey that can be captured, rather than the largest prey available. This is a relatively brief phase in the life of fish and therefore does not affect the zooplankton as much as the feeding by larger fish that persists throughout the summer.

The size-dependent response of fish can be nicely demonstrated by the predatory cladoceran *Bythotrephes cederstroemi*, which in recent times invaded the Laurentian Great Lakes. *Bythotrephes* has a body size of about 2 mm, but carries a very long tail spine of about 10 mm. The tail spine is an effective defensive device against young fish. Small rainbow trout (4–8 cm) require eight times as long to handle a spined prey, compared to a despined one. Often the small fish attack the spined *Bythotrephes*, but then reject them (Barnhisel 1991). Larger planktivorous fish, however, have no difficulty handling the spiny prey and even prefer them to other zooplankton because of their large size and high visibility. Alewife >16.5 cm long in Lake Ontario were more efficient in finding *Bythotrephes* than limnologists. The fish had *Bythotrephes* in their

stomachs, although the density in the lake was too low for specimens to be found regularly in the plankton tows (Mills *et al*. 1992).

Benthic and piscivorous fish

Some fish species change to feeding on benthos as they get older. They search for prey on plants and stones, or in the sediments. Stream fish that do not eat insects that fall into the water must depend on macroinvertebrates. *Benthivorous* fish are selective and prefer the largest prey, although the concept of reactive distance is not so easy to apply here, as prey in the benthos can hide. Even macroinvertebrates are small enough that they are potentially edible for all fish. If they are small enough, however, they can avoid detection. Brook trout, for example, were able to change the size structure of invertebrate communities in streams. The fish reduced the abundance of large epibenthic and drifting invertebrates, but did not affect animals <2 mm and those living in the interstices of rocks (Bechara *et al*. 1993).

The larvae of the salamander *Dicamptodon* in streams behave similarly to fishes. Larger prey are over-represented in their guts compared to their abundance in the stream. Direct observations showed that the reactive distance was greater for large prey (i.e., they are easier to detect). Although handling time increased with increasing prey size, it was still profitable for the larvae to select large items as the ratio of prey biomass to handling time was higher for large prey (Parker 1993).

This example indicates that selection of the largest food items depends not only on whether the prey can be detected, but also on whether it is beneficial to spend a limited amount of time searching for larger prey. This can explain, for example, the size selection of roach *Rutilus rutilus* that eat the zebra mussel *Dreissena polymorpha*. These mussels are an excellent food, but fish must break the shells with their pharyngeal teeth. The benefit derived depends on the energy content of the mussels, which increases with increasing size, and the cost of breaking the shell, which also increases with the size of the mussel. The result is that small mussels (<10 mm) are not eaten, even though they are the most numerous. Roach only begin to eat mussels when they themselves are over 16 cm (Preijs *et al*. 1990). It is only after this size that it pays to break the mussels. The cost of handling the mussels is relatively small for larger fish, so that they select the largest mussels they can eat, which depends on the size of their mouth (*c*.60% of the mouth size). It simply does not pay large fish to search for small mussels. For the small fish that could eat the small mussels, based on their mouth size, breaking the shells is too difficult. The end result is that the small mussels are not eaten at all.

There is a similar optimal prey size for piscivorous fish. It would not be profitable, for example, for a large bass to chase after a small minnow. On the other hand, this might be a worthwhile prey for a small bass. The largest prey are determined by the mouth size of the predator. The largemouth bass *Micropterus salmoides*, for example, prefers forage fish that are about one-third its own size (Werner and Hall 1988).

Limitations and trade-offs

A fish cannot always search for the optimal prey, for it may itself be at risk while searching for food. A planktivorous fish would benefit most if it searched for food in bright light where its reaction distance to prey would increase. At the same time, however, it would be in greater danger of being eaten by predatory fish and fish-eating birds that also forage visually. This situation requires a risk assessment. However, an individual fish cannot estimate the actual risk of being eaten. Instead, during the course of evolution the species has developed a behavioral strategy that is optimal on average.

Bohl (1980) measured the distribution of young cyprinid fish in lakes in Bavaria (Germany) with an echo sounder. Surprisingly, the young fish entered the pelagic zone only at night when they ate zooplankton. During the day they stayed in swarms near the shore, but as soon as it became dark the schools dissipated and the young fish began to feed in the open water.

Young fish are better protected from predatory fish when they are in schools. It would be very risky for them to stay in open water during the day. Better food availability during the day could possibly

compensate for this greater risk. The zooplankton prey are indeed more visible during the day, but at that time they are deep in the lake and not in the surface waters (see Section 6.8.4). Thus the prey concentration is low during the day. At night, the zooplankton migrate into the surface water. Apparently it is more beneficial for the fish to hunt at night when the prey densities are high, even though the visibility is poor, although of course this requires the eye of the fish to be able to adapt to very low light intensities (see Fig. 6.23).

A striking example of the effects of size-selective predation by piscivores has been reported by Brabrand and Faafeng (1993). A Norwegian lake was dominated by roach *Rutilus rutilus* that are planktivorous as juveniles, but benthivorous as adults. Juvenile roach lived in the pelagic region as well as in littoral areas of the lake. Larger size classes were littoral. After the lake was stocked with pikeperch *Stizostedion lucioperca*, a piscivorous relative of the walleye, young roach, which are easy prey for the pikeperch, disappeared from the pelagic region, but numbers did not change in the littoral. Protected by their size, large roach, in contrast, moved to the open water. In the littoral, however, the young roach became available to the predacious perch *Perca fluviatilis*. As a consequence, the dominance in the littoral fish community shifted from >95% roach to >50% perch.

Just as the risk of being eaten changes during the life of a fish, its behavior can also change. Werner and Hall (1988) were able to explain the behavior of sunfish *Lepomis macrochirus* in lakes in Michigan (USA) by estimating the profit and risk components. Sunfish build their nests in the littoral. After the fry hatch they move into the pelagic zone where they feed on zooplankton. As soon as they grow to a length of 12–14 mm, they move back into the littoral for several years to live among the plants and feed on littoral animals. When they reach a length of about 8 cm, they return to the open water and feed again on zooplankton, at first in the water column above the plants and then later in the real pelagic region. The authors demonstrated that plankton was the most profitable food at every stage of their life. Intermediate-sized sunfish grew better in cages suspended in the open water than in the littoral, where they are normally found. Why would they return to the littoral for several years? The answer is that they are prey of the largemouth bass that feeds in the open water. The bass is a predator that is limited by the size of its mouth and eats prey that are 15–40% its own length. It becomes a piscivore and a threat to sunfish when it is about 35 cm long. However, there are relatively few large bass longer than 20 cm in the lake. Apparently, when sunfish in the littoral reach a size of 8 cm, the profitability of eating plankton outweighs the risk of being eaten by the few predatory fish; so they return to the open water.

6.5.4 Invertebrate predators

Types of predators

In addition to plant eaters, there are many species of invertebrates that are also omnivores and predators. These often have dramatic effects on the populations of their prey. Their effect on communities, however, is completely different from that of fish. Visual orientation is generally unimportant (except for a few insects), because aquatic invertebrates do not have as highly developed eyes as vertebrates. Invertebrate predators usually detect their prey by mechano- or chemoreception. Also, invertebrate predators are relatively small compared to fish. Their food selection therefore depends on their ability to capture the prey. The only invertebrate predators that can capture prey larger than themselves are those that inject poisons (e.g., predacious larvae of the diving beetle *Dytiscus*). Fish and amphibians are the only important vertebrate predators in fresh water, whereas the invertebrate predators consist of many different taxonomic groups with correspondingly diverse methods of prey selection and prey capture.

The predatory cladocerans *Leptodora* and *Bythotrephes* are typical invertebrate predators in the pelagic region. Their thoracic appendages form a basket-shaped organ, and they move through the water collecting mainly small cladoceran prey into this basket. Another predatory cladoceran, *Polyphemus*, is restricted to littoral regions, where it forms dense swarms. *Polyphemus* catches small zooplankton, using its enormous compound eye for

visual orientation and prey detection. The larvae of the phantom midge *Chaoborus* are ambush predators. They can remain stationary in the water column by means of modified tracheal "swim bladders." As a prey swims by, *Chaoborus* detects it by mechanoreceptors and suddenly attacks, grasping the prey with its mouthparts (Swift and Fedorenko 1975). Cyclopoid copepods transform from herbivores to carnivores during their larval development. In addition to eating algae, the fourth and fifth instars of many cyclopoid copepods eat rotifers and small crustaceans (nauplii, copepodid stages, cladocerans). Occasionally they also attack larger prey, such as fish fry. One can see from high-speed cinematography that copepods can track their prey in the water by detecting trails of microturbulence produced by the prey (Strickler 1977). The calanoid copepods are generally considered to be herbivorous, but there are also predatory (e.g., *Epischura*) and omnivorous species within the calanoid copepods. In fact, increasingly there are reports of "herbivorous" copepods (e.g., *Diaptomus*) also eating small zooplankters (rotifers, protozoans) (see also Section 6.5.5). One of the most studied predatory rotifers is *Asplanchna* (see Section 6.5.5). It catches other rotifers by means of extendible, pincherlike trophi. Water mites *Piona* are often important predators in tropical waters.

Important invertebrate predators in streams include numerous insect larvae, such as caddisflies without cases (Trichoptera), stoneflies (Plecoptera), and dragonflies. The larvae of the predacious diving beetles (dytiscids) and the dobsonfly *Sialis* are easily recognized as predators by their powerful, pincer-like mandibles. The backswimmer *Notonecta*, which hunts from just below the water surface, can have an important effect on the prey populations in certain lakes and ponds. Leeches and flatworms (turbellarians) are often important invertebrate predators in the benthic community.

Food selection

The most important step for visually hunting predators is the detection of prey. In contrast, the success of invertebrate predators depends more on the *probability of encounter* and *handling* of the prey. The predator finds larger prey more easily, but capturing them becomes more difficult and the handling time longer for larger prey, thereby reducing the *capture efficiency* (the fraction of prey actually eaten per capture attempt). This relationship has been especially well studied for the phantom midge larva *Chaoborus*, which feeds on *Daphnia* (Pastorok 1981). Figure 6.27 summarizes the components of the predation by *Chaoborus* larvae. The probability of encounter increases linearly with size of the *Daphnia* (A), but the handling time increases exponentially (B). There is an almost linear decline in capture efficiency with the size of *Daphnia*, since the capture efficiency decreases with the handling time. The product of encounter rate times the capture efficiency is a measure of the prey's risk of being eaten. Prey animals of intermediate size have the highest predation risk (C). Experiments with prey selection using *Chaoborus* and *Daphnia* have actually found a strong preference for the intermediate size classes (D) (see Section 6.5.5).

This predation model can also be applied to benthic predators. The predatory stonefly larvae *Hesperoperla* select prey in accordance with their own body size: Small stonefly larvae prefer small prey and large larvae prefer larger prey. Allan *et al*. (1987) were able to demonstrate experimentally that both the probability of encounter and the handling time increase with prey size, relative to the size of the stonefly larvae. The relative importance of these two processes can vary. The size of the prey alters the handling time, but has little effect on the probability of encounter if the prey are sessile, such as blackfly larvae *Simulium*. The encounter frequency increases with size for prey that are highly mobile, such as mayfly larvae. Predators that are offered mayfly and *Simulium* larvae simultaneously find the *Simulium* larvae less frequently than the mayfly larvae, but are more successful in capturing the sessile larvae that do not try to escape. The result is a preference for the *Simulium* larvae. The point of this example is that the "preference" of a predator for a certain prey need not be a conscious recognition, but may rather be simply a result of the characteristics of prey and predator and the difficulties encountered in handling the prey.

6.5.5 Defenses of the prey

Risk reduction

Predation is a very strong selective factor. One might expect that prey have thus evolved many defense

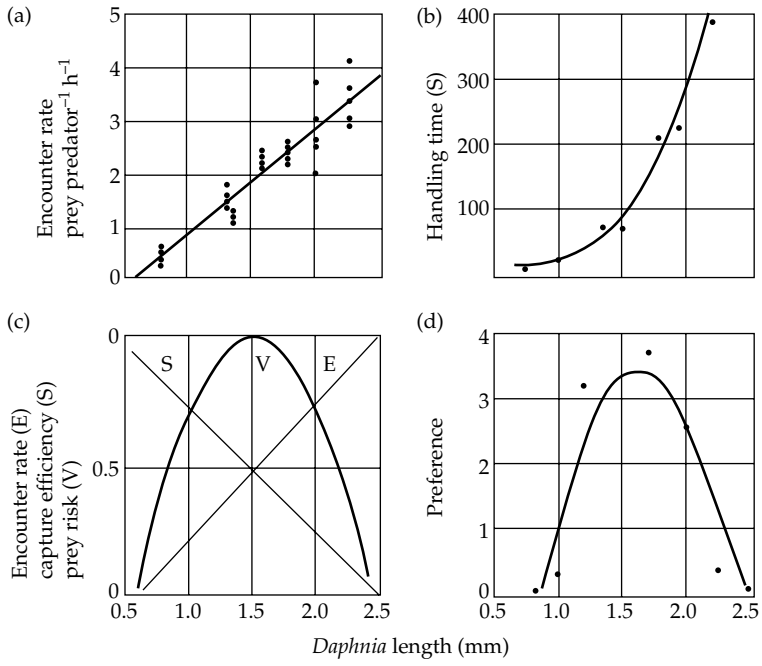


Figure 6.27 The basis of preference of fourth-instar *Chaoborus* larvae for medium-sized *Daphnia*. (a) Encounter rate increases with the size of the prey. (b) Handling time increases with prey size. (c) Model predictions of the risk to the prey (*V*), estimated from the encounter frequency (*E*) and the capture efficiency (*S*). The model predicts a preference for c.1.5 mm *Daphnia*. (d) Experimental measurement of preference (from Pastorok 1981).

mechanisms that lower their mortality and thereby increase their fitness. The type of adaptation depends heavily on whether the predator is vertebrate or invertebrate.

Defense mechanisms can be aimed at any of the steps of prey capture (see Section 6.5.1). At the first step, the detectability of the prey can be reduced. For visually orienting predators, the prey benefit by becoming as "invisible" as possible. Benthic animals can hide or take on adaptive coloration, mechanisms not available to plankton. The plankton can, however, become transparent or move into the deep water where they cannot be seen. The predatory cladoceran *Leptodora* is an extreme example of transparency; all visible parts (eye, gut) are greatly reduced. It would be impossible for an animal of this size (10 mm) to survive with planktivorous fish if it were not so transparent.

Lakes with visually orienting predators usually have zooplankton that are transparent and inconspicuous, whereas in temporary ponds that lack fish the zooplankton are highly pigmented. There are several color variations of calanoid copepods (e.g., *Diaptomus leptopus*). They can be pale, bright red, or blue. The red pigment is a carotenoid, and the blue pigment is a carotenoid–protein complex. The pigment protects the copepods against damaging light. Unpigmented copepods die more quickly than pigmented copepods when they are placed in direct sunlight. In nature, unpigmented copepods can avoid such effects by migrating into deep water. The most brightly colored copepods are found in alpine lakes, where solar radiation is especially intense. Given an opportunity, fish feed preferentially on the colored copepods. Coloured copepods are thus relatively rare and found only where there are no fish or where the protection against light outweighs the disadvantages of increased predation mortality (Byron 1982).

Hairston (1981) presents an interesting example. Two nearby lakes in Washington State (USA) differ in their salinity: Soap Lake has a salinity (17%) much higher than Lake Lenore. The copepod *Diaptomus nevadensis* occurs in both lakes. In Soap Lake it is bright red, but in Lake Lenore it is almost colorless. At first glance, one might attribute the color

difference to differences in an abiotic factor (salinity). The actual reason for the difference is the presence of salamander larvae that hunt copepods visually in Lake Lenore. The high salinity in Soap Lake excludes the salamander larvae and indirectly allows the copepods to form protective pigments. There is now experimental evidence (Hansson 2004) that copepods can regulate the level of coloration in response to alternative threats. They produce pigments against dangerous UV radiation (see Section 8.7.2), but they become much brighter in the absence than in the presence of fish.

Invertebrate predators detect their prey by mechanoreceptors. Prey that produce little turbulence are more difficult to detect. Small cladocerans *Bosmina* and *Chydorus* take advantage of this fact when they are pursued by predatory copepods *Cyclops* by tucking their antennae into the carapace opening and "playing dead." This allows them to sink slowly, producing little turbulence. Time-lapse photography shows that a *Cyclops* has great difficulty finding a *Bosmina* that is "playing dead" (Kerfoot 1978).

Filter-feeding animals produce considerable turbulence, especially when feeding. This creates an optimization problem. Greater filtering activity means greater food intake, but also increases the likelihood of being detected by an invertebrate predator. This appears to be why herbivorous copepods reduce their filter-feeding activity when predatory copepods are present. Filter-feeding copepods probably likewise recognize their predators by turbulence, and possibly chemical communication (Folt and Goldman 1981).

Once detected, the prey may still survive by escaping. There are various ways of solving the problem of escape, such as fleeing before contact has been made or preventing successful handling by the predator (see Fig. 6.22). Interference with handling is very effective against invertebrate predators. This can be achieved by simply increasing body size or by interfering structures, such as spines or armor. The soft-bodied rotifer *Conochilus unicornis* forms colonies made up of many animals that are attached at the base to form a gelatinous ball and thus are much larger than a single animal. The cladoceran *Holopedium gibberum* employs a similar mechanism by encasing itself in a thick gelatinous mantle that effectively increases its volume many times, leaving only a narrow opening for the carapace and antennae. *Chaoborus* larvae that attack a *Holopedium* will be unsuccessful, even if the animal would be an ideal-sized prey without its gelatinous covering (Stenson 1987).

The gelatinous mantle of *Holopedium* is an excellent example of the new type of thinking established in ecology that emphasizes evolutionary concepts and biological interactions. The classical interpretation of the "meaning" of the gelatinous covering was that it reduced excess weight to prevent sinking. Actually, the gelatin does have a specific density of almost 1.0, which reduces the excess weight of the entire animal (see Section 4.2.6). To test the hypothesis, the thickness and sinking speed of animals with and without the gelatinous covering were measured. Narcotized animals without gelatin sank at a speed of $0.31\,cm\,s^{-1}$ at a density of 1.014, whereas animals with gelatin sank at $0.22\,cm\,s^{-1}$, since their density was only 1.0015. By considering only the abiotic effects, one could only conclude that the advantage of the gelatin was that the animal would require less energy to stay suspended in the water. However, this ignored the energetic costs of producing the gelatin and its disadvantages to swimming and filter-feeding, which raises the question of whether there really would be a net energetic advantage. In recent years there has been an emphasis on the interactions of the individual with its biotic environment. It was only after the mechanisms of prey selection and the importance of invertebrate predators on zooplankton became known that a more convincing interpretation of the gelatinous covering as a defense against predators was developed.

Unlike zooplankton, benthic organisms can hide or be cryptic. Their color often matches the bottom, or they may use material from the bottom to build cases. Damselfly larvae actively hide behind leaves or stems of aquatic plants on the opposite side from their enemies. Many stream organisms stay under rocks during the day and only come to the upper side at night to graze on the algae that grow there. This behavior protects them from visual predators such as fish. Avoidance of visually hunting predators thus causes a diel cycle of activity that is, for example, also reflected in the organismic drift

(see Section 4.2.5). Flecker (1992) showed that the timing of the drift has been selected for by fish. Insect larvae in the Andes showed diel drift cycles in streams inhabited by fish, but the cycle was absent in fish-free streams. The diel cycle (response to light) was genetically fixed, as it persisted when fish were experimentally excluded. A similar genetically fixed antipredator response was found in mayfly nymphs in New Zealand. Introduced brown trout *Salmo trutta* have eliminated endemic fish species (e.g., *Galaxias*) from many streams in New Zealand. Trout and *Galaxias* differ in their feeding behavior; trout are visual hunters that prominently feed on drifting insects, whereas *Galaxias* are active at night. Although the trout have only recently been introduced, mayflies in trout streams show their greatest activity and drifting at night, which is an advantage in the presence of visual hunters. When confronted with *Galaxias* or no fish in experimental channels they maintained this pattern, which is a disadvantage. In contrast, if mayflies from fish-free streams or streams with *Galaxias* were confronted with trout they showed no nocturnal drift maximum in the absence of fish. These mayflies were more likely to leave food patches at night when the nocturnal predator *Galaxias* was present (McIntosh and Townsend 1994). There is evidence that mayflies from streams with native salmonids in other parts of the world had sufficient time to evolve more flexible predator-avoidance strategies. They can change their diel activity cycle in response to the presence or absence of the predator. This is the most profitable strategy, since nocturnal activity is no advantage in the absence of visual predators and causes reduced growth due to a restricted time available for feeding (Peckarsky *et al*. 1993). The insects may detect the presence of fish predators by a chemical cue (Cowan and Peckarsky 1994) (see Section 6.5.5).

Benthic invertebrates that live in soft substrates can burrow into the sediments. For example, when they are small, chironomid larvae *Stictochironomus* forage near the sediment surface in lakes, but as they get larger they burrow deeper. During the fourth larval instar, they live >2 cm deep in the sediments, where they are out of reach of bottom-feeding bream (Van de Bund and Groenendijk 1994).

Some aquatic beetles, water bugs, and mites also use chemical defenses; they either have poison glands or are distasteful. Fish quickly learn to avoid these organisms (Kerfoot 1982).

Other defense mechanisms must be used against invertebrate predators in the benthos, since they orient by either mechanoreception or chemoreception. Small organisms may retreat into the interstitial spaces in the sand where the larger predators cannot follow. Also, cases such as those used by caddisflies protect against biting predators. Mainly, however, there are adaptations that assist the prey in a timely escape from the predator.

Mayfly larvae recognize predatory stonefly larvae by mechanical detection, just as they are also recognized by the stoneflies. They escape by running away, or by releasing themselves into the current to drift downstream. The fact that stonefly larvae selectively eat certain mayflies is not because they prefer them, but rather because of the differing abilities of mayflies to escape (Peckarsky and Penton 1989). The effects of invertebrate predators in streams may be caused by different mechanisms. For example, Lancaster (1990) showed that the presence of predatory stonefly nymphs *Doroneuria* reduced the abundance of both chironomid larvae and mayfly larvae *Baetis*. Reductions in the density of chironomids were attributed to being eaten by the stoneflies, but *Baetis* numbers decreased due to predator-induced increases in their drift rate.

Snails may even leave the water when attacked by a leech (Brönmark and Malmqvist 1986). This, of course, is only a short-term solution, as eventually the snail would dry out or fall prey to other predators, such as birds.

Such specialized behavior is especially well suited to avoid predators, since it need only be employed when predators are actually present. One must assume that there are costs associated with the avoidance of predators (e.g., the prey has less time to spend searching for food). The costs of predator avoidance will be mentioned in several of the subsequent chapters. It has frequently been demonstrated that organisms foraging under predation risk suffer sublethal consequences of restricted time budgets, suboptimal habitats, and excess energy allocated to defenses. The avoidance of predatory stonefly nymphs, for example, results in lower growth and fecundity in mayflies *Baetis*, similar to those caused by food shortage (Peckarsky *et al*. 1993).

There are a number of other phenomena described elsewhere that can be considered predator avoidance strategies, for example, swarming/schooling behavior (see Section 5.5), vertical migration (see Section 6.8.4), and habitat shifts (see Section 6.5.3).

Chemical induction

It has been established that numerous defense mechanisms are induced chemically (Larsson and Dodson 1993). Prey organisms are capable of detecting the presence of a predator by means of chemical substances, released either directly by the predator or by injured prey. The prey may respond by changing its behavior, developing morphological defense structures, or adjusting their life history. The diffusion of chemicals in the water allows the prey to detect the predator before they encounter one another. This is an especially effective means of permitting the employment of defenses only when they are needed. The mechanism is particularly effective, but there are costs and limits (DeWitt *et al*. 1998).

It has long been known that the skin of injured minnows releases an *alarm substance* that causes other members of the same species to flee in panic (Von Frisch 1941). In this example the prey release a chemical signal that is detected by other prey. Alarm signals have been particularly well studied in fish (Smith 1992), but they may also play a role for other organisms.

Chemical signals called *kairomones* are released by predators and detected by the prey. The discrimination between the two types of signals is easy. If an alarm substance is involved, the prey will react to the injuries of a conspecific in the absence of the predator. If the signal is a kairomone, the prey will react not to the conspecific's injuries, but rather to the smell of the predator. Many examples have been found where the prey respond to a chemical signal from a predator ("smell") with a morphological change or a specific behavior (Brönmark and Hansson 2000). For example, crucian carp *Carassius carassius* change their body shape in the presence of northern pike *Esox lucius*: They develop a larger ratio of body height to body length. Pike are limited by their mouth gape and are thus less successful feeding on prey that have a high profile compared to slender fish of the same length. This induced change in body shape therefore protects the crucian carp from this specific predator. The change in the pattern of growth is induced not by an alarm substance from injured crucian carp, but by a chemical released from the pike (Brönmark and Pettersson 1994).

Within the zooplankton, the rotifers and cladocerans exhibit the most phenotypic variation in the presence of specific predators. The best-known example is the induction of spines by the herbivorous rotifers *Brachionus calyciflorus* and *Keratella testudo* by the predatory rotifer *Asplanchna*. *Brachionus calyciflorus* appears in two different forms, with and without long, extendible caudal spines (Fig. 6.28a). *Keratella* also can either have long spines or a rounded base (Fig. 6.28b). There are also intermediate forms.

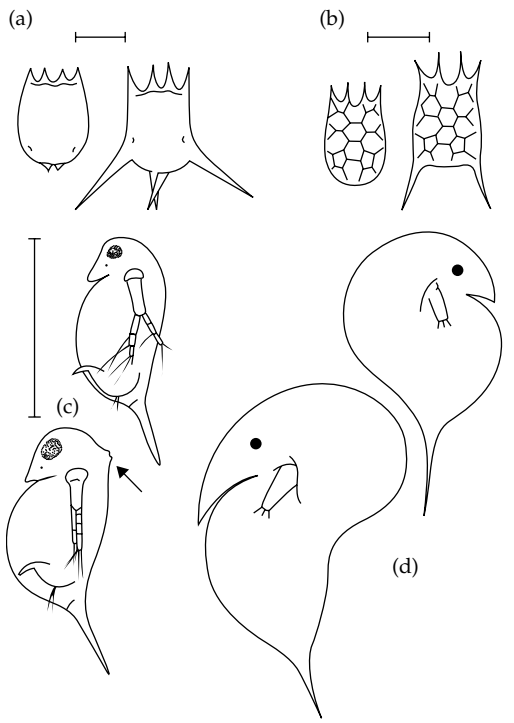


Figure 6.28 Chemical induction of defense mechanisms in zooplankton. The morphs produced in the presence and absence of predators are placed next to one another. (a) Induction of moveable spines in the rotifer *Brachionus calyciflorus* by the predator rotifer *Asplanchna*; scale, 100 μm (after Halbach 1969). (b) Induction of stiff spines in the rotifer *Keratella testudo* by *Asplanchna*; scale = 100 μm (from Stemberger 1988). (c) Induction of neckteeth in *Daphnia pulex* by *Chaoborus* larvae; scale = 1 mm (from Havel and Dodson 1984). (d) Induction of a helmet in *Daphnia carinata* by the backswimmer *Anisops*; size of *Daphnia* c.5 mm (after Grant and Bayly 1981).

When *Brachionus calyciflorus* are cultured in water that contains no predators, they have no spines. However, if the large, saccate rotifer *Asplanchna* is introduced into the culture, the first offspring will have long spines. This also works when the *Brachionus* come in contact only with the water in which the *Asplanchna* were living; the spine formation must therefore be caused by substance dissolved in the water (Gilbert 1966).

The defensive value of the spines becomes apparent when *Asplanchna* are fed with spined and unspined *Brachionus*. *Asplanchna* has no difficulty eating the *Brachionus* without spines, but when it attacks a spined *Brachionus*, the prey extends the spines so wide that *Asplanchna* can no longer swallow it, and must release it. Halbach (1969) designed experiments to examine the importance of spines in the interaction between two rotifers, *Brachionus rubens*—which cannot form spines—and *Brachionus calyciflorus* (Fig. 6.29). Both species show typical population fluctuations when cultured individually on a limited supply of the alga *Monoraphidium* (see Section 5.2.4). When mixed populations of both species competed for the algae, *Brachionus rubens* won. The situation changed when *Asplanchna* were added. At first the predator could eat both rotifer species, but *B. calyciflorus* quickly began to form spines that protected it against the predator. The unprotected *B. rubens* then died out entirely. The spine defense was so effective that after the *B. rubens*

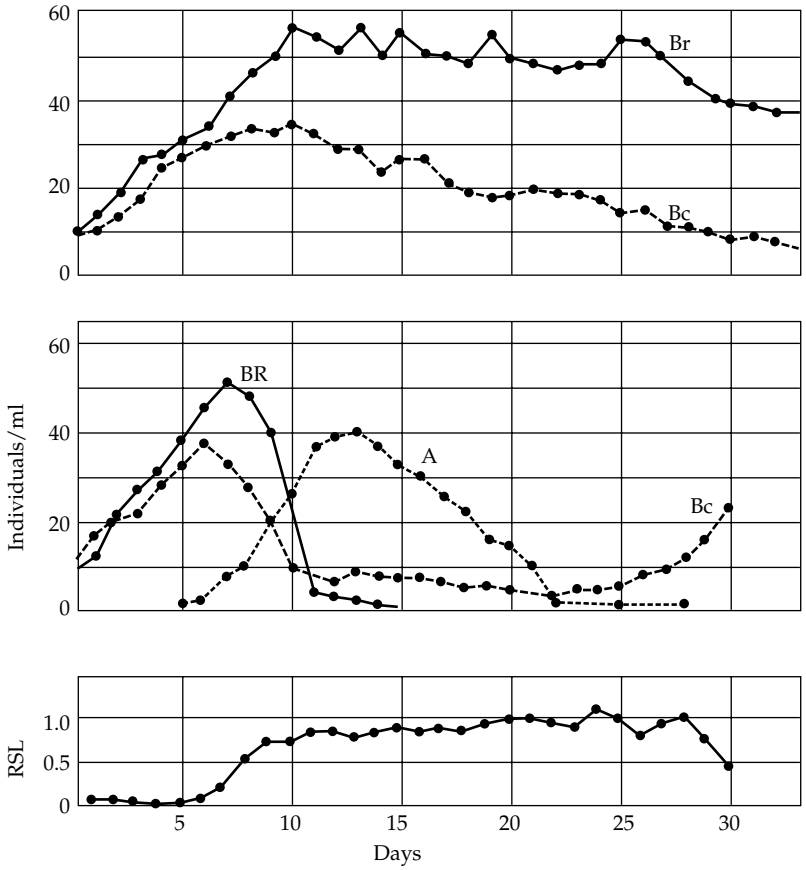


Figure 6.29 The effect of predators and defense on the competitive relationships between the rotifers *Brachionus rubens* (Br) and *Brachionus calyciflorus* (Bc). *Top:* Competition experiment without predators. *Middle:* Addition of the predator rotifer *Asplanchna* (A) on day 5. *Bottom:* Induction of spines in *B. calyciflorus*. The relative spine length (RSL) is the ratio of the length of the caudal spine (see Figure 6.28a) to the length of the lorica (shell) (redrawn from Halbach 1969).

had disappeared, the predator starved. Then *B. calyciflorus*, the final winner, once again lost its spines.

Daphnia respond to the presence of the phantom midge larvae *Chaoborus*, with morphological changes. Some species (*Daphnia pulex, D. hyalina, D. ambigua*) form small jagged protrusions (*neckteeth*) on the dorsal side of the head (see Fig. 6.28c). Many studies have demonstrated that these neckteeth are chemically induced. Various clones of *D. pulex* have different sensitivity. Some clones respond to a very dilute *Chaoborus* factor, whereas others show no reaction (Spitze 1992). *Daphnia* with neckteeth have a better chance of escaping attacks by *Chaoborus* larvae (Havel and Dodson 1984). Thus they suffer less mortality, although it is not clear yet whether the neckteeth themselves provide protection or whether they are simply the visible part of some other protective mechanism. Figure 6.30 illustrates that the expression of neckteeth is correlated with the risk of predation. The second instar produces the most pronounced neckteeth in this clone of *Daphnia pulex*. *Daphnia* lacking the neckteeth also suffer the highest predation risk at this intermediate size (see Fig. 6.27). The induction of neckteeth leads to the greatest reduction in predation risk in this instar and thus equalizes the risk for all size classes.

As neckteeth are produced only when the predator is present, we can expect costs to be associated with the protection. These seem to be demographic costs. They have a smaller population growth rate because of a slight shift in the time of first reproduction (see Section 5.4). But other costs may be involved, as there are multiple responses to the predator kairomone in the field, e.g., changes in habitat selection. Boeing *et al*. (2005) estimated the costs and benefits of being defended for *Daphnia pulex* in field enclosures. They compared the population growth rate (r) of two clones of *D. pulex* in deep (7.5 m) enclosures in treatments without predators, with free-ranging *Chaoborus*, and with *Chaoborus* kairomone. One clone was "responsive" (i.e., it produced neckteeth), the other one did not respond. The cost of defense (in the absence of real predators) was estimated to be a 32% reduction of r, while the benefit (in the presence of predators) was a short-term increase in growth of 68%.

The *Chaoborus* factor evokes a variety of responses in different zooplankton. It induces the high helmets

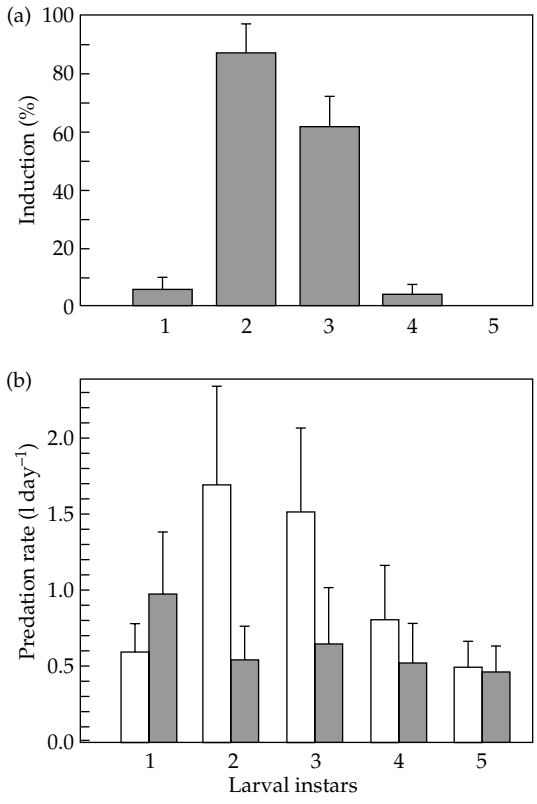


Figure 6.30 Induction of neckteeth by a *Chaoborus* kairomone in a clone of *Daphnia pulex* and protective capacity. *Top:* Index of induction in different instars. Most pronounced neckteeth are found in instar 2 (about 1 mm body length). *Bottom:* Predation rate of *Chaoborus* on different instars. The predation rate is the volume of water cleared by one *Chaoborus* larva per day; thus it measures the probability of a *Daphnia* being killed. Shaded bars are animals bearing neckteeth. The second instar is most endangered when unprotected, but also exhibits the highest degree of protection after induction of defensive structures (after Tollrian 1995).

of *Daphnia cucullata* (Fig. 6.31) (Tollrian 1990). These helmets are also modified by other factors (see Section 6.8.3). *Holopedium gibberum* increases the size of its protective gelatinous sheath in response to *Chaoborus* without physical contact (Stenson 1987). *Daphnia* can also respond to *Chaoborus* by shifting its life-history parameters (Stibor and Lüning 1994). Backswimmers (notonectids) induce a spectacular crest formation in the Australian *Daphnia carinata* (Grant and Bayly 1981). These relatively large (>5 mm) *Daphnia* live in fish-free ponds. They develop gigantic crests on their heads in the presence

Figure 6.31 Cyclomorphosis in *Daphnia cuccullata*; round-headed (April) and helmeted (July) animals. Note that although the size of *Daphnia* increases, the visible part of the body does not change (photograph R. Tollrian).

of the backswimmer *Anisops* (see Fig. 6.28d). The predators attack *Daphnia* with and without helmets with the same frequency. However, only half as many animals with helmets that are attacked die, compared to the normal animals. The costs of defense have two components. First, the crest requires material for its initial construction and for every molt thereafter. Over the daphniid's lifetime this is equivalent to forming 60 eggs. Second, the *Daphnia* become larger, resulting in a changed pattern of energy allocation to somatic growth and reproduction, and lower reproductive output (Barry 1994).

Zooplankton also respond to fish kairomones. For example, *Daphnia lumholtzi* grows an enormously long helmet and tail spine (Tollrian 1994). Various *Daphnia* species change their life histories (Stibor 1992). A chemical stimulus also provides the motivation for diel vertical migration (see Section 6.8.4).

Mollusks and tadpoles provide well-known examples of response to predator kairomones in benthic animals. Freshwater pulmonate snails exposed to kairomones from fish or crayfish or crushed conspecifics (alarm substance) increase the thickness of their shells, i.e., crush resistance, or modify their behavior (Crowl and Covich 1990). Building a stronger shell requires calcium, hence this trait is calcium limited and cannot be used in very soft water (Rundle *et al*. 2004). Morphological and behavioral traits can compensate each other. Rundle and Brönmark (2001) exposed five snail species with different shell strength to fish kairomones. In response, thin-shelled species (e.g., *Lymnea stagnalis*) moved out of the water or to the water line. Thicker-shelled species (e.g., *Anisus vortex*) moved under cover, and the species with the greatest crushing resistance (*Planorbis planorbis*) showed very little response at all. This behavior was evidently related to the crushing resistance of the shell, as juvenile individuals of thick-shelled species that still had a weaker shell behaved like thin-shelled species.

Depending on the habitat conditions, predators can elicit different prey responses, and cause indirect ecosystem effects (Turner *et al*. 2000). The freshwater snail *Physella gyrina* moved under cover when confronted with fish kairomone in lake littoral enclosures. This behavior is effective against fish that are visual hunters. However, it would not help against crayfish that use chemical cues for prey detection and can themselves crawl under the cover. Consequently, *Physella*'s response to crayfish kairomone was to avoid the cover and move to the water surface. Although no prey mortality was involved, the differing habitat use modified grazing of the periphyton by the snails. In the presence of fish, periphyton biomass in the covered habitat was reduced to 8% of the fish-free treatment. On the contrary, crayfish had no significant indirect effect

on cover periphyton, but periphyton biomass in near-surface habitats was reduced to 39%. The combined effect of fish and crayfish were intermediate. Without knowing about the predator–snail–periphyton interactions, one might have attributed the periphyton distribution solely to light conditions.

Behavioral responses of frog tadpoles *Rana temporaria* to predator kairomones are also very predator specific (Van Buskirk 2001). Small tadpoles used refuge in the presence of backswimmers *Notonecta*, reacted less to dragonfly larvae, and showed no response to newts, whereas large tadpoles responded strongest to dragonfly larvae. All predators cause a decline in the feeding and swimming activity of tadpoles. Tadpoles of *Rana pirica* showed predator-specific morphological responses (Kishida and Nishimura 2006). They increased body depth and tail depth against larval salamanders, but only tail depth against dragonfly larvae. This response was flexible. If predator signals were removed, the tadpoles changed back to the nondefending type, which suggests the defense is costly. Tadpoles with predator-adapted morphology changed to the appropriate type when the predators were exchanged.

Inducible defenses have been reported not only for metazoans, but also for protozoans and algae. The ciliate *Euplotes* recognizes the presence of its predator, another ciliate *Lembadion* by a chemical cue. In response, it changes to the "winged" morph with dorsal and lateral extensions (Fig. 6.32) that make it less accessible to the predator (Kuhlmann and Heckmann 1985). Green algae (*Scenedesmus*) change their growth form from single cells to colonies of 4 or 8 cells in the presence of a chemical released by *Daphnia* (Hessen and Van Donk 1993). Colonies are better protected against grazing by *Daphnia*, but also sink faster because of their larger size (Van Donk *et al*. 1999). Such defenses have been discovered in various phytoplankton, but especially in green algae. Herbivore–algae systems have become model systems for experimental and theoretical studies of the ecological consequences of inducible defenses (Verschoor *et al*. 2004).

As to be expected in an arms race, it has recently been discovered that phenotypic plasticity in predator–prey interactions can be reciprocal. For example, the predatory ciliate *Lembadion* get bigger and has a larger gape when its prey ciliate *Euplotes* develops defensive "wings". It can then better eat the defended prey. The counteraction reduces the effect of the defense, but does not neutralize it completely. Such a response is called an *induced offence* (Kopp and Tollrian 2003). Another arms race-like plastic response has been identified in *Rana pirica* tadpoles (Kishida *et al*. 2006). Larvae of the salamander *Hydrobius retardus* occur in a nonpredaceous phenotype. A predaceous salamander phenotype is induced

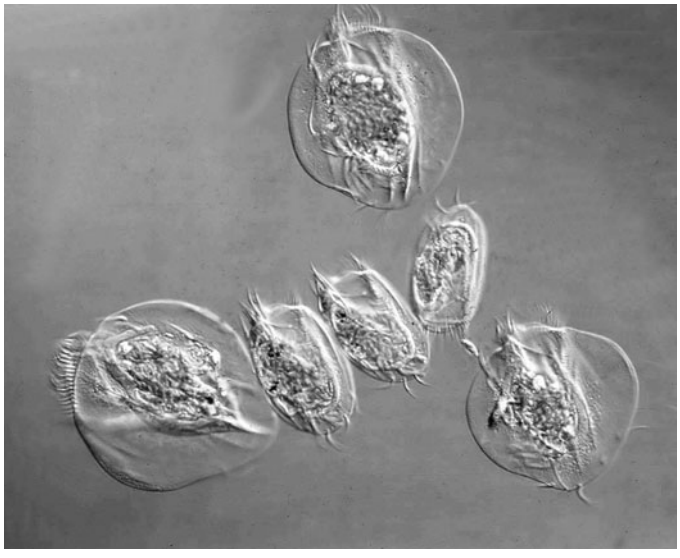


Figure 6.32 Induced defenses in the hypotrich ciliate *Euplotes octocarinatus* (three typical specimens in the center). The prey ciliates grow lateral "wings" in the (chemical) presence of the predatory ciliate *Lembadion bullinum* (outside), which makes them difficult for the predator to eat (photograph J. Kusch).

by the presence of tadpoles. In response to the predaceous salamander larvae, however, the tadpoles change to the defended morphological phenotype (increased body and tail depth).

Some insects can use chemical cues to decide where they deposit their eggs and can avoid laying eggs into water bodies that contain predators. For example, Berendonk (1999) reported that phantom midge *Chaoborus* sitting on the water surface can detect fish kairomones with receptors on their legs. Of the three *Chaoborus* species tested, two large species with larvae that cannot coexist with fish avoided depositing their eggs on water with fish kairomone. The third one, a smaller species that can coexist with fish in lakes, did not discriminate between treatments. Such avoidance of egg-laying in aquatic habitats with predator threat has recently been shown in various groups with larvae dwelling in fresh water, including mosquitoes, water beetles, and frogs (references in Brodin *et al*. 2006).

Kairomones are chemical signals that are of advantage to the prey, but not to the predator. Little is known about their chemical composition, although different classes of chemicals appear to be involved. The *Asplanchna* factor may be a peptide (Gilbert 1967). The factor released by *Lembadion* (L-factor) is a protein with a mass of about 40 kDa located at the cell surface (Kusch and Heckmann 1992). The fish factor that induces vertical migration in *Daphnia* (Loose *et al*. 1993) and the *Chaoborus* kairomone that induces neckteeth (Tollrian and Von Elert 1994) are both small (<500 Da), moderately lipophilic, nonvolatile substances. Although more information has been gathered on features of the migration-inducing fish factor (Von Elert and Ponert 2000), its exact chemical nature is still unknown. Unlike volatile substances that are important infochemicals in terrestrial systems, water-soluble substances are more difficult to identify, and reliable biotests for the activity of isolated compounds are sometimes difficult to develop. There has been more success with the chemical identification of algal colony-inducing factors than with other kairomones. Recently, Yasumoto *et al*. (2005) identified six aliphatic sulfates released by *Daphnia pulex* that induce colonies in *Scenedesmus*. Most of these studies are laboratory experiments. In order to fully understand the role of chemical signals in predator–prey interactions in the natural environment, we need to know the chemical nature of the kairomones. A lot of collaborative work by natural product chemists and ecologists is still needed.

6.5.6 Effects on the spectrum of prey

Predator–prey relationships are generally very strong interactions and are thus important in regulating the composition of communities. The differential effect of invertebrate and vertebrate predators on populations can be demonstrated especially well with plankton communities (Fig. 6.33). It applies similarly to benthic communities. Relatively large invertebrate predators can develop large populations in a lake without vertebrate predators (Fig. 6.33A), such as a lake that regularly becomes anoxic under the ice, causing winter fish kills. They cause high mortality of the small zooplankton, but not the large zooplankton. This causes the size spectrum to shift to large plankton. If the lake has a large population of planktivorous fish (Fig. 6.33C), as most eutrophic lakes do, these fish eat the large invertebrate predators as well as the large filter-feeding zooplankton. This reduces the mortality rates in the small zooplankton, and the size spectrum of the zooplankton community shifts toward the small species. If there are enough predatory fish to control the planktivorous fish (Fig. 6.33B), populations of invertebrate predators can also develop. This causes predatory mortality at both ends of the size spectrum, giving the intermediate-sized zooplankton the best chance of survival. This condition has been verified so frequently in the field that it can be regarded as a general rule. One can make predictions about the ratio of piscivorous to planktivorous fish in a lake by measuring the body size of the summer zooplankton (Mills and Breen1987).

There is an interesting parallel in microbial food webs (see Section 7.3.1) concerning size structure and predation. Bacteria can have very different sizes and shapes; small individual bacteria may measure <0.5 μm, but they may also form long (>20 μm) filaments. Heterotrophic nanoflagellates (HNF) are the primary predators in a microbial food web. They select small particles, analogous to the invertebrate predators in Fig. 6.33. The result is a shift to large filamentous bacteria and bacterial aggregates. *Daphnia*

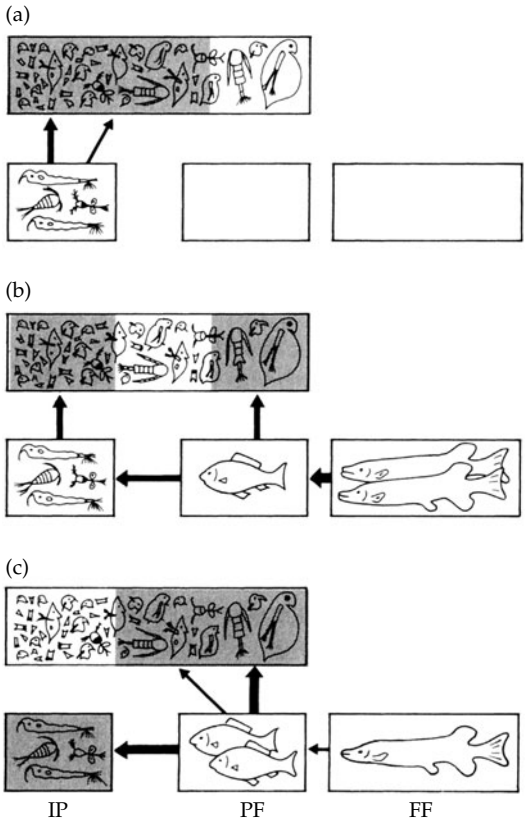


Figure 6.33 The different effects of invertebrate and vertebrate predators on the size composition of the zooplankton. (a) No planktivorous fish → large zooplankton; (b) large population of predatory fish → few planktivorous fish → medium-sized plankton; (c) few predatory fish → many planktivores → small zooplankton (from Lampert 1987c).

in this system are analogs of the planktivorous fish in Fig. 6.33. They feed on HNF and large bacteria. The result is a shift to small, individual bacteria. Size-structured interactions affect the entire ecosystem (Persson and De Roos 2006) and are therefore also discussed in later chapters.

6.6 Parasitism

6.6.1 General features

Parasitism is a predator–prey relationship in which the "predator" (parasite) is considerably smaller than its prey ("host") and lives in close association with it. Parasites that live within the host are referred to as *endoparasites*, and those living on the outside of the host are called *ectoparasites*. Most parasites are more highly specialized for certain hosts than predators that eat their entire prey. Parasitic microorganisms are referred to as *disease vectors*.

Populations of parasites can grow inside or on the outside of the body of the host (e.g., viruses, bacteria) or they may be involved in an *alternation of hosts* (e.g., tapeworms). Most parasites can only live as long as they receive nutrition from their living host. If an especially virulent parasite rapidly kills its host, its population can only survive if it is able to infect another host population. This leads to a selection for decreased virulence in parasites that are not highly mobile. The simultaneous selection within the host population for decreased sensitivity to the parasite leads to a coevolution between host and parasite that results in a minimization of damage to the host. The many "gentle" parasites (e.g., roundworms, tapeworms, lice) are a result of this coevolution. Parasitism always must cause a reduction in the growth of the body or population, since even the most gentle parasite uses energy and matter from its host. Every type of parasitism requires a direct or indirect (through intermediate hosts) infection of new hosts. Many textbooks assume that the frequency of parasitism increases with the host density, since the probability of parasite transmission increases with the population density of the host. However, there are few documented cases to support this assumption.

There are many well-known cases of parasitism in aquatic habitats, from bacteriophages, viruses that infect cyanobacteria, and algae to worms that parasitize fish. Some of the best-studied examples involve the regional extinction of economically important species by parasites; for example, the widespread eradication of the European crayfish *Astacus astacus* by the fungus *Aphanomyces astaci* ("crayfish plague"). Many parasites of land animals have a stage that passes through water, such as the cercarial larvae of trematodes, which require an aquatic snail as an intermediate host.

The parasites of fish are especially well known because of their commercial value. Some parasitic copepods live on the gills of fish. The "carp louse" *Argulus foliaceus*, a crustacean, and the fish leech *Piscicola geometra* are often found on the skin of

fishes. The glochidia larvae of pond mussels (Anodontidae) live on the margin of the fins of fish or on the gills. Many endoparasites, including roundworms, tapeworms, and acanthocephalans, live inside the body of fish. Fish also serve as intermediate hosts for many parasites with complicated life cycles. One example is the fish tapeworm *Diphyllobothrium latum*, which lives in the intestines of mammals, including humans. When eggs contained in feces come into contact with water, they hatch into ciliated larvae (coracidia). These larvae swim in the plankton and are eaten by their first intermediate host, a copepod, in which they develop into a procercoid stage. Infected copepods are often brownish-red in color, which makes them highly visible. After an infected copepod has been eaten by a small fish, the procercoid bores through the intestinal wall and develops into a larger plerocercoid in the liver or muscle tissue. Eventually, the fish is eaten by the final host, a bird or mammal, where the parasite forms a mature tapeworm in the intestine.

It is not always clear if a "parasite" really harms the host. Cladocerans and copepods are often infested by epibiont diatoms or peritrich ciliates (Threlkeld *et al*. 1993), but their effect on the zooplankton is difficult to measure. Even an endoparasitic trematode living inside *Daphnia* has no effect on the daphniid's fecundity as long as there are no more than two worms per female daphniid (Schwartz and Cameron 1993). Often the relationship may be better described as commensalism, when the "parasite" lives on the host but does not feed on it. For example, the oligochaete *Chaetogaster limnaei* lives in the shell of the stream snail *Ancylus fluviatilis* (see Fig. 4.10). There may be 10–15 worms on a 5 mm snail. Just like the snail, these worms eat algae, and they do not appear to harm their host (Streit 1977). Some such "guests" may be highly specialized. Chironomid larvae that live on dragonfly larvae prefer to live in a very special place under the wing pads. Conceivably, chironomid species may even compete for the best locations on the dragonfly (Dudgeon 1989).

In the best-known cases of parasite–host relationships, the investigations have been limited to identifying the parasite and its life cycle and the pathology of the host. There are few examples where the effects of the parasite on the population dynamics of the host have been studied. However, there are examples of aquatic parasite–host interactions that serve as general models for evolutionary questions in parasitism. The following sections provide further details of these.

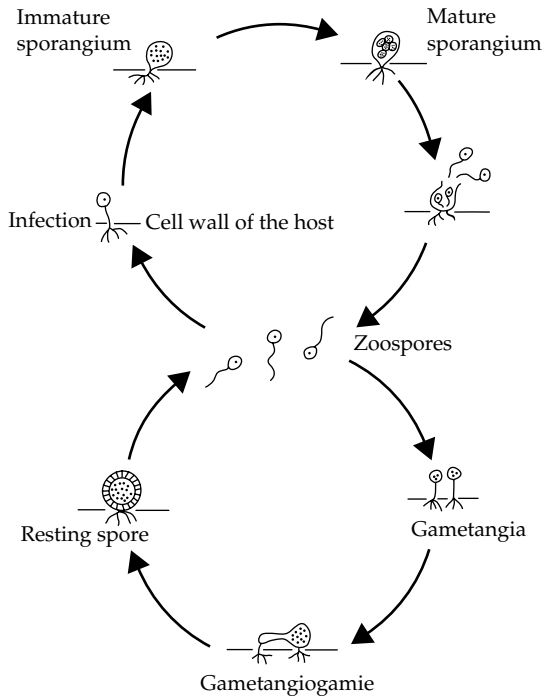


Figure 6.34 Life cycle of a parasitic chytridiomycete (after van Donk 1989).

6.6.2 Example: fungal parasitism on phytoplankton

The parasitism of planktonic algae by lower fungi is an example of a lethal parasitism that can lead to the rapid decimation of the host population; almost every infected cell is killed. The parasites produce large numbers of swarming spores that apparently are so mobile that there has been no selection for reduced virulence.

One of the best-studied examples is the parasitism of chytridiomycetes on phytoplankton (for a review see Ibelings *et al*. 2004). These parasitic chytridiomycetes have a generational switch between asexual and sexual reproduction (Fig. 6.34) that

does not appear to be tied to a change in hosts. Most species attack only one or a few closely related species of algae. The infectious agent is the zoospore, which attaches to the cell wall of the host by its flagellum. After attachment, rhizoids develop and penetrate the host cell, sucking out its contents. The zoospore grows into a sporangium or a gametangium. Resting spores are then produced through gametangiogamy (Van Donk 1989).

If the zoospore finds a new host cell in a negligible amount of time, the gross growth rate of the parasite (μ_p) can be calculated from the number of zoospores per sporangium (N_z) and the development time of the sporangium (D):

$$\mu_p = \ln N_z / D$$

The increase in the proportion of infected cells in the host population (I) can be calculated from the growth rates of the parasite and the host (μ_h):

$$I_2 = I_1 \exp\{(\mu_p - \mu_h)(t_2 - t_2)\}$$

The advancement of the epidemic depends on the difference between μ_p and μ_h. One might conclude that a nutrient-limited host population (lower μ_w) would succumb sooner to a fungus epidemic than a population that is nutrient saturated. It has been shown, however, that in the host–parasite relationship between *Asterionella formosa* and *Rhizophydium planktonicum* the fungus produces fewer zoospores when it infects phosphorus-limited algae (smaller μ_p) (Bruning and Ringelberg 1987). However, the difference between μ_p and μ_h is always positive at all phosphorus levels. That means that the parasite is capable of eradicating any *Asterionella* population, no matter how rapidly it grows. It is only at a temperature of less than 3 °C that *Asterionella* can grow faster than the parasite (Van Donk 1989).

Chytridiomycetes can exert an enormous influence on populations of algae. Within a 2 year observation period in Schöhsee, every population peak of the diatom *Synedra acus* was infected by the chytridiomycete *Zygorhizidium planktonicum* (Holfeld 1998). The infection rate of *Synedra acus* could not be controlled by adding nutrients to plastic bags suspended in the lake (see Fig. 2.1b), but only by adding a fungicide. This demonstrates that the fungus would completely regulate the algal population if it were not controlled. This is not to say, however, that all population maxima of potentially infected algae are actually parasitized. Field populations of *Asterionella formosa* and *Z. planktonicum* show considerable genetic variation. Different strains of *Asterionella* show differences in susceptibility to various strains of *Z. planktonicum*, and parasite strains differed in their ability to infect particular host strains (De Bruin *et al*. 2004). It is theoretically possible that host populations may evolve immune clones, although this has not yet been demonstrated. Parasites do not always decimate host populations that have adequate resources. They may also be controlled by hyperparasites, or grazing by zooplankton may cause higher mortality to the zoospores of parasites than to their host cells (Kagami *et al*. 2004).

6.6.3 Example: Parasites of *Daphnia*

The evolutionary aspects of interactions of *Daphnia* with its parasites have been especially well studied. The recent state of the art is summarized in an e-book (Ebert 2005). *Daphnia* has a large variety of microparasites, most of them bacteria, fungi, and microsporidia that infect the blood, fatty tissue, and gut wall of the host. A typical example is the yeast *Metschnikowia bicuspidata*. Spores of this ascomycete are ingested by *Daphnia*. They penetrate the gut wall of the host and germinate in the hemolymph. The spores are needle-like and rather long (45 μm). After some time, they fill the whole body cavity so that the *Daphnia* looks opaque. When the infection progresses, the fecundity is reduced, and the host *Daphnia* dies after about 2 weeks. Spores are released from the dead *Daphnia*, and they infect new hosts.

There are two principal modes of transmission of the parasite from one host to the next. The pathway described for *M. bicuspidata* is *horizontal transmission*. Spores can either be released from live or dead hosts to the water, or from a spore bank in the sediments. New hosts come into contact with the parasite via the environment. *Vertical transmission*, which is rather rare, is the direct infection of offspring by the mother.

Parasites differ in their degree of host specificity. Moreover, there are genetic differences in

susceptibility to various parasites among host clones (Decaestecker *et al*. 2003). This make the *Daphnia*–parasite model suitable for the study of the arms race between host and parasite. For example, Ebert (1994) showed local adaptation in the virulence of parasites. A microsporidium parasite from ponds near Oxford (UK) was confronted with *Daphnia magna* clones from local ponds and from populations varying in distance from the host location by up to 3000 km. With their local hosts, the parasites were more "aggressive," i.e., they produced more spores, were more effective in transmitting the disease, and more likely to kill the host. This contradicts the common assumption that novel parasites introduced to a population are more virulent than locally adapted ones.

Parasites not only kill the host, they also affect its fecundity. For example, the bacterial parasite *Pasteuria ramosa* castrates its *Daphnia* host completely. It is evident that this must have consequences for the host's population dynamics, hence parasitism would be a third factor controlling zooplankton community structure in addition competition and predation. However, so far experimental studies on population effects have only been performed under laboratory conditions. It is not yet clear whether parasites can control the abundance and composition of *Daphnia* populations under natural conditions where many factors, including parasite prevalence, vary simultaneously (Ebert 2005). However, field studies suggest that parasites have a strong impact on population dynamics, although there can be at best correlational evidence. For example, Decaestecker *et al*. (2005) studied populations of *D. magna* over 2 years. They found 8 endoparasite species and 6 epibionts, growing on the outer surface of *Daphnia*. Several endoparasites, especially *Pasteuria ramosa* and *Flabelliforma magnivora*, caused a severe overall reduction of fecundity and population density of the host. This negative effect was associated with overall endoparasite prevalence.

6.7 Symbiosis

Interactions may be positive for both parties; that is, both participants may benefit. This form of interaction is referred to as *symbiosis* or *mutualism*. Only a slight modification of the Lotka–Volterra competition equations (see Section 6.1.2) is needed to model this type of interaction: The negative interaction coefficients α and β need only be replaced by positive values.

Symbiosis is usually considered to be relatively unimportant in structuring communities in fresh water, although there are numerous cases of *endosymbiosis*, such as endosymbiotic algae (zoochlorella) in sponges, *Hydra*, and ciliates.

Bacterial consortia are important symbiotic relationships of independent bacteria populations in which the metabolic product of one species serves as a resource for another. Examples were discussed earlier, such as the nitrifying consortium *Nitrosomonas* and *Nitrobacter* (see Section 4.3.8).

6.8 Interactions of competition and predation

6.8.1 The size–efficiency hypothesis

Hrbáček (1962) demonstrated that the size of zooplankton in a lake was closely related to the abundance of planktivorous fish. In lakes with many planktivorous fish, the zooplankton were small. In lakes with few or no planktivorous fish, large zooplankton were abundant. This phenomenon first became generally known after Brooks and Dodson (1965) published a similar example. They described the effect of a herring-type fish *Alosa pseudoharengus* on populations of zooplankton by following a "natural experiment," the immigration of *Alosa* into the lakes of Connecticut (USA). Plankton samples had been taken in 1942, before the *Alosa* had entered the lakes. Samples were taken again in 1964, after the fish were established in the lakes. Brooks and Dodson observed that the composition of the zooplankton had shifted dramatically. The large species had disappeared and the small species had become dominant (Fig. 6.35). The dominant zooplankton are listed in Table 6.1.

Tests of the idea in other lakes showed the same effect that was described in Section 6.5.6: When planktivorous fish were abundant, the zooplankton were small; if there were no fish, the zooplankton were large. Brooks and Dodson formulated the *size–efficiency hypothesis* (SEH) to account for this

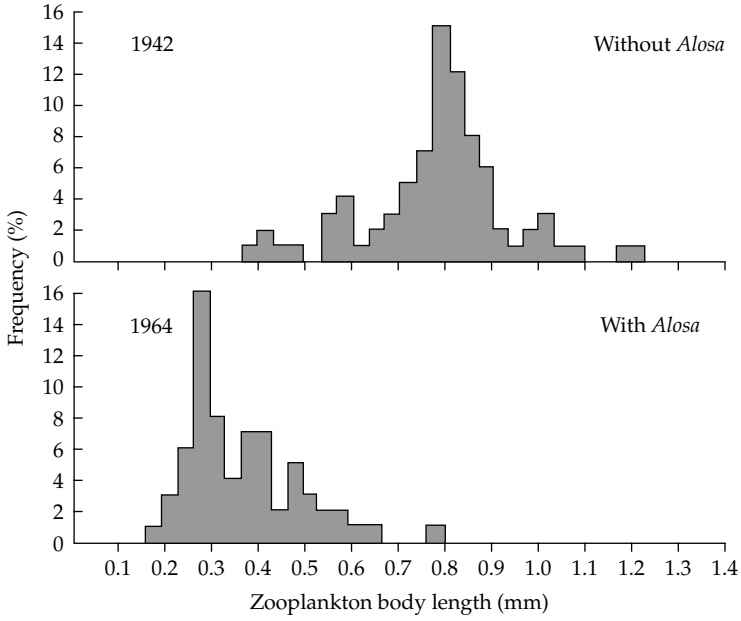


Figure 6.35 Size distribution of zooplankton in a lake in New England (USA) before (above) and after (below) the immigration of a planktivorous fish (*Alosa*) (redrawn after Brooks and Dodson 1965).

Table 6.1 Dominant zooplankton in Connecticut lakes, 1942 and 1964 (Brooks and Dodson 1965)

Year	Species	Body size (mm)	Average body size (mm)
1942	*Mesocyclops*	1.5	
	Daphnia	1.3	
	Epischura	1.7	
	Cyclops	0.9	
	Diaphanosoma	0.8	0.8
1964	*Cyclops*	0.9	
	Ceriodaphnia	0.6	
	Tropocyclops	0.45	
	Asplanchna	0.4	
	Bosmina	0.3	0.35

phenomenon. Because of its simplicity and predictive power, the SEH became a paradigm in aquatic ecology. It was later elaborated in considerable detail by Hall *et al*. (1976):

The composition of the zooplankton is the result of competition and predation:

- Filter-feeding zooplankton compete for small particles.
- Large zooplankton filter more efficiently and also can eat larger particles.
- Therefore, the large zooplankton dominate when there is little predation pressure by fish.
- Under intense predation pressure by fish the small zooplankton dominate because the large zooplankton are eliminated.
- Moderate predation pressure has a greater effect on the large zooplankton, permitting the coexistence of both large and small species.

There is no doubt about the importance of fish in this hypothesis; they are responsible for the elimination of the large zooplankton species. The competition side of the hypothesis is less clear. Why do the large zooplankton suppress the small species in the absence of the fish? If large cladocerans compete with one another in the laboratory, the largest do not always win. Expanding the SEH further, Dodson (1974a) provided the simple explanation that the shift toward the large zooplankton in nature is caused by invertebrate predators (see Fig. 6.33). The large invertebrate predators (e.g., *Epischura*, *Leptodora*) did, in fact, disappear from the Connecticut lakes after the immigration of *Alosa*.

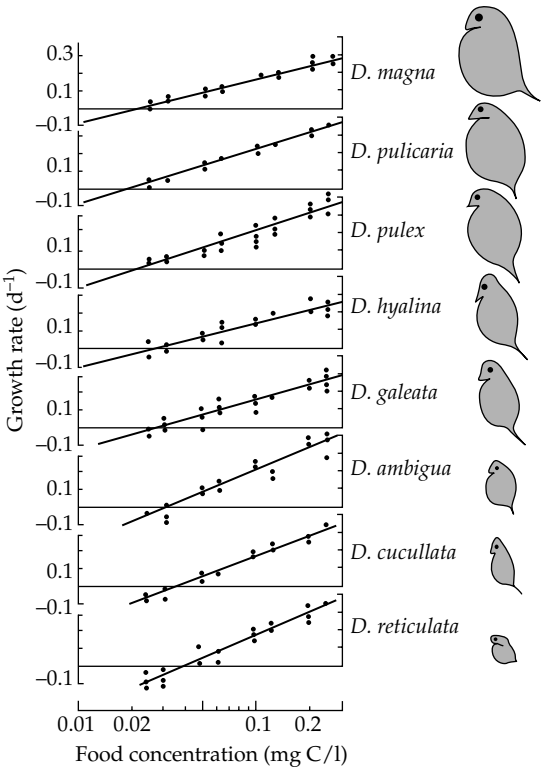


Figure 6.36 Shift in the minimal food concentration for growth (growth rate = zero) as a function of size for eight species of cladocerans (*Daphnia* and *Ceriodaphnia*). The threshold concentration decreases with increasing size of the animals (from Gliwicz 1990a).

It still has not been satisfactorily explained why the large zooplankton are "more efficient." One can argue that the large zooplankton use less energy per unit body weight than the small species (see Section 4.5), but the relationships of respiration and assimilation to body size both have exponents of about 0.75, meaning that energy uptake and consumption increase at the same rate with body size. One can demonstrate experimentally that when there is little food and a negative energy balance, the large zooplankton can survive longer. This would give the large species an advantage when the food fluctuates widely. A comparison of the threshold food concentrations needed for growth provides another argument for the competitive superiority of the larger species (Gliwicz 1990a). Clearly, the larger cladoceran species have a lower threshold concentration than the smaller species (Fig. 6.36) and, in the absence of predators, should be more successful competitors for food (see Section 6.1.3).

Although the size-reducing effect of fish is relatively clear and simple, there probably are many other factors involved in this general trend. Large cladocerans, for example, can outcompete the much smaller rotifers and the cladocerans do have a much lower food threshold for growth than the rotifers. The trend is reversed, however, within the rotifers. The small species are more efficient than the large species (Stemberger and Gilbert 1987). On the other hand, the small rotifers are also mechanically inhibited by large *Daphnia* (see Section 6.2.2), so that it becomes difficult to distinguish between exploitative competition and interference competition (Gilbert 1988). The predictions of the SEH are continually being verified, and they have become the basis for biomanipulation in lakes (see Section 7.3.3).

Lake plankton is particularly well suited to studying the interactions of competition and predation in shaping morphology, life history, and behavior of organisms. Since Hrbáček (1962) and Brooks and Dodson (1965) published their ideas about the size structure of plankton communities, size-structured processes have gained a central role in aquatic ecological theory (De Roos *et al*. 2003). Also, a large amount of empirical data has been accumulated that is summarized in the book by Gliwicz (2003).

6.8.2 Evolution of life-history strategies

Reproduction

The fitness of an individual is the result of its entire life history and cannot be determined at a specific stage in its life (Stearns 1992). This includes the probability of survival to sexual maturity as well as the number of offspring produced (see Section 5.4). An individual is exposed to a wide range of selection pressures during the course of its ontogenetic development. The result of size-selective predation is that the young zooplankton are under predation pressure from invertebrate predators, whereas the larger adults are eaten primarily by fish. Many organisms also change their nutrition as they develop. Many cyclopoid copepods are herbivorous as nauplii and copepodites, but carnivorous as adults; stream insects may graze on algae as larvae

and consume nectar when they leave the water as adults; during their ontogenetic development, fish depend on different kinds of food, mainly as a function of mouth size. Abiotic factors, food limitation, and predation take on differing importance during an individual's life. The relative fitness of an individual can depend on whether it managed to optimize its food intake as a juvenile as well as how well it protected itself against predation as an adult. The manner in which an individual divides its life cycle to achieve maximum fitness depends on the relative importance of the various selective factors. The solution to the problem of how, when, and how often an individual should reproduce must therefore be a compromise. There may be many possible solutions for the same problem. Thus, depending on the environmental conditions and phylogenetic limits, we find for freshwater organisms a host of adaptations related to the time, duration, and type of reproduction.

The shape of the survival curve may depend on whether it is more profitable for an animal to reproduce once in its life and then die (semeparity), or to produce offspring several times (iteroparity). Closely related species may show both strategies. The Pacific salmon *Oncorhynchus* spawns only once, then dies. The young develop first in freshwater and then migrate to the ocean, where they grow and after 3 or 4 years return to the home stream to spawn. The Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* has a similar life cycle, except the adults do not die after spawning; they migrate back to the ocean and may return many times to spawn again. Multiple reproduction can be viewed as a type of insurance against the loss of an entire brood through unfavorable conditions. This also involves compromises. An animal has only so much energy to invest in reproduction. The alternatives are either to put everything out at once or distribute the energy into several broods. If there is a considerable danger that the animal will not survive to breed a second time, the second strategy would not be profitable (e.g., insects).

Opportunistic species that have the highest possible reproductive rate to colonize free space rapidly (see Section 5.6) are favored by rapidly changing conditions. Parthenogenesis is a successful strategy for short-term maximization of the population growth rate, since all offspring are females that can immediately contribute to further reproduction. This is the normal type of reproduction for rotifers and cladocerans. The occasional change to bisexual generations (cyclic parthenogenesis) guarantees maintenance of genetic variability and it is the basis for the production of resting eggs (see Section 5.7).

The other extreme life history can be found in bivalves, which are among the very few long-lived organisms in fresh water. The freshwater pearl mussel *Margaritifera margaritifera* has a lifespan of over 100 years. It grows extremely slowly, living in a nutrient-poor environment (clean streams), but produces about 200 million larvae during a reproductive period of 75 years. Larval mortality is extremely high, as the larvae (glochidia) live parasitically on the gills of fish. The probability of random encounter with a fish is very low (Bauer 1987). Later in life, when the mussels are large, they have a thick shell and almost no enemies. Hence they can reach enormous densities, and the bottom of a suitable stream can be "paved" with mussels. On the other hand, most populations of *Margaritifera* in Europe have become extinct as a result of poor water quality. Although the streams have been cleaned up and the water quality is now suitable again, it is very difficult to re-establish healthy mussel populations because of their extremely slow growth.

Rotifers and cladocerans, as well as some mollusks, are also examples of organisms that have shortened development time and reduced mortality by minimizing the larval stages, which are especially vulnerable to predation. Females carry the eggs until the young hatch. The juvenile stages are very similar to the adults, except they are smaller. This strategy is very common in fresh water, since the function of larvae as a means of dispersal in oceans is not needed in inland waters.

Growth and reproduction

Competition for common resources and predation can compel species to "design" highly specific life histories. Just as the morphology and behavior of a species represent the "tailoring" of evolution, life histories are also the result of selection factors such as competition and predation. The resulting life cycle often acts to minimize the effects of these selective forces, giving the appearance of a "smart" species, such as one that forms a resting stage at

times of the year when there is a high probability of excessive mortality due to predators. It must be emphasized that this does not mean that individuals decide to avoid periods when predators are especially prevalent. What we see is just the result of selection factors being so strong at certain times that populations would not exist without this adaptation.

We have already discussed the differences in life histories of various species (see Section 5.6). The onset of sexual maturity is a significant event in the life of every animal, because it is an important demographic parameter (see Section 5.4) and thus an important focal point for selection. Whether it is better for an individual to reach sexual maturity sooner or later is a question that may be determined by both competition and predation.

The cladocerans provide a useful example. *Daphnia* grows throughout its entire life. It grows more slowly after it is sexually mature, because it invests 80% or more of its production into offspring. A large *Daphnia* produces many more eggs than a small one. Thus there are two alternatives for the onset of sexual maturity (Taylor and Gabriel 1992), if one assumes that there should be a maximization of the population growth rate (r):

- The animals may become sexually mature when relatively small (early); then they can begin producing eggs earlier and thus produce more broods; if they invest most of the available energy into reproduction, the adult grows slowly and thus remains small, so that each of its broods contains relatively few eggs.
- The animals become sexually mature after they are larger. They begin to have broods later and thus have fewer broods, but more eggs per brood.

Calculations from models show that the question of which strategy should be employed depends on whether there is size-dependent mortality (Fig. 6.37A). When there is greater mortality in the larger size classes (fish predation), the largest r comes from animals that begin reproduction as soon as possible. In the absence of size-selective mortality, it is more profitable to wait longer before reproducing. Field observations support this model: There are many reports that the same *Daphnia* species in lakes with many planktivorous fish become sexually mature at a smaller size than in lakes with few fish. In a single lake there can be seasonal changes; in the summer, when fish are especially active, *Daphnia* become sexually mature at a smaller size.

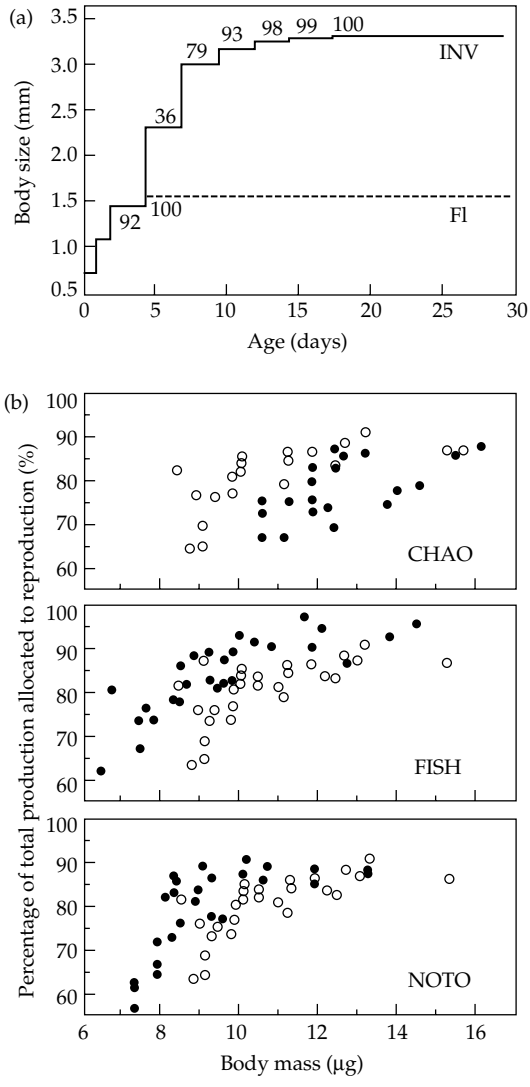


Figure 6.37 Growth strategies of *Daphnia* in the presence of different predators. (a) Results of an optimization model for the best life-history strategy for *Daphnia pulicaria*. The numbers denote the percentage of total production invested into reproduction. In the presence of invertebrate predators (INV), daphniids maximize their population growth when they first invest in somatic growth, mature late, and become large. The best strategy in the presence of fish (FI) is to invest early in reproduction, mature early, and remain small. (b) Response of *Daphnia hyalina* to chemical cues of various predators (CHAO, *Chaoborus* larvae; NOTO, *Notonecta*). Percentage of net production allocated to reproduction at different sizes. Open circles are controls without a chemical cue.

Strong support for the validity of the model comes from the discovery that the life-history shift in a population is not necessarily driven by selection for different genotypes. Even a single clone of *Daphnia hyalina* can adopt different strategies phenotypically in response to a chemical signal (kairomone) from a particular predator (Stibor and Lüning 1994). The proportion of net production invested in reproduction can be measured in *Daphnia* by weighing its body and eggs separately. This investment increases with increasing body size from about 60% to over 80% (Fig. 6.37B). Juvenile *Daphnia* exposed to the "smell" of *Chaoborus* larvae or fish react as predicted by the optimization model. In response to the *Chaoborus* kairomone, the daphniids invest less into reproduction and start reproducing at a larger size than controls without the kairomone. In contrast, the daphniids start reproducing earlier and put more energy into reproduction when the chemical signal comes from fish. Interestingly, the response to chemicals released by backswimmers *Notonecta* is very similar to the reaction to fish, although *Notonecta* is an insect. Unlike *Chaoborus*, however, *Notonecta* is not gape-limited, as it holds its prey and then pierces it with its beak and sucks out its contents. Hence, like other true bugs, *Notonecta* does not select for small prey and in fact prefers larger daphniids. In this respect it behaves like a fish. This example illustrates how the chemical signals must be sufficiently specific to inform the prey about the capture mechanism used by the predator.

Benthic organisms appear to have similar reproductive strategies (Crowl and Covich 1990). The snail *Physella virgata* lives together with the crayfish *Orconectis virlis* in small streams in Oklahoma (USA). The crayfish eats the snails, but it is very selective, since it can only break the shells of the small individuals. Snails in streams with no crayfish become sexually mature after 3.5 months and at a size of 4 mm, and grow very little more. Snails in streams with crayfish must develop for 8 months and grow to 10 mm before they begin reproducing. This effect is elicited by a chemical substance. The snails will also change their life cycle without predators, if they are placed in water that had contained crayfish feeding on snails. These are two examples of organisms that have a broad reaction norm and have the ability to invoke different life history strategies.

Timing strategies

Many organisms occur only at certain times of the year. This is often a direct effect of limiting resources for very small organisms that have high reproductive rates. The development of the spring algal maximum, for example, follows the availability of light. Maxima of protozoans and rotifers then follow the algal maximum. These plankters can grow so rapidly that they can utilize the resources optimally (see Section 8.7.3).

Such transiently appearing organisms are often referred to as spring, summer, or fall forms. These terms may lead to the intuitive conclusion that the seasonal appearance of a species is closely tied to abiotic factors, such as temperature. In fact, we often refer to warm-water and cold-water forms. This can be very misleading. The so-called "summer depression" of *Daphnia* is a good example. *Daphnia galeata* usually has a bimodal population pattern in eutrophic lakes at temperate latitudes, with its highest density in May and a second, smaller peak in September/October. Between these peaks is a summer minimum ("depression") (see Fig. 5.9). It would be incorrect to conclude from this that these *Daphnia* prefers cool temperatures. If you collect *Daphnia* from the lake at 10 °C and test it in the laboratory, it has optimal growth at >20 °C. Its restricted occurrence in the spring and fall in the field is the result of a low food availability and high predation that does not permit population growth in the summer.

Some species of aquatic organisms actually achieve their physiological optimum at low temperatures. The question remains, however, whether there are physiological constraints or whether the organisms have optimized their metabolism in a temperature range that they are forced into by other factors (competition, predation).

Many species have "programmed" life cycles that can be modified very little by environmental conditions. Different populations of the same species can have completely different "programs." The seasonal termination of the life cycle sometimes appears "smart," since the organisms seem to know in advance what the environmental conditions will be like, although of course that is not possible. Stream

insects with a 1 year life cycle will never experience a spring flood in a brook. Nevertheless, they must lay their eggs so that their larvae will not be in a sensitive stage during the next flood. The destructive power of the spring high water is such a strong selective factor that the individuals with an incorrectly programmed life cycle would quickly disappear.

Competition and predation have a similar effect on the temporal allocation of the life cycle. Organisms must be adapted so that their offspring are not born during a period of extremely low food supply or high mortality. This is only possible when such events are somewhat predictable and when there is a "trigger" that occurs at a fixed time in relation to the event. Day length and water temperature are excellent triggers, for both are closely correlated with the seasons.

Many insects that have their larval development in water hatch in a brief period and form swarms. This simplifies the problem of finding a mate, especially in populations with low densities. The swarms may also provide high prey densities that satiate predators (see Section 4.3.2), thereby reducing the predation risk for individuals. The development time of the individuals must be synchronized by some external stimulus. Thus many insect larvae cease their development for a short period and wait for the appropriate time to hatch.

Diapause

Many animals go into a diapause, which is a stage of arrested development and reduced metabolic rate. The eggs in the ephippia of cladocera are such a diapause stage, for the eggs cease development after a few divisions and require a stimulus before they resume development. Diapause stages of copepods are especially common. Some cyclopoid copepods bury themselves in the sediment in the fourth copepodite stage and can rest there for many months. The onset of diapause is controlled by day length. It is still not known what factor(s) regulate the cessation of the diapause. This phenomenon is covered in Section 1.3.

Some species, such as *Cyclops vicinus* and *Cyclops kolensis*, have their diapause in the summer. This is usually interpreted as a strategy for avoidance of predation pressure by fish, which is high in the summer. There is also experimental evidence that the summer diapause apparently also serves to avoid competition. Cyclopoid nauplii are inefficient filter-feeders and require high concentrations of algae to grow and develop. They would be very poor competitors against cladocerans with their highly efficient filtering mechanism. It can be argued that it would be a disadvantage if the nauplii had to develop during a period when cladocerans were in high densities in the lake. If one collects lake sediments during the summer, the resting copepodites of both species can be "awakened" by aerating the water. If, after they become adults and produce nauplius larvae, the larvae are placed in the lake water with its natural algae at times of the year when the animals normally do not appear, the nauplii will starve. There is insufficient food present. The nauplii will develop further, however, if the water is enriched with cultured flagellate algae. Clearly, the nauplii are food-limited in the summer (Santer and Lampert 1995).

The calanoid copepod *Diaptomus sanguineus* produces two types of eggs, subitaneous eggs, which begin to develop immediately, and resting (*dormant*) eggs, which can remain in the sediments for several months before they hatch. In March, all the females in a pond with fish begin to switch from subitaneous to resting eggs, using day length as a cue (Hairston and Olds 1987). This permits the population to disappear from the water column before the fish begin actively feeding. The switching is not directly caused by the fish, for the copepods begin to produce resting eggs at the same time even when they are moved to a pond without fish. There is some individual genetic variation in the precise time that the females begin to switch reproductive modes. Fish maintain the synchrony in the population by eliminating the females that have too great a delay in resting egg production. Hairston examined two ponds, one of which had lost its fish population. Before the fish had died, the females switched at the identical time in both ponds, but once the fish were gone, the time began to shift in the fish-free pond and after 2 years it occurred 1 month later. Apparently, in the absence of predators, females that produce subitaneous eggs for a longer time simply contribute more offspring to the next generation. This is a case where microevolution could

have proceeded even faster if there had not been large numbers of resting eggs buried in the sediments with delayed hatching that contributed individuals to later generations, thereby slowing down the rate of change (Hairston and DeStasio 1988).

Constant selection is necessary to produce such exact synchronization of the time of reproductive switching. The fact that most of the copepods produce resting eggs before the fish become active results from the highly predictable predation pressure. Ponds that are not so predictable lead to an entirely different life cycle strategy. *Diaptomus sanguineus* also lives in ponds that occasionally dry out and therefore are without fish. Such drying-out events are caused by climatic variation and are thus not predictable. In these ponds the females produce both types of eggs irregularly throughout the summer and do not respond to the environmental factors that act as cues for resting egg production. This ensures that an individual's resting eggs are present in the "resting egg pool" in the sediments at all times.

Although normally only dormant stages from the uppermost millimeters of the sediments hatch, deeper eggs or algal cysts can be brought back to the surface if the sediment is disturbed, e.g., by the activity of organisms (bioturbation). The full potential of a resting stage bank became evident with the restoration of Lake Trummen (Sweden). This shallow lake had accumulated a thick layer of soft sediments as a result of extensive algal growth during eutrophication. To reduce the internal phosphorus loading (see Section 8.3.5), a large part of the muddy sediments was removed from the lake. In the following year, the lake developed a massive population of chrysophyte algae. They evidently came from cysts deposited in the sediments that were able to hatch when the mud was stirred up (Cronberg 1982).

Spreading of the risk

Environmental conditions are not always so predictable that it is an advantage to terminate the life cycle so precisely. A species with a very narrow reaction norm may miss the most favorable period if that year has unusual climatic conditions or there is a random shift in the structure of the food web. This could lead to a catastrophe for a population with a fixed life cycle. An example of this was observed in Lake Constance. A large calanoid copepod *Heterocope borealis* lived in the oligotrophic Lake Constance, where it overwintered in resting eggs in the sediments. The nauplii hatched in March and then moved into the surface water. In 1956, the predatory copepod *Cyclops vicinus* immigrated into the lake as it became more eutrophic. It had a different life cycle with a maximum of adults at precisely the time when the *Heterocope* nauplii migrated to the surface. Within 2 years *Cyclops vicinus*, which prefers eating nauplii, had eradicated the *Heterocope* population, whose life cycle had suddenly become ill adapted (Einsle 1988).

Just as a stockbroker does not invest in only one type of stock, it can be advantageous to "spread" the risk to avoid a disaster. Such a strategy does not allow one to have maximum gains, but, in the worst case, not everything is lost. By analogy with the seed bank in terrestrial ecology, the term *resting egg bank* is used in aquatic ecology. It would be more accurately called "resting stage bank" as it comprises dormant stages of various organisms (e.g., cysts of algae, resting eggs, and ephippia) buried in the sediments where they wait for a stimulus to continue development. One of the characteristics of a resting stage bank is that not all individuals hatch simultaneously, but distributed in time over long periods. If juveniles hatched from resting stages die due to unfavorable environmental conditions before they can reproduce, another batch of juveniles can hatch the next year or the year after, so that the chance for successful reproduction is higher. Hence longer periods of unfavorable conditions (e.g., pollution events) can be bridged. As long as there are viable resting stages in the sediments, a water body can be recolonized much faster than by dispersal over land. Resting stage banks are a biological buffer against disturbances.

Diapausing eggs buried in the sediments can remain viable for very long periods. The oldest eggs of *D. sanguineus* known to have hatched came from a depth of about 30 cm in the lake sediments and were estimated to be 330 years old (Hairston *et al*. 1995). Resting eggs of rotifers and cladocerans do not survive so long, but >50 years of survival have been reported. An example for Lake Constance was given in Section 5.3.4.

The drying out of some small ponds represents an example of a risk that is unpredictable. The cladocerans that live in the pond would have the highest reproductive rate if they produced only subitaneous eggs, since resting eggs do not contribute to the population growth rate. Occasionally, they nevertheless produce resting eggs, that lie in the sediments as an "insurance" allowing for repopulation if there is a disaster.

The diapause serves to overcome unfavorable periods. In some years, however, the conditions may not be so bad as to prevent further development of the population. There may be years during which the animals can survive without resting eggs, but such years are not predictable. Under these conditions, it would be beneficial if some animals could "try their luck" and not go into the resting stage. These animals would have a considerable advantage during such favorable periods. This potential advantage allows a population to maintain a certain proportion of animals that have a different life cycle.

Nilssen (1980) described examples of such risk spreading. Cyclopoid copepods in Norway can complete their life cycle in 1 or 2 years. If they develop rapidly, reaching sexual maturity in 1 year, they are relatively small and have few eggs. As an alternative, they can develop more slowly, becoming sexually mature after 2 years, but then they are larger and have more eggs. Both alternatives can coexist in a single lake. The proportion of "1 year types" increases with increasing predation pressure. The large copepods are especially vulnerable to predation, since the fish are size-selective predators. On the other hand, the fish population fluctuates greatly, so that it is sometimes advantageous to postpone the reproduction for a year on the chance that in the following year it may be less dangerous to be large and produce many offspring.

6.8.3 Cyclomorphosis

Many zooplankton regularly change their appearance during the course of the year. These changes are called *cyclomorphosis* because the morphological changes occur as seasonal cycles (Black and Slobodkin 1987). Summer animals may look entirely different from winter animals, and may even be mistaken for different species (Fig. 6.38). In some cases, such as for rotifers, the changes in shape may actually involve the replacement of one species by another. In other cases, especially for planktonic cladocerans, the changes that occur are actually within a single species. The formation of helmets by *Daphnia galeata mendotae* is a typical example in North America (Jacobs 1961). Closely related species can coexist in the same lake, if one species is cyclomorphic and the other is not, such as *Daphnia galeata* and *D. hyalina* in Lake Constance.

The widespread *Daphnia galeata mendotae* is one of several cyclomorphic *Daphnia* species in North American lakes (Jacobs 1987). A similar species typical of eutrophic lakes in Middle Europe is *Daphnia cucullata* (see Fig. 6.31). In the winter it has a rounded head and in early summer it develops a long "helmet." By June, the young *Daphnia* inside the brood pouch of round-headed females can be seen with pointed helmets. After the young hatch, their helmets grow at a faster rate than the rest of the body (positive allometry), so that the largest individuals develop the largest helmets. The length of the helmets increases relative to the body length until the end of July, then the relative helmet

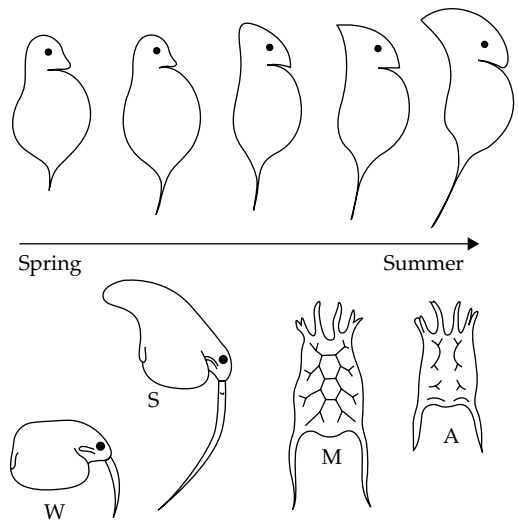


Figure 6.38 Cyclomorphosis in zooplankton. *Top:* Seasonal changes in the shape of *Daphnia retrocurva* (from Riessen 1984). *Bottom left*: Winter form (W) and summer form (S) of *Bosmina coregoni thersites* (after Lieder 1950). *Bottom right:* Morphology of the rotifer *Keratella quadrata* in May (M) and August (A) (from Hartmann 1920).

length slowly decreases. The length of the helmet can be up to 60% of the body length in midsummer. Typically for cyclomorphosis, this follows a regular annual cycle (Lampert and Wolf 1986).

The most conspicuous cyclomorphosis involves the formation of body processes and spines or the development of crests. Cladocerans of the genus *Bosmina* can form a long rostrum and a high "hump back" (Fig. 6.38). Sometimes, however, the features are very small and difficult to recognize, such as the tiny neckteeth in *Daphnia pulex* or longer antennal setae in *Daphnia galeata mendotae* (summary in Jacobs 1987).

Rotifers and cladocerans usually reproduce by parthenogenesis, which blurs the concept of species. A population consists of many clones, each the offspring of one mother and genetically identical. The clones may differ morphologically, resulting in great variability within the population. In this case, there are two possible ways for a seasonal change in forms: a phenotypic or a genotypic change.

In the first case, the offspring from all of the animals would respond to the changes in the environmental conditions. In the second case, the clones that are best adapted and morphologically most divergent would separate; their proportion in the population would change. If, for example, the conditions favored *Daphnia* with helmets over those with round heads, a rare clone with a helmet could produce more offspring than a more abundant clone without. The rare clone would increase and the population would, on the average, develop longer helmets.

Evidence indicates *Daphnia* has a phenotypic change:

- Helmets can be induced in isolated clones in the laboratory, although they are rarely so large as those found in nature.
- Helmeted young can be found in the brood pouches of round-headed females.
- There is no evidence from electrophoretic allozyme analysis (see Section 5.3) that there was a shift in the clonal structure of a population of *D. cucullata* during the period of helmet formation (Lampert and Wolf 1986).

This does not exclude the possibility that clonal shifts may be involved in the cyclomorphosis of other zooplankton such as *Bosmina* (Black 1980). It is also conceivable that there could be a combination of phenotypic and genotypic changes if there were an increase in clones that have greater phenotypic responses to the conditions.

Two lines of questioning can help one explain cyclomorphosis:

1 *Proximate factors*
- What induces the change in shape?
- Which factors regulate cyclomorphosis and make it predictable?

In laboratory experiments, high temperature, abundant food, and turbulence can induce helmet formation (Jacobs 1967). No one has yet found one single factor that causes cyclomorphosis. There are many recent examples where morphological changes involved in cyclomorphosis can be induced by substances released into water by predatory invertebrates (*Chaoborus*, notonectids) (see Section 6.5.5). The relatively large helmet of *Daphnia cucullata* is positively correlated with water temperature in the field. The higher the temperature, the longer the helmet. When brought into the laboratory, the helmet stays relatively small with high temperature and abundant food. High helmets will be formed only if the animals are cultured in water that had previously contained *Chaoborus* larvae. The induction must involve a soluble chemical, since the experiment works with water that has been filtered free of particles (Tollrian 1990). Predator kairomones induce higher helmets than alarm substances (crushed *Daphnia*), but in any case the effect is stronger if conspecifics are involved. For example, *Chaoborus* induced higher helmets in *D. cucullata* if they were fed conspecific *Daphnia* compared to a *D. magna* diet (Laforsch *et al*. 2006).

The role of such chemical interactions in cyclomorphosis has still not been completely explained, even if one can show that morphological changes can be induced in zooplankton by dissolved chemicals that signal the presence of a predator. There are probably more factors involved that vary with the season. In the laboratory, it is usually not possible to produce cyclomorphic features as extreme as observed in the field. Eventually, transgenerational effects play a role, i.e., zooplankton must be

exposed to the kairomone for more than one generation to show the maximum effect, which is normally the case in the field. Such an effect has been observed with *Daphnia mendotae* when their head area was measured in response to the predatory cladoceran *Leptodora*. It needed three generations of continuous exposure to the predator kairomone in the laboratory to gain a similar expression of the trait as in the lake (Tanner and Branstrator 2006).

2 *Ultimate factors*

- Why do the plankton change their shape?
- What is the adaptive advantage of cyclomorphosis?

There has been much speculation about the function of cyclomorphosis (see summary in Jacobs 1987). At first, the spines and helmets of zooplankton were interpreted to be "flotation organs" that reduce sinking in the summer when the viscosity is low because of the high temperatures. However, this hypothesis did not hold up. It appears more likely to be a defense mechanism against predation (see Section 6.5.5).

If a mixture of *Daphnia* with and without helmets is offered to fish, the helmeted animals survive better (Jacobs 1987). Helmeted *Daphnia* appear to be better at escaping from fish. It is not clear whether their shape presents less form resistance or whether the helmet provides a better surface for the attachment of the antennal muscles.

Spines and helmets are a very effective defense against invertebrate predators. Experiments have demonstrated that plankton with exaggerated features of cyclomorphosis have a better chance of surviving in the presence of *Chaoborus* larvae, predatory copepods, and notonectids. Invertebrate predators have difficulty capturing large prey (see Section 6.5.4), since their feeding is limited by the size of their mouthparts. It has been demonstrated, however, that *Daphnia* with neckteeth or helmets are not only more difficult to handle, but are also captured less frequently by *Chaoborus*, indicating that the protection afforded is not only interference with handling (Havel and Dodson 1984).

One hypothesis (Dodson 1974b) assumes that the formation of a transparent helmet and a long tail spine makes *Daphnia* more difficult for invertebrate predators to capture, without increasing its visibility to fish. Cyclomorphosis does not result in an increase in the visible parts of the *Daphnia*, such as the eye, gut, and eggs. The zooplankton increase only their transparent structures (see Fig. 6.31), thereby avoiding making them more visible to fish that feed visually and at the same time making them less vulnerable to invertebrate predators.

There is no proof that these factors are important in the field. Conspicuously, however, the greatest morphological changes occur during the periods of the highest predation pressure. The cyclomorphic induction response of the prey to a chemical signal from the predator is the most convincing evidence for the predator defense advantage of cyclomorphosis, since in this case the proximate and ultimate factors are the same (predator). Cyclomorphosis could also easily be regulated without chemical induction. Temperature is a reliable *zeitgeber* or indicator, for it is closely correlated with the appearance of young fish and insect larvae and is highly predictable.

There is still the question why the zooplankton do not always have such protective structures. Why do they only form them when they expect predators? It is not easy to assess the "costs" of defense that could be saved when there is no danger. One hypothesis proposed for *Daphnia catawba* states that helmeted animals are overall more slender and thus have smaller brood pouches (Riessen 1984). The number of eggs (reproductive capacity) depends on the amount of food available. The highest food availability is during the spring maximum of small algae, before the young fish are abundant. The brood pouch must be large, meaning the animals must have a rounded shape in order to take advantage of the supply of food. Later, when the number of eggs produced is limited by the lack of food, it is not an advantage to have a large brood pouch with few eggs. Then it is better to invest in defense. Cyclomorphosis could be seen as the optimization of fitness by maximizing reproduction and minimizing mortality at the appropriate times of the year.

This does not seem to apply to *D. galeata mendotae* (Jacobs 1987) or *D. cucullata* (Tollrian 1991). There is no difference in the number of eggs produced by helmeted and round-headed animals when they are given optimal food conditions.

In this case, the costs must be energetic (e.g., less efficient swimming, slowed development), for there does not seem to be a morphological cost for cyclomorphosis, such as a smaller brood pouch.

Swimming costs are difficult to asses directly, but there is evidence that a protective shape can produce costs in terms of drag when swimming. Some *Bosmina* species produce very odd shapes during summer (see Fig. 6.38). However, these features (e.g., prolonged antennules) are much more pronounced in females than in males. Lord *et al*. (2006) estimated the drag of various body forms of *B. coregoni* using plastic models in a viscous fluid. Cyclomorphic females had a higher drag than males. This was confirmed by video observation of swimming individuals. Males had a higher swimming distance per stroke than females. The authors suggest that males do not invest so much into defensive structures in order to reduce drag. For them, swimming faster in competition over mates may be more important than predator defense.

It appears that cyclomorphosis has arisen independently in many groups, since there is such a wide range of morphological features involved and closely related types differ dramatically. It is therefore unlikely that there is a single proximate or ultimate factor for all cases. It is also unlikely that such a pronounced change in shape is "neutral" and without some adaptive value (Jacobs 1987). However, there is not yet been a documented field study clearly demonstrating the gain in fitness due to cyclomorphosis.

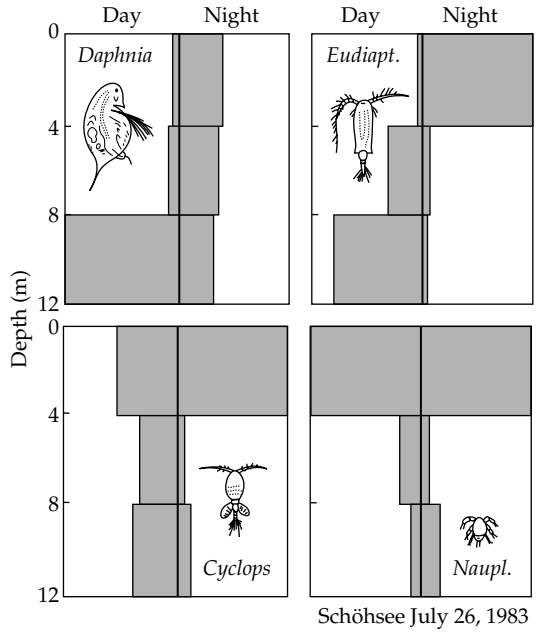


Figure 6.39 Relative distribution of zooplankton captured at various depths during the day and night in Schöhsee (Holstein, Germany) on July 26, 1983.

6.8.4 Diel vertical migration

Both marine and freshwater zooplankton exhibit an interesting diel migration behavior. Usually, the zooplankton are in the deep water during the day and swim up to the surface at night (Fig. 6.39). There are also cases of "reverse" migration, where the animals swim into the deep water at night and up to the surface in the day. Diel vertical migrations ranging from a few centimeters to over 100 m have been described (Hutchinson 1967).

The amplitude of the migration and the vertical distribution pattern varies from species to species and with the developmental stage for a given species. It can also be influenced by the transparency of the water and the food conditions. Some zooplankton migrate up and down as a narrow band, and others disperse at night throughout the entire water column.

We cannot get a true picture of how an individual migrates from samples of the plankton. A vertical profile of plankton samples only allows us to see the changes in the density of organisms at particular depths. We then estimate the vertical movement of the population from the changes in the distributions. The day–night differences in the mean depth or median of the population provide a measure of the amplitude of migration. Such observations of the mean behavior of the population can lead to false interpretations of the behavior of the individual. The distance between the mean values of the distributions is a valid measure of the actual distance traveled only if all animals move synchronously. This is not always so. It is possible that there are always some animals moving upwards, while others are moving downwards. We can only measure the net effect, which can seriously underestimate the swimming activity of the individual.

During the 1960s there was much interest in the neurophysiological basis of vertical migration behavior. It was found that phototaxis and geotaxis are both involved in the regulation of the behavior. Light is the primary controlling factor (*proximate factor*). Since zooplankton constantly adapt to the ambient light conditions, the stimulus for the onset and termination of the migration is the relative light change (dI/I) and not the change in absolute light intensity (I). The highest light intensities occur around midday, but the greatest relative change per unit time takes place shortly after sunset and before sunrise. Below a certain threshold in the rate of relative light change, zooplankton will not respond. When the light changes more rapidly and exceeds the threshold, however, the zooplankton attempt to correct for the altered light intensity. If the light increases, the zooplankton swim downward into the darker waters, and if the light decreases, they swim toward the surface. The migration stops when the light changes more slowly than the threshold value, that is, when it is slower than the adaptation time of the eye (Ringelberg *et al*. 1967).

The widespread occurrence of vertical migration by many different taxa strongly suggests that it has some adaptive value. What is then the *ultimate factor* that provides migrating animals with a fitness advantage? There is no reason to believe *a priori* that the same ultimate factor applies to all taxa, but all filter-feeding zooplankton should derive comparable benefits from vertical migration. Migrating animals spend the night in warm, food-rich water and the day in the deep, cold water, where both the quantity and quality of the food is low (primary production is restricted to the euphotic zone). Time spent in cold water is a disadvantage in terms of reproduction of the zooplankton. Meager food conditions in the deep water limit the energy available for egg production, and the swimming involved in migration also uses energy reserves. The eggs in the brood pouch are then exposed to cold temperatures that slow their development. Longer egg development means lower reproductive rates. Thus there is a strong selective pressure to stay in the warm, food-rich surface water. Migrating genotypes should be quickly eliminated by nonmigrating genotypes. This is not what happens, however. There must be a selective advantage for migrating.

There are a number of hypotheses that attempt to address this problem. They can be divided into two categories:

- The disadvantages of migrating are exaggerated. Actually, changing conditions encountered during migration lead to a more efficient use of energy or to faster population growth (higher fitness by increasing the production of offspring).
- Avoidance of the surface water during the day reduces a source of mortality that is light dependent (higher fitness through decreased mortality).

Some hypotheses in the first category assume that there is a metabolic advantage derived from switching between feeding at high temperature to resting at lower temperatures, or that animals grow larger at lower temperatures and thus can produce more offspring (demographic advantage). It is interesting that the algae in the surface waters have a higher nutritional quality in the evening. At the end of the light period they contain more food reserves, which then are metabolized during the night. Furthermore, it has been shown experimentally that zooplankton have higher feeding rates when they are hungry than when their guts are full. It is theorized that animals can obtain more energy by moving into the surface waters to feed on these energetically valuable algae after a period of starvation than they if they simply fed the entire day at the surface. All experimental tests of this "energy bonus" hypothesis have concluded that it is energetically better to stay near the surface (see summary by Lampert 1993). Even if migration provided an energy bonus, it would not compensate for the negative effects of prolonged development time (Kerfoot 1985).

The second possibility—that migration increases fitness by reducing mortality—seems more likely, since there is essentially no support for the first group of hypotheses based on an increased reproductive rate. There are some excellent examples to support the decreased-mortality hypotheses.

Daphnia galeata and *D. hyalina* are two closely related species that coexist in Lake Constance. Although they are very similar and even form interspecific hybrids, they differ greatly in their migration behavior (Stich and Lampert 1981). During the summer *D. hyalina* migrates extensively, whereas

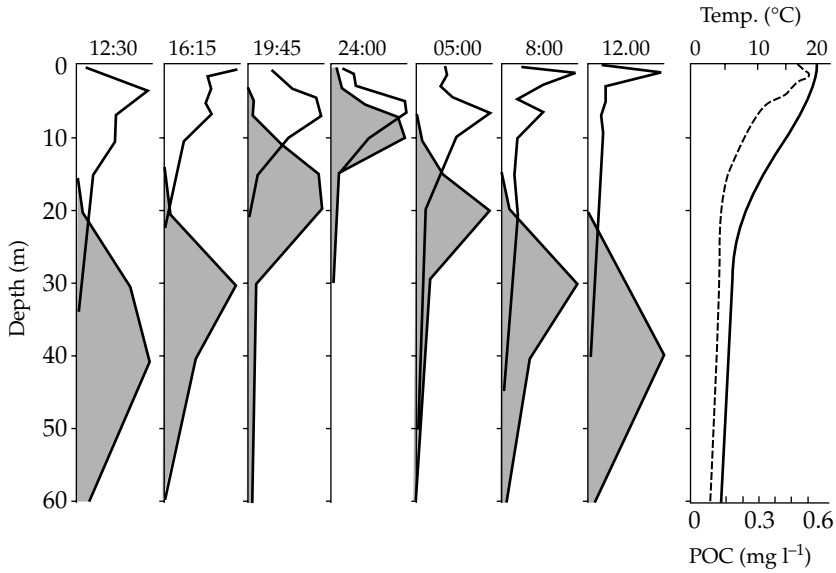


Figure 6.40 A comparison of the different vertical migration patterns of *Daphnia galeata* (plain) and *D. hyalina* (shaded) in Lake Constance (August). Depth profiles of temperature (solid line) and particulate carbon (particles <35 μm, possible food for *Daphnia*, dashed line) are shown in the right-hand graph (redrawn from Stich and Lampert 1981).

D. galeata stays in the surface waters, migrating very little (Fig. 6.40). The different strategies can be observed directly in this example (Table 6.2).

Daphnia hyalina has fewer eggs because it lives under poorer food conditions during the day. Its eggs also require a longer time to develop since they live at lower temperatures. Both of these conditions cause the migrating *D. hyalina* to have much lower birth rates than the nonmigrating *D. galeata*. If there were no losses, each *D. galeata* would produce 86 offspring after 30 days, compared to 5 young produced by *D. hyalina*. This would lead to the rapid exclusion of *D. hyalina* by *D. galeata*. In spite of this, population densities of *D. hyalina* during the summer migration period are actually greater than those of *D. galeata*. The nonmigrating species must have a considerable mortality rate that compensates for its reproductive superiority (Stich and Lampert 1981). It is likely that this mortality factor is related to light, since the migrating zooplankton generally avoid the surface waters during the day.

Light, especially UV light, can actually be a direct cause of mortality. It cannot, however, account for the great amplitudes of vertical migration, since short-wavelength light does not penetrate very deep in the lake (see Section 8.7.2). The most convincing hypothesis (Kozhov 1963) states that vertical migration is a strategy to avoid predators that feed visually, which are mainly fish (see Section 6.5.3). Fish can see at very low light intensities, but a zooplankter has a much smaller likelihood of being seen at night or in deep water. The predator-avoidance hypothesis thus states that zooplankton retreat into

Table 6.2 Daily average environmental conditions and population growth parameters for migrating *Daphnia hyalina* and nonmigrating *D. galeata* in Lake Constance in August 1977 (see Fig. 6.40)

	D. galeata	***D. hyalina***
Mean concentration of particulate carbon <30 μm (mg l^{-1})	0.34	0.16
Mean temperature (°C)	14.0	7.1
Eggs/adult *Daphnia*	7.1	3.7
Development time (d)	8.8	14.5
Abundance (individuals m^{-2})		
In August	38 200	91 500
In September	154 800	272 000
Birth rate (*b*) (d^{-1})	0.147	0.055
Population growth rate (*r*) (d^{-1})	0.047	0.036
Death rate (*d*) (d^{-1})	0.100	0.019

the darker depths during the day and come to the surface only under the protection of night.

Several predictions can be derived from this hypothesis (Lampert 1993):

- *Zooplankton must migrate upward in the evening and downward in the morning*. This is, as a matter of fact, the "normal" behavior. "Reverse" migrations can sometimes be explained by indirect effects (see below).
- *Vertical migration should occur mainly in zooplankton that are most visible to fish*. It can be seen that large, adult zooplankton, especially females with eggs, migrate more than young animals.
- *The amplitude of the migration should vary as a function of the activity of the fish*. In Lake Constance, *D. hyalina* migrates only in the summer, when the fish in the lake are active. Recently, there is much evidence that zooplankton migrate only at times when fish are abundant (Ringelberg *et al*. 1991) and will cease migrating after a reduction in the fish population (e.g., through biomanipulation; Dini and Carpenter 1988) and that the amplitude of the migration is correlated with the strength of the year class of fish (Frost 1988).

These examples show that the pattern of vertical migration can change quite rapidly in response to changes in the predation pressure. This raises the question whether the migration response is due to strong selection or to the ability of the zooplankton to detect the predators. The selection hypothesis would require that there is a variety of migrating and nonmigrating genotypes present in the population. When fish move into the pelagic region, they would eat the nonmigrating animals, leaving only the migrating forms. Selection experiments indicate that the phototactic response of zooplankton has a genetic basis (De Meester and Dumont 1988). It is therefore possible that nonmigrating genotypes could be eliminated in a lake at certain times of the year.

New experiments raise doubts about this hypothesis. Two of these studies were conducted in plastic bags. Bollens and Frost (1989) examined the migration behavior of the marine copepod *Acartia hudsonica* in Dabob Bay (Seattle, Washington, USA). Copepods in the plastic bags without fish stayed near the surface. The copepods began to migrate normally, however, as soon as fish were added. Such rapid initiation of migration essentially precludes the possibility that the change was caused by selection. The authors suspected that the zooplankton detected the predators by means of a mechanical stimulus. Other experiments (Ringelberg 1991, Dawidowicz *et al*. 1990) have shown that fish can release a chemical stimulus that influences the migration behavior. As described above, zooplankton respond to changes in light intensity, but they become more highly motivated to respond to light by the "smell" of fish (Loose *et al*. 1993).

Figure 6.41 provides evidence for a chemical cue that causes *Daphnia hyalina* to migrate. This experiment was performed with a *Daphnia* clone obtained from the migrating population in Lake Constance (see Fig. 6.40), using the plankton towers at the Max-Planck Institute for Limnology at Plön. Surface water from each tower was circulated through an external aquarium. If the aquarium contained no fish, daphniids remained in the epilimnion during the day and night. One small planktivorous fish in the aquarium was sufficient to change the diel pattern of *Daphnia*'s depth distribution. Although the daphniids had no physical or visual contact with the fish, these zooplankton migrated downward during the day. This experiment also confirms the predictions mentioned above:

- Migrations are controlled by light.
- Large individuals migrate deeper.
- The mean depth of the *Daphnia* population increases with increasing abundance of fish in the aquarium (Loose 1993).

In another plastic bag experiment, Neill (1990) was able to explain the cause of a "reverse" migration. For many years there were no fish in Gwendolyne Lake (British Columbia, Canada). During the day the copepod *Diaptomus* was in the surface water and at night it would migrate into the deep water. By doing this, the copepod apparently avoided the predatory *Chaoborus* larvae, which had a "normal" migration (in the deep water during the day). *Chaoborus* were eradicated from the lake by the accidental introduction of trout from a nearby hatchery. When the lake was sampled again 2 years later, the copepods had stopped migrating and always stayed in the surface water. Although there

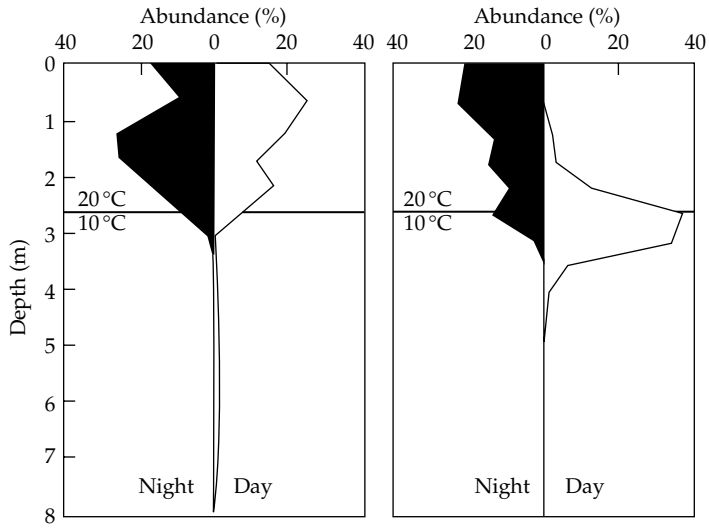


Figure 6.41 Distribution of *Daphnia hyalina* at noon (white) and midnight (black) in the plankton towers in the absence (left) and in the presence (right) of a chemical cue from fish. With "fish smell," zooplankton are motivated to react to the light and migrate across the thermocline (horizontal line) (from Loose 1993).

were enough fish to keep *Chaoborus* out of the lake, apparently they were not abundant enough to induce a normal migration in the copepods. As soon as Neill placed *Chaoborus* larvae in plastic bags with the copepods, the copepods began to have a reverse migration. A chemical stimulus was involved, since the same migration response was caused by adding to the enclosures water that had previously held *Chaoborus*. The copepods responded within 4 hours after the addition of *Chaoborus* water. The chemical induction and the speed of the response show that it was not caused by a selection of certain genotypes and that the animals were programmed for the migration behavior.

Even if the direct costs of swimming are low (Dawidowicz and Loose 1992), diel vertical migration can produce considerable demographic costs by displacing zooplankton from their optimal habitat (Loose and Dawidowicz 1994). One might therefore expect patterns of vertical migration to be variable, in order to minimize the costs and maximize the net gain for the animals. Amplitude and timing of migration should be determined not only by the presence of predators, but also by temperature and food conditions or the presence of inhibitory cyanobacteria in the epilimnion (Haney 1993). For example, if the food abundance is very low, animals may be forced to remain in the epilimnion and take the risk of being detected by a fish, as their reproductive rate may otherwise be too low under the combined effects of low food and low temperature. On the other hand, if the thermal gradient is shallow and the hypolimnion contains sufficient food, as in a hypertrophic lake, animals may remain in the hypolimnion all the time and not take the risk of migrating upward (Gliwicz and Pijanowska 1988). As a result, the observed patterns may be very different, despite the underlying driving force of predator avoidance. The different migration strategies can be predicted by a mathematical model (Vos *et al*. 2002). This model takes also in consideration the varying predation risk of differing size classes of zooplankton. Diel vertical migration is found to be a more effective defense than maturation at a smaller size. However, the frequent observation that large zooplankton migrate deeper than small ones suggest alternative strategies of predator avoidance (Sakwinska and Dawidowicz 2005). Experimental evidence for a coupling of body size and migration behavior was found in plankton tower experiments by De Meester *et al*. (1995). They combined three *Daphnia hyalina* × *galeata* hybrid clones freshly isolated from a lake in the plankton towers. The clones differed in

their size at maturation. Within each clone, the largest individuals migrated to the greatest depths, but the clone maturing at the largest size responded strongest to fish kairomones and free-ranging fish. Two of the three clones survived fish predation and reached an equilibrium at equal proportions after 25 days of fish predation, i.e., they had identical fitness under these conditions. However, they gained identical fitness with different strategies. One clone matured at smaller size (fewer eggs) and stayed in shallower water (higher temperature) than the second one. The second clone matured at larger size and had more eggs, but migrated deeper (lower temperature).

Vertical migration is a good example of optimization of a behavior by natural selection. It also illustrates how the optimization of the fitness of an individual can affect the entire ecosystem. If zooplankton stay in the deep water, they reduce the grazing pressure on the phytoplankton, allowing the algae to grow uninhibited during the day. This allows for an increase in the primary production and also changes the competitive interactions between the different algal species. As some zooplankton specialize in certain species of algae, the different migration patterns of the various zooplankton species (see Fig. 6.39) mean that each algal species is affected differently by the migration (Lampert 1992). This produces a quantitative as well as qualitative "cascading" effect (see Section 7.3.4) of fish–zooplankton–algae (Reichwaldt and Stibor 2005).

6.8.5 Horizontal migration

"Shoreline avoidance" is a well-studied phenomenon of the pelagic zooplankton. Pelagic crustaceans such as *Daphnia* and *Diaptomus* are not found in the littoral during the day, although they are there at night. One hypothesis proposes that zooplankton actively avoid the littoral, but can do so only when it is light. Siebeck (1980) designed elegant physiological experiments that demonstrated that zooplankton can actively swim away from the shore in the early morning. The optical cue for this behavior is the light distribution field seen above by the zooplankton. High objects such as trees and hills near the shore produce dark regions in the light field. By orienting toward the brighter sections of the light field, the animals automatically direct their swimming path to the open water. At some distance from the shore even high objects no longer darken the light field, so that the animals can no longer orient to the light field. Some littoral zooplankton, such as the predatory cladoceran *Polyphemus* orient toward the dark part of the light field instead, causing them to form narrow bands along the shore. The Siebeck hypothesis states that the uneven distribution is the result of continuing selection against individuals in an unfavorable habitat. The "ultimate" factor causing this behavior might be predation by small fish that often concentrate near the shore during the day (see Section 6.5.3). If this is correct, then the shoreline avoidance behavior is the mechanism (proximate, light orientation) that the animals have evolved to avoid this predictable danger.

Review questions

1 Does it follow from the "competitive exclusion principle" that all existing species are the "winners" of competition?

2 In a chemostat, two phytoplankton species (a chrysophyte and a chlorophyte) compete for nitrate nitrogen. The chrysophyte has a low μ_{max} ($0.7\,d^{-1}$) and a low k_s ($0.1\,\mu mol\,l^{-1}$). The chlorophyte has a high μ_{max} ($1.4\,d^{-1}$) and a high k_s ($1\,\mu mol\,l^{-1}$). Which species would you predict to win the competition at dilution rates of 0.1, 0.3, 0.5, and 0.65?

3 The diatoms *Fragilaria* and *Stephanodiscus* compete for silicon and phosphorus in a chemostat. Both have identical maximal growth rates ($1.2\,d^{-1}$). The half-saturation constants of silicon-limited growth are $2\,\mu mol\,l^{-1}$ for *Fragilaria* and $0.6\,\mu mol\,l^{-1}$ for *Stephanodiscus*. The half-saturation constants for phosphorus-limited growth are $0.03\,\mu mol\,l^{-1}$ for *Fragilaria* and $0.1\,\mu mol\,l^{-1}$ for *Stephanodiscus*. Construct ZNGIs for a dilution rate of $0.5\,d^{-1}$ and predict the outcome of competition (winner–loser or coexistence) for the following silicon and phosphorus concentrations in the inflow medium (in $\mu mol\,l^{-1}$):

Si	P
200	1
800	4
100	1
40	1
80	4
60	4
3	1
12	4

4. Phytoplankton with a biomass stoichiometry of C:N:P = 106:16:1 is eaten either by *Daphnia* or by a copepod. The N:P ratio of *Daphnia* biomass is 14:1, the N:P ratio of copepod biomass is 22:1. Both zooplankton species excrete nitrogen and phosphorus. For which zooplankton species will the excreted N:P ratio be >16:1, for which will it be <16:1?

5 The size–efficiency hypothesis considers fish predation to be responsible for shifts to smaller body sizes in zooplankton. There is abundant evidence for this explanation. Can you give mechanistic explanations for the second statement of the SHE, that zooplankton size shifts to large-bodied forms in the absence of fish predation?

6 Planktonic bacteria are frequently better competitors for dissolved phosphorus than phytoplankton. Nevertheless, phytoplankton are not excluded from lakes where phosphorus is the primary limiting factor. There are several possible explanations for the persistence of phytoplankton. Can you list some of them?

7 Why are allelopathic interactions more commonly observed between benthic than between planktonic algae?

8 The negative correlation between *Daphnia* and rotifer abundance could be explained either by exploitative or by interference competition. Which observations support the latter?

9 Which observations and experiments could support the hypothesis that the minimum of phytoplankton biomass (clear-water phase) commonly observed in early summer is caused by grazing and not by sedimentation, nutrient limitation, or light inhibition?

10 Under which conditions can filter-feeding zooplankton cause an increase of the net growth rate of a phytoplankton species?

11 Organisms in a lake experience predictable and unpredictable changes in the environment. List some examples of predictable and unpredictable events that occur in lakes. What adaptations have organisms evolved in response to these events? Identify the environmental cue used by the organism in each of these cases.

CHAPTER 7

Communities

7.1 Characteristics of communities

The sum of all of the interacting populations in a habitat is called a *community* (biocoenosis). Practically all modern ecology textbooks use this definition. At second glance the definition is not so clear, because, strictly speaking, it would be difficult to completely exclude interactions between populations that are far apart. An atom of oxygen respired by a fish in a stream may have been released into the atmosphere by the photosynthesis of an alga in a distant lake and been dissolved back into the habitat of the fish. However, no one would think of assigning both organisms to the same community. It is more useful, then, to view a community as a system of populations that are bound to one another by *strong interactions* and surrounded by a surface of weaker interactions with populations outside the community.

Even then it is not easy to define the community in terms of either its spatial limits or its species association. A major comprehensive research effort would be needed to determine the actual strength of the interactions. In reality, communities are defined *a priori*, without measuring the strength of the interactions. For example, when we distinguish between a planktonic and a benthic community, we assume that there are strong interactions within each of these communities, and that the shading of the benthos by the plankton and the effect of bottom organisms on the flow of matter between the sediment and open water can be characterized as "weak interactions."

Ecologists often define communities by common functional characteristics rather than by assumed strong interactions. For example, the open-water communities "plankton" and "nekton" are distinguished from one another by the ability to move. It is quite possible, however, that there are stronger interactions between zooplankton and fish populations than between many of the populations within the plankton.

7.2 "Superorganism" or "sieve"

There is much debate about the strength and type of interactions between populations and the degree of integration of the communities. The "superorganism" concept is an extreme position originated by the terrestrial plant ecologist Clements and introduced into limnology by Thienemann. Communities and ecosystems (Chapter 8) are viewed as highly integrated, natural entities, or "organisms of a higher order." Features ("*emergent properties*") are ascribed to the whole (communities, ecosystems) that cannot be explained by the combined effects or interactions of the individual components (populations). It is assumed that "the whole is greater than the sum of the parts."

It is important to make the distinction between *emergent properties* and *collective properties* when discussing the superorganism concept. The existence of collective properties is widely accepted, whereas emergent properties are hotly debated.

A classic example of a collective property is the statistical correlation between the concentration of a limiting nutrient and the potential biomass of phytoplankton. This correlation can be explained by the limited variation in the chemical composition of the different algal species and the fact that algae cannot use more nutrients for biomass formation than are present. Interactions between algal populations cannot result in greater production of biomass. Thus this phenomenon can be explained as the sum of all component processes. It is not necessary to look for "system" properties that go beyond the activities of the individual organisms.

"Self-regulation" of communities is a typical emergent feature proposed by proponents of the superorganism concept. This suggests that the community as a whole can hold certain properties constant (e.g., the total energy flow) when there are external disturbances, analogous to the ability of a homeothermic organism to keep its body temperature constant.

The greatest problem with the superorganism concept is that communities do not have a centralized genome. Thus a community has no means of reproducing to perpetuate its identity. The system as an entity cannot then be subject to the forces of natural selection and cannot evolve adaptations to the environment.

The *individualistic concept* is an extreme position opposing the superorganism concept that can be traced back to Gleason (1926). It states that populations respond to the external environment completely independently of one another (Harris 1986). In this concept the local environmental conditions can be visualized as a sieve that regulates the species composition. A supply of organisms is transported to the system (active migration, passive transport); the best-suited species are admitted and those poorly suited are excluded. The species composition is primarily the net result of stochastic transport processes and autecological requirements. In its most extreme form, the individualistic concept negates the importance of interactions between populations. The absence of interactions between populations would be found, however, only during the early phase of colonization when the habitat is essentially empty or in habitats that are extremely disturbed, where the populations are held well below their upper limit by external disturbances.

A third concept is needed to describe communities in most habitats. We will refer to it as the *Darwinistic* concept, in accordance with Harper (1967). The Darwinistic concept refutes the idea that entire communities and ecosystems result from evolutionary selection and reproduction of selected features and that community characteristics can be optimized at the expense of the populations. However, it recognizes the fact that organisms modify their environment and become the "environment" for one another. Thus populations that have passed through the "sieve" of lethal limits have interactions that become factors that select for the evolutionary adaptations of the individual components of the community. The community is more than a random collection of individuals, even though it is not a superorganism.

Whereas classic community starts from the assumption of ecologically relevant differences between species, the newly emerged *neutral theory of community ecology* (Hubbell 2006) uses *functional equivalence* of species as its starting point. This means that trophically similar species (species occupying the same trophic level—see Section 7.3.1) should have evolved toward minimizing interspecific differences in environmental requirements, demographic rates, and competitive strength. This evolutionary trend is possible because minimizing differences implies maximizing the time needed for competitive exclusion (see Section 6.1.1), up to the point where competitive exclusion becomes totally irrelevant in a temporally variable or spatially structured environment. Neutral models assume equal demographic rates and competitive abilities, and random variability in local extinction, immigration, and speciation rates. Neutral models have been able to reproduce some well known but rather abstract community patterns, such as species–area curves (the relationship between the number of species found and the area sampled) and the distribution of abundances between species. In general, the agreement between model outputs and observed patterns has been better on the regional than on the local scale, where classic interspecific interactions seem more important (Bell 2005). The neutral theory has not yet provided a framework for how to explain less abstract patterns, such as shifts from diatom to cyanobacteria dominance, or *Daphnia* to copepod dominance with all the consequences for organisms dependent on them, be it as prey or predator.

7.3 Internal structure of communities

7.3.1 Food chains and food webs

Populations within a community are bound by a network of interactions. The most important interactions are of a trophic nature—"eat" or "be eaten". In diagrams predator–prey interactions are usually portrayed vertically and competition relationships horizontally. The simplest presentation of the vertical

connections within a community is the *food chain*. Plants are eaten by herbivorous animals (*primary consumers* or *secondary producers*). These animals are in turn eaten by carnivorous animals (*secondary consumers*). Bacteria are placed in this concept as decomposers, that is, they are responsible for the remineralization ("destruction") of dead organic matter. The individual links of the chain correspond to trophic levels (see Chapter 8) in the transport of energy and matter. Traditionally, terrestrial food chains have three links (grass–zebra–lion or grass–cattle–humans), but aquatic food chains usually have four links (phytoplankton–zooplankton–planktivorous fish–piscivorous fish, or microphytobenthos–benthic invertebrates–benthivorous fish–piscivorous fish).

The food chain concept is too simple for natural systems, except for extremely species-poor habitats. For example, filter-feeding organisms (e.g., many "herbivorous" zooplankton) select their food much more on the basis of size than according to its trophic role. This makes it difficult to assign organisms to a particular level in the food chain. When a *Daphnia* eats a phytoplankter, it is a "primary consumer"; however, if it eats a phytoplankton-eating zooflagellate or a ciliate, it becomes a "secondary consumer." Planktivorous fish eat "herbivorous" as well as "carnivorous" zooplankton; they can be a third, fourth, or fifth link in the food chain, depending on what their food had eaten. The more complex *food web* has replaced the simple food chain. The pelagic food web shown in Fig. 7.1 is extremely simplified. One important simplification is the grouping of populations into functional categories (e.g., "herbivorous" zooplankton). Such functional categories are best referred to as "guilds."

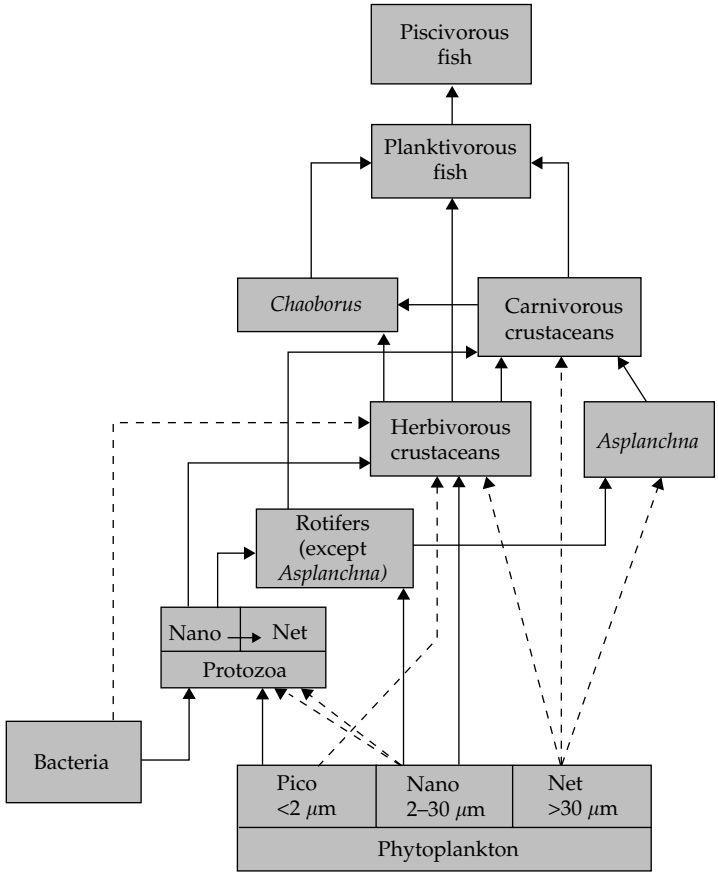


Figure 7.1 A simplified food web for the pelagic region. Only feeding on living organisms is shown. Solid lines: All or most of the species of predators and prey categories are involved. Dashed line: Only a few of the species of predators and prey are involved.

A further simplification seen in Fig. 7.1 is that it ignores the changes in trophic roles that may occur during the ontogeny of a species. For example, the early copepodid stages of the "carnivorous" copepods are usually "herbivorous" and the juvenile stages of piscivorous fish are usually planktivorous.

Organic matter flows from all components to the bacteria (not shown in Fig. 7.1), which use excretory products and dead matter (detritus), but do not feed on or kill living organisms. The feeding of heterotrophic bacteria on the excretions and remains of other organisms makes this a circular component in the food web, since the bacteria themselves also serve as food for the protozoans and herbivorous zooplankton. This transfer of matter and energy has been given the name *microbial loop* (see Section 8.2.4) and has become an important topic in marine and freshwater microbial research (Azam *et al*. 1983).

The study of microbial interactions has become possible only recently with the development of new techniques for the identification of microorganisms in field samples. More progress can be expected with further development of molecular techniques (see Section 5.3.5) that allow the identification of species or functional groups. Growing knowledge about individual species and groups or microorganisms and their interactions has led to the concept of *microbial food webs*. These consist of bacteria, picoplanktonic cyanobacteria, and various types of protozoa (heterotrophic and mixotrophic flagellates, ciliates).

The organization of microbial food webs is very similar to that of metazoan food webs (Riemann and Christoffersen 1993). The basic difference is that microbial food webs start with dissolved organic matter. Otherwise, processes and interactions in both food webs are similar. In microbial webs, heterotrophic nanoflagellates (HNF) and ciliates fill the role of predators. Their functional responses are similar to those of metazoans; they compete with one another, and they feed selectively. Feeding HNFs release nutrients derived from their prey, stimulating further prey production (see Section 6.4.4). Flagellate grazing also leads to the selective removal of prey species. For example, the size structure of bacterial populations can shift to small particles as a result of removal of the preferred large bacteria by protozoans (Bird and Kalff 1993). It is not difficult to see the analogy to the effect of fish predation in metazoan food webs (see Fig 6.33). As in algal communities, intense grazing leads to the development of grazing-resistant forms (Jürgens and Matz 2002).

Microbial food webs are coupled to metazoan food webs, as protozoans are a good food for many zooplankton (Fig. 7.2). In particular, *Daphnia* has a strong impact on flagellates and ciliates. This results in a very different structure of the microbial food web depending on the presence or absence of large cladocerans (*Daphnia*) (Jürgens 1994). Figure 7.3 contrasts the situations in a *Daphnia*-dominated system and in a system dominated by small zooplankton (e.g., under strong pressure by planktivorous fish, see Fig. 6.33). In the presence of *Daphnia*, edible phytoplankton and all protozoans are suppressed. This results in the dominance of inedible phytoplankton and the low abundance and diversity of protozoan grazers. Protozoans have little impact on the bacteria. *Daphnia* has fine filters, enabling it to graze on bacteria, although small bacteria are at the lower limit of its food size spectrum (see Section 4.3.11). Thus *Daphnia* grazing results in the dominance of small bacteria. Grazing is less important in systems lacking *Daphnia*, since the small grazers are less efficient. As a result, phytoplankton in these systems are small and mostly edible. Protozoans are abundant and diverse. There are many predator–prey

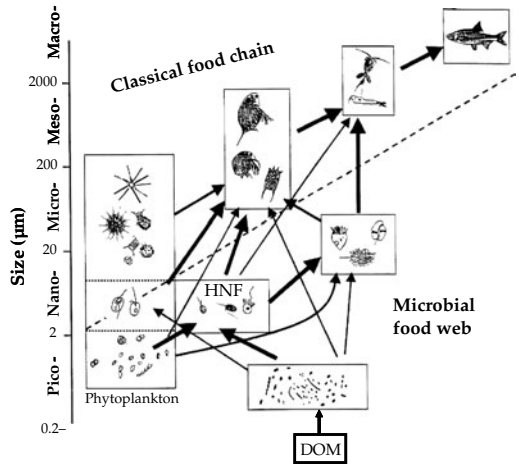


Figure 7.2 Coupling of the "classical" and microbial food webs (courtesy of K. Jürgens).

interactions among protozoans. Some protozoans also graze on phytoplankton. The strong impact of protozoans on the bacterial populations results in the development of filamentous bacteria and bacterial aggregates that are resistant to protozoan grazing, but not to grazing by *Daphnia*. Thus *Daphnia* has a key role (see Section 7.3.3) in structuring microbial food webs.

When the flow of matter and energy is considered quantitatively, as presented in Chapter 8, the food web is considerably simplified, since only a few of the strands are important. Few, if any, investigations have considered all potential components of a food web in sufficient detail. In the pelagic zone of many lakes it appears, however, that only two strands of the food web are very important: the four-link chain nanophytoplankton–"herbivorous" crustaceans–planktivorous fish–piscivorous fish and the five-link chain picophytoplankton–nanoprotozoans (zooflagellates)–"herbivorous" crustaceans–planktivorous fish–piscivorous fish. Because of this simplification, the use of the food chain concept and the related *trophic level* concept can still be justified. Moreover, it is no longer usual to express trophic levels by integer numbers alone. If, for instance, *Daphnia* has a trophic level 2.3 in a particular food web, this would express a diet consisting of 70% phytoplankton and 30% phytoplankton-feeding protozoans. Such a behavior is called *omnivory*, but care must be taken to distinguish physiological omnivory (the ability to feed on plant and animal biomass) from trophodynamic omnivory, i.e., feeding on more than one trophic level. Trophodynamic omnivory would also include the case of feeding on two animal trophic levels.

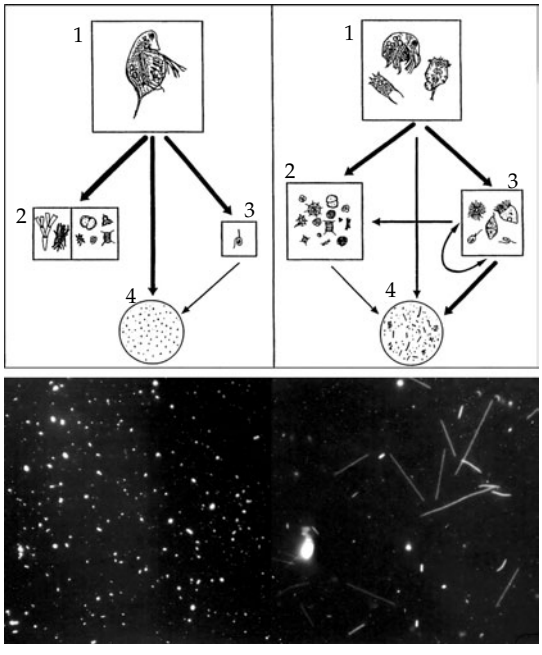


Figure 7.3 Impact of metazooplankton on interactions in microbial food webs, when the zooplankton is dominated by *Daphnia* (*left*) or small crustaceans and rotifers (*right*). Organisms are grouped into four categories: (1) metazooplankton, (2) primary producers, (3) phagotrophic protozoans, (4) bacteria. Sizes of boxes represent the relative amount of biomass. Width of arrows indicates the interaction strength (from Jürgens 1994). Photographs show the microbial communities in an enclosure experiments in mesotrophic Schöhsee, visualized in an epifluorescence microscope after staining with DAPI (same magnification). The bright drop-shaped object in the right photo is a hetrotrophic nanoflagellate (courtesy of K. Jürgens).

7.3.2 Problems of aggregation

Communities consist of populations. Strictly speaking, an accurate analysis of the structure of a community should consider each population separately. In most community studies, however, populations are placed into collective categories (*aggregations*) for the following reasons:

- The definition of populations is by no means clear for organisms with little or no sexuality (almost all phytoplankton, many rotifers, and cladocerans) (see Section 5.1).
- Species determination may require so much effort (e.g., setting up of cultures for certain algal species) that it is not practical to include this as part of a community study that involves large numbers of samples in space and time.
- Most important, an intelligent aggregation can result in a greatly improved ability to forecast changes and make generalizations. The various species are often so similar in their requirements and activities that the differences in conditions leading to the dominance of one or the other species are too slight to be detected. One would have to attribute the appearance of such species viewed separately to "random variation," whereas, dealt with as a group, their occurrence would be more predictable. A well-known example of this is the spring

maximum of phytoplankton in Lake Windermere, which has been studied for over three decades (Reynolds 1984). The prediction that *Asterionella formosa* will be the dominant species during the spring maximum holds true for about 80% of all the years in the study, but the same prediction made for diatoms would be true for all years. Similarly, the biomass of individual algal species contributing to the spring peak is variable, but the total biomass of diatoms is relatively constant.

Populations can be grouped according to taxonomic or functional criteria. *Taxonomic aggregation* (taxa above the species level) has the advantage that it is not biased by the persuasion of the ecologist; however, it does not always produce a useful aggregate. The plankton dinoflagellate genus *Gymnodinium* is an extreme example of a misleading aggregation. It includes species that are autotrophic, some that use dissolved organic carbon (DOC), and still others that eat other organisms. A more meaningful and functional taxonomic aggregation is the genus *Daphnia*. Within this genus, there is a greater effect of body size on feeding rates and food spectra than between different daphniid species. Likewise, the cyanobacterial family Nostocacae is a unified and meaningful grouping. All representatives can fix atmospheric nitrogen, form large colonies, are highly inedible for the zooplankton, and are capable of migrating vertically by means of gas vacuoles.

A *functional aggregation* is generally more meaningful than a taxonomic aggregation. First, it can use the guilds defined for the food web. It can then be further differentiated—according to size, for example. Other environmental requirements, such as temperature, water chemistry, or competitive ability, can be used for additional subdivisions. Within the net phytoplankton, for example, the diatoms form a useful functional grouping based on their high sinking rate, high silicon demand, low light requirement, and ability to compete for phosphorus. One should keep in mind that a functional aggregation is highly subjective and tentative.

7.3.3 The analysis of food web structure with the help of stable isotopes

The amount of work needed to obtain a complete answer to the question "who is eating whom, in what quantities" has resulted in the search for short-cuts in the analysis of food web structure. One such short-cut which has gained popularity during the last decade is the analysis of stable isotope ratios in the biomass of organisms (Box 7.1). An advantage of this method over the classical gut

Box 7.1 Food web analysis with stable isotopes

Many chemical elements exist as isotopes, i.e., they differ in the number of neutrons in their nucleus. Extra neutrons increase the atomic mass, but have very subtle effects on chemical properties. As long as the number of extra neutrons is small the isotope is stable, i.e., it does not lose the extra mass. Heavier stable isotopes are everywhere in tiny fractions, but the fractions can differ considerably depending on the origin of the substance that contains the element. The study of these isotopes can, therefore, be especially valuable for studying the cycling of organic matter and its origin.

Important elements with stable isotopes used in biogeochemistry are carbon, oxygen, sulfur, nitrogen, and hydrogen. For example, most carbon atoms have the mass 12 (^{12}C), but a very small fraction has the mass 13 (^{13}C). Nitrogen has two stable isotopes, ^{14}N (abundant) and ^{15}N (rare). These four isotopes are the ones mostly used in ecological studies.

Modern mass spectrometers can analyze the fractions of the different isotopes in a sample of material. The measured characteristic is the ratio (F) of the fractional abundances of the heavier (^{H}F) and the lighter (^{L}F) isotopes in a sample:

$$R = {}^{H}F/{}^{L}F$$

For carbon, this is:

$$R = {}^{13}C/{}^{12}C$$

$R \times 100$ is the atom percentage of ^{13}C in the sample. As we are interested to know whether the heavier isotope has been enriched or depleted in a particular sample, R is compared to a standard substance that does not change.

continues

Box 7.1 ***continued***

This is a fossil carbonate distributed by the Atomic Energy Agency at Vienna for carbon, and atmospheric nitrogen gas for nitrogen. The enrichment or depletion relative to a standard is generally expressed using the δ(delta) notation:

$$\delta = [(R_{SAMPLE}/R_{STANDARD} - 1)] \times 1000$$

δ is often called the *isotopic signature* of an element in a sample. The units are ‰. For further explanation of this notation see Fry (2006).

There are two approaches to the use of stable isotopes in ecology:

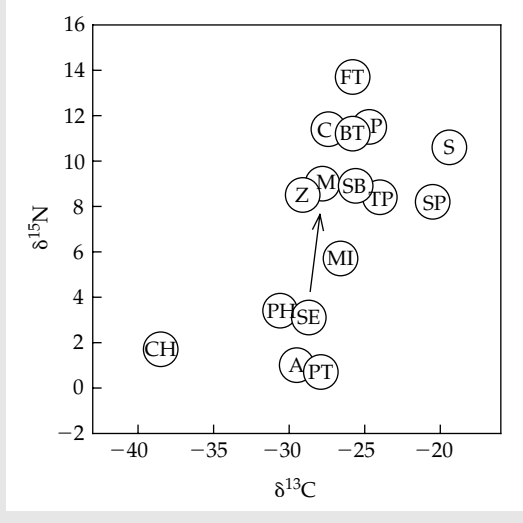
- Stable isotopes can be used as tracers. They can be added to systems and the kinetics of tracer distribution can be followed. This is convenient if radioactive tracers can be replaced. For example, 13C has been used to label the DOC pool (Cole et al. 2002) or the inorganic carbon pool (Pace et al. 2004) of whole lakes to study utilization and transfer of autochthonous and allochthonous carbon in food webs.
- Measurements of the natural distribution of stable isotopes can be used to track organic matter from different sources, provided they are isotopically distinct. This is an important tool to study the circulation of elements in the biosphere and in landscapes, interactions in food webs, feeding habits of organisms, species invasions, migrations and dispersal. It has been increasingly used in recent years.

Such studies require information on the baseline isotopic signature of the sources and on the *isotopic fractionation* during metabolic processes. Although heavier isotopes behave biochemically like the lighter ones, there are small differences in the velocity of biochemical processes for the isotopes. For example, if an animal excretes nitrogen (e.g., ammonia) ^{14}N is preferentially excreted rather than ^{15}N. Consequently, the animal's tissue will be enriched in ^{15}N during metabolism. As a general rule of thumb, if organic matter is eaten and converted to consumer body mass, $\delta^{15}N$ will on average increase by 3.4‰. Hence an increase of 3.4‰ in $\delta^{15}N$ reflects one trophic level in a food web. The fractionation of carbon isotopes is much less pronounced. The presently favored average increase of $\delta^{13}C$ per trophic level is only about 0.4‰ (Post 2002). Differences in the $\delta^{13}C$ signature between different sources of organic matter (e.g., terrestrial versus aquatic plant material) are much greater. Consequently, $\delta^{15}N$ is better suited to determine the trophic position of an organism, and $\delta^{13}C$ can be better used to trace the origin of the organic matter.

Although isotopic signatures are influenced by environmental conditions, they can provide new insights into the structure of community interactions. One advantage is that isotopic signatures are conservative, i.e., they document carbon and nitrogen uptake integrated over longer time periods, in contrast to gut content analyses, which show the very recent food uptake.

The principles and possibilities of the method are nicely demonstrated with a diagram derived from Loch Ness stable isotope data. Every dot represents the carbon and nitrogen signature of a component of the ecosystem. The arrow shows the expected (average) shift of the signatures for one trophic level. For example, the relationships fit very well for macroinvertebrates and sticklebacks. As sticklebacks live in shallow waters, we would expect them to feed on macroinvertebrates. A similar relationship exists for pelagic Arctic char feeding on zooplankton, brown trout feeding on minnows, and pike feeding on sticklebacks. The purely piscivorous ferox trout occupies the highest trophic position. Some results are not so evident. For example, crustacean zooplankton show a larger increase of $\delta^{15}N$ compared to phytoplankton than expected for herbivores (5.1‰ instead of 3.4‰). This indicates that crustacean zooplankton do not exclusively feed on phytoplankton, but include protozoans in their diet. They are rather omnivores. Also the mixed zooplankton sample contained some carnivorous species, e.g., *Bythotrephes*. The final signature is a mixture of the different food source signatures (Grey *et al*. 2001).

An ideal food chain would be associated to a straight line with the direction of the arrow. The central part of the



continues

Box 7.1 ***continued***

diagram follows this line reasonably well, but there are some outliers indicating that these organisms exploit different carbon sources. Salmon are ^{13}C enriched as they accumulated their mass in the sea, which is associated with a higher ^{13}C baseline. Salmon parr grow from eggs laid in freshwater streams entering Loch Ness. Their relatively high ^{13}C signature reflects a dilution of the maternal signature by freshwater feeding. On the other hand, chironomid larvae are extremely depleted in ^{13}C. These data suggest that they feed on a substrate with an even lower $\delta^{13}C$. Only natural methane produced by archaea in anoxic sediments shows such a low signature. Of course, chironomids cannot eat methane. This discrepancy stimulated research on the real food sources of chironomids, so far considered detritivores. There is now convincing evidence that these bottom dwellers feed on methanotrophic bacteria (see Section 4.3.10) at the interface of oxic and anoxic sediment conditions. Often the unexpected results evoke new interesting questions.

[Figure caption] Typical example of a food web analysis using stable isotopes. An isotopic biplot of the $\delta^{13}C$ signatures and $\delta^{15}N$ signatures (‰) of components of the food web of Loch Ness, Scotland (courtesy of J. Grey and R.I. Jones). The arrow indicates the expected average increase of $\delta^{13}C$ (0.4‰) and $\delta^{15}N$ (3.4‰) over one trophic level. Abbreviations: A, ammocoetes (lamprey larvae); BT, brown trout; C, Arctic char; CH, chironomid larvae; FT, ferox trout; M, minnows; MI, macroinvertebrates; P, pike, PH, phytoplankton; PT, terrestrial plant material; S, salmon; SB, stickleback; SE, sediment; SP, salmon parr; TP, trout parr; Z, crustacean zooplankton.

contents analysis is that it is conservative, i.e., it integrates over time, while gut contents reflect only the very recent food uptake. Also, guts often contain large fractions of unidentified material, which results in inconclusive data. With greater availability of mass spectrometers, *stable isotope analysis* (SIA) has become widely applied, and its importance is still increasing with new applications. Although a diagram as depicted in Box 7.1 looks rather straightforward, the interpretation is not trivial: SIA must be used with caution and checked rigorously with regard to the known ecology of the organisms involved in every case. We will use some examples to demonstrate the potentials and limitations of the approach.

Figure 7.4 shows the SIA of a benthic food web in a eutrophic lake (Schluensee, northern Germany). There are four potential basal food sources—the leaves of elder *Alnus* sp. of terrestrial origin, sediment microflora, epiphytic microflora, and the submerged macrophyte *Potamogeton perfoliatus*—which differ widely in their $\delta^{13}C$ (–30 to –18‰) (see Box 7.1). Four basal food sources make it impossible to recalculate diet composition exactly from mixing equations, if only two elements were measured, but the $\delta^{13}C$-values of benthic animals suggest it is improbable that *Alnus* leaves and or *Potamogeton* could have been a substantial part of primary consumer diets. Invertebrates with a high $\delta^{13}C$, e.g., the grazing snails *Theodoxus fluviatilis* and *Radix ovata*, probably relied on epiphytes. Invertebrates with a low $\delta^{13}C$, e.g., chironomid larvae, the amphipod *Gammarus pulex*, and the isopod *Asellus aquaticus*, would have consumed greater amounts of sediment microflora. The $\delta^{15}N$-values indicate that fish (stone loach *Noemacheilus barbatulus*; perch *Perca fluviatilis*, stickleback *Gasterosteus aculeatus*) occupy higher trophic levels than invertebrates. Larger individuals of the same species (*P. fluviatilis*) occupy higher trophic levels than smaller individuals. Overall, the scatter plot has a triangular shape. The interspecific differences of $\delta^{13}C$ decrease with increasing $\delta^{15}N$. This indicates that the strands of the food web tend to merge as one moves toward the top predators.

However, a closer inspection of the diagram in Fig. 7.4 also shows some problems and limitations of the approach. The snail *Galba trunculata* has a slightly lower $\delta^{15}N$-value than epiphytes and *Potamogeton*, thus excluding feeding on them, but its $\delta^{13}C$ is too high to indicate feeding on sediment microflora or *Alnus* leaves. If there was no trophic enrichment of $\delta^{15}N$, $\delta^{13}C$-values would be compatible with feeding on a mixture of sediment microflora and epiphytes. Indeed, it has been shown that the 3.4‰ enrichment rule can only be applied with some confidence to carnivores, while herbivores have both a significantly lower mean and a higher variance (2.52 ± 2.5‰ SD) in trophic enrichment factor (Vander Zanden and Rasmussen 2001).

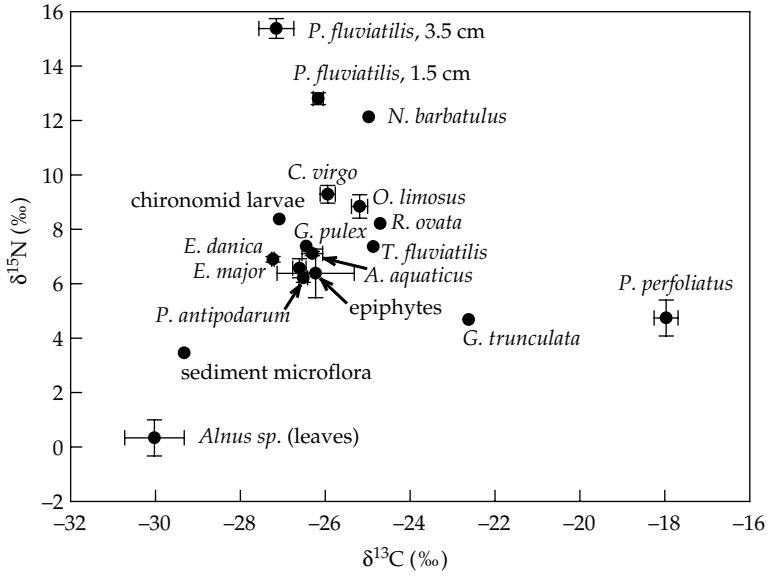


Figure 7.4 Stable isotope analysis ($\delta^{13}C$ and $\delta^{15}N$) of food web components in a littoral macrophyte stand of a eutrophic lake (Schluensee, Germany) in summer. Error bars represent ±1 SD. Macrophytes: *Potamogeton perfoliatus*. Invertebrates: *Asellus aquaticus*, *Bithynia tentaculata*, *Calypterix virgo*, chironomid larvae, *Ephemerella danica*, *Ephemerella major*, *Galba trunculata*, *Gammarus pulex*, *Lymnea stagnalis*, *Orconectes limosus*, *Potamopyrgus antipodarum*, *Theodoxus fluviatilis*. Fish: *Gasterosteus aculeatus*, *Noemacheilus barbatulus*, *Perca fluviatilis* (courtesy of S. Jaschinski).

Therefore, these authors recommend to restrict the use of the ^{13}C–^{15}N approach to the carnivorous trophic levels and to use primary consumers as baseline. While increasing the reliability of the method, this also leads to an inevitable loss of information. It is impossible to determine to what extent the baseline species are omnivorous, e.g., zooplankton or benthic periphyton feeders feed on both algae and protozoans.

Information on temporal and spatial changes in food web structure and resource switching in organisms can be provided by SIA. For example, it is evident that chironomid larvae in the Loch Ness diagram (Box 7.1) are much more ^{13}C-depleted than those in the shallow macrophyte bed of Schluensee (Fig. 7.4). This can be expected if the very negative $\delta^{13}C$ of Loch Ness chironomids is a consequence of feeding on methanotrophic bacteria. There is no methane production in the well-oxygenated macrophyte bed. Detailed studies have shown that chironomid $\delta^{13}C$ is negatively related with methane production and oxidation rates in the sediments where they live (Deines and Grey 2006). Unstratified shallow lakes with oxygen down to the bottom and frequently disturbed sediments have low methane production rates. Consequently, chironomid larvae are not strongly ^{13}C depleted. On the other hand, chironomids dwelling below the thermocline in deep stratified lakes with oxygen depletion in the hypolimnion show strong seasonal fluctuations in $\delta^{13}C$, between –40‰ in spring and –60‰ at the end of the stratification period (Grey *et al*. 2004). When larvae with such low $\delta^{13}C$ signatures leave the lake as adult midges, the methane signal can be found in spiders near the water edge and in young swallows. In this way ^{13}C analysis has detected a significant carbon pathway from methane to terrestrial animals.

The SIA of durable parts, such as fish scales, can be used in retrospect to document historical changes in resource use of species. An example is given by Gerdeaux and Perga (2006) for two subalpine lakes. Lake Constance (see Section 8.6.2) and Lake Geneva have both gone through a remarkable cycle of eutrophication and reoligotrophication during the past 50 years. Whitefish *Coregonus* sp. are the most important species for commercial fisheries in both lakes. Thus, fishery biologists have studied growth of these fishes continuously, and they have archived scales used for age determination. Scales from fish

of the eutrophication/reoligotrophication period have now been subjected to SIA. Scales from the oligotrophic Swiss Lake Annecy, which had not been nutrient enriched, were used as controls. A significant shift in $\delta^{13}C$ was observed in fish from both lakes; $\delta^{13}C$ increased during eutrophication and decreased again during re-oligotrophication. There was a strong positive relationship between $\delta^{13}C$ and total phosphorus (proxy of trophic state) in the lake. The effect was stronger in Lake Constance than in Lake Geneva, and no shift was observed in the unaffected Lake Annecy. From the late 1950s, when the lake was still oligotrophic, to the late 1970s, the peak of the eutrophication, $\delta^{13}C$ of the scales increased from –26‰ to –20‰, then decreased again. The regression of total phosphorus vs $\delta^{13}C$ was highly significant ($r^2 = 0.9$). Unfortunately, no stable isotope data are available for components of the food web other than fish, so the reasons for this shift cannot be identified with confidence. However, some conclusions can be drawn. There are three hypotheses to explain the $\delta^{13}C$ shift:

- *Eutrophication changed the diet of the zooplanktivorous whitefish*. This is unlikely, as frequent gut analyses have shown that the whitefish always fed selectively on large *Daphnia* and predatory cladocerans.
- *Food chain length changed during eutrophication*. The inclusion of an extra trophic level should be visible in the $\delta^{15}N$ signature of the fish. There is, in fact, an increase in $\delta^{15}N$ by 2‰, but this is not sufficient to explain the $\delta^{13}C$ increase of 6‰ (see Box 7.1). It is more likely that the 2‰ reflect a nitrogen baseline shift correlated with eutrophication as the sources of nitrogen input to the lake changed, e.g., with wastewater as the cause of eutrophication.
- *A correlation exists between the baseline $\delta^{13}C$ signature of primary producers and eutrophication*. This is the most likely explanation. Clearly, phytoplankton composition changed dramatically during eutrophication. In addition, it has been observed that $\delta^{13}C$ increases when primary production increases. *Daphnia* behavior may have contributed indirectly, as increased turbidity due to higher phytoplankton density affects the vertical distribution and diel vertical migration of *Daphnia*, and thus their food resources.

Stable isotopes also provide a potent tool when applied as tracers in experiments. As they cause no environmental impact, they can be used in whole-lake experiments to study the flow of elements. ^{13}C has been used as a tracer to study the question how much of the carbon flow in lake food webs is fueled by autochthonous primary production or allochthonous input of carbon from the watershed. In small water bodies, the external input of organic carbon often exceeds internal primary production, but the exogenous material is considered recalcitrant, i.e., difficult to assimilate. However, in production biology it is important to know to what extent allochthonous carbon supports secondary production of invertebrates and fish.

Cole *et al*. (2002) added ^{13}C as inorganic carbon ($NaH^{13}CO_3$) in a single pulse to a small shallow humic lake and measured the time course of $\delta^{13}C$ in the pools of DIC, DOC, POC and various components of the food web. Gross primary production and respiration were estimated at the same time. The authors used a sophisticated model to estimate the fluxes between the compartments. After the spiking of the DIC pool, the enrichment of different pools was a transient phenomenon. The DIC signal disappeared quickly due to rapid loss of carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. $\delta^{13}C$ in the POC peaked at day 3 after ^{13}C addition. Zooplankton followed with a peak at day 5 and returned to pre-spiking values after 20 days. The conclusion from the experiment was that allochthonous carbon was respired by bacteria, but only very little was transferred through the food web. Zooplankton, and thus higher trophic levels, received 90% of their carbon from living and nonliving POC of autochthonous origin.

A similar experiment was carried out in two small (about 2 ha) lakes in Michigan (USA), Peter Lake and Paul Lake (Pace 2004). This time the lakes were not spiked only once; instead $NaH^{13}CO_3$ was added daily for a period of about 40 days. The conclusions drawn from this experiment were different. About half of the POC in the lakes was estimated to be of terrestrial origin, not autochthonous. This allochthonous POC was assimilated by animals and passed through the food web. *Daphnia* received 10–50% of its carbon from sources other than primary production in the lake. Hence, the importance of allochthonous carbon sources for ecosystem metabolism is probably dependent on lake morphology, catchment,

nutrient status, and food web structure determined by top-down processes.

7.3.4 Keystone species

Populations within a food web directly affect their "neighbors" and indirectly influence other populations with which they are integrated. Effects of population interactions can travel through the food web, although the effects may be damped. Species with especially far-reaching effects are called *keystone species* (keystone predators; Paine 1969). Just as one cannot remove a keystone in an arch without causing its collapse, a keystone species cannot be removed without causing a dramatic change in the community.

Such keystone species need not be associated with major pathways of matter and energy in the food web. For example, a disease vector with negligible energy flow could alter the composition of a community by eradicating a dominant population within a guild, thereby allowing its competitors to become dominant.

Piscivorous fish are frequently keystone species in lakes. They eat planktivorous fish that, in turn, eat zooplankton (see Section 6.5.3). If there are few piscivorous fish (e.g., because of overfishing), the population of planktivorous fish will increase, eliminating the large herbivorous zooplankton and invertebrate predators, so that the small zooplankton become dominant (see Fig. 6.33). The reduced zooplankton biomass and the shift to smaller zooplankton results in lower grazing pressure, increased growth of the small algae, and lower water clarity. The macrophytes and their associated fauna may also change in response to the poorer underwater light conditions. In this case, one guild, or even one species, can completely restructure a community, even though its biomass is very small.

Cormorants have taken on the role of keystone species in the shallow lakes of the Norfolk Broads in England (Leah *et al*. 1980). Of two neighboring lakes, only one was connected to a nearby stream. Cormorants drastically reduced the population of planktivorous fish in the isolated lake, whereas there were frequent immigrations of fish into the other lake from the stream. Both lakes had similar nutrient concentrations. The water in the isolated lake became clear after the large zooplankton became abundant. Macrophytes then increased in response to the higher water transparency and the diversity of the benthic animals also increased.

Predatory fish can also be an important link in the benthic food chains. Small prairie streams provide a striking example (Power *et al*. 1985). Prairie streams have extremely variable flow. In the summer the stream may consist of isolated pools connected by small rivulets, but after a rainstorm the brook can become a gigantic river. During the dry period, one can recognize from a distance which pools have a large predatory fish (smallmouth bass *Micropterus*). The bottoms of these pools are covered with a brown layer of algae, with only occasional small strips of bare gravel. Pools without smallmouth bass are clean and have algae growing only in the very shallow water. Small, algal-grazing minnows *Campostoma* are normally numerous enough to keep the growth of algae in the pools under control. Hence, the pools are clean. The predatory smallmouth bass eat most of the *Campostoma* or chase them out of the pools. Those that remain stay in the very shallow regions of the pool, where they create clean "edge strips," while the deeper parts of the pool become covered with benthic algae.

Clearly, the contrasting algal growth creates very different living conditions for the benthic animals (e.g., insect larvae and other periphyton grazers). This has been shown in experiments with *Campostoma*, crayfish, and snails in artificial streams (Vaughn *et al*. 1993). The algivorous minnows had a negative effect on crayfish, probably because of resource monopolization. On the other hand, the production of snails *Physella* was indirectly enhanced by the minnows. By removing the overstorey algae, the minnows increased the growth of the algae closely attached to the substrate, which are fed upon by the snails. These examples demonstrate that the predatory fish can be viewed as a keystone species. There are now numerous examples proving that the keystone species concept can be applied in streams as well as in standing waters (Power *et al*. 1996).

The impact of a predator on a community depends on the strength of its interaction with other species. Brönmark (1994) studied the effects of Eurasian perch *Perca fluviatilis* and tench *Tinca tinca* in benthic

enclosures. Perch and tench both feed on macroinvertebrates and thus belong to the same trophic level. Only tench eat large numbers of snails, however. Snails appeared to have the strongest interactions within the macroinvertebrate community. As tench reduced the number and biomass of grazing snails in the enclosures, there was an increase in the periphyton biomass on the macrophytes (*Elodea canadensis*) and a decrease in the biomass of the macrophytes, probably due to shading by periphyton. Enclosures with perch that do not feed on snails had no such "cascading" effects.

The idea that the effect of fish can be translated through the zooplankton to the phytoplankton has led to its practical application as a form of *biomanipulation* in eutrophic lakes. It is based on the premise that a reduction in the population of planktivorous fish will lead to larger zooplankton, increased grazing, and clearer water.

When many lakes are compared, there is a significant logarithmic relationship between phosphorus concentration and algal biomass (see Fig. 8.11). The deviation of some of the individual lakes from the regression line is quite striking. Many of the lakes that are below the regression line, having less chlorophyll than predicted for their phosphorus concentration, are lakes with small populations of planktivorous fish. J. Shapiro concluded that one should be able to improve the water quality of a eutrophic lake by manipulating the fish populations. He referred to this as "biomanipulation," although "food-chain manipulation" may be more appropriate. In the first experiments fish populations were eliminated with rotenone, a fish poison that also kills many of the zooplankton, although they quickly repopulate the lake as the poison is rapidly decomposed (Anderson 1970). The species composition of the zooplankton changed within a short time. As expected, the large filter-feeding zooplankton appeared and suppressed the algae (Fig. 7.5).

Lakes always respond very rapidly to the elimination of fish by rotenone. Poisoning of lakes is not only a questionable method, it also has short-lived results. Migrating planktivorous fish usually re-enter the lakes and re-establish the dominance of small zooplankton. Also, the composition of the algae frequently shifts toward high standing crops of grazing-resistant species. Both of these effects can be seen in Fig. 7.5. Thus efforts are being made to develop "less harsh" methods that produce stable, long-term effects. One method is to remove planktivorous fish by intensive netting and then stock the lake with large numbers of piscivorous fish. Many north temperate lakes in Europe and North America are suited to the use of walleye, pikeperch, northern pike, and largemouth bass. After a period of repeated stocking, the population of piscivorous fish may reproduce naturally, and the altered food web structure can be maintained at a stable level. Even if the total algal biomass is not reduced, the phytoplankton are often dominated by colonial

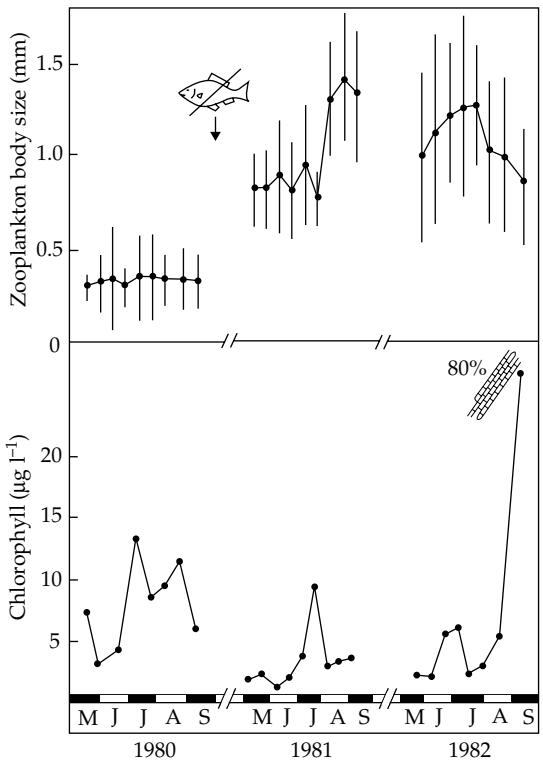


Figure 7.5 Biomanipulation of Round Lake (Michigan, USA) by poisoning the entire fish population with rotenone. *Top*: Body size (mean and standard deviation) of the zooplankton in the summer before biomanipulation (1980) and in the summers following (1981, 1982). *Bottom:* Biomass of the phytoplankton (measured as chlorophyll) before and after biomanipulation. The maximal value after biomanipulation (September 1982) was caused by the massive development of the cyanobacterium *Aphanizomenon flos-aquae*, which is largely resistant to grazing by zooplankton (data from Shapiro and Wright 1984).

forms that scatter the light less than the small algae, producing clearer water (Benndorf *et al*. 1988).

The piscivorous fish are keystone species, since their effect transcends several trophic levels, ultimately changing not only the plankton, but the entire lake. This is especially apparent from biomanipulation attempts in the Netherlands. In one case, fish were removed from a small eutrophic lake named Zwemlust (i.e., "pleasure of swimming") by draining. The following year the water stayed very clear because large *Daphnia* that kept the algae under control, despite very high concentrations of nutrients in the lake. Following the manipulation, light penetrated to the bottom of the lake and massive amounts of macrophytes immediately began to grow. These aquatic plants stabilized the sediments and bound the nutrients. The following year, the zooplankton biomass decreased, but the lake stayed clear. It was then possible to replace fish in the lake and establish high densities of piscivorous fish, since pike in particular use the macrophytes as a preferred habitat and hiding place. At this point, the lake was beautifully clean, but of limited use for swimming. Sufficient clear space for swimmers was made by removing the plants periodically, without negatively impacting the restoration effects. However, due to high external nutrient loading, the clear-water state was not stable in the long term. Algae became dominant again and shaded out the macrophytes. Hence planktivorous fish were removed once more in 1999, and the cycle began again (Van de Bund and Van Donk 2002).

Results from lake biomanipulation efforts are contradictory. Even where the manipulation has succeeded, a single theory based on predation cannot explain all the effects produced. It can be shown in the laboratory that some of the large colonial algae (especially cyanobacteria) cannot be eaten, even by the largest zooplankton (e.g., *Daphnia magna*). These are the algal species that usually dominate when a biomanipulation fails to reduce the algal biomass. Sometimes, however, they do not appear after biomanipulation. One possible answer is that the large colonies begin as small aggregates made up of only a few cells that can be grazed. The success of the biomanipulation may depend on having high densities of zooplankton present when the small colonies first develop and are still edible. If the zooplankton appear too late, they are unable to gain control of the algae (Gliwicz 1990b). Three decades after the introduction of the concept it is clear that biomanipulation as a management tool is not as simple a technique as thought in the beginning. It requires a deep understanding of the processes controlling interactions in an aquatic community (Kasprzak *et al*. 2002).

7.3.5 The "bottom-up/top-down" controversy

The keystone species concept, the size–efficiency hypothesis, and experience from biomanipulations have led to the assumption that, in contrast to the flows of energy and matter, the controlling influence ("controls") in communities flows from the top to the bottom ("*top-down*"). This idea of control flowing downward in the food chain has been termed *trophic cascade* (Carpenter *et al*. 1985). The biomass and species composition of each guild is determined as those species left over by the predators. The traditional "*bottom-up*" concept maintains that "many prey can feed many predators," whereas the top-down hypothesis proposes "where there are many predators, few prey will remain." The bottom-up hypothesis requires that the biomasses of all the trophic levels are positively correlated and depend on the fertility (limiting resources) of the habitat: more available nutrients → more algae → more zooplankton → more planktivorous fish → more piscivorous fish. The top-down hypothesis predicts, on the other hand, that the adjacent trophic levels will be negatively correlated: more piscivorous fish → fewer planktivorous fish → more zooplankton → fewer algae → more available nutrients.

Proponents of the top-down hypothesis typically use the results from mesocosm enclosures ("limnocorrals"; see Fig. 2.1b). Pelagic communities are often manipulated in these experiments by adding fish, reducing zooplankton populations, and adding nutrients. Stocking of fish in the mesocosms usually produces the results predicted by the top-down hypothesis: reduction in the zooplankton biomass, shift to small zooplankton species, and increase in phytoplankton. Alternatively, an increase in phytoplankton can also be caused by fertilizing the enclosure, which produces a bottom-up effect.

Time and space limitations of this type of experiment do not allow one to see whether this effect is also carried through the higher trophic levels to the fish. In a typical enclosure experiment (Fig. 7.6) in which fish and nutrients were manipulated, the presence of a single sunfish (7 cm long) suppressed the larger zooplankton, the cladoceran *Diaphanosoma birgei*, but only when the system did not receive nutrient additions. Populations of the small cladoceran *Bosmina longirostris* did not react to the presence of the sunfish. However, both zooplankton responded positively to higher algal concentrations following nutrient enrichment. Large zooplankton such as *Daphnia* were not present in this lake due to high fish densities. From other experiments one could conclude that *Daphnia* would have been excluded entirely in the enclosures with fish.

The relative importance of bottom-up or top-down controls has been debated mainly as an "either–or" question. There are few quantitative comparisons of these two effects. To do this, one would have to make dose–effect type comparisons of the effects of nutrient and fish manipulations on all trophic levels. The question would be "How many fish produce how many algae?" This type of investigation would be difficult to conduct because of the tremendous technical effort that is needed to deal with even a few enclosures. Thus most manipulations make comparisons in terms of "all or nothing" or "much and little."

Whole-lake observations have similarly contradictory results. On the one hand, the top-down hypothesis is frequently confirmed by responses to biomanipulations and changes in plankton communities after fish immigrations or a fish die-off (Vanni *et al*. 1990). On the other hand, investigations comparing lakes with differing trophic conditions show a positive correlation of phosphorus not only with the phytoplankton biomass, but also with the biomass of the total zooplankton, the crustacean zooplankton, the fish populations, and the fish

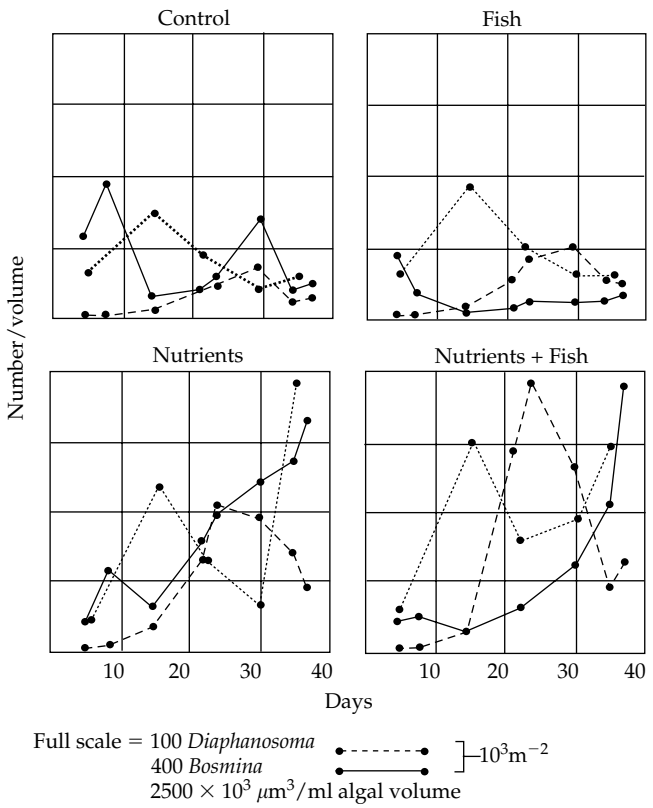


Figure 7.6 An example of typical enclosure experiment for manipulation of plankton communities. Four groups of three plastic bags (1 m^3) were treated differently: the controls were untreated; one group received one sunfish (7 cm) per bag; the third group was enriched with nutrients (nitrogen and phosphorus); the fourth group received nutrients and a fish. The changes through time in the most important components of plankton are shown. Solid line: The intermediate-sized cladoceran *Diaphanosoma birgei* (full scale = 10^5 individuals m^{-2}). Dotted line: The small cladoceran *Bosmina longirostris* (full scale = 4×10^5 individuals m^{-2}). Dashed line: Volume of "edible" phytoplankton (full scale = 2.5×10^6 $\mu m^3 ml^{-1}$) (from Vanni 1987).

harvested (see Section 8.5.3). These studies support the bottom-up hypothesis. Year-to-year comparisons within the same lake with essentially constant nutrient conditions usually support the top-down hypothesis, whereas comparisons of different lakes tend to support the bottom-up hypothesis.

Species composition, as described earlier for biomass, can be examined for controls from below (e.g., influence of the Si:P ratio on the phytoplankton composition; see Fig. 6.11) or from above (e.g., shift toward poorly edible phytoplankton species with increasing influence by zooplankton). Clearly, although the two controls represent independent mechanisms, they are not mutually exclusive. It is easy to include species-specific mortality rates in the competition model (see Section 6.1.3), where they shift the outcome of the competition by changing the R^*. Grazing pressure does not necessarily eliminate the competition for resources; it only changes the conditions under which it takes place.

Although most food web manipulations have been performed in lentic waters, there is no reason to assume that top-down and bottom-up control are less important in streams. Manipulated streams provide results similar to the enclosures. The manipulation of top predators results in cascading top-down effects. Bechara *et al*. (1992) compared experimental streams with and without the top predator, brook trout *Salvelinus fontinalis*. When brook trout were present, large invertebrate grazers (mayfly nymphs) were suppressed. This resulted in a short-term doubling of the periphyton biomass. Small grazers (chironomid larvae), however, profited from the abundance of periphyton. Thus there was a strong top-down effect without changing the availability of nutrients. On the other hand, streams that receive nutrient additions have higher algal biomass than nutrient-poor streams. As shown earlier for lakes, both top-down and bottom-up mechanisms also are important in streams.

Rosemond *et al*. (1994) examined the relative effects of herbivory and nutrients on stream algal communities. They manipulated the levels of nutrients (nitrogen and phosphorus) and grazing by snails in experimental streams with a simple community structure of two trophic levels. The addition of nutrients and removal of snails produced the greatest effect on the community structure and growth of the periphyton. The effects were less pronounced when grazers were removed at low nutrient levels or when nutrients were added under grazing pressure, indicating both mechanisms are important. Snails grew better at high nutrient levels. They were controlled bottom-up as the system had no predator for snails. The relative strength of bottom-up and top-down control varied for different parameters, but clearly the combined bottom-up and top-down control effects were stronger than either one of the two individually.

In another study, McIntosh *et al*. (2005) examined abundance and growth of the leaf-shredding caddisfly *Zelandopsyche ingens* in response to food resources (*Notofagus* leaves) and predatory brown trout *Salmo trutta*. They compared caddisflies in streams with varying leaf litter input with and without fish. Caddisfly numbers were positively related to leaf biomass, and were significantly larger in fish-free streams at any given leaf biomass. Also individual caddisflies were larger in the fish-free streams. Thus bottom-up factors (availability of detrital resources) determine maximum population size, while top-down factors (fish predation) reduce population size to the actual, lower levels.

7.3.6 Attempts at synthesis in the bottom-up/top-down controversy

Damping of the effects

McQueen *et al*. (1989) proposed a synthesized bottom-up/top-down concept that suggests the effects of both nutrients and fish are increasingly damped as they pass through the food web. Thus, being at the bottom trophic level, phytoplankton show the greatest bottom-up effects, whereas the higher trophic levels (from zooplankton on upwards) respond more to the top-down effects. This concept is illustrated by a 7-year study of Lake George, Canada (Fig. 7.7). In the beginning (1980–82) the lake had a large population of piscivorous fish and a moderate population of planktivorous fish. A winter fish kill caused by low oxygen under the ice (1981–82) reduced both fish guilds. The population of planktivorous fish quickly recovered with the low predation pressure and reached a maximum in 1984. The piscivorous fish slowly recovered and the population of planktivorous fish slowly

declined. The zooplankton reached maximum total biomass as well as maximum body size during the minimum of the planktivorous fish. This effect did not show up in the phytoplankton, for their biomass (measured as chlorophyll) was relatively high the same year as the zooplankton maximum. The gradual decrease in the phytoplankton during the entire period of the observations seems best explained by the simultaneous decrease in available nutrients (measured as total phosphorus). The between-year comparison shows a strong and negative correlation between piscivorous and

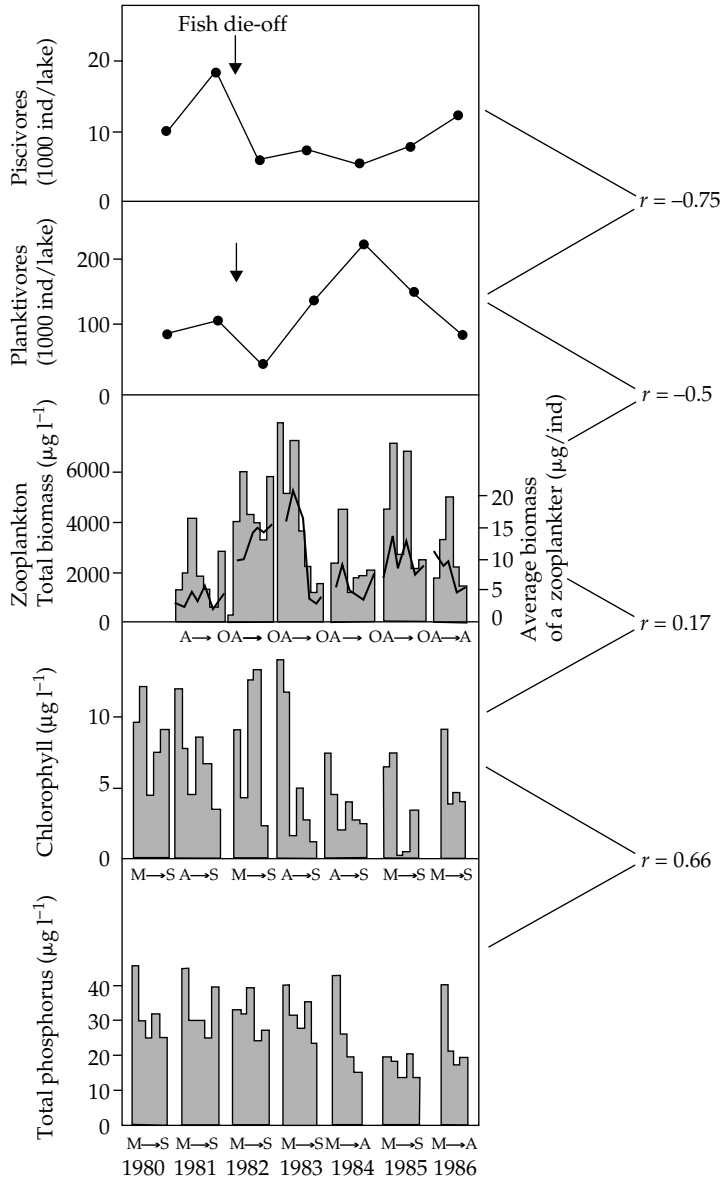


Figure 7.7 The case study of Lake George. The number of piscivorous fish and planktivorous fish (population census in the fall). Total biomass of zooplankton (bar graph) and mean biomass per individual (solid line): monthly average from April to October (1986 only to August). Phytoplankton: chlorophyll concentration, monthly average from April/May to September. Total phosphorus: monthly average from May to August/September. On the right-hand side are the correlation coefficients between the different trophic levels (from McQueen *et al*. 1989).

planktivorous fish (top-down), a weaker, but likewise negative correlation between the population of planktivorous fish and zooplankton biomass (top-down), no significant correlation between zooplankton biomass and phytoplankton biomass (although there may have been a shift in species composition), and a significant positive correlation between phytoplankton biomass and total phosphorus (bottom-up).

Vertically alternating controls

Persson *et al*. (1988) developed a model in which there is a switching of controls from above and below that is related to the number of trophic levels in the food web. The original version of this model was developed outside limnology by Oksanen *et al*. (1981). At this time there are few empirical data available to verify the model. The number of trophic levels possible in a given habitat depends on the availability of resources (bottom-up), since there are large losses (>80%) between trophic levels. There is a linear correlation between the potential primary production and the biomass of the plants in extremely infertile habitats that have only one trophic level (primary producers). When there is enough primary production to support a second trophic level, further increase in the potential production leads to an increase in the herbivore biomass (bottom-up), but to no further increase in the plant biomass, since they will be controlled by the herbivores (top-down). Further increase in production can support a third trophic level (primary carnivores) that prey on the herbivores (top-down). With increasing productivity the biomass of the plants will then increase (bottom-up), as they are released from the control by the herbivores. A fourth trophic level (secondary carnivores) can exist if the productivity increases further. The primary carnivores are then preyed upon by the secondary carnivores (top-down), releasing the herbivores from predation pressure to be controlled once again from the bottom up and the plants are controlled by the herbivores (top-down). To summarize: The number of trophic levels is controlled bottom-up; the highest trophic level is likewise controlled bottom-up; the next trophic level down is under top-down control; bottom-up and top-down control alternate between the trophic levels (Fig. 7.8). Deviating from the original model of Oksanen (see Oksanen *et al*. 1981), Persson *et al*. (1988) postulate that a further increase in productivity will cause a decrease in the number of trophic levels. This is based on empirical observations and does not follow from the logic of the Oksanen model. In extremely eutrophic lakes, for example, cyprinids often dominate the fish populations or a fish die-off may lead to the elimination of all fish.

A limitation of the Oksanen model is that it makes the simplified assumption that there are discrete trophic levels. The advantage of this model over the cascading trophic level theory and the bottom-up/top-down hypothesis is that it does

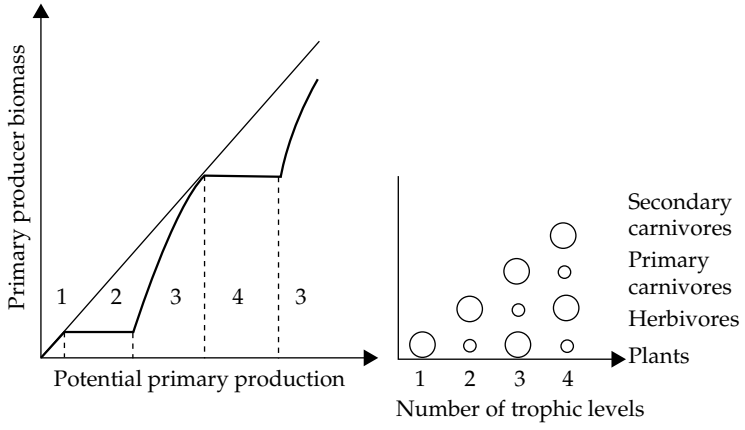


Figure 7.8 The Oksanen model of vertically alternating control. *Left:* The relationship between the plant biomass and the potential primary production and number of trophic levels. *Right:* The effect of the number of trophic levels on the type of control of the individual trophic levels (large circles: bottom-up; small circles: top-down).

not view fish as an independent variable that externally control the interactions within the system, but rather as a product of the boundary conditions that determine the development of the community within a habitat.

Is the bottom-up/top-down controversy a matter of scaling?

A comparison of many lakes with contrasting nutrient concentrations usually supports the bottom-up hypothesis. However, studies of lakes with similar nutrient levels (or different years for the same lake) and different types of fisheries management often verify the top-down hypothesis. It is premature, however, to conclude that a "large-scale" view (lake comparisons, eutrophication models) generally supports the bottom-up hypothesis, and a "small-scale" view (investigations within a lake, mesocosm experiments) usually supports the top-down hypothesis.

Even the small-scale approach can result in rapid shifts in controls from above and below, depending on the time period that is observed. An example is the spring succession in nutrient-rich lakes, when the algae first have their maximum, followed by the zooplankton maximum and the clear-water phase (see Section 6.4, Fig. 6.15). At the beginning of the season the growth rate of the zooplankton depends on the amount of algae available (bottom-up). Eventually, the grazing rate becomes so high that the clear-water phase develops (top-down).

The apparent change between controls from below and above is caused by the different time lags in the bottom-up and top-down mechanisms. Individuals that are eaten disappear immediately, but it takes time to translate an improved nutritional state into an increase in population density. The length of the time lag depends on the size of the organisms. The normal duration of a mesocosm experiment is usually sufficient to observe the effects of a fish manipulation on the lower trophic levels, but it is too short to see the effects of nutrient additions on the size of the fish population. This can only be observed in long-term experiments or by comparing different lakes.

Compensation within trophic levels

Trophic cascades occurring at the species level might be masked if aggregate measures of trophic levels, e.g., total biomass, are measured. Most predators can effectively prey only on a part of trophic level below them, while other species are more or less protected. Those species might profit from the removal of competitors and increase in biomass, thus partially or fully compensating for the top-down impact. Polis *et al*. (2000) have suggested, to distinguish between "community-level cascades" impacting entire trophic levels and "species-level cascades" impacting single species or groups of species.

Species-level cascades without pronounced impact on primary producer biomass are particularly probable, if even- and odd-linked food chains lead to the same consumer, as it is the case with "herbivorous" copepods. Most "herbivorous" copepods consume large phytoplankton and ciliates. By consuming ciliates, they release small phytoplankton from grazing pressure by ciliates. Thus, small phytoplankton may increase and compensate for copepod grazing on large phytoplankton. This might be the main reason why community-level cascades are less frequently found in the marine pelagic, where copepods usually dominate the zooplankton, than in lakes where frequently *Daphnia* dominates the zooplankton (Sommer and Sommer 2006).

The possibility of top-town effects on entire trophic levels depends on both the functional diversity of the predator and the prey trophic level. More different prey types increase the probability that predation-resistant ones can compensate for the losses of the vulnerable ones. More different predator types increase the probability that defense mechanism of the prey can be overcome. This was demonstrated by mesocosm experiments in the mesotrophic Schöhsee (northern Germany). A suite of mesocosms was filled with the natural phytoplankton and protist community and was inoculated with different densities of *Daphnia*. A second suite of mesocosms was inoculated with different densities of copepods. In spring, when phytoplankton consisted almost exclusively of small and medium-sized algae, *Daphnia* strongly reduced total phytoplankton biomass. They reduced it more strongly, the more *Daphnia* were in the enclosures and produced a clear-water phase (see Section 6.4.1). In the copepod mesocosms, no effect on phytoplankton biomass was found (Feuchtmayr 2004).

The situation was drastically different during summer, when phytoplankton consisted of the full range from small picoplankton to large dinoflagellates and cyanobacteria. In this case, neither *Daphnia* nor the copepods could reduce total phytoplankton biomass, but both had contrasting effects on the size structure (Fig. 7.9). *Daphnia* removed the small algal species and favored the large ones, while copepods removed the large algae and favored the small ones. After *c*.10 days, a contamination of the copepod mesocosms by *Daphnia* led to a strong decrease of phytoplankton in those mesocosms where both zooplankton groups had developed substantial populations (Sommer *et al*. 2003).

7.4 Species richness and diversity

7.4.1 Measures of diversity

Species richness and *diversity* are among the most intensively discussed concepts in the fields of theoretical ecology and conservation. Both concepts can be applied to entire communities as well as to subcomponents such as trophic levels, guilds, and taxonomic aggregates. Species richness or total number of species is certainly the easier measure to understand, but in practice it is difficult to determine. The discovery of rare species is very strongly dependent on the sample size and how intensively one searches, so it is practically impossible to

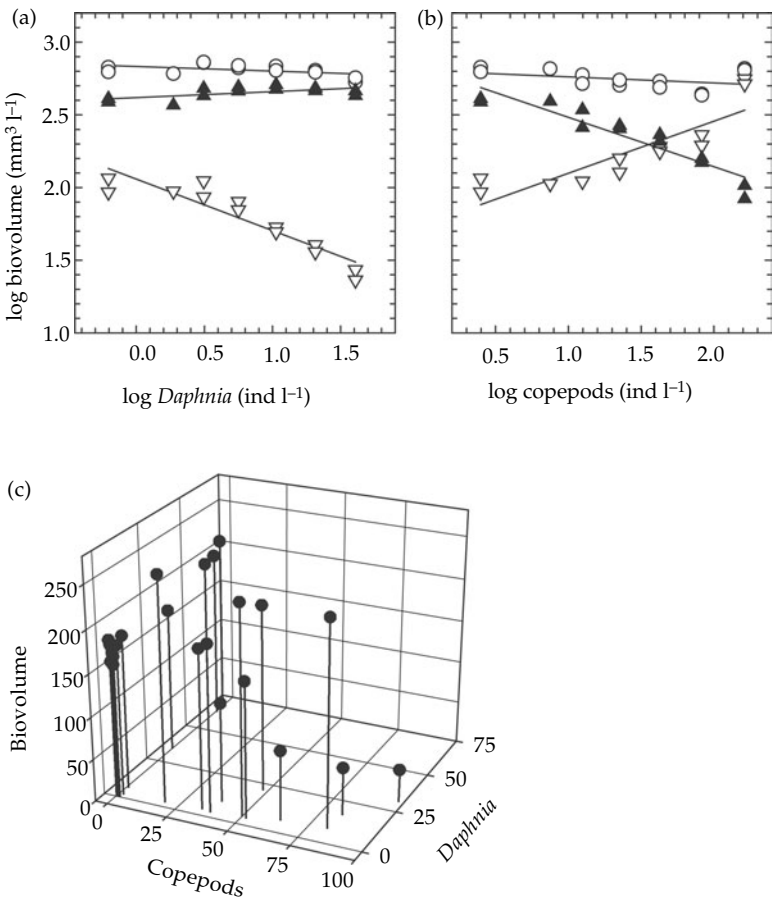


Figure 7.9 Response of summer phytoplankton biomass to experimentally manipulated zooplankton densities in mesocosms. (a), (b) uncontaminated *Daphnia* and copepod treatments after 10 days. Open circles: total biovolume; filled triangles: large (>1000 μm^3) phytoplankton; open triangles: small phytoplankton (>1000 μm^3). (c) total phytoplankton biomass ($mm^3\,l^{-1}$) in relation to *Daphnia* and copepod densities ($ind\,l^{-1}$) after copepod mesocosms had become contaminated by *Daphnia* (day 21) (data from Sommer and Stibor 2002, Sommer and Sommer 2006).

determine the actual species richness for a community or subunit. In contrast, most diversity indices that are used stabilize after a relatively few, frequent species have been found. Thus rare species have little effect on these indices.

Diversity consists of two components, the number of species and the *equitability*; that is, the uniformity of abundance in the species found. If, for the same number of species, one species is dominant and all others are rare, there will be a lower diversity of the community, guild, etc. than if all species were represented equally. Hurlbert's "*probability of interspecific encounters*" (PIE) is one of the most biologically meaningful concepts, of the many proposed *diversity indices* (Washington 1984). It shows the probability that two individuals randomly encountering one another belong to different species:

$$\mathrm{PIE} = N/(N-1)(1-\sum p_i^2)$$

where $N$is the total number of individuals and p_i the proportion of species i in the total number (N_i/N).

At higher values of N, PIE approaches the simplified version of the *Simpson index* (D):

$$D = 1-\sum p_i^2$$

Both indices express the equitability of the frequent species and are extremely insensitive to the effects of rare species. Indices based on information theory indicate the *information content* of an individual. These indices also rely primarily on the dominant species, but are somewhat more sensitive to rare species. Although there is much debate about the ecological relevance of the concept of "information," they are still the most widely used indices, especially the Shannon and Weaver's H' index:

$$H' = -\sum(p_i \log p_i)$$

It is difficult to calculate diversity indices when individuals cannot be easily defined, such as colonial protists. There are also problems within communities because of extreme size differences, where the smallest forms, whose species is often difficult to determine, make up a trivial amount of the biomass, but may entirely dominate in numbers. For example, this is true for the "picoplankton," which in most cases can only be enumerated as a collective category. In such cases, it is usually better to calculate the diversity indices on the basis of biomass rather than numbers of individuals.

7.4.2 Causes and maintenance of diversity

Thienemann's *biocoenotic laws* represent an early attempt to explain the diversity of different communities:

- The more diverse the environmental conditions (i.e., the more species that can live near their optimum), the greater the number of species that will occur, although there will be only a few individuals of each species.
- The more harsh the environmental conditions (i.e., the further they are from the optima of most species), the more a few species will dominate the total picture. These will be represented in very large numbers, however.

There are examples from many extreme biotopes, many of which are a result of anthropogenic changes. For example, over 100 tubificid worms per cm^2, more than one animal for each mm^2, were found in the highly polluted sludge of the harbor at Hamburg (Germany).

Quite early there were attempts to hypothesize large-scale trends in diversity: increase in diversity from the poles to the tropics; lower diversity on islands than on continents. These global trends were primarily based on macroscopic organisms in terrestrial and in littoral marine communities. Lewis (1987) argues against a latitudinal trend in diversity for phytoplankton and zooplankton in lakes; it may hold for fish, however, although there has been no systematic investigation of this. Even less is known about benthic communities in this regard. The extremely high species richness of the fish populations in Lake Tanganyika cannot be viewed as representative of the tropics, since this lake belongs to the small group of tertiary lakes that are much older than the large majority of lakes that originated in the Ice Age.

If speciation and immigration are the processes that contribute to the formation and maintenance of diversity in a community (see Sections 6.1.1 and 6.1.3), then the exclusion of inferior competitors is a force that acts to decrease diversity. Various forms of abiotic stress, to which only a few species are resistant, also tend to reduce diversity (e.g., toxic

pollution, extreme temperatures, oxygen depletion). This idea corresponds to Thienemann's second biocoenotic law. Extreme conditions for one group of organisms are not necessarily extreme conditions for another. The diversity of animals would certainly decrease in response to an oxygen deficit, whereas the diversity of microaerobic and anaerobic microorganisms would increase.

The effects of grazing on diversity are not so clear. A nonselective grazing pressure that is constant over time has the same effect on a guild of prey organisms as an increase in the flowthrough rate of a chemostat. Other species may be selected, but the number of species capable of coexisting will not change, although it can change if the predator alters its feeding behavior. If, for example, it concentrates on the most abundant prey, this would work against competitive exclusion and increase the likelihood of coexistence. Temporal changes in grazing pressure (e.g., due to predator–prey oscillations) also contribute, independent of selectivity, to an increase in the diversity of the food organisms, because they create changes in the conditions of competition.

Next to recruitment of new species, temporal and spatial changes in the conditions of competition are the most important mechanism for maintaining diversity against the pressure of competitive exclusion. As described earlier in the "intermediate disturbance hypothesis" in Section 6.1.4, intermediate frequencies of disturbance should lead to maintenance of the highest diversity. Intervals of about three generation times between disturbances produced the maximum diversity in experiments with phytoplankton (Gaedeke and Sommer 1986).

Cycles of very different lengths can occur in lakes (Fig. 7.10). The daily cycle is too short and the yearly cycle too long to have an important effect on the diversity of phytoplankton. Predator–prey cycles

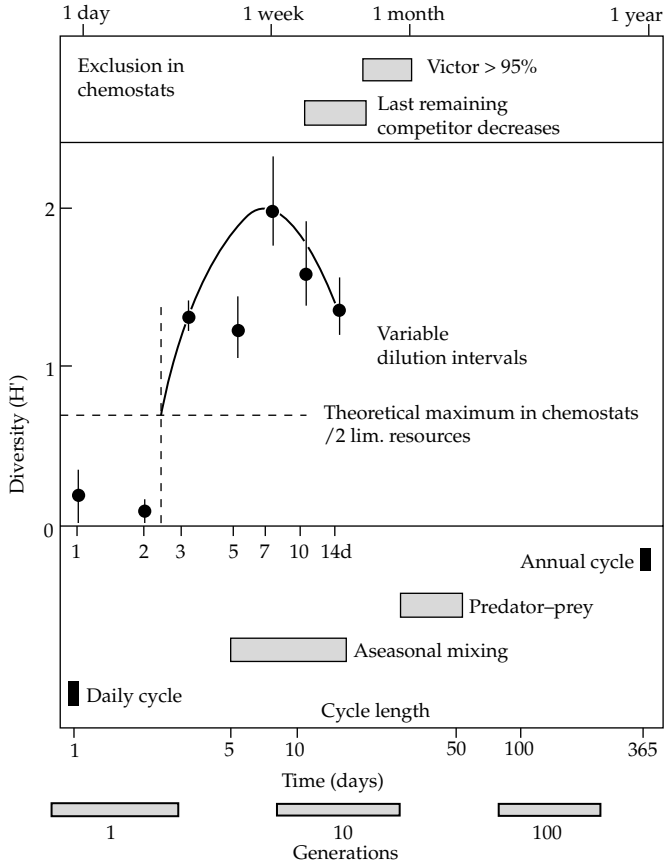


Figure 7.10 The diversity of the phytoplankton and time scale of potential changes in the competition conditions. *Top:* The time course of exclusion in chemostat experiments. *Middle:* Diversity of phytoplankton (H', calculated as natural logarithm) in competition experiments with periodic dilution and variable intervals (from Gaedeke and Sommer 1986). *Bottom: T*, the time scale of naturally occurring changes in the competition conditions.

between *Daphnia* and edible algae usually have a period of 30–50 days (McCauley and Murdoch 1987). This is longer than the optimal time interval for maintaining diversity, but compared to constant conditions, it still can promote diversity. Bad weather fronts can cause aseasonal increases in the mixing depth. Such fronts are highly irregular, but at temperate latitudes tend to occur most often at intervals of 5–15 days. This is very near the interval of optimal diversity for phytoplankton. The effects of the lack of aseasonal mixing events can be illustrated with the extremely stable summer in 1989 in Plußsee, a wind-protected lake in northern Germany (Fig. 7.11). The thermocline stayed between 4 and 6 m from the middle of May until well into September. Following the clear-water phase, there was a continuous increase in the total phytoplankton biomass, reaching a plateau in August and September. The proportion of the dinoflagellate *Ceratium hirundinella* steadily increased during this period and finally achieved one-sided dominance of 98% of the total biomass. This produced a minimum diversity index of $H' = 0.11$ (natural log base), an extremely low diversity compared to values of about 2 during the spring bloom and shortly after the clear-water phase.

7.5 Lake communities

7.5.1 Communities in the pelagic zone

The open-water zone in lakes and oceans is known as the pelagic zone. Two communities are traditionally included in this zone: the *plankton* and the *nekton*. The distinction is based on swimming ability. Plankton are suspended in the water, whereas nektonic organisms are active swimmers. Certainly many plankton are capable of active swimming (vertical migrations of zooplankton and flagellates), but they are not generally capable of swimming against strong currents. The view of plankton and nekton as separate communities is probably not justified, considering the discussion of the interactions between fish and zooplankton presented in Section 7.3. It is more useful to speak of an integrated community in the pelagic zone.

The phytoplankton as primary producer level contains cyanobacteria and algae in the size range

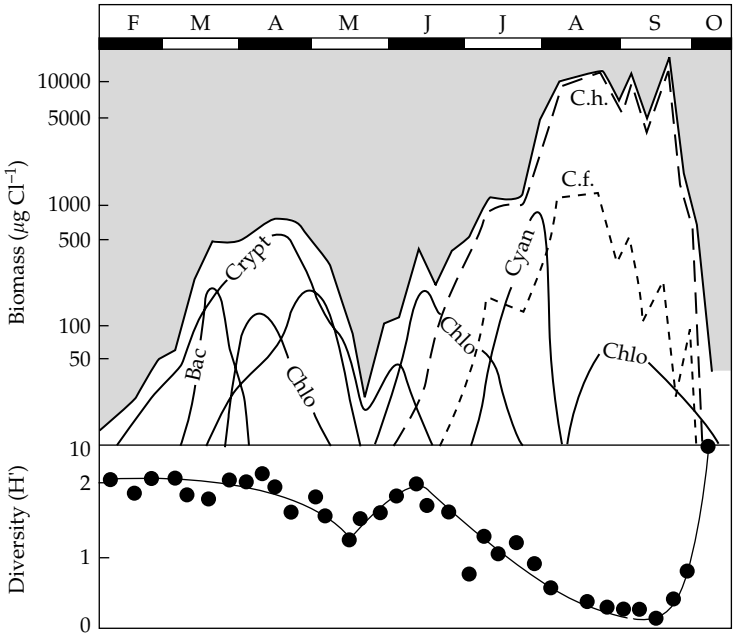


Figure 7.11 The development of phytoplankton populations in Plußsee, 1989. *Top:* Total biomass and biomass of individual taxa (C.h., *Ceratium hirundinella*; C.f., *Ceratium furcoides*, Bac, Bacillariophyceae; Crypt, Cryptophyceae; Chlo, Chlorophyceae; cyan, Cyanophyceae). *Bottom:* Diversity index (H', calculated as natural logarithm) of phytoplankton.

of about 0.5 μm to 1 mm (colonies >1 mm). Higher plants, red algae, and brown algae are not found in the phytoplankton. Conventionally, three size categories are defined: *picoplankton* (<2 μm), *nanoplankton* (2–30 μm), and *net plankton* (>30 μm).

The zooplankton in fresh water consists primarily of protozoans (flagellates and ciliates; a few to a few hundreds of micrometers), rotifers (30 μm to 1 mm), and crustaceans (copepods and cladocerans; *c*.100 μm–1 cm). In addition, there are a few insect larvae (*Chaoborus*), the larvae of the zebra mussel (*Dreissena*), water mites, and fish larvae. There are several trophic levels within the zooplankton, including herbivores, bacterivores, and zooplanktivores. The nekton of lakes is made up almost exclusively of fish species. Freshwater seals are limited to a very few large lakes (e.g., Lake Baikal). Pelagic fish may be either planktivores (usually zooplanktivores) or piscivores.

The *bacterioplankton* (usually <1 μm; autotrophic bacteria may be larger) have the most diverse trophic roles (see Table 4.1). Most of the bacteria in the aerobic zone are decomposers and to a lesser degree primary producers that are chemolithoautotrophs. In the anaerobic zone there are also photolithoautotrophic primary producers. Some planktonic fungi also decompose organic matter, and others are parasites. Microscopic and molecular evidence indicates an astonishingly high number of planktonic viruses (10^8 ml^{-1}) in lakes (Bergh *et al*. 1989). The ecological role of these viruses has not yet been examined, although they probably play an important role in regulating bacterial and cyanobacterial populations.

A unique peculiarity of pelagic communities is that body size increases progressively in going up the food chain. The primary producers in the pelagic zone are microscopic, whereas in terrestrial communities the dominant primary producers are often large and long-lived trees. This has some interesting effects on the functioning of pelagic communities:

- Plants can form light and chemical gradients in their habitat, but they are too small to structure their habitat physically.
- Herbivory almost always consists of eating entire plants, rather than "nibbling." This causes immediate mortality for the plants involved and not just a reduction in vitality.
- Across major taxonomic groups, reproductive rates decrease with increasing body size, whereas generation times and time lags in the population responses increase with body size.

The ability of a pelagic community to resist disturbances must therefore be based on top-down effects of fish. The resistance of a forest, in contrast, is usually related to bottom-up effects of the long-lived trees.

A most unusual community known as the *neuston* lives at the air–water interface in the surface film of lakes (see Section 4.2.7). Numerous types of algae and bacteria attach themselves to the surface by taking advantage of the surface tension. A few animal specialists can utilize this food source. The cladoceran *Scapholeberis mucronata* filter-feeds on the small particles while hanging attached to the surface film, and the larger insect water striders (Gerridae) prey on other small animals while "walking" on the upper water surface. The tension of the surface film is also used by insect larvae and snails that come to the surface for short periods to breathe.

7.5.2 Benthos

The community that lives on the bottom of lakes and streams is called the *benthos*. Benthic organisms can live in the substrate (mud and sand), move around on the substrate surface, become attached to the substrate, or move about freely in the vicinity of the bottom (e.g., benthic fish). The composition of the substrate can have an important influence on the type of communities that develop. Communities living on the surface of substrates can be divided into *epipelic* (on mud), *epipsammic* (on sand), *epilithic* (on rocks), and *epiphytic* (on submersed plants). The prefix "endo" is used to describe the analogous communities that live within the substrate (*endopelic, endopsammic*). The benthic habitat above the compensation level (see Section 4.3.5) is called the *littoral* zone and the habitat below the compensation level is called the *profundal* zone.

Benthic primary producers include cyanobacteria, all higher taxa of eucaryotic algae, and flowering plants, except for gymnosperms. Plants are

categorized according to size as *macrophytes* and *periphyton* (microphytobenthos). Higher plants and charophyte algae (Characea) are *macrophytes*.

As a rule macrophytes tend to be larger than their predators and are thus rarely consumed entirely; Jacobsen and Sand-Jensen (1992), for example, found on average only 4% loss of leaf mass for *Potamogeton* species in Danish lakes and even less for other macrophytes. Herbivores that eat macrophytes are actually more like parasites. Many emergent macrophytes have a siliceous epidermis that protects them from being eaten (reeds, rushes). Death and decomposition following the growing season is a more important loss for macrophytes than herbivory. The importance of macrophytes for littoral communities goes beyond its trophic role: They provide substrate for periphyton, attachment surfaces for the eggs of fish and amphibians, and hiding places for fish and other animals. They also compete for light with the periphyton and littoral plankton (shading). Macrophytes reduce the speed of the water current, thereby increasing the sedimentation rate and inhibiting the chemical exchange between the littoral and pelagic zones.

Periphyton is usually smaller than its predators and can be eaten whole. This makes the process of herbivory more important in regulating periphyton populations than for macrophytes. There are two different types of food chains emanating from the periphyton. One type involves the eating of periphyton algae by protozoans and very small metazoans (up to a few millimeters) that also belong to the periphyton community. The second type involves the grazing of the entire periphyton community (algae, animals, bacteria, fungi) by a variety of larger and very mobile animals (snails, insect larvae, etc.) (see Section 6.4.5).

The highly diversified littoral region offers many *microhabitats*, creating a zoobenthos that is very diverse. Many animals that live in the transition region between water and land either breathe atmospheric air, such as insects and certain snails, or carry out a portion of their life cycle outside the water.

Except for a few chemoautotrophic bacteria, the dark *profundal zone* is occupied by a community solely consisting of consumers. Animals that live there must utilize the organic matter that rains down from the epilimnion or is carried out from the littoral region. Much of this material has already been partially decomposed and therefore has a low nutritional value. The biomass of benthic consumers is dependent on the amount of organic matter that reaches the bottom of the lake. Organic matter may also come from allochthonous sources. For example, in Lake Constance there is a clear relationship between the number of tubificid worms in the lake bottom near the mouth of the lake tributaries and the pollution load of these streams (Probst 1987). Oxygen depletion and the build-up of hydrogen sulfide create chemical stress in the profundal zone of eutrophic lakes during the summer stagnation. During this period the deep-water fauna may become impoverished.

7.5.3 Coupling of habitats

Benthic and pelagic habitats are not completely separate from one another: There are numerous connections between their component parts. As previously noted, the deep-water fauna is very dependent on the production in the euphotic zone. Animals can greatly accelerate the vertical transport of organic matter. For example, the feces of zooplankton, especially copepod fecal pellets, are an important source of food for the benthos. These fecal pellets often contain large amounts of partially digested algae. Due to their large size, the pellets sink rapidly to the bottom before the organic matter is decomposed.

Small lakes have a large number of connections between the littoral and pelagic zones. Phytoplankton that is carried into the littoral region provides food for filter-feeders such as mussels and littoral Cladocera. The benthic zebra mussel *Dreissena polymorpha* can have a particularly strong effect on the pelagic region. Since they invaded North America (see Section 5.8) zebra mussels have formed thick layers in shallow lakes, the littoral parts of the Laurentian Great Lakes, shipping canals, and large rivers. Mussels are attached to the substrate by means of byssal threads. They filter large amounts of water and clear suspended material from it. In deeper parts of a stratified lake with little turbulence there can be a boundary layer of about 2 m above the mussel bed that is affected by the mussels. Hence the total impact on the lake is not very large

(Ackerman *et al*. 2001). However, in shallow systems and large rivers with turbulent mixing they can at times control the phytoplankton. The annual variation in grazing of *Dreissena* explained 90% of the variation of mean chlorophyll *a* in the Hudson River. This has been called "top-down control from the bottom" (Caraco *et al*. 2006).

Dreissena is also an example of animals that are planktonic in one part of their life cycle and benthic in another. The adults live in the littoral, but their veliger larvae are free-swimming and can make up a large portion of the summer plankton in eutrophic lakes. Some cyclopoid copepods are planktonic as juveniles and adults, but spend a part of their development as a resting stage in the sediments. Numerous planktonic organisms undergo a diapause, which is a strong component in benthic–pelagic coupling. Although the hatching of resting stages contributes very little to energy flow between the habitats, the "seeding" function of the sediments can be an important factor in determining plankton community structure (Gyllström and Hansson 2004).

During their ontogenetic development, fish change their habitat according to the location of their food. For example, many juvenile cyprinids eat plankton and therefore stay in the pelagic zone. When they become larger, they shift to feeding on the bottom and move into the littoral regions of the lake. There may also be daily cycles in habitat shifts. Some planktivorous fish spend the day in schools near the shore and move into the open water at night to feed on pelagic plankton. The larvae of the phantom midge *Chaoborus* may be buried in the sediment during the day, where they can live under anaerobic conditions, and at night they migrate up into the pelagic zone to feed on zooplankton (Fig. 7.12a–e). By day they can be considered benthos; by night, plankton.

7.6 Stream communities

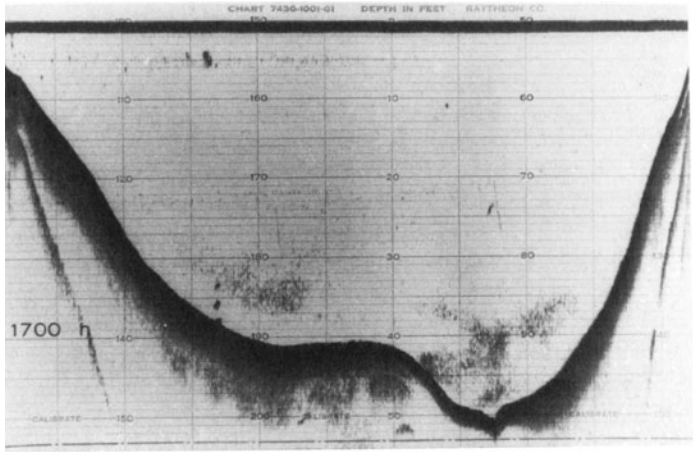
7.6.1 Types of streams

Streams have different selection factors than lakes (see Section 3.4). The driving force is the directed current. To avoid being swept downstream, organisms must either be attached or be good swimmers that can occasionally rest in dead-water regions. For this reason, benthic communities are overwhelmingly dominant in streams. Plankton also occurs in the upper reaches of rivers that are outflows of lakes, but it is often rapidly consumed by filter-feeding benthic organisms or lost downstream in rapidly flowing rivers. *River plankton* is only found in large rivers with stretches of quiet water and in the river backwaters (Reynolds *et al*. 1991). Much like a chemostat, when the retention time of the water is longer than the generation time of the plankton, the river is continuously inoculated with plankton as they are transported downstream.

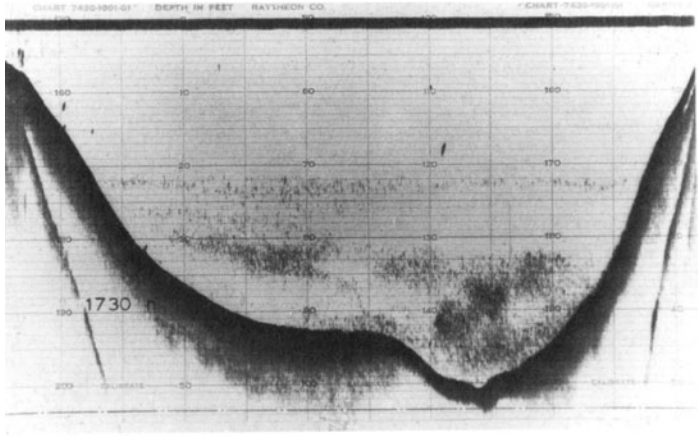
Streams are affected by excess nutrient input (Dodds 2006), and they show clear signs of eutrophication (see Section 8.6.1). Nevertheless, they are much more dependent on their watersheds than lakes. This is especially true for the allochthonous input of energy in the stream. Very often such inputs from outside are larger than the stream's own primary production; this leads to the domination of stream communities by consumers and decomposers. Streams are not divided into vertical zones, since there are no distinct trophogenic and tropholytic zones that are defined by light as in lakes. At best, a stream cross-section can be divided into its water mass, the stream bed (*benthic zone*), and the subsurface region below the stream bed (*hyporheic zone*). In small streams, all these zones are in close contact with one another. Throughout the stream course there are changes in the external conditions, stream flow, and all the related abiotic parameters as well as the effects of the watershed. Corresponding to these physico-chemical shifts are changes in the stream communities. This suggests streams can be divided horizontally according to their distance downstream.

There have been attempts to classify different parts of streams and rivers by defining zones with similar environmental conditions. The zones have been characterized by indicator organisms. The classical system used in western Europe is based on fish species and was developed for the river Rhine at the beginning of the twentieth century by the German forester Robert Lauterborn. It can be used to explain the principle of many classification schemes. Each zone is named after a characteristic fish species.

(a)



(b)



(c)

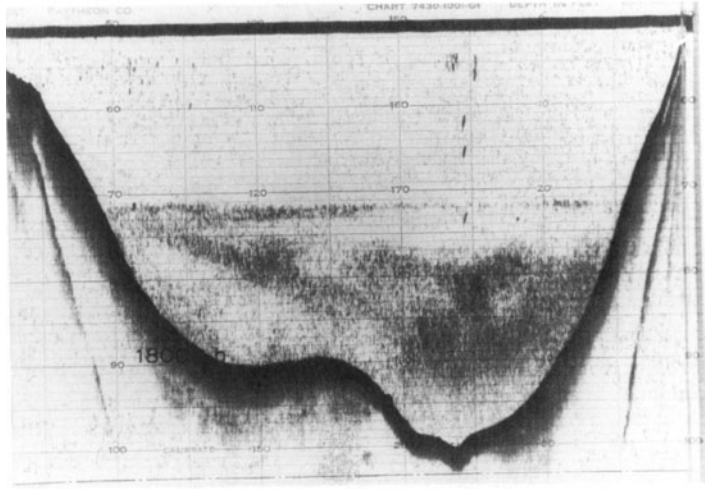


Figure 7.12 *continued*

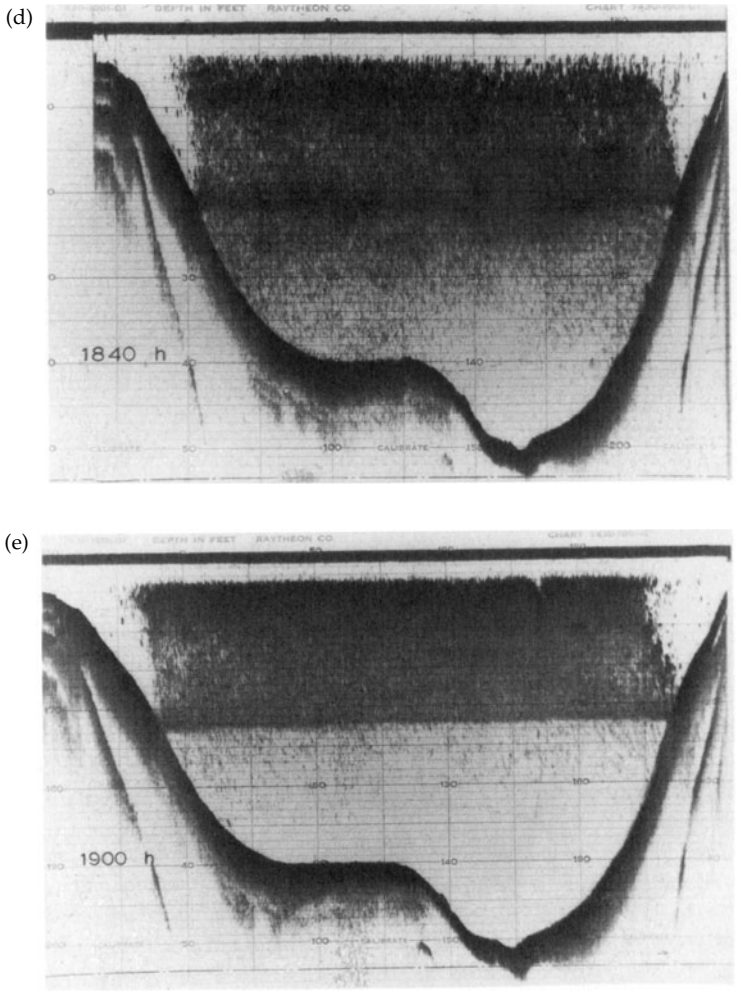


Figure 7.12 a–e Echo graphs showing the distribution of *Chaoborus* larvae in Barbadoes Pond, a small lake in New Hampshire (USA). The animals spend the day in the sediments. In the evening they emerge from the sediments and migrate upward to feed in the epilimnion. At 17:00 h only a few animals are visible in the deep water; at 19:00 h they are all in the epilimnion. The lower boundary of their distribution marks the oxycline (with permission of J.F. Haney).

- The first is called the "trout zone" after the brown trout *Salmo trutta*. This is the region of the stream (mostly at higher altitudes) where the summer temperature does not exceed 10 °C, the water is completely saturated with oxygen, and the bottom substrate consists of coarse gravel to provide interstitial refuge for the fish larvae.
- The trout zone is followed by the "grayling zone" after the grayling *Thymalus thymalus*. Here the stream is wider and the current velocity is lower. Occasionally plants grow along the banks. Summer temperature is higher, but rarely exceeds 15 °C. The water is still saturated with oxygen, and the bottom is covered with gravel.
- In the middle reaches of rivers the water velocity is still high enough to prevent mud deposition on the river bed, but summer temperatures may exceed 15 °C, and minor oxygen deficits may occur. This zone is named the "barbel zone" after the barbel *Barbus barbus*.
- In the lowlands, where the river flows more slowly, mud is deposited and macrophytes grow in

the quiet regions. Temperatures may exceed 20 °C, and the oxygen saturation may drop considerably. Characteristic fishes of this zone are temperature- and low-oxygen-tolerant cyprinids. It is named the "bream zone" after the bream *Abramis brama*.

This classification scheme demonstrates the principal shortcoming of a system that is based on indicator species: such species are usually restricted to a certain biogeographic area. The fish fauna of North America, for example, is much richer than the European fish fauna. Moreover, there are large regional differences in species composition. The western European classification system cannot be used in North America even under similar climatic conditions, as the indicator species may be unimportant or absent. There have been attempts to replace them with American fish species, but this can only be applied to local river systems such as New Hampshire, or for particular streams such as the Ohio river (for a review see Hynes 1970).

The same objections are valid for other schemes based, for example, on insects. Illies (1961) tried to overcome these difficulties by concentrating more on types than on particular species so as to create a general classification scheme that can be used worldwide. His system is based on stoneflies (Plecoptera). Their distribution is determined mainly by temperature and structure of the bottom substrate. The basic premise is that similar types of stream insects have evolved convergently everywhere in response to similar environmental conditions. Even if the species in different areas are not identical, one can find types characteristic for the particular conditions. Illies' zonation scheme results in three broad categories that can be subdivided (each habitat is denoted by the suffix "on":

- *krenon*—headwater region
- *rhithron*—mountain stream region (salmonid zone, cool, mean monthly temperature ≤20 °C):
  - epirhithron—upper mountain stream region (upper trout zone)
  - metarhithron—middle mountain stream region (lower trout zone)
  - hyporhithron—lower mountain stream region (grayling zone)
- potamon—lowland river region (warm, mean monthly temperature $20 °C):

  epipotamon—upper lowland river region (barbel zone)

  metapotamon—middle lowland river region (bream zone)

  hypopotamon—lower lowland river region (brackish water zone).

This system can be applied to streams at all geographic latitudes, although there are shifts in the relative proportions of the rhithron and potamon. The rhithron is limited to extremely high altitudes as one approaches the equator, whereas the potamon becomes insignificant in polar regions.

7.6.2 Functional concepts

The river continuum concept

The *river continuum concept* (Vannote *et al*. 1980) takes the classification of streams a step further in a predictive model that integrates the geomorphological features of streams with the composition and function of the biological communities (see Section 2.1). Streams are physically open systems. From the source of a stream to its mouth, there is a continual change in physical factors such as width, depth, flow velocity, discharge, temperature, and entropy gain. This hypothesis proposes that the biological organization of a stream is adapted to these gradients, forming a *continuum*. Producer and consumer populations achieve a steady state; over major sections of a stream, communities develop that are in equilibrium with the physical features of the stream. The river continuum concept is based on streams that originate in forested regions. Clearly, it must be modified when applied to other river systems, such as those involving alpine and arid regions where low-order streams have little or no allochthonous input from trees and are thus more dependent on autochthonous primary production.

Communities can be divided into three general categories according to the size of the stream: small streams (stream order 1–3), medium-sized streams (stream order 4–6), and large streams (stream order >6) (Fig. 7.13; see Section 3.4.1).

Processes of synthesis (production) and decomposition (respiration) change along the course of a

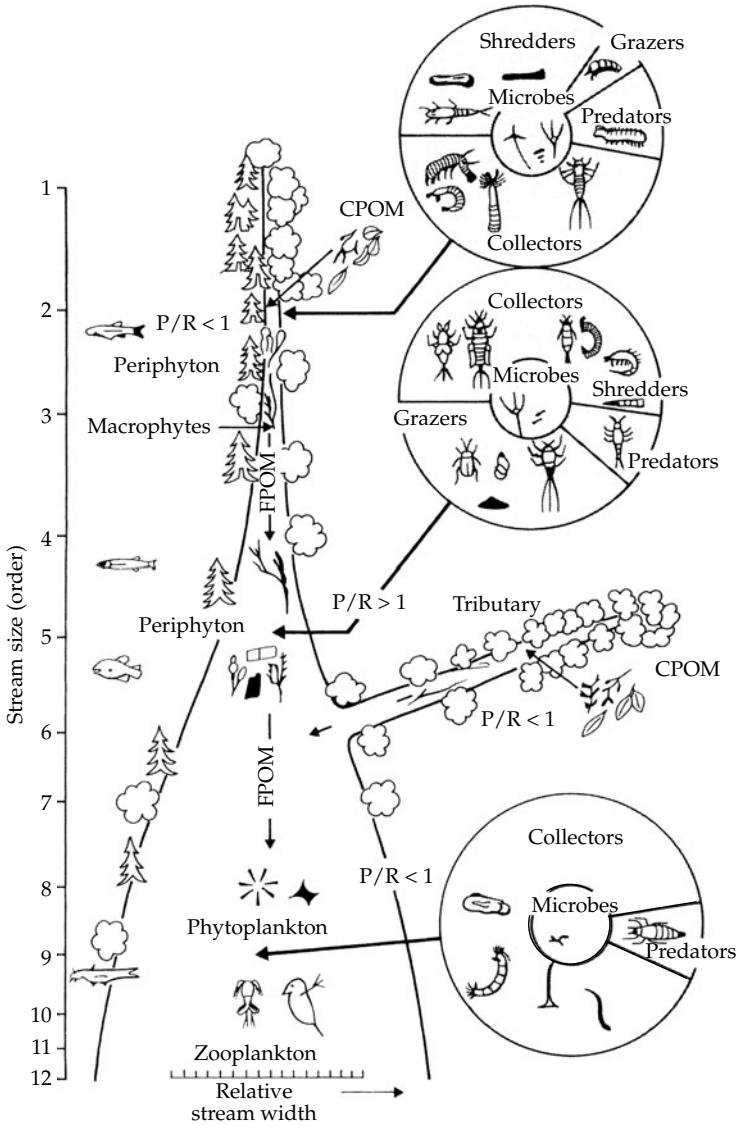


Figure 7.13 The stream as a continuum of abiotic factors and communities. The relative proportions of various feeding groups are shown in the circles (redrawn from Vannote *et al*. 1980).

stream. Small streams near their source are often lined with vegetation. This reduces available light and the amount of photosynthesis, but supplies a large quantity of allochthonous organic matter. This results in a production to respiration ratio (P:R) in the stream of <1. As the stream becomes larger the direct effects of introduced organic matter diminish and autochthonous production and downstream transport become more important. Thus the P:R ratio shifts toward a value >1. The vegetation along the stream becomes unimportant in the higher-order streams. These large streams have a considerable quantity of fine particulate organic matter that is transported downstream. Once again there is a light limitation of photosynthesis for organisms within these streams, this time caused by high

turbidity. Accordingly, the P:R ratio shifts toward a value <1.

There is a great diversity of dissolved organic substances in low-order streams. Such small streams are most closely connected with their watershed and therefore collect, transform, and transport a variety of organic compounds. *Labile* substances that are easily decomposed are rapidly taken up by microorganisms or adsorbed physically. *Refractory* substances are left over and transported downstream. Along with a decreasing diversity of dissolved substances, there is also a decrease in the importance of coarse particulate organic matter (CPOM) as one moves downstream, although the more resistant particulate matter may reach further downstream.

One can therefore view a stream system as a continuous gradient that shifts from its source to its mouth from a system that is highly heterotrophic to one that is primarily autotrophic, with daily and seasonal variation, and finally back again to a system that is dominated by heterotrophic activities (Fig. 7.14). This continuum is disturbed where tributaries of lower order converge with the main stream.

There is a downstream decrease in the size of organic particles, resulting in an increase in the importance of species that can most effectively utilize fine particles. Morphological and behavioral adaptations of stream organisms reflect these food relationships. The invertebrates can be divided into four *functional feeding groups*: shredders, collectors, scrapers, and predators. *Shredders* utilize coarse organic particulate matter (>1 mm), such as leaves. *Collectors* filter fine or ultrafine particulate organic matter (FPOM, 50 μm–1 mm; UPOM, 0.5–50 μm) or ingest it with the sediments. The microbial periphyton community (e.g., fungi) on these particles also is important for the nutrition of collectors. *Scrapers* graze on the periphyton algae. Since there is a dominance of CPOM in low-order streams, shredders and collectors tend to predominate and scrapers are poorly represented. In intermediate-order streams scrapers and collectors become important and the shredders diminish. Finally, in the large, high-order streams collectors dominate, since particles in this region are already small. There is approximately the same proportion of *predators* in all stream orders, as they feed on all types of primary consumers. Fish populations also shift from species-poor communities of cold-water fish to species-rich communities of warm-water fish.

There is a biological steady-state equilibrium at every location along a stream. Energy is carried in, utilized, stored, and transported downstream as

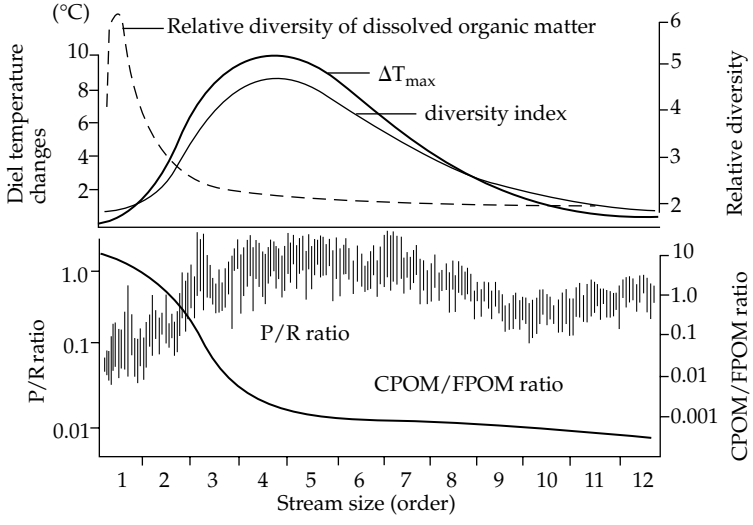


Figure 7.14 Gradients along a stream course. CPOM, coarse particulate organic matter; FPOM, fine particulate organic matter (from Vannote *et al*. 1980).

partially utilized or unused matter. This matter then serves as an input to the next location. One must assume that if species are resource limited in a system that there is a tendency at that location for most efficient use of the resources; that is, there is as little loss of resources as possible. Additional organisms can occupy the habitat as soon as resources become available. If a dominant species disappears as a result of environmental conditions (e.g., temperature), it will be replaced by another species; thus, for example, there are species shifts throughout the year. Also, if one species utilizes a part of the available energy, since it specializes in its feeding, other species can use the remaining energy. Although the same principle applies to all ecosystems, in streams the resources must be used immediately or they will be transported downstream. Vannote *et al*. (1980) postulate that stream communities have a tendency to maximize the use of resources and to utilize resources uniformly over time.

The tendency toward efficient use of resources holds for the predictable short-term changes in abiotic factors (e.g., light, temperature). Assume that a species is threatened by predators during the day and must therefore hide. If this were the only species present in the system, then the energy that enters that part of the stream during the day would be lost as it would immediately leave. This represents available resources during the day that could be utilized to establish another species, if it were small or camouflaged. One could describe the same scenario, by assuming that certain species best utilize a resource within a certain temperature range during the daily temperature cycle. The largest daily temperature changes occur in intermediate-order streams (see Section 3.4.2); the largest diversity of species also occurs in these streams.

Despite different effects of specific daily and seasonal rhythms, this process leads to an increase in the number of species and to a reduction in the fluctuations in the use of energy; that is, it leads to a degree of stability (constancy). This, however, is not a "system feature" (see Section 8.8.2), even if there is a maximization of resources "within the system." It is simply a result of optimal resource utilization by each individual population.

There is no ecological succession in a flow-through equilibrium, in contrast to a closed system (see Section 8.7.1). The destiny of a lake is prescribed; depending on its size, sooner or later it will become land as a result of the accumulation of inorganic and organic matter. In contrast, flow-through equilibrium changes take place in evolutionary, rather than ecological, time realms. This does not mean that streams do not change. Geological events may modify the stream course, and changes in the watershed will alter the input of matter. However, a new flow-through equilibrium will quickly become established. This is a prerequisite for the ability of streams to regenerate after disturbance (see Section 5.8).

The habitat template concept

There have been various attempts to test the predictions of the river continuum concept, which have shown that this approach can elicit a general trend, but cannot predict the species composition for a particular stream section. The concept has been criticized as a river is rarely a continuum, and as it considers only the availability of resources but largely ignores the abiotic factors (e.g., currents and instability of substrates) that often dominate habitat properties in streams. A different model, the *habitat template concept*, which includes abiotic factors, has been developed in recent year in search for a better mechanistic framework for predictions of stream communities. It assumes that on evolutionary time scales every habitat forms a template for the evolution of traits that make it tolerable for certain organisms (Southwood 1988). On ecological time scales, the habitat template is the final result of a hierarchical series of filters. Only species with traits that pass all the filters can persist in the habitat. Note that this concept is an application of the concept of the Hutchinsonian niche, as described in Section 4.1.2.

The filters operate on different scales, from covering the whole catchment (see Section 8.4) to sediment microstructure. The basic assumption is that all species have the capacity to disperse and settle in a suitable habitat. The first filter may then be the climatic regime in the catchment. For example, if precipitation is very variable, and river flow

is intermittent, only species that can cope with intermittent flow will pass the filter and all others will be excluded from the habitat. The second filter may be the geochemistry of the catchment. If the rocks in the catchment are granitic, the stream water will be low in calcium, which will exclude species with a high demand for calcium (e.g., some mussels and snails). At this point the species abundance of the habitat is limited to drought-resistant species with low calcium requirements. The next filter maybe the shoreline vegetation. The presence or absence of trees shedding leaves into the stream will act as filter for shredders depending on coarse organic matter or grazers on epiphyton. This procedure can go on to smaller and smaller scales. The goal would be to construct the filters for each habitat, and then, in a purely mechanistic approach, define the traits organisms must have to pass the filters.

In practice, this is not easy. First, it is difficult to define all the filters, and second, it is nearly impossible to quantitatively estimate the importance of different filters for a taxon. This is particularly difficult when it comes to biological filters, i.e., species interactions (Poff 1997). As a compromise, it is possible to combine a mechanistic and a statistical approach. One possibility is to construct a system of coordinates where axes describe properties of the habitat (e.g., productivity and frequency of disturbance) and place different taxa in the system according to where they have been found. Neighboring taxa can then be analyzed for traits that allow them to live under this combination of habitat qualities.

So far this concept has largely been applied to abiotic factors. For example, Townsend and Hildrew (1994) plotted temporal and spatial heterogeneity as axes of the template. Temporal heterogeneity describes the frequency of disturbances, discrete events when organisms are being damaged or washed away (catastrophic spates). Spatial heterogeneity is a measure of the availability of refuges ameliorating the consequences of catastrophes. This template predicts that the taxa associated with the axis representing temporal heterogeneity must have the capability for fast reproduction (short life cycle, early maturation, high colonization potential) or high resistance (strong attachment, low drag, resistant instars). Such predictions can only be tested with large data sets. The concept has been useful in integrating the physical forces that are dominant in upper stretches of streams into control of stream communities.

Quantifying the nature of biological filters is more difficult, as species interactions are complex and often plastic, and their strengths are difficult to assess. However, in lower reaches of a stream, where abiotic factors are no longer the overwhelming selective forces, species interactions may be very important for structuring communities. It may be useful to start with very strong interactions as evidenced in the keystone species concept. The presence of fish, for example, is a powerful biological filter (Power *et al*. 1990).

The habitat template concept provides a heuristic framework for illustrating the mechanisms of stream community evolution, but there is still a lot of theoretical, experimental, and statistical work to be done to make it a useful tool for the study of fundamental and applied questions in stream community ecology (see review by Poff 1997).

Review questions

1 In eutrophic lakes, oxygen shortage under the ice cover can kill entire populations of fish. Sometimes the water appears clearer during the year following the winter fish kill than before, even though the concentration of nutrients is unchanged. What might account for the clear water?

2 Describe the type of correlation (positive or negative) you expect with (a) dominant top-down control and (b) bottom-up control between: piscivorous fish and herbivorous zooplankton; piscivorous fish and phytoplankton; planktivorous fish and herbivorous zooplankton; planktivorous fish and phytoplankton.

3 Evidence for top-down control of pelagic food webs can sometimes be found by comparing interactions in different lakes. Would you expect to find such evidence more easily when comparing lakes with similar nutrient concentrations or when comparing lakes with very different nutrient status? Explain.

4 Attempts to estimate copepod grazing rates with natural phytoplankton samples by measuring the decrease of chlorophyll in bottles sometimes fail. The chlorophyll may even increase in the copepod bottles compared to the

controls. Does this mean the copepods did not feed on the phytoplankton? Give possible explanations.

5 Calculate the Shannon diversity index H' and the Simpson index D for hypothetical communities of 3, 10, and 100 species with different equitability. Compare the sensitivity of both indices against equitability and species richness for conditions of: (a) high equitability: all species equally abundant; (b) medium equitability: dominant species 50%, all others equally abundant; (c) low equitability: dominant species 90%, all others equally abundant.

6 How can disturbances promote diversity? Give some examples of natural and anthropogenic disturbances in a lake and in a stream. Explain how the magnitude and frequency of these disturbances would affect the diversity of aquatic communities in each of these systems.

CHAPTER 8

Ecosystem perspectives

8.1 The ecosystem as an ecological unit

The activities of organisms set in motion the transformation of energy and matter and have important effects on the quality of their abiotic environment. One of the most impressive examples of this on a geological timescale was the change from an anoxic to the present-day oxic atmosphere on earth, brought about by photosynthesis by cyanobacteria and green plants and also the accumulation of calcium carbonate in the shells of marine organisms. We have already discussed mechanisms by which organisms can cause changes in the environment in a much shorter time period, such as the depletion of nutrients by planktonic algae that occurs during the summer growth period. Thus organisms interact not only with one another, but also with their abiotic environment. Communities consist of interacting populations. The comprehensive unit of communities and their interactions with the abiotic environment is the *ecosystem*.

The ecosystem concept is not so easily defined as the term "system" may suggest. Ecosystems are more than incidental aggregations of organisms in a particular habitat, for the organisms also modify the environment. Jones *et al*. (1994) describe the role of organisms as "ecosystem engineers." The activities of beavers provide a good example. By creating a dam, beavers change a running water system into a stagnant pond system). Beavers thus have a major impact on other communities, such as the phytoplankton and zooplankton. Plankters could not exist there without the beavers, but this is a nonreciprocal interaction, as the plankters have no impact on the beavers. The beavers must be considered as part of the "beaver pond ecosystem," for they not only construct and maintain the pond, they also contribute nutrients and debris to the system. They also utilize and modify the forest ecosystem by cutting and removing trees. The ecosystem has clear boundaries for the plankton, but not for the beavers. Hence, the problems of setting boundaries for ecosystems are similar to those for communities (see Section 7.1).

Some standard books in ecology, such as that by Odum (1959), present an analysis of ecosystems at the beginning, rather than at the end, as presented here. This underlies more than a difference in the teaching approach of the authors. Authors such as Odum begin with an explicit or implied "superorganism" concept (see Section 7.2). The analogy with organisms stems from the fact that energy flows through ecosystems and matter circulates within the ecosystem. According to "holistic" ecologists, populations and organisms sort themselves into this flow of energy and matter, thereby searching, so to speak, for their place in the ecosystem. "Mechanistic"-oriented ecologists, such as the authors of this book, believe that energy and matter do not actually "flow" in ecosystems, but rather that flows of energy and matter are simply abstractions representing the sum of the activities of individual organisms. It is the scientist who, by summarizing the activities of organisms into categories such as guilds and trophic levels, defines the pathways for transfer of energy and matter that create a picture of energy and matter flowing through an ecosystem. It is quite natural that the general laws of physics and chemistry apply to ecosystems. Especially important in this regard are the first two laws of thermodynamics, the law of conservation of matter, the principle of electron neutrality, and the boundaries of variability in biomass stoichiometric. These general laws do not, however, account for the diversity of flows of energy and matter.

As discussed earlier (Section 7.2), the superorganism concept of ecosystems is untenable because

of the lack of a central genome in the system. Therefore, an entire ecosystem cannot evolve, cannot be "optimized," and cannot possess a defined fitness (Calow 1992). There is a debate in the environmental sciences as to whether an optimum status of an ecosystem can be defined as a measure of "ecosystem health." It seems unlikely that general rules for the functioning of an ecosystem will be found. The actual flow of matter and energy in an ecosystem depends on the activities of the individual organisms, which in turn are regulated by the principle of fitness. For example, the direction of the flow of energy and matter captured and produced by phytoplankton depends on how much of the algae are eaten and how rapidly they sink (Fig. 8.1). One can find similar examples for other branches of the flows of energy and matter. The distribution of the flows is the result of natural selection conditions that affect the guilds.

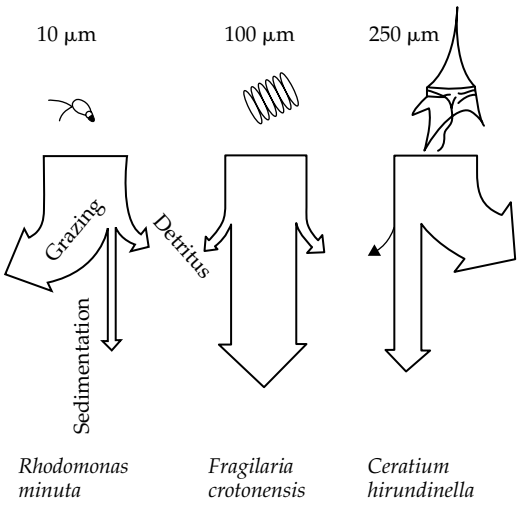


Figure 8.1 The movement of energy and compounds, fixed but not respired by phytoplankton through the processes of zooplankton grazing (*left arrow*), sedimentation (*middle arrow*), and detritus formation in the epilimnion (*right arrow*). The small flagellate *Rhodomonas* is eaten efficiently and almost none sinks out of the epilimnion; cell death and formation of detritus in the epilimnion are relatively unimportant. The colonial diatom *Fragilaria* is poorly grazed and has a high sinking velocity. Epilimnetic detritus formation is not important, since the dead colonies sink rapidly. The large flagellate *Ceratium* is almost completely inedible for most zooplankton and only its cysts and cells in poor physiological condition sink out of the epilimnion. Thus detritus formation is the most important sink.

8.2 Flow of energy

8.2.1 Sources and carriers of energy

Thermodynamically, both organisms and ecosystems are open systems. They can be maintained only by a continuous flow of energy through the system. Light or the energy released by an exergonic chemical reaction can serve as an energy source (see Section 4.3.1). Chemo-organotrophic organisms, which use organic matter as a source of energy, are dependent on the products of other organisms; only phototrophic and chemolithotrophic organisms do not require the synthesis of organic compounds by other organisms. Possible energy sources for entire ecosystems include sunlight, allochthonous input of organic matter, and reduced inorganic chemical bonds. There are few ecosystems where chemolithotrophy is the primary initial process of energy flow, such as hot springs in the deep ocean bottom (hydrothermal vents) that supply hydrogen sulfide. Ecosystems that use allochthonous organic compounds as an energy source must depend on other ecosystems. On a global scale, sunlight is by far the most important energy source and oxic photosynthesis is by far the most important initial process in the flow of energy.

Organic matter is therefore the universal carrier of potential energy within an ecosystem. Its various forms include living organisms (biomass), dead particulate matter (detritus), and dissolved organic matter (DOM). Some organic compounds cannot be utilized or can be utilized only by a few specialized organisms and therefore, regardless of their energy content, provide little useful energy (cf. Section 4.3.11). Such compounds are referred to as *refractory*.

Both the *pool size* and flow (*transfer rate*) affect the transfer of energy. The size of pools (biomass, detritus, dissolved organic matter) has energy as a dimension (= work, force times distance, $1\,\mathrm{N\,m} = 1\,\mathrm{J} = 1\,\mathrm{W\,s}$). Flows have the dimensions of energy per unit time (= activity, $1\,\mathrm{N\,m\,s^{-1}} = 1\,\mathrm{W}$). By dividing the size of the pool either by the sum of all incoming flows or by the sum of all outgoing flows, one can calculate the theoretical residence time of energy in a particular pool—that is, the time that would be needed to fill up a pool that has been emptied (turnover time).

8.2.2 Efficiency of energy transfer

Theoretically, all forms of energy except for heat are interchangeable. Each time there is a *transfer* of energy, a portion is lost as heat (second law of thermodynamics). There are other losses that make some of the energy converted by primary producers unavailable to consumers. Metabolic processes and locomotion require energy, which in the energy budget of an organism comes under the category of respiration (see Section 4.4.3). Incompletely oxidized organic matter is excreted and egested. This material in turn can be used as an energy source by detritivores, but not by predators.

The *efficiency* of energy transfer is expressed by several energy flow quotients. The efficiency derived from energy balance of an individual has already been dealt with in Section 4.4.3; the *assimilation efficiency* is the ratio of assimilation to ingestion, the *net production efficiency* (K_2) is the ratio of production to assimilation, and the *gross production efficiency* (K_1) is the ratio of production to ingestion. There are also efficiencies that are defined at the population level. For predator–prey relationships, the *predation efficiency* is the ratio of ingestion rate of the predator and the production rate of the prey—that is, the proportion of the prey production that is eaten by the predator. The *ecological efficiency* refers to the ratio of predator production to prey production. This is a measure of the amount of energy that is passed from one link of the food chain to the next. Ecological efficiencies are usually between 0.05 and 0.2; that is, 80–95% of the energy is lost at each transfer in the food chain. Because of these losses, unlike the flow of matter, energy must always flow in one direction in ecosystems.

8.2.3 Trophic levels and pyramids

The concept of "trophic level" is closely related to the food chain concept (see Section 7.3.1). Organisms within a food chain that can be assigned to the same position are collectively referred to as a *trophic level*. The trophic level concept has proved to be useful in many studies, although it is a simplification, as in nature we usually encounter food webs rather than food chains.

Because the ecological efficiency is always low, there is a rapid decrease in the productivity of subsequent trophic levels. With an ecological efficiency of 0.1, the percentage of the primary production in the second level is 10%, the third level 1%, the fourth level 0.1%, and so on. The number of possible trophic levels is therefore dependent on the amount of primary production. This is also the basis of the Oksanen model of vertically alternating controls in communities (see Section 7.3.6). The number of trophic levels, as determined by the primary production, is not fixed. A low primary production can be compensated in a large habitat by the large hunting area available to the predator. The presence of sharks in extremely oligotrophic tropical oceans is an example of this.

The overriding importance of ecosystem size has been demonstrated in a comparative study by Post *et al*. (2000). They estimated the length of the food chain by the difference between the $\delta^{15}N$ of top predators and the $\delta^{15}N$ of filter-feeders, which were assumed to occupy trophic level 2 (see Section 7.3.3). Although they found no relationship of food chain length to nutrient richness, there was a statistically significant relationship to lake size, which explained 80% of the variance in the trophic position of the top predator, ranging from *c*.3.5 in the smallest lakes to *c*.5 in the largest. This effect was caused both by additional predator species in the larger lakes and by an increase of the trophic level of predatory fish that occurred over a wide range of lake sizes. However, the use of filter-feeders as the baseline of the analysis possibly masks different food chain lengths in the microbial components of the system (see Section 8.2.4).

Trophic pyramids allow one to visualize the decreasing production with increasing height of the trophic level. The blocks that represent the production rates become smaller as one goes up to higher trophic levels, giving rise to the appearance of a pyramid. Such presentations are mainly a heuristic tool, since it is usually difficult to assign a population within a food web to a single trophic level, and there are difficulties in estimating both primary production (see Box 4.3) and secondary production (see Box 4.4). Originally it was assumed that there must be pyramids of biomass and numbers that correspond to the production pyramids. Sometimes such pyramids have been found, but it is not necessarily so if organisms at a lower trophic level are

significantly smaller than the organisms at the next highest level, for the lower trophic level would then have a higher specific production rate (cf. Section 4.5). In this case, a smaller biomass could produce enough to support the next level.

8.2.4 The detrital food chain and the microbial loop

The greater the resistance of the primary producers to herbivory, the more important the *detrital food chain* becomes as a part of the energy flow through the ecosystem (see Fig. 8.1). An extreme example of this in aquatic systems is found in shallow reed areas of a lake, where large masses of debris accumulate from dead reeds and calm water conditions cause the settlement of additional particulate matter transported from the open lake to the littoral. The ecological efficiency is lower for detritivores than in the direct food chain, since detritus has a large proportion of refractory compounds. Much of the use of detritus is by microorganisms (bacteria and fungi). There is controversy over whether animal detritivores actually get their nutrition directly from the detritus or from the attached microorganisms. This is also likely to differ depending on the specific detritivore. If most of the energy in the detrital food chain first flows through microorganisms, there must be a larger number of links in the chain. This leads to further efficiency losses.

The *microbial loop* is a special type of detrital chain that has recently become known because of its importance in the pelagic region (see Section 7.3.1). It begins with dissolved organic excretions from pelagic organisms (primarily phytoplankton). Much of this dissolved organic matter is not refractory and can be efficiently utilized by bacteria, which in turn are eaten by heterotrophic protozoans (see food web in Fig. 7.2). Since these protozoans also eat pico-sized phytoplankton, this transfer step is usually included in the microbial loop, even though it is really a case of herbivory. The heterotrophic protozoa (mostly flagellates) are in turn eaten by metazoan zooplankton (see Fig. 7.3), thereby channeling the energy from the microbial loop into the "classic" food chain. At present there is much discussion over whether the microbial loop is a "link" or a "sink" in the energy flow of the pelagic ecosystem. The answer depends mainly on whether one views the microbial loop from its base (production by the bacteria and picoplankton) or its top (transfer to metazooplankton). The total production by the bacteria and the picophytoplankton may be larger than the production by the nanophytoplankton, especially in oligotrophic lakes and in lakes with a large allochthonous input of dissolved organic matter. Because of their small size these particles cannot be used by most zooplankton and are therefore lost from the food chain. However, if the particles are eaten, by flagellates (5–20 μm), they then become available to filter-feeding zooplankton. With an ecological efficiency of 0.1, 90% of the energy is lost as heat at the flagellate step. Thus, to provide the metazooplankton and further links in the food chain with the same amount of energy, the bacteria and picoplankon must produce 10 times as much as the nanoplankton. Some of the bacteria can also be eaten directly by the metazooplankton. Therefore, one could also argue that the flagellate step only represents a gain of energy if the predatory efficiency of the zooplankton on the small particles is less than 10%. The ecological importance of the microbial loop is probably due more to its effect on the mortality of the bacteria and picoplankton and in the regeneration of nutrients that is tied up in these small particles than its effect on the energy flow through the food chain (Riemann and Christoffersen 1993).

8.2.5 Diagrams of energy flow

Many field investigations were begun during the International Biological Program (IBP) of the 1970s to determine the total flow of energy or matter through an ecosystem. The final goal of these ecosystem studies was to construct a diagram of the energy flow or carbon circulation through an ecosystem. Much information was gathered and brought together, but in most cases only a small part of the flow rates were actually measured, and such measurements had serious inaccuracies. The numerical values of individual flow rates should therefore be viewed as first-order estimates of the size of energy flow in ecosystems rather than precise results. Considering the inaccuracies in estimating production rates in the field, transfer

efficiencies should probably not be estimated to decimal places, as they often are. Published energy-flow diagrams are also qualitatively incomplete, since the importance of the microbial loop has only been recognized in the past few years.

We present here the classic energy-flow diagram of the Silver Springs ecosystem as one of the most instructive and complete examples (Fig. 8.2). This is the result of a very complete ecosystem study (Odum 1957). Silver Springs is a large spring in Florida (USA), with very clear water. The important primary producers are aquatic macrophytes (*Vallisneria*) and the periphyton that grows on its surface. Snails and turtles are the dominant herbivores. Fish are the carnivores. As in all similar diagrams, the energy flow through the higher trophic levels is depicted as extremely small, compared to the primary production. This characterization of animals as quantitatively insignificant differs considerably from their description as "keystone species" having important regulatory effects (see Section 7.3.4).

A particular energy-flow diagram applies only to a specific situation in a particular body of water. The explosion of ecological data gathered during the IBP still did not lead to the formulation of general laws, except for the rule of thumb that ecological efficiencies are generally between 0.05 and 0.2. One could question whether even the most complete and comprehensive measurement of all energy flows within an ecosystem would allow for a causal explanation for the direction of the energy flow, especially when regulatory components, such as keystone species, would be ignored as "quantitatively unimportant."

8.3 Cycling of matter

8.3.1 General features

The transfer of energy in ecosystems is always coupled with the transfer of matter. There are, however, some important differences. The most important difference is that *matter can circulate in an ecosystem, whereas energy can only flow through the system*. The reason for this is that even completely remineralized decomposition products (such as carbon dioxide) can be reused as a resource. There is a characteristic difference between energy and matter transformations. Although both follow a law of conservation, there is no decay rule analogous to the second law of thermodynamics for chemical elements.

In contrast to the popular belief in the concept of "balance of nature," natural ecosystems are by no means completely closed. Matter is constantly removed from every ecosystem by physical

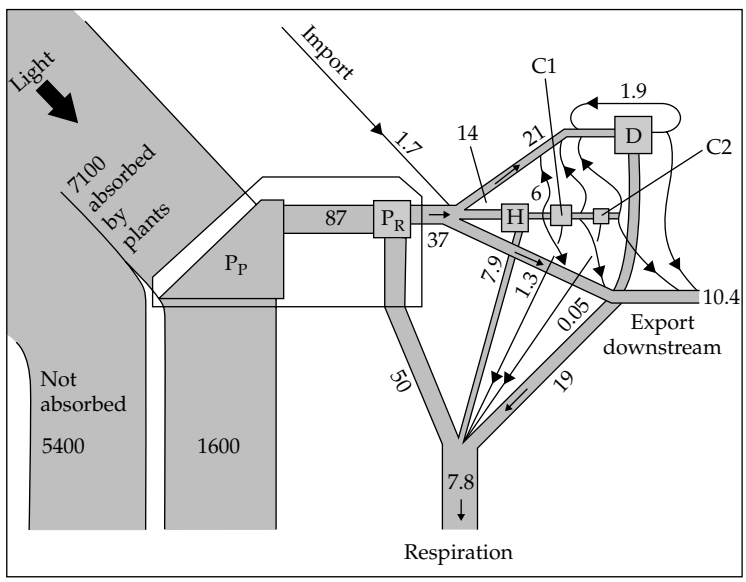


Figure 8.2 Energy flow in the Silver Springs ecosystem (redrawn from Odum 1957). Flow rates in 10^6 J m^{-2} y^{-1}: P_p, photosynthetic biomass of the plants; P_R, respiratory biomass of the plants (e.g., roots); H, herbivores; C1, first-order carnivores; C2, second-order carnivores; D, detritivores.

transport processes such as outflow, erosion, and the evolution of dissolved gases. A portion of the organic matter produced is deposited at the same location within the system and is not recycled or exported. The *sediments* in many water bodies act as a sink, since the anoxic decomposition of organic matter is much slower than the oxic decomposition. There is a long-term accumulation of substances that are chemically resistant to decomposition or become buried in the sediments. Paleolimnology attempts to reconstruct the history of a lake from remains of organisms and organic molecules (e.g., chlorophyll derivatives) found in the sediments. Fossilized energy carriers such as coal, oil, and natural gas are the result of long-term accumulation of nondecomposed organic matter.

In addition to biological activity, abiotic reactions such as precipitation, dissolution, dissociation, and redox reactions are also important in the cycling of matter. All of the reactions that serve as a basis for chemolithotrophic production (see Section 4.3.8) can also occur spontaneously without the involvement of organisms. On the other hand, there are also inorganic reactions that are caused by the activity of organisms, such as biogenic marl precipitation. This close interaction of biological and geochemical processes is reflected in the expression *biogeochemical cycles*.

A critical step in all biogeochemical cycling is the transformation of matter from the dissolved to the particulate phase. Primary production is generally the most important mechanism for achieving this transition. Often there is an inverse relationship between the dissolved (available) and the incorporated pools of an element within an ecosystem; that is, the maxima of the dissolved concentrations coincide with the minima of the particulate concentrations and conversely (Fig. 8.3a, b). Of course, heavy importation of allochthonous matter may obscure such patterns.

The biogeochemical cycles of individual elements are coupled, since by and large all organisms are made up of the same elements and the stoichiometric composition varies within fairly narrow limits. Silicon in diatoms is an exception (see Section 6.4.4). However, the composition of potentially limiting elements is so variable (especially phosphorus; see Droop's formula, Box 4.2) that one cannot apply a general formula to calculate the cycling of

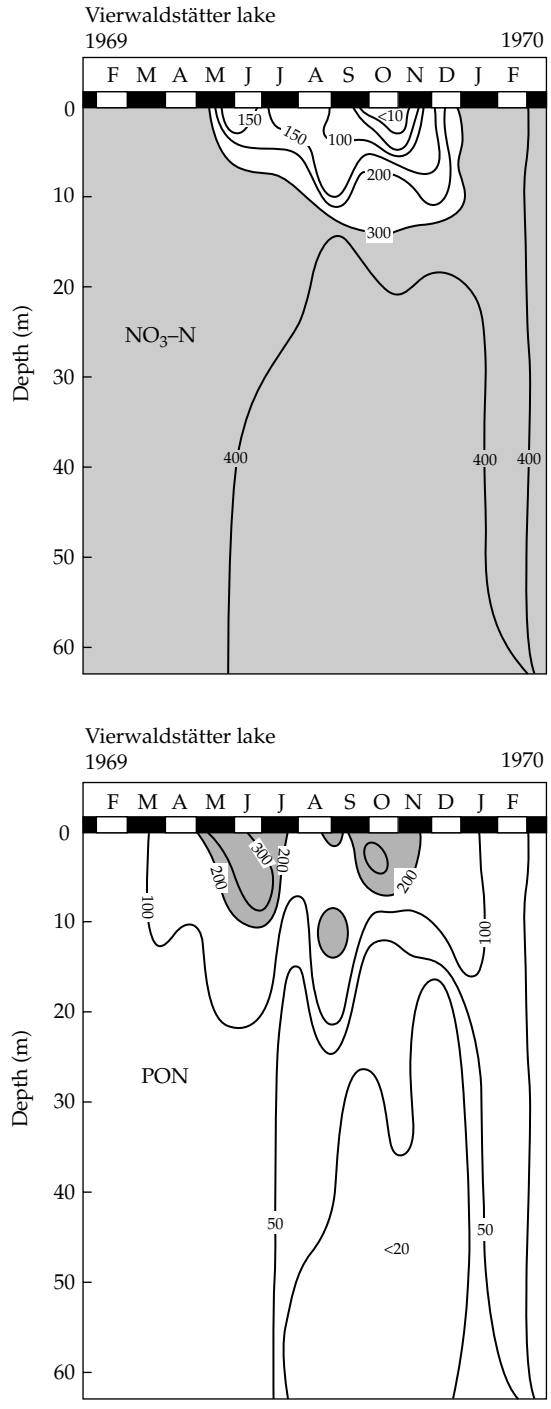


Figure 8.3 Complementary time–space distributions of nitrate-nitrogen (a) and particulate organic nitrogen (PON) (b) in Vierwaldstätter Lake (Switzerland). Concentrations in $\mu g\ N\ l^{-1}$; concentrations $>200\ \mu g\ N\ l^{-1}$ are shaded (from Stadelmann 1971).

an element from one organism to the next. Also, there are differences in the re-solubilization of various elements from dead organisms and animal feces. Phosphorus enters the dissolved phase more rapidly than nitrogen and carbon, and these latter elements more rapidly than silicon. Mobile elements such as phosphorus cycle between the dissolved and particulate phases many times within the epilimnion ("short-circuited cycle") before sinking, whereas immobile elements, such as silicon, sink out of the epilimnion after a single incorporation into biomass and may redissolve only after reaching the sediments. The following cycles of carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, and silicon are presented as examples of some of the biologically relevant elements in lake ecosystems.

8.3.2 The integration of lakes into larger-scale biogeochemical cycles

As stated earlier, biochemical cycles in lakes are not entirely closed. Lakes receive substances from the watershed and from the atmosphere; they export substances via the outflow and atmosphere and they bury substances in the sediments. Depending on the balance of these processes, water passing through a lake can be either enriched or impoverished of particular substances.

Modifications of water in the watershed

Before entering a lake, water is chemically altered while passing through the lake's *watershed*. The geology of the watershed and the chemical composition of the precipitation are extremely important. Average rainwater is roughly a 5000-fold dilution of seawater, with addition from the atmosphere of nitrous oxides, sulfur oxides, and ammonium. The hierarchy of cation concentrations is $Na^+ > Mg^{2+} > Ca^{2+} > K^+$, and the hierarchy for anions is $Cl^- > SO_4^{2-} > HCO_3^-$.

On its way to a lake, water is modified mainly by rock *weathering*. This leads to an enrichment of bivalent cations, especially calcium. The increased content of calcium permits a higher uptake of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere (see Section 3.1.6). Depending on the pH, carbon dioxide is then converted into bicarbonate and carbonate.

Soft waters are formed if the rocks in the watershed are resistant to weathering (granite and other acidic siliceous rocks) and if high precipitation minimizes the contact time on and in the ground. Soft waters have a low salinity and low alkalinity. The rank order among cations is $Ca^{2+} > Na^+ > Mg^{2+} > K^+$. In extremely soft waters, and especially in lakes in coastal regions, Na^+ may dominate over Ca^{2+}. The rank order of anions is similar to rainwater: $Cl^- > SO_4^{2-} > HCO_3^-$.

Hard waters develop if rocks weather easily (e.g., limestone) and precipitation is low or moderate. This results in water with higher salinity and alkalinity. The rank order of cations is $Ca^{2+} > Mg^{2+} > Na^+ > K^+$, and the rank order of anions is $HCO_3^- > SO_4^{2-} > Cl^-$. Carbonate rocks were deposited by organisms in the geological past, either as calcium from skeletons or by biogenic decalcification (see Section 3.1.6). Therefore, most of the calcium in present-day fresh water is recycled calcium from organisms; very little originates from primary weathering of calcium silicate rock.

Nutrient loading of present-day fresh water is also dominated by recycled matter from dead organisms. There are fundamental differences in the geological origin of different nutrients, such as nitrogen and phosphorus. The primary geological source of phosphorus was the mineral hydroxyapatite, whereas in geological times, nitrogen was brought into the global water cycle through the activities of organisms, mainly through their uptake of ammonium (the major nitrogen compound of the early, anoxic atmosphere) and the microbial fixation of nitrogen. Today, however, most of the nitrogen and phosphorus entering lakes are derived from soils. Most soils tend to retain phosphorus, but easily release nitrate and ammonium. This is probably the main reason why in lakes phosphorus tends to limit algal growth more than nitrogen. Human activities can accelerate the release of nutrients into lakes and streams. Agricultural activities tend to increase the N:P ratio in the nutrient loading of waters, while domestic wastewater tends to be rich in phosphorus, lowering the ratio of N:P. The topic of nutrient loading is further developed in Sections 8.5.4 and 8.6.1.

Modification of the water within lakes

Water from the watershed enters a lake from surface water and groundwater. Deposition of substances in the lake sediments leads to a decrease in

their concentration. If exchange with the atmosphere is negligible, the retention of a particular element may be calculated as the difference between the total amount of the element entering the lake via surface and groundwater inflows minus the total amount leaving the lake. At times the sediment can release substances instead of trapping them and thus cause a negative retention. The most conspicuous example is the release of phosphorus from anoxic sediments into the overlying water. If the sediments are oxic, bioturbation can lead to a flux of materials from the sediments to the overlying water. For example, benthic animals feeding within the sediments may excrete substances on to the surface of the sediments and into the water. However, negative retention is only possible on a short time scale, for only those substances that have been previously deposited can be released from the sediments. In the long run, the sediment must act as a sink for substances in a lake.

Balances are more complicated for elements that are *exchanged with the atmosphere*, such as carbon and nitrogen. Exchange of gases with the atmosphere tends to reduce the degree of undersaturation and supersaturation in the surface waters. The net balance of the exchange depends on the biological processes with the lake. For example, losses of carbon dioxide caused by photosynthesis and nondecomposed substances will result in a net import of carbon dioxide. The deposition of marl (calcium carbonate) is more complicated: While carbonate is exported to the sediment, the capacity of the water to take up carbon dioxide is also decreased (carbonate–bicarbonate–carbon dioxide equilibrium; see Section 3.1.6). Instead of compensating the DIC loss to the sediment by uptake from the atmosphere, additional carbon dioxide is lost from the water column to the atmosphere. A lake loaded with organic matter and with high rates of respiration by heterotrophic bacteria may have a net export of carbon dioxide. Small and medium-sized lakes are more often exporters of carbon dioxide ("net hetrotrophic") than importers. This means that photosynthesis is exceeded by respiration, and external subsidies of organic carbon support biological production in those lakes (Hanson *et al*. 2004). The total balance for nitrogen in a lake depends on the balance between nitrogen fixation and denitrification. Nitrogen fixation lowers the concentration of dissolved nitrogen gas in the water, allowing for an influx of nitrogen from the atmosphere. Denitrification increases the dissolved nitrogen in the water and may result in the gas being exported from the surface water to the atmosphere.

8.3.3 The carbon cycle

Dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC), dissolved organic carbon (DOC), and particulate organic carbon (POC) are the most important pools of carbon in aquatic ecosystems. The order of the relative size of the pools is usually DIC > DOC > POC. Usually most of the POC is bound up in detritus and the remainder in living organisms.

Figure 8.4 is a diagram of the carbon cycle in a hard-water lake (Lawrence Lake, Michigan, USA). This diagram illustrates the complexity of the processes involved in the carbon cycle, but it cannot simply be applied to all other types of lakes. The plant, microbial, and detrital components are much more detailed than the animal components, for they appear relatively unimportant, from the standpoint of mass flux.

The DIC pool consists of carbon dioxide, bicarbonate, and carbonate. Shifts between the three forms follow the laws of the carbon dioxide–carbonate-bicarbonate equilibrium (see Section 3.1.6) and are indirectly affected by the pH and the photosynthetic and respiratory activity of the aquatic organisms. The most important input of DIC is from atmospheric carbon dioxide, and the dominant abiotic outputs are evolution of dissolved carbon dioxide into the atmosphere and precipitation of marl (calcite). Respiration is the biological input, and photosynthesis and chemosynthesis are the biological outputs. The DOC pool consists of a mixture of various substances. The biologically reactive, low-molecular-weight compounds are less abundant than the refractory, high-molecular-weight humic substances (see Section 4.3.10). In addition to allochthonous inputs, the most important sources of DOC are secretion and excretion by organisms from all trophic levels and autolysis of detritus. Uptake by heterotrophic microorganisms, especially bacteria, is the most important sink for DOC. Excretion products are rapidly utilized by bacteria and therefore do not accumulate as the refractory substances do. In hard-water lakes some of the

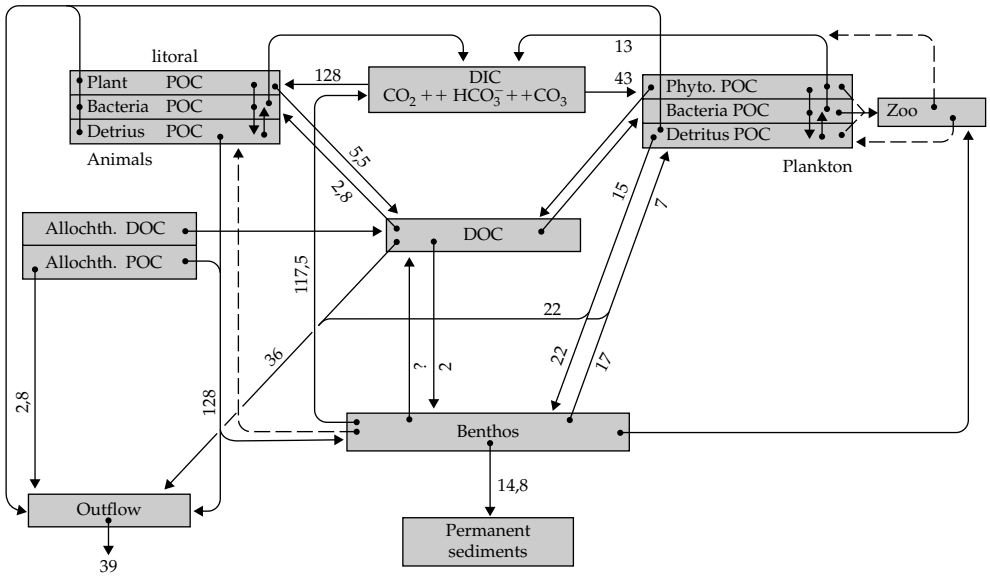


Figure 8.4 The carbon cycle in Lawrence Lake (Michigan, USA). Transfer rates in g C m^{-2} y^{-1}; dashed lines indicate transfer rates that are negligible in the authors' opinion (Wetzel 1983).

humic substances may be lost from the DOC pool through co-precipitation with marl.

Primary production is the source of POC, which consists of carbon bound in organisms and detritus. Shifts in the POC pool occur because of death, feeding, and parasitism. POC can be transformed into DIC by respiration and into DOC via secretion, excretion, and autolysis. POC is lost from the pelagic region and imported into the benthic zone through sedimentation. Sedimented POC may be resuspended into the pelagic region by wind-driven water currents and by occasional benthivory by pelagic animals.

8.3.4 The nitrogen cycle

The most abundant nitrogen component in lakes is dissolved elemental nitrogen (N_2; solubility *c*.15–20 mg l^{-1}); however, relatively few organisms can use nitrogen in this form. Nitrogen fixation requires the enzyme nitrogenase, which is found only in procaryotes (see Section 4.3.7). The contribution of nitrogen fixation to the nitrogen cycle of lakes is highly seasonal.

For autotrophic organisms that do not produce nitrogenase, dissolved nitrate, nitrite, and ammonium are the most important inorganic forms of nitrogen. These forms of inorganic nitrogen are carried into lakes through surface water, groundwater, and precipitation. All three nitrogen compounds can be utilized by autotrophic organisms. On the other hand, the decomposition of nitrogen-rich organic compounds releases only ammonium (*ammonification*). In contrast to vertebrates, which excrete either urea or uric acid, zooplankton excrete ammonium. Thus it has become customary in marine biology to refer to nitrate as "new" and to ammonium as "regenerated" nitrogen. To go from nitrate to nitrite to ammonium a series of microbial transformations are required that depend on the presence or absence of oxygen (Fig. 8.5). The nitrate respiration that takes place in an anoxic condition (see Section 4.3.9) transforms nitrate to either ammonium (*nitrate ammonification*) or elemental nitrogen (*denitrification*). *Nitrification*, which takes place under oxic conditions (see Section 4.3.8) transforms ammonium via nitrite into nitrate. Because this process requires oxygen, it results in a characteristic depth profile in eutrophic lakes (Fig. 8.6). Anaerobic ammonium oxidation involves both, ammonium as reduced substrate and nitrate as oxidant and produces nitrogen as end product. Since the three forms of nitrogen are taken up by phytoplankton, all three have a minimum concentration at the depth of maximum photosynthesis (0–6 m). Nitrate

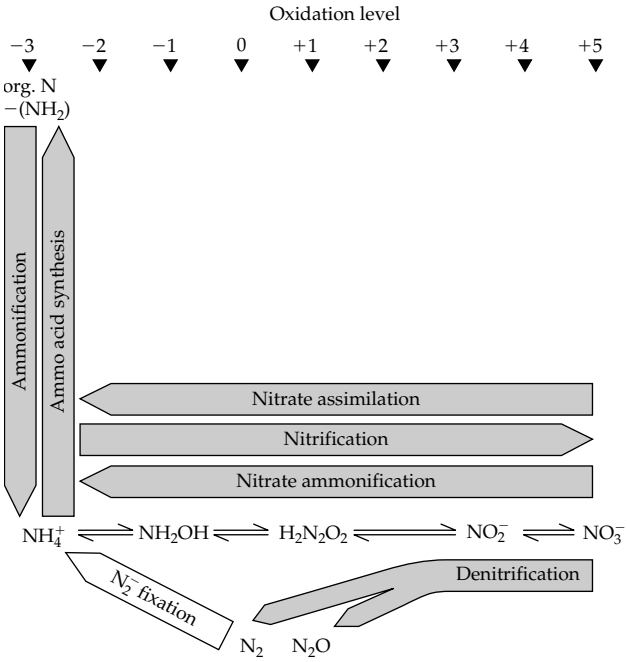


Figure 8.5 Biochemical transformations in the oxidation levels of nitrogen (from Wetzel 1983).

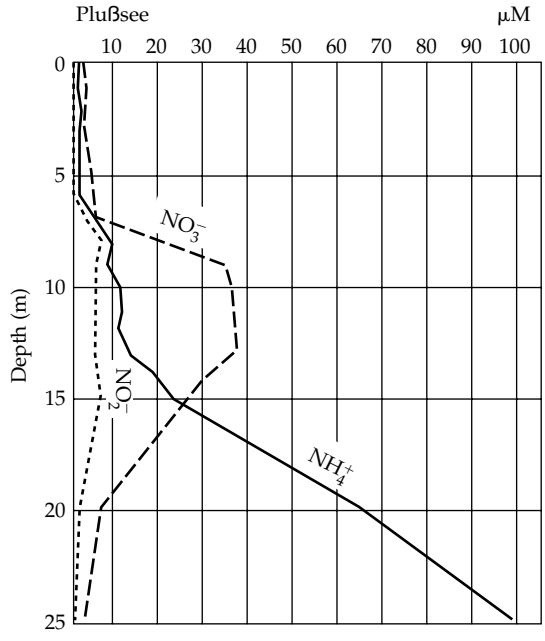


Figure 8.6 Vertical profiles of nitrate, nitrite, and ammonium in Plußsee.

increases rapidly with depth until it begins to be removed by nitrate respiration. Ammonium begins to increase below 7 m, whereas nitrite, as a relatively temporary intermediate stage in nitrification, has a limited maximum near the lower boundary of the oxidized zone.

Dissolved organic nitrogen (DON) comes from the excretion from organisms and the decomposition of detritus. It consists mainly of polypeptides and other complex amino groups. Simple amino acids are taken up quickly by bacteria and are therefore present in low concentrations. Microorganisms can also excrete peptidases (exoenzymes) that assist in the splitting of peptides into smaller units.

A diagram of the most important components of the nitrogen cycle in a lake with an anoxic hypolimnion is shown in Fig. 8.7. When there is oxygen in the hypolimnion the anoxic conditions and associated transformations occur only in the sediments.

8.3.5 The phosphorus cycle

In contrast to nitrogen, phosphorus in ecosystems occurs in only one form, PO_4 (*orthophosphate*). Similarly, phosphorus is bound to organic compounds by ester bonds between phosphoric acid derivatives and carbon chains. Orthophosphate is much less mobile than nitrogen in the sediments and precipitates more easily, since it combines with several different cations ($A1^{3+}$, Fe^{3+}, Ca^{2+}) to form

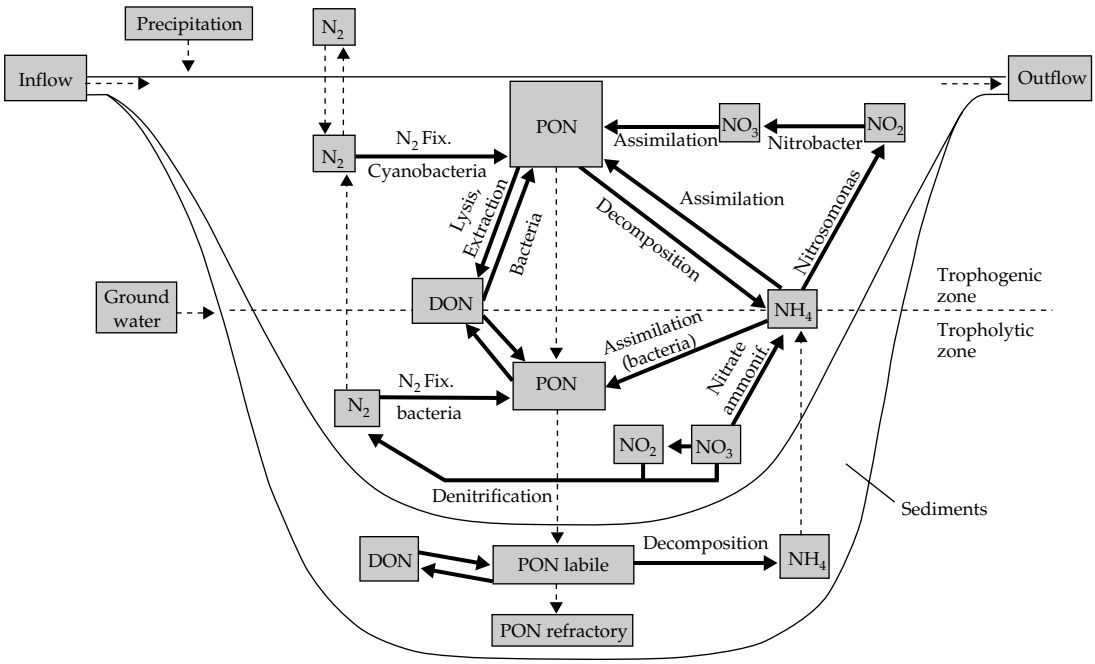


Figure 8.7 The nitrogen cycle in a lake with an anaerobic hypolimnion. The transformations within the PON pool (grazing) are not indicated. Dashed lines: transport processes; solid lines: biological and chemical transformations.

highly insoluble products and also it readily adsorbs to clay. If the load of phosphorus is not increased artificially by anthropogenic influences (wastewater, detergents), lakes usually receive more nitrogen than phosphorus in the surface and ground water. In unpolluted lakes phosphorus is more often the limiting factor for plant growth than nitrogen.

The fractions of phosphorus that are differentiated in limnological investigations of phosphorus cycling are primarily determined by the methodology and do not correspond precisely with the chemical species (Strickland and Parsons 1968):

- *Soluble reactive phosphorus* (SRP) passes through a filter with 0.1 or 0.2 μm pores and is measured directly with the molybdenum blue method. In the older literature this fraction is often referred to as orthophosphate, but it consists of this free ion as well as many other labile phosphorus compounds. Actually, the SRP fraction closely approximates the amount of phosphorus available for use by phytoplankton, since some of these other compounds can be broken down and transported across the cell membrane in addition to the free phosphorus ion.
- *Total dissolved phosphorus* (TDP) passes through a filter with 0.1 or 0.2 μm pores and is measured with the molybdenum blue method after an acidification and oxidation step. The portion that does not react without the acid oxidation consists of colloidal phosphorus as well as the dissolved organic phosphorus with low molecular weight (*c.*250). Both of these fractions continually contribute to the SRP pool.
- *Total phosphorus* (P_{tot} or TP) is determined from an acidified and oxidized unfiltered sample and thus contains both the dissolved and particulate components (P_{part} or PP). The PP is either determined by the difference between the filtered and unfiltered samples or by measuring the particulate matter collected on the filter.

The most important internal sink of soluble reactive phosphorus is uptake by algae and bacteria. It is noteworthy that the carbon-heterotrophic bacteria can be phosphorus autotrophs; that is, in taking up inorganic phosphorus they compete with the phytoplankton for SRP. Despite the fact that phosphorus is often the growth-limiting factor, algae and bacteria lose SRP, and to a lesser degree,

low-molecular-weight, nonreactive phosphate (Lean and Nalewajko 1976). This *back and forth flow* of phosphorus is the most rapid of the interacting cycles in lakes. The turnover time of the SRP pool, estimated from the gross uptake of radioactive phosphorus (^{32}P), may be less than 10 min under phosphorus-limited conditions. Many researchers have taken interest in this rapid cycling, but it is of little ecological consequence, since the growth of organisms and transfer of phosphorus through the food chain depends on the net uptake of phosphorus. Important internal supplies of phosphorus occur through animal excretion and the decomposition of nonreactive components by microbial exoenzymes (phosphatases).

During the growth period, SRP in the epilimnion may be reduced to its limit of detection (0.03 μM, *c*.1 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$). Periods in which zooplankton grazing exceeds phytoplankton production (clear-water phase) can usually be recognized by an increase in the SRP concentration. SRP and particulate phosphorus have complementary seasonal changes; due to sedimentation, the total phosphorus in the epilimnion usually decreases during the stratified period unless there is a major external addition. As the thermocline deepens in the fall there is a mixing of phosphorus-rich water into the epilimnion, causing another increase in the P_{tot} concentration in the epilimnion (Fig. 8.8).

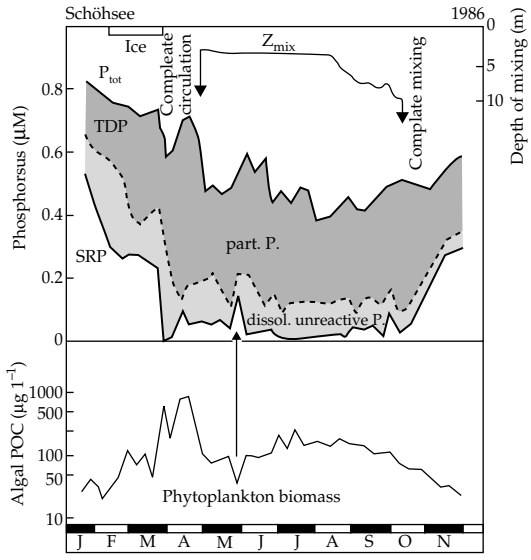


Figure 8.8 Seasonal changes in the various phosphorus fractions (P_{tot}, TDP, SRP; concentrations in μg) in Schöhsee related to the mixing depth and the development of the phytoplankton biomass. The arrow indicates the clear-water phase.

Figure 8.9 shows a diagram of the phosphorus cycle in a stratified lake. Phosphorus moves into the sediments through sinking of organisms and adsorption on sinking clay minerals and marl particles. The redox conditions in the sediment–water boundary layer are of critical importance in determining the fate of the phosphorus in the sediments. The concentration of phosphorus in the anoxic interstitial water of the sediment is always an order of magnitude or more higher than in the open water. According to the concentration gradient, then, there must always be a diffusion of phosphorus into the open water. When the deep water and the sediment–water boundary are oxidized (oxidized microzone), iron occurs as the oxidized Fe^{3+} form. Phosphorus that diffuses up from the sediments forms an insoluble complex with $Fe(OH)_3$ that precipitates. If the Fe^{3+} is reduced to Fe^{2+}, the complex dissolves and the phosphorus can go back into solution. The reduction of iron occurs at a redox potential of 0.2–0.3 mV, which may be found in the hypolimnion of productive lakes at an oxygen concentration of about 0.1 $mg\,l^{-1}$ (see Section 3.3.1). Thus, phosphorus accumulates in the anoxic hypolimnion, since it remains soluble there and does not precipitate back to sediments. Occasionally, turbulence-induced mixing of the thermocline causes phosphorus to move into the epilimnion, stimulating the growth of the algae. This, in turn, leads to further oxygen consumption and greater release of phosphorus from the sediments ("galloping eutrophication"). In this way the sediment acts as a phosphorus trap, as long as its surface is oxidized, and as a phosphorus source when it becomes reduced and the oxidized microzone disappears. There is also some release of phosphorus into the hypolimnetic water from oxidized sediments, through excretion from benthic animals and by their mechanical disturbance and mixing of the upper few centimeters (bioturbation).

8.3.6 The silicon cycle

Silicon is somewhat unusual, since in fresh water there is only one group of organisms, the diatoms, that use it in significant amounts. The effect on the

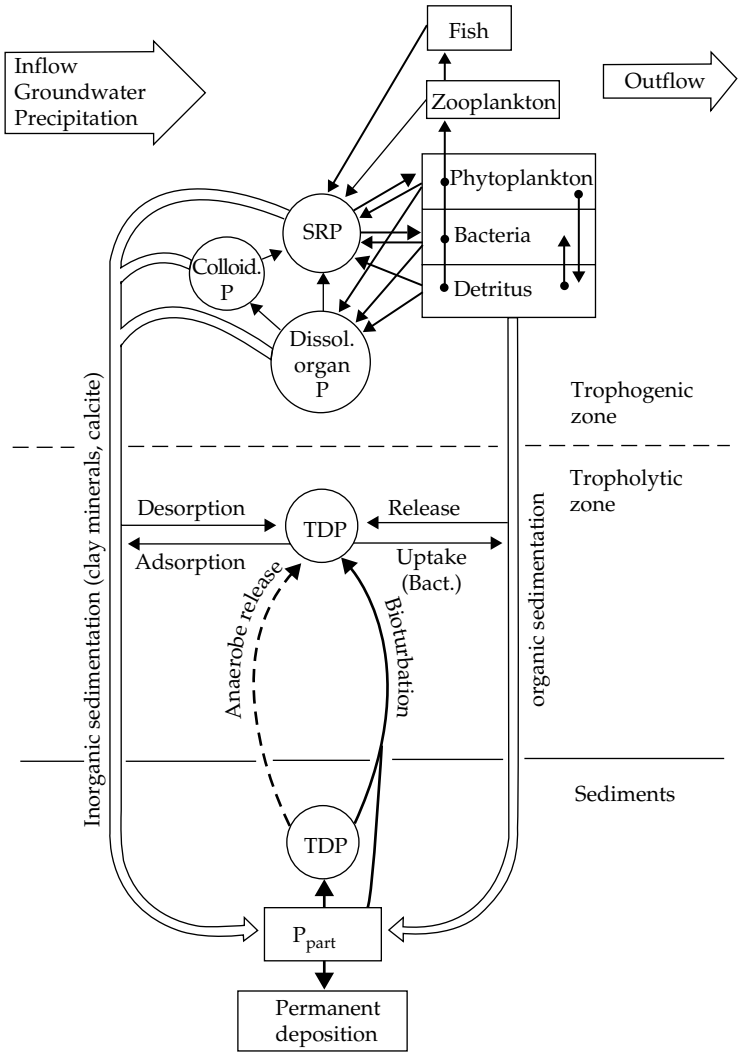


Figure 8.9 Diagram of the phosphorus cycle in a stratified lake. Grey arrows: physical transport; black arrows: biological transformations.

silicon cycle of chrysophytes with siliceous scales is negligible. Diatoms, on the other hand, require large quantities of silicon.

Soluble silicon occurs as orthosilicic acid, which does not dissociate at pH values < 9. It is derived from the weathering of silicate minerals. The only significant sink in lakes is the uptake by diatoms. Although the shells of diatoms dissolve in water, the process is very slow, requiring on the average 50 days for 50% of the particulate silica of a dead diatom to dissolve. Also, silica does not dissolve during passage through the gut of herbivorous zooplankton; unlike other algal nutrients, silica is excreted in particulate form rather than dissolved. This and the rapid sinking of dead and detrital diatoms (several meters per day) means that there is essentially no short-circuited cycling of silicon in the epilimnion (Sommer 1988b). This is also evidenced by the lack of recovery of soluble silicon in the epilimnion following the collapse of a diatom maximum (Fig. 8.10). Increased silicon concentrations in the epilimnion occur only after allochthonous

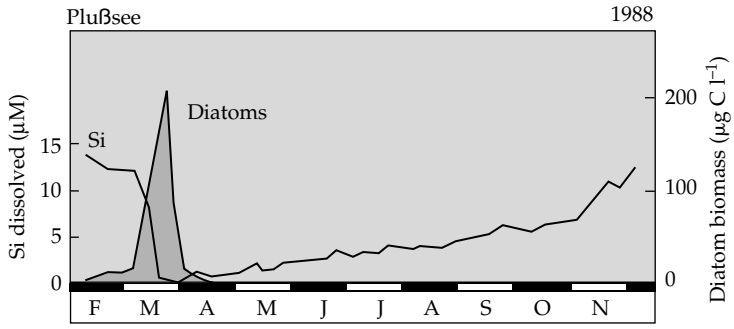


Figure 8.10 Concentration of dissolved silicon (µm) and biomass of the diatoms (µg C l^{-1}) in the epilimnion of Plußsee.

additions or mixing from silicon-rich deep water. Particulate silica in the sediments may partially dissolve and return to the open water by diffusion and bioturbation. Diatom shells are resistant and accumulate with time, making up some of the most important microfossils in paleolimnology.

8.4 Are streams ecosystems?

The definition of an ecosystem implies that it must have some type of boundary that separates it from other systems, regardless of whether it is a "microcosm" that has characteristics greater that the sum of the parts or is simply an aggregation of integrated communities and abiotic factors (see Section 8.1). Two major ecosystem features are that energy flows through the system and materials cycle within it. Generally it is assumed that outside energy is fixed within the system (e.g., light energy is fixed by green plants) and is then converted back to heat by heterotrophic organisms. Heterotrophic activity also releases essential substances (e.g., oxidized carbon), making them once again available for energy fixation.

The ecosystem concept is sometimes applied to streams and rivers, referring to them as *flowing water ecosystems*. Application of the holistic concept of ecosystem ("superorganism") to streams creates major difficulties.

First of all, streams are primarily heterotrophic functioning systems. The energy for streams is fixed mainly in terrestrial systems in the watershed, rather than in the stream itself. Energy is always transported as allochthonous organic matter into the water, where it is then utilized. This means that the processes of energy fixation and decomposition are separated. A stream system could not exist without the energy supplied by its watershed; it is energetically dependent on its watershed. On the other hand, decomposition can take place quite well outside of the stream. Such a dependency is one-sided. It does not make sense to treat a one-sided, dependent structure as an independent system. Streams can therefore be better understood by treating them as a part of a larger system, such as the valley (Hynes 1975).

There is a similar problem in considering the cycling of matter in streams. Substances released by decomposition are not available for the producers, because they are carried downstream in a flowing wave and, at best, may be utilized by downstream organisms. Materials "spiral" downstream, rather than cycle. Compared to the quantity of nutrients transported from the watershed, the amount regenerated in the stream is negligible. Also, with regard to inorganic matter, the stream system is largely controlled by external influences. Certainly there are situations where the stream exports matter into the watershed (e.g., the role of the river Nile water for the fertility of the Egyptian agriculture), but even then it is actually a matter of moving the nutrients from the land (upper reaches) by the stream (means of transport) back to the land (lower reaches).

Streams are thus dependent on the watershed in terms of energy flow as well as the movement of matter and are best understood as part of the entire

watershed system. This explains the great elasticity of streams following disturbances (see Section 8.8.3). Even when considerable stretches of a stream are disturbed, this represents only a localized effect. For example, the large watershed is not affected by an accidental poisoning in a brook. The watershed represents a buffer that remains intact. Impacts on the watershed (e.g., deforestation), however, can cause dramatic effects on the stream. The effects of deforestation of an entire watershed on its stream were carefully studied in a famous large-scale study at Hubbard Brook (north-eastern USA) (Likens *et al*. 1977).

Thus the concept of an ecosystem as a self-regulating system cannot be correctly applied to streams. Reference to streams as ecosystems should be restricted to describing the "system" of interrelationships of biotic and abiotic factors. Used in this way, the phrase *stream ecosystem* has heuristic value, for it draws attention to the importance of abiotic factors that are especially important in streams.

It may be surprising that one of the classic ecosystem studies that first quantified energy flow through all trophic levels was conducted on a stream, Silver Springs, Florida (USA) (see Fig. 8.2). Closer examination reveals that Silver Springs is a very atypical stream. Most of the energy in Silver Springs comes from photosynthesis by macrophytes and their associated periphyton. Allochthonous energy inputs come mainly from the feeding of fish by tourists. There is actually no cycling of matter, for the system is supplied entirely by spring water that supplies an excess of nutrients. The absence of a cycling of matter is not critical in this case, as the study was restricted to examining the flow of energy. Silver Springs is energetically independent of its watershed, but entirely dependent on the spring water for matter. It can be viewed as a special type of system in steady state. Of course, the fact that it is in steady state makes it ideal for the study of energy flow.

8.5 Comparisons of ecosystem productivity

8.5.1 "Empirical models"

The concept of "productivity of an ecosystem" is similar to the concept of "fertility" in agriculture. It refers to the ability of any trophic level to produce biomass. The productivities of the various trophic levels are usually positively correlated, since the lower trophic levels form the food base for the higher trophic levels. In ecosystems with little allochthonous organic input, the primary production is representative of the productivity of the entire ecosystem.

One of the main goals of comparative ecosystem research, as carried out in the International Biological Program (IBP) of the 1970s, was the measurement of productivity of different ecosystems and the discovery of global trends in the control of productivity by climatic and geochemical conditions. In addition, there was an attempt to find statistical correlations between input parameters and the productivity and biomass of individual trophic levels. Using comparative studies, one can develop "empirical models" that allow for probabilistic predictions of aggregated parameters, such as production and biomass for specific trophic levels. Such empirical models are simply *regression analyses* between input and output parameters, such as primary production and secondary production. The input parameter need not be the production or biomass of the next lower trophic level; for example, it is possible to determine the statistical correlation between fish production (output) and primary production (input). In many cases empirical models also use *surrogate parameters* (e.g., the geographical latitude) as a substitute for the radiation of light energy or chlorophyll for the biomass of the phytoplankton. Of course, unless the surrogate parameter and the actual parameter of interest are closely correlated, much variability will be introduced into the analysis.

Significant correlations are found through regression analysis only when there are large differences in the dependent and independent variables in the different lakes. This large-scale approach almost always favors the bottom-up hypothesis; that is, there are positive correlations between production and biomass parameters in the different trophic levels. Top-down effects simply appear as overlapping variability between the individual lakes (see Section 7.3.5).

8.5.2 Primary production and biomass of the phytoplankton

The comparative investigations of the IBP showed that the amount of primary production in lakes declines as one goes from the tropics to the poles. This is especially true for the most productive lakes in the various zones, and less so for the unproductive lakes. There are several potential causes for this effect, which may be additive:

- The amount of light energy is higher in the tropics: The longer growth period in the summer appears to have a greater effect than the longer summer day length at higher latitudes.
- Nutrients are remineralized more rapidly at higher temperatures and are therefore more available in the epilimnion for primary production, before they eventually sediment out.
- The polymictic mixing regime in tropical lakes continually cancels out the spatial separation between availability of light and nutrients.

There is a general trend with geographical latitude, but there are large differences between individual lakes at any particular latitude. Much of this variation is caused by differences in the availability of limiting nutrients. Thus within the temperate zone of North America and Europe the average daily primary production in the growth period ($mg\,C\,m^{-3}\,d^{-1}$) is closely correlated with the concentration of total phosphorus ($\mu g\,l^{-1}$):

$$PPR = 10.4P_{tot} - 79, \quad r^2 = 0.94$$

(Smith 1979). This empirical model can be used to predict the primary production from the total phosphorus concentration, with a high degree of statistical certainty.

Practical needs associated with the eutrophication of lakes have led to the development of a large number of empirical models to predict the biomass of the phytoplankton from the supply of nutrients. Chlorophyll is usually used as a surrogate parameter for biomass, although occasionally microscopically determined biovolume or POC (detritus is included) is used as the dependent variable. The conceptual basis for the model is the assumption that only a given amount of biomass can be formed from a certain amount of a limiting nutrient. One should note, however, how the temporal and spatial average values have been derived when comparisons are made of different phosphorus–biomass models. Temporally, there are models that use yearly averages, averages for the growth period, or maximum values; spatially, vertical integral values are used to calculate mean values for the euphotic zone, the epilimnion, or per unit lake volume or lake surface area.

The best-known empirical model is the comparative eutrophication study of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) (Vollenweider and Kerekes 1982). This model can be used for a discussion of the problems of all phosphorus–biomass models and all similar regression models. The OECD model includes two steps. The first step describes the relationship between the phosphorus loading and the phosphorus concentration in a lake (see Section 8.5.4). The second step conveys the relationship between phosphorus concentration and phytoplankton biomass. When chlorophyll is used as a surrogate parameter for biomass, the regression equation obtained is:

$$\text{Chl a} = 0.28P_{tot}^{0.96}, \quad r^2 = 0.77, \quad n = 77$$

where Chl a is the yearly average in the euphotic zone, in $\mu g\,l^{-1}$, P_{tot} is the yearly average for the lake, in $\mu g\,l^{-1}$, r^2 is the coefficient of determination and n is the number of lakes sampled. Despite the high significance of the regression equation, there is considerable variance between the individual data points (Fig. 8.11). The 95% confidence interval for the dependent variable covers almost an order of magnitude. At a P_{tot} content of $10\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$ the chlorophyll concentration lies with 95% confidence between 0.8 and $7.8\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$ and at $100\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$ between 7.8 and $76\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$. Thus, in order not to overlap in their 95% confidence intervals, lakes must differ in P_{tot} content by at least one order of magnitude. Most other empirical models that use double logarithmic regressions have similarly broad confidence intervals. Because of this variability such models are not useful as a calibration tools with which the measurement of one variable can eliminate the need for measuring another.

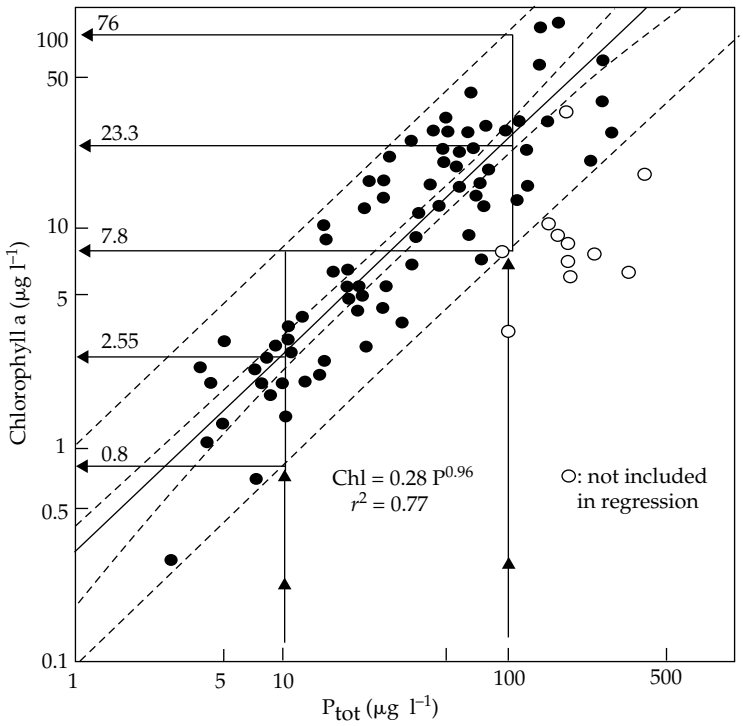


Figure 8.11 The phosphorus–chlorophyll model of the OECD eutrophication study (from Vollenweider and Kerekes 1982). Each data point represents one lake. Log-log regression of chlorophyll (yearly average in the euphotic zone) and total phosphorus (yearly average for the entire water column). Inner dashed line: 95% confidence interval around the regression line; outer dashed line: 95% confidence limit for the dependent variables; thin lines with arrows: predicted chlorophyll values for lakes with 10 and 100 $\mu g\, P_{tot}\, l^{-1}$.

8.5.3 Secondary production, fish yield, and animal biomass

If the ecological efficiency is constant, secondary and primary production are directly proportional. Since lakes can vary about three orders of magnitude in primary production (Brylinsky 1980), there is a statistical correlation between primary production and secondary production despite differences in ecological efficiency (0.05–0.2). The data from the IBP showed there is a linear relationship between the annual gross primary production (PP) and the annual net secondary production (SP) both in $kJ\, m^{-2}\, year^{-1}$):

$$SP = -36.05 + 0.128PP, \quad r^2 = 0.82, \quad n = 17$$

Fish yield, the catch of fish per unit surface area, is an economically important parameter. Although in fisheries management it is often referred to as "fish production," it is not a production value in the ecological sense, as the catch depends on the intensity of fishing as well as the productivity of the ecosystem. This error is eliminated if the fishing is conducted strictly according to the principle of *sustainability*; that is, the amount caught each year equals the amount grown. In this case the fish yield is less than the actual fish production, as not all fish species are caught. Fish production cannot be designated to a particular trophic level, since fish belong to several trophic levels. Nevertheless, statistical relationships have been derived for the productivity of a lake and its fish yield:

$$Y_F = 7.1P_{tot}^{1.0}, \quad r^2 = 0.87, \quad n = 21$$

$$Y_D = 0.012Ch1^{1.17}, \quad r^2 = 0.87, \quad n = 19$$

$$Y_D = 10^{-6}PP^{2.0}, \quad r^2 = 0.74, \quad n = 15$$

where Y_F is the fish yield in g fresh weight $m^{-2}year^{-1}$, Y_D the fish yield in dry weight $m^{-2}year^{-1}$, P_{tot} the total phosphorus in $mg\,l^{-1}$ (annual average), Chl the chlorophyll in $mg\,l^{-1}$ (summer average), and PP the primary production in $g\,C\ m^{-2}year^{-1}$. The equations in Section 8.5.3 are from Peters (1986), who summarizes a large number of "empirical" relationships for production and biomass of many different trophic levels.

8.5.4 Trophic classification of lakes

Early on in limnology it was known that large, deep lakes are usually less productive than those that are small and shallow. There are several reasons for the relationship between the size and productivity of lakes:

- A lake receives its nutrients from its watershed mainly through erosion. Assuming the same supply of nutrients per unit surface area, the nutrient loading per unit lake volume depends on the ratio of lake volume to watershed area. Lakes that are large in relation to their watershed will have low nutrient loading.
- In large, deep lakes only a small part of the epilimnion is in contact with the sediments during the summer, so that there is little opportunity for return of nutrients to the euphotic zone.
- Larger lakes usually have a longer hydraulic retention time. During the time the water is retained a large portion of the nutrients is lost through sedimentation. The OECD eutrophication study found the following empirical relationship between the P_{tot} concentration in the lake (P_L), the P_{tot} concentration in the tributaries (P_{in}) and the theoretical hydraulic retention time (τ_w, in years) (Vollenweider and Kerekes 1982):

$$P_L = 1.55\left[P_{in} / \left(1 - \sqrt{\tau_w}\right)\right]^{0.82}, \quad r^2 = 0.86, \quad n = 87$$

This equation shows that the difference between the P concentration in the lake and the tributaries is dependent on τ_w.

The striking differences between very productive and very unproductive lakes inspired Einar Naumann and August Thienemann to develop a *lake typology* (Elster 1974). Lakes with little productivity and clear water were referred to as *oligotrophic*, and lakes with high productivity and greenish water due to phytoplankton were called *eutrophic*. An additional *dystrophic* type described lakes with low conductivity and water colored brown by dissolved humic substances. Originally, lakes were assigned to a particular type according to qualitative criteria: Oligotrophic lakes have an orthograde oxygen profile in the summer, and eutrophic lakes have a clinograde oxygen curve (see Section 3.3.1). An additional criterion was the oxidized (oligotrophic) or reduced (eutrophic) sediment surface. A closely linked feature was the colonization of the sediments with different indicator organisms. In oligotrophic lakes, for example, the chironomid larvae *Tanytarus* spp. dominate the benthos, whereas *Chironomus* spp. is the dominant chironomid in eutrophic lakes. The latter are capable of anoxibiosis and thus can withstand long periods in the anoxic hypolimnion of eutrophic lakes.

As a result of the OECD study, there have been attempts to replace the qualitative lake typology with quantitative criteria. "Oligotrophic" and "eutrophic" are regions of a trophic continuum that can be separated from one another by established limits, such as by the P_{tot} concentration during the spring circulation:

- ultraoligotrophic: $P_{tot} < 5\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$
- oligotrophic: P_{tot} 5–10 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$
- mesotrophic: P_{tot} 10–30 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$
- eutrophic: P_{tot} 30–100 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$
- hypereutrophic: $P_{tot} > 100\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$.

These threshold values can also be expressed as production or biomass by using the empirical equations given in Sections 8.5.2 and 8.5.3. In this way the system can also be used for lakes in which phosphorus is not the factor limiting productivity.

Chemical data are more easily quantified and translated into technical procedures. However, the trophic condition of a lake is basically a biological phenomenon. Trophic condition cannot be determined by a single factor, as illustrated by comparing Schöhsee in Holstein, Germany (mean depth 13 m) and Lake Constance. Schöhsee is mesotrophic according to the OECD criteria (P_{tot} *c.*20 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$), but it has an anoxic hypolimnion and is therefore

eutrophic in the traditional sense. Based on its high phosphorus concentration, Lake Constance (1980, P_{tot} *c*.100 $\mu g\,l^{-1}$) should have been classed as eutrophic according to the OECD criteria, although the oxygen concentration near the bottom in the summer was about 50% saturation, which in the traditional scheme would be considered mesotrophic. These discrepancies can be explained by the morphometry of the lakes: Lake Constance (mean depth *c*.100 m) has an enormous hypolimnion that brings in a large supply of dissolved oxygen during the spring circulation that can be used to decompose the sinking organic matter from the trophogenic zone. Schöhsee, in contrast, has a small hypolimnion with a correspondingly small supply of oxygen. Thienemann had already recognized the importance of morphometry for the trophic condition of lakes. He writes that lakes with a volume ratio of epilimnion to hypolimnion of <1 tend to be eutrophic, whereas lakes with a ratio of >1 are more likely to be oligotrophic. Clearly, several criteria are needed to characterize the trophic condition of a lake (Box 8.1).

8.6 Anthropogenic disturbances to ecosystems

8.6.1 Eutrophication: causes and consequences

The increase in trophic condition of a lake is referred to as *eutrophication*. It is a slow and natural process in the geological history of a lake. The lake basin gradually fills with sediments, reducing its volume (silting up). This leads to an increase in the trophic condition, even if there is no change in the nutrient load. In past decades the trophic condition of many inland waters has increased rapidly. Eutrophication has proved to be one of the most widespread and serious anthropogenic disturbances to aquatic ecosystems. A review on the complex causes, development, and consequences of eutrophication has been given by Schindler (2006).

There is considerable consensus today that the major cause for eutrophication is the increased loading of nutrients, especially phosphorus. Such *increasing anthropogenic nutrient loading* has even lead to the eutrophication of very large lakes, such as Lake Erie (25 800 km^2) and Lake Ontario

Box 8.1 Some characteristics of oligotrophic and eutrophic lakes

	Oligotrophic	Eutrophic
Morphometry	Deep	Shallow
Volume ratio epi/hypolimnion	<1*	>1*
Primary production	Low (50–300 mg C $m^{-2}\,d^{-1}$)	High (>1000 mg C $m^{-2}\,d^{-1}$)
Algal biomass	Small	Large
	0.02–0.1 mg C l^{-1}	>0.3 mg C l^{-1}
	0.3–3 mg Chl a l^{-1}	10–500 mg Chl a l^{-1}
Nutrients	Sparse	Plentiful
P_{tot} after complete circulation	<10 mg l^{-1}	>30 mg l^{-1}
Massive development of cyanobacteria	Absent	Present
O_2 depletion in the hypolimnion	Little, $>50\%$	Strong, may be anoxic
O_2 profile	Orthograde	Clinograde
Profundal zoobenthos	Diverse, O_2 requiring	Species poor, tolerate low O_2
Chironomid larvae	*Tanytarsus* group	*Chironomus* group
Fish fauna	Deep-water salmonids, coregonids	Cyprinids, centrachids (sunfish) "warm-water" fish

* Exceptions possible.

(24 500 km^2). Increasing wastewater, the introduction of phosphorus-containing domestic detergents, increasing use of fertilizers, and increased erosion in the watershed are the major reasons for the increased loading of nutrients. The loading of nitrogen is increased by pollution of the atmosphere with nitrous oxides, where they combine with water vapor and are transported to lakes as precipitation, contributing to increased loading of nitrogen. Fertilization of farmland has its greatest effect on nitrogen loading, as phosphorus, unlike nitrogen, is relatively immobile once it is in the soil. However, flooding can transport large quantities of phosphorus, derived from fertilizers, to lakes. Domestic sewage is responsible primarily for increased phosphorus loading. It contains on the average an N:P ratio of 4:1 and can lead to a shift from phosphorus to nitrogen limitation (see Section 4.3.7). Estimates of the various components of phosphorus loading in Lake Constance for 1976 show the importance of detergent phosphorus and fecal phosphorus in the sewage before the construction of modern wastewater treatment facilities (Fig. 8.12). The phosphorus content in detergents has now been reduced by the introduction of phosphate substitutes.

An especially undesirable consequence of eutrophication is the massive development of cyanobacteria (blue-green algae), which tend to form dense *surface blooms*. Some strains are toxic or cause allergic reactions in humans. Cyanobacteria excrete organic compounds that impart bad odors and tastes to water, creating serious problems in drinking-water. Some of the classic "problem algae" are the nitrogen-fixing *Anabaena* and *Aphanizomenon*, as well as the non-nitrogen-fixing genera *Microcystis, Limnothrix*, and *Planktothrix*. Most of the bloom-forming cyanobacteria appear in the late stages of eutrophication. The red-pigmented *Planktothrix* spp. are unusual in being able to regulate their position in the water column and inhabit the metalimnion of deep lakes in the early stages of eutrophication (often already at 20 μg P_{tot} l^{-1}). *Planktothrix* is mixed throughout the entire water column during the periods of circulation and becomes layered in the metalimnion during the summer. When

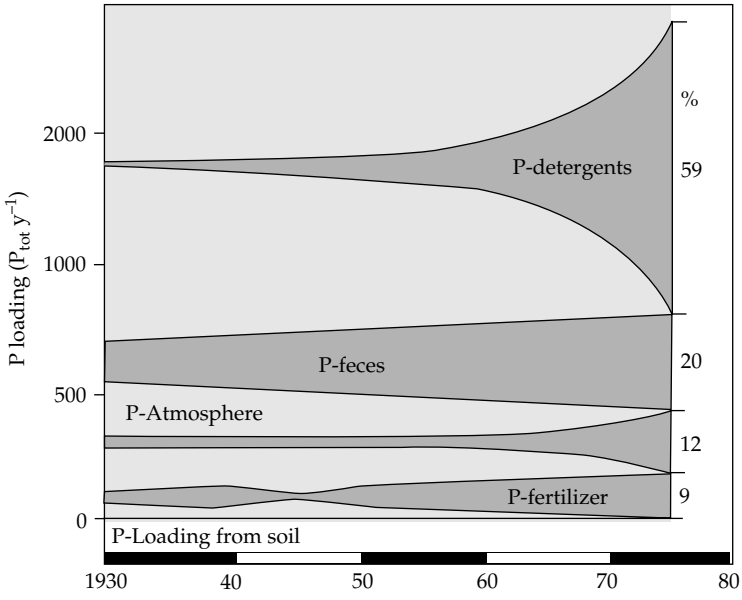


Figure 8.12 Annual phosphorus loading in Lake Constance before the successful implementation of sewage treatment (from model estimates of Wagner 1976).

advanced eutrophication reduces light penetration, this stratum becomes too dark and *Planktothrix* disappears again (e.g., in Lake Zürich; see Section 4.3.5).

One effect of eutrophication on the littoral zone is a worsening of the light climate for submersed macrophytes. Under oligotrophic conditions macrophytes that obtain their nutrients from the sediments have an advantage over the periphyton community, which gets its supply of nutrients from the water. As the supply of nutrients in the water increases, the macrophytes become increasingly overgrown with periphyton algae and clumps of filamentous forms such as *Cladophora* and *Spirogyra*. This, along with the poorer light conditions, leads to a suppression of the macrophytes and, indirectly, of their associated fauna.

The main effect of eutrophication in the hypolimnion and sediments is the increased consumption of oxygen. As anoxic conditions develop at the sediment surface and in the hypolimnion the deep water, fauna becomes impoverished. Even pelagic fish, which release their eggs in the open water to sink to the bottom (e.g., lake whitefish), cannot continue to reproduce naturally in a lake with an anoxic sediment surface. Anoxic conditions also lead to a series of chemical and microbial processes that otherwise would not take place: nitrate ammonification, denitrification, desulfurization (Section 4.3.9), and methane formation (Section 4.3.10). The reduced end products of these anoxic reactions can then be used as initial products for chemolithotrophic processes at the aerobic–anoxic boundary (Section 4.3.8). The release of phosphorus from the anoxic sediments (internal loading) is extremely important, as this sets in motion the *self-acceleration of eutrophication*.

Spectacular *fish kills* may result from very advanced eutrophication. Winter fish kills may occur when there is heavy oxygen consumption under an ice cover. Summer fish kills can be initiated by elevated pH caused by high photosynthetic rates (see Section 4.3.6) in lakes with high total ammonium concentration. The increased pH causes a shift from nontoxic ammonium ion to toxic ammonia (see Section 4.2.3).

8.6.2 Eutrophication: nutrient control and lake restoration

In the period between the first and second world war the oligotrophic condition of large lakes was considered a liability, especially by fisheries specialists; there were even attempts to fertilize such lakes. Values have shifted with the rapid eutrophication of lakes in the past decades. The use of lakes for drinking-water sources, swimming, and tourism has now become more important than fisheries. As a result, strategies have been developed to attempt to reverse the lakes toward their original condition.

The best method for fighting eutrophication is the prevention of anthropogenic addition of nutrients. As a first step, modern techniques can be used to reduce the impact of sewage. For example, fecal material can be composted instead of flushing it into sewage systems. Large-scale efforts have been made to reduce the phosphorus content of domestic detergents or find phosphorus substitutes. The fertilization of agricultural land still presents serious problems, for much time is needed to change old practices, and, even then, improved techniques may have limited effects on the nutrient loading. Thus much of practical water management focuses on the removal of wastewater and wastewater treatment.

Wastewater removal involves the collection of wastewater from the watershed into a sewage canal system that circles the lake, and its release into the lake outlet. The logic is that increased autochthonous production is less damaging in a stream than in a lake (see Section 7.6.2).

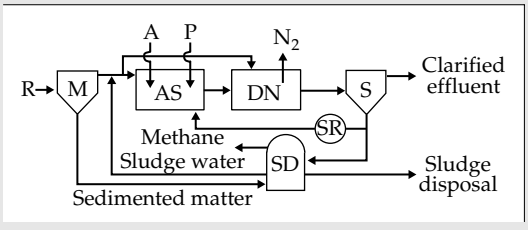
Wastewater treatment facilities are essentially technically intensified versions of the natural processes that occur in lakes. The most common wastewater treatment has three stages. The mechanical stage first removes the coarse particles, the biological stage (activated sludge process) involves the microbial respiration of organic compounds, and the chemical stage precipitates out the phosphorus. Nitrogen can also be removed by creating alternating oxic and anoxic conditions, nitrifying the ammonium and denitrifying the nitrate (Box 8.2).

Restoration of a lake often requires measures in the entire catchment area, as pollutants are transported to the lake by tributaries. Lake Constance is an example of a joint international effort (Austria, Germany, Switzerland) to stop the eutrophication of a large lake. Lake Constance was originally oligotrophic, but showed signs of eutrophication with increasing populations and use of the lake after the turn of the twentieth century, and by the 1970s had

Box 8.2 Outline of a wastewater treatment plant

Wastewater treatment incorporates the same natural processes that occur in lakes under natural conditions. Technical procedures and added energy greatly intensify and accelerate these processes. The most important features are summarized below. The processes in the different basins of a treatment plant also occur in vertical strata of lakes and in the horizontal zones of streams. The processes above the dashed line take place in the oxic region (epilimnion) and the processes below the line in the anoxic sediments or hypolimnion of a lake.

Treatment process	Conditions	Equivalent process in a lake
Mechanical purification: sedimentation basins	Reduced turbulence	Sedimentation
Biological step: oxidative decomposition of organic matter	Aeration, turbulence	Heterotrophic microbial decomposition
Simultaneous precipitation of phosphorus	Addition of aluminum or iron salts	Precipitation of phosphorus with iron hydroxide
Nitrification	Strong aeration	Nitrification
Denitrification	Anoxic conditions, low-molecular C source	Denitrification in anoxic sediments
Methane formation in sludge digestion tanks	Anoxic conditions, low-molecular C source	Methanogenesis in sediments



Technical scheme of a biological wastewater treatment plant with simultaneous phosphorus elimination. R, raw wastewater; M, mechanical purification; AS, aerobic sludge treatment; DN, denitrification; S, sedimentation; SR, sludge recycling; SD, sludge digestion; A, aeration; P, phosphorus precipitation.

developed blooms of cyanobacteria. This restoration project required the construction of tertiary sewage treatment plants (removing phosphorus) for all towns adjacent to the lake as well as along the tributaries. The result was a reduction in the phosphorus concentration in the lake and biological signs of a reversal in the eutrophication.

Even after nutrient loading has been reduced, there is often a lag in the lake's response. It sometimes takes several years after the reduction in external nutrient loading until the phosphorus concentration in the lake decreases (Fig. 8.13, top). First, it takes time to exchange the water in the lake, depending on the type of basin and watershed. Second, phosphorus deposited in the sediments during the peak period of pollution may continue to be released from the sediments for several years. There may even be a temporary increase in internal loading as the phosphorus concentration in the overlying water decreases, increasing the diffusion gradient. After the phosphorus concentration in the lake decreases, it may take several years for a corresponding decline in the phytoplankton (Fig. 8.13; below). This type of lag can occur if at the height of eutrophication the phytoplankton becomes limited by nitrogen or light, rather than controlled by phosphorus. Time is required to reduce the phosphorus concentration to the level where it becomes limiting. Time lags in the response of the algal biomass may also be caused by top-down effects. For example, populations of planktivorous fish that developed during the eutrophic phase may live for several

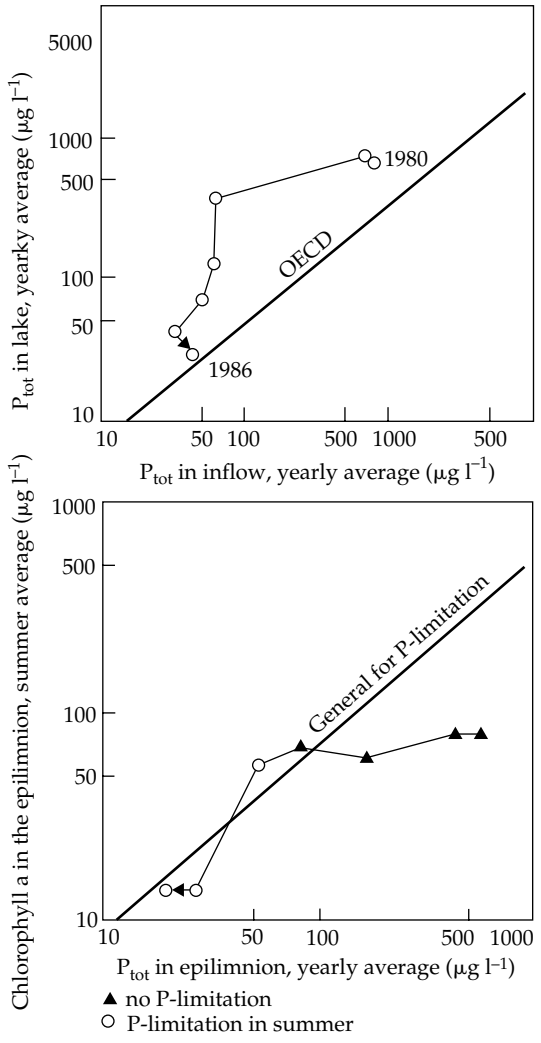


Figure 8.13 Delayed response of Schlachtensee (Berlin, Germany) to the reduction of external phosphorus loading. *Top:* Total phosphorus in the lake in relation to the total phosphorus in the inflow and compared to the OECD model (see Section 8.5.4). *Bottom:* Summer mean chlorophyll in the epilimnion compared to the summer mean total phosphorus in the epilimnion. Reference line: regression for years with phosphorus limitation from a lake restoration study of 18 European lakes (from Sas 1989).

years and continue to suppress the zooplankton grazers, maintaining low grazing pressure on the phytoplankton.

Lake Washington (Washington State, USA) is one of the finest case studies of lake restoration that demonstrates how the structure of the food web and biotic interactions affect the success of nutrient reduction measures (Fig. 8.14). The earliest records, from the 1940s, indicate Lake Washington was an oligotrophic–mesotrophic lake, but with increased urbanization of the watershed and pollution from domestic and industrial sewage the lake rapidly became eutrophic. By the 1960s, the lake's low water transparencies (only 1 m) and noxious smells from cyanobacterial blooms were causing public concern. After much debate over the question of whether phosphorus was actually the nutrient-limiting algal growth (Edmondson 1991), the public voted to build a pipeline to divert the sewage away from the lake and into the nearby Puget Sound. By 1968 the sewage diversion was completed and after only 2 years the lake phosphorus concentration dropped to a new low equilibrium. After a short time lag, summer water transparencies improved to 3–4 m and remained constant for about 5 years until 1975. However, when large filter-feeding *Daphnia* returned to the lake in 1976, average water transparencies suddenly doubled, increasing to values up to 10 m. Clearly, the second increase in water clarity was not simply a direct response to the reduced phosphorus concentration. Several mechanisms appear to have contributed to the re-establishment of the *Daphnia* population in Lake Washington, including the disappearance of filamentous cyanobacteria that interfere with *Daphnia's* filtering apparatus (a bottom-up, biotic control) and reduced predation by mysid shrimp (a top-down, biotic control).

In Lake Constance, restoration was mainly achieved by wastewater treatment and to some extent by the replacement of high-phosphorus detergents by low-phosphorus or phosphate-free detergents. Lake Constance is the second largest pre-alpine lake in central Europe (*c*.500 km^2). It has a catchment area of *c*.11 500 km^2 inhabited by *c*.1.2 million people. Originally, Lake Constance was an oligotrophic lake with a total phosphorus concentration of $<6\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$ until 1950. Thereafter, a slow increase of P_{tot} was observed, reaching $10\,\mu g\,l^{-1}$ in 1957. Although this was still in the oligotrophic range, the first species shifts in the plankton community were already observed. Eutrophication speeded up during the

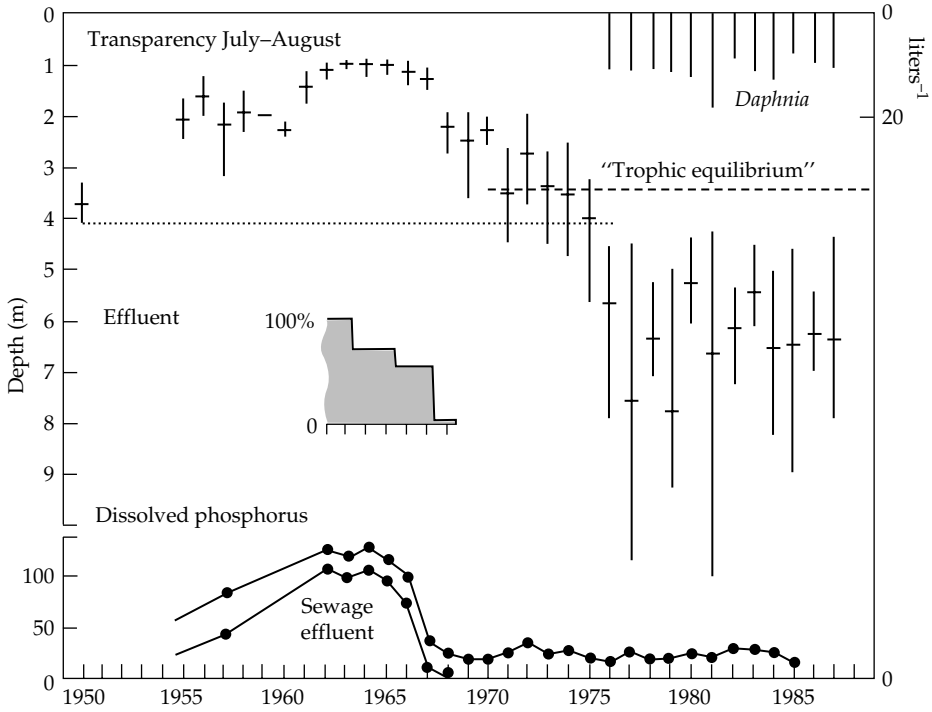


Figure 8.14 Summary of changes in Lake Washington (USA) in response to the diversion of sewage from the lake (after Edmondson 1991).

early 1970s, and winter overturn P_{tot} concentration of 87 μg l^{-1} were reached during the early 1980s (Fig. 8.15). During the period of rapid eutrophication, wastewater treatment plants with phosphorus precipitation were built in the catchment area. Now *c*.93% of the inhabitants are connected to such treatment plants. The efforts were successful, leading to a more or less continuous decrease of P_{tot} since the early 1980. A level of 8 μg l^{-1} was reached in 2006 (Fig. 8.15). The response of phytoplankton biomass on an annual average basis appeared to be delayed and was not apparent before 1990 (Fig. 8.16). However, a close inspection showed symptoms of change even during the first decade of phosphorus reduction, when P_{tot} had declined by about 50%. Although the biomass of the spring bloom did not respond to the phosphorus reduction, the nutrient-limited summer peak biomass declined linearly with phosphorus reduction (Gaedke and Schweizer 1993). This could not be seen in the annual mean values, because the interannual variability of the spring bloom (terminated by grazing) and of the transient autumn blooms (usually light limited) obscured the response. Shifts in the phytoplankton composition were also discovered within the first decade, e.g., there was an increase in the proportion of pennate diatoms during the spring bloom while their importance during the summer growth period decreased. This was explained by an earlier onset of phosphorus limitation in spring and thus to a shift to diatoms as dominant competitors for phosphorus (see Section 6.1.3). On the other hand, the spring diatom populations exported silicon via sedimentation to the hypolimnion, which then caused inhibition of diatom growth after the clear-water phase (Sommer *et al*. 1993).

As already mentioned in Section 8.5.4, the oxygen regime of Lake Constance did not respond to eutrophication and restoration as would have been expected for smaller lakes. Because of the large volume of the hypolimnion, the deep water never became anoxic, even during maximal eutrophication.

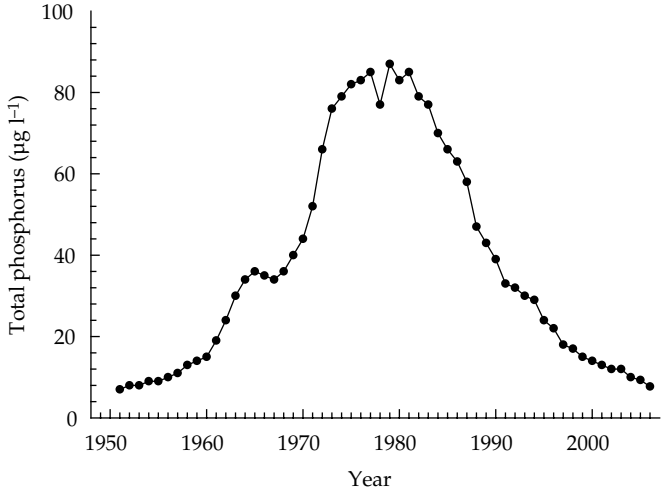


Figure 8.15 Eutrophication and reoligotrophication of Lake Constance. Long-term change of total phosphorus (during winter mixing) in the upper lake. The peak of eutrophication was around 1980 (source: Landesamt für Umwelt, Messungen und Naturschutz, Baden-Württemberg).

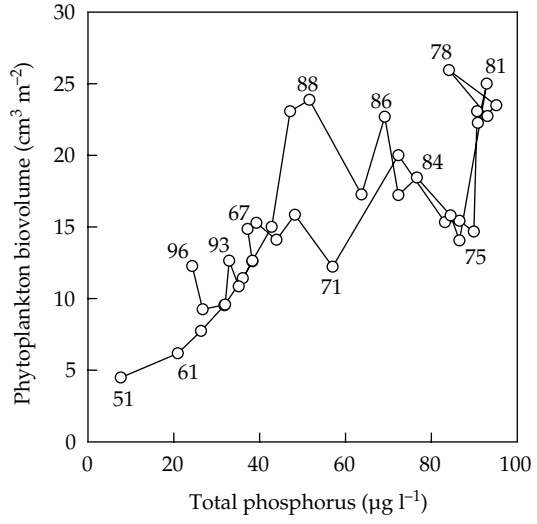


Figure 8.16 Phytoplankton biomass (0–20 m) of Lake Constance (upper lake) in relation to total phosphorus (annual mean) during eutrophication and reoligotrophication. Numbers refer to years (1951–1996) (data from Kümmerlin 1998).

Even if deep water oxygen data are compared to the P_{tot} levels, there is no straightforward relationship. During maximal eutrophication, minimal oxygen concentration at 253 m depth (1 m above the bottom at the deepest point) were between 5 and 7 mg l^{-1}, while they had been between 2 and 3 mg l^{-1} in the period 1971–73, when P_{tot} had reached slightly more than half of its maximum (Müller 2002). Similarly, recovery from eutrophication did not lead to an immediate increase of deep-water oxygen; the 1981 value was not exceeded until after 1999, but it is not clear whether this effect will last. The reason for this decoupling of the oxygen regime from the nutrient level lies in the extent and duration of the winter circulation. Being so deep, Lake Constance belongs to the oligomictic lake type (see Box 3.3). If the circulation is too short, or if it does not reach to the maximal depth, there will be no full equilibration of deep water with the atmosphere. There are concerns that global warming (see Section 8.7.2) will lead to less winter mixing and more frequent winters without complete mixing. Thus, the beneficial effect of recovery from eutrophication could be counteracted by climate change.

In situations where the nutrient sources for a lake are diffuse (groundwater, precipitation), wastewater removal and treatment may not be effective. In such cases, or when the response to nutrient abatement is too slow, other lake restoration techniques can be applied. These measures may include increasing the export of nutrients from the lake, enhancing the immobilization of nutrients in the sediments, or inhibiting the uptake of nutrients by the algae.

The fact that there is an accumulation of nutrients in the hypolimnion of stratified lakes can be used to accelerate the export of nutrients. Normally, the water flowing out of a lake comes from the relatively nutrient-poor epilimnion. Water can be released from the bottom of lakes by partly damming

the outflow and inserting a tube to siphon the deep water (Olszewski tube), removing nutrient-rich water from the hypolimnion (Pechlaner 1979). This can also create problems, such as noxious odors produced by hydrogen sulfide in the anoxic water. Also, when large quantities of water are released, the thermocline may be lowered, thereby raising the temperature of the hypolimnion, increasing the oxygen depletion, and releasing more phosphorus from the sediments. Phosphorus can be retained in the lake bottom by improving the redox conditions in the sediments and hypolimnion. This can be done either by introducing oxidizing substances into the lake (*aeration of the hypolimnion, injection of nitrate into the sediment*) or by pumping oxygenated water from the epilimnion into the hypolimnion. Forced mixing during the stagnation period is risky, however, since it adds nutrients to the epilimnion in addition to oxygenating the hypolimnetic water. *Intermittent mixing* is often successful, as the frequent changes in growth conditions prevent the gradual development of massive blooms of cyanobacteria and shift the species composition of the phytoplankton to rapidly growing and easily grazed nanoplankton (Reynolds *et al*. 1984).

The concept of *biomanipulation* (Shapiro and Wright 1984), introduced in Section 7.3.3, relies on the reduction or elimination of zooplanktivorous fish in order to relieve the predation pressure on the zooplankton, thereby intensifying the grazing pressure on the phytoplankton. Where this approach is successful, it not only reduces the biomass of the phytoplankton, but also decreases the sinking into the hypolimnion of algae and algal-generated detritus; this in turn reduces the oxygen depletion, improves the redox conditions in the hypolimnion, and leads to greater immobilization of phosphorus. In shallow lakes, increased water transparency can allow for a recovery in the growth of macrophytes.

Complete removal of planktivorous fish usually has dramatic effects on water clarity. However, a community without planktivores is not stable (see Section 7.3). Fish must be continuously controlled in order to maintain the effect. Without additional nutrient removal the algal biomass will not be permanently suppressed by grazers, but will eventually shift to grazing-resistant forms. New biomanipulation strategies employ a compromise; planktivores are maintained in moderate abundance by enhancement of the stock of piscivores, requiring continual fisheries management (Benndorf *et al*. 1988, Shapiro 1990). Biomanipulation seems to be most effective in shallow lakes that have two stable states (see Section 7.3.4). Removal of fish can be the event that, within a year, can push the lake from a turbid system dominated by pelagic algae to a clear system dominated by macrophytes. Once the macrophytes have become established, fish can be reintroduced without shifting the system back (Reynolds 1994).

8.6.3 Acidification

Acidification is the second most widespread anthropogenic change in lakes and streams. Pure water with carbon dioxide in equilibrium with the atmosphere is slightly acidic, with a pH of 5.6. Today precipitation in parts of Europe and North America has a pH well below 4.7 (*acid rain*). The major sources of the elevated acidity in acid rain are sulfur dioxide (SO_2) and nitrogen oxides (NO_x) released from the burning of fossil fuels and transformed by photo-oxidation to sulfuric acid (*c*.70%) and nitric acid (*c*.30%). The impact of the acid loading depends on the *buffering capacity* of the water and the type of soil in the watershed. Lakes in calcium-rich regions are buffered by the calcium–carbon dioxide system (see Section 3.1.6) and show little or no effects of acid rain. Regions with granite bedrock (granite, gneiss) have much less buffering capacity (alkalinity $< 0.1\,\text{meq}\,\text{l}^{-1}$). The incoming acid acts much like a chemical titration, first using up the alkalinity, then causing the pH to decrease rapidly. Many lakes and streams in granite regions (e.g., Scandinavia, north-eastern USA, south-eastern Canada) have become strongly acidified (some to pH < 4.5).

The interactions between acidic emissions into the atmosphere and processes within the watershed can be demonstrated by the budgets of sulfate and hydrogen ions in a Norwegian lake (Fig. 8.17). Sulfur dioxide is one of the most important components of acidic emissions caused by the combustion of fossil fuels. In the atmosphere sulfur dioxide is oxidized to sulfur trioxide, which then combines with water to form sulfuric acid. Sulfuric acid

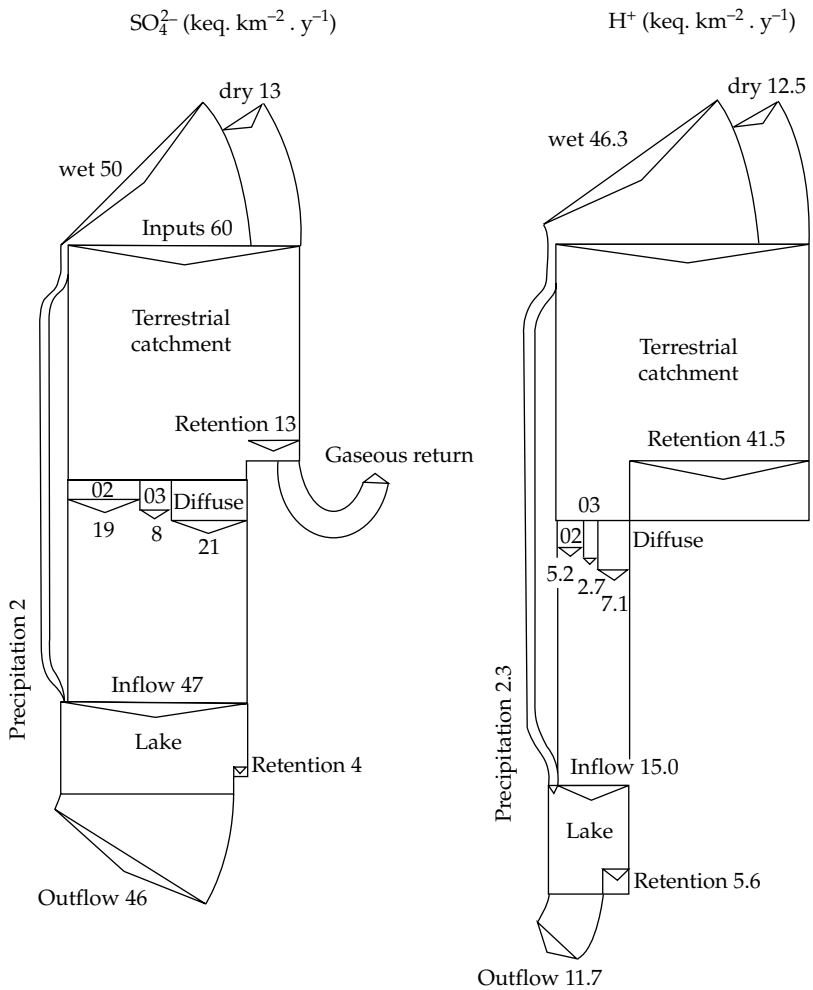


Figure 8.17 Annual mean fluxes (1974–1980) of sulfate and hydrogen ions in the Lake Langtjern (Norway) and its catchment basin (after Wright 1983).

dissociates into sulfate and hydrogen ions. After the ions are deposited in the watershed, their fates are quite different. Little of the sulfate is used by biological processes in the watershed, allowing about 80% of the deposited sulfate to reach the lake. Retention of sulfate within the lake is even less (<10%). In contrast, only 27.5% of the hydrogen ions deposited on the water catchment area reach the lake, indicating a retention of over 70%. Retention of hydrogen ions within the lake is less important (*c*.37%), but still greater than for the sulfate ions. The major process contributing to the consumption of hydrogen ions is the weathering of minerals, as shown for muscovite in the following equation:

$$KAl_2(AlSi_3O_{10})(OH)_2 + 10H^+ \rightleftharpoons K^+ + 3Al^{3+} + 3H_4SiO_4$$

Retention of hydrogen ions in the watershed of Langtjern is rather low because it lies in an area with crystalline rocks. In areas dominated by carbonate rocks it would be much higher and could approach 100%.

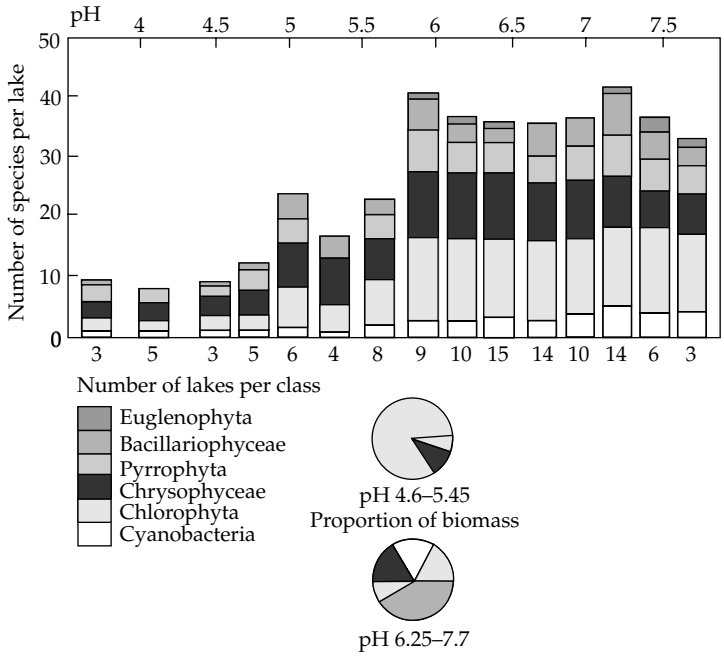


Figure 8.18 *Top:* The number of species in various groups of phytoplankton in Swedish lakes with different pH conditions. *Bottom:* average proportions of biomass in the different taxa in acidic and circumneutral lakes (from Almer *et al*. 1974).

In addition to the direct physiological effects of increased hydrogen ion concentrations, important biological effects are caused by altered solubility and speciation of many metals as the pH of the water decreases. For example, aluminum, iron, copper, zinc, nickel, lead, and cadmium become more soluble when acidified, but mercury and vanadium become less soluble. Many of the negative effects of acidification on organisms are attributed to the increased solubility of aluminum and the shift to the toxic $A1^{3+}$ form. Increased mobilization of aluminum also causes precipitation of phosphorus and contributes to the tendency of acidified lakes to become oligotrophic. Acidified lakes also often become more transparent due to the precipitation of humic substances by aluminum.

The primary production of acidified lakes shifts to the benthos as a result of the oligotrophication and the increase in water transparency. The result is often the formation of a dense mat of filamentous algae such as *Mougeotia* on the bottom. In addition to the improved light conditions, the development of algal mats is also promoted by the loss of many benthic invertebrates that would otherwise graze on them. Angiosperm (flowering) macrophytes are often suppressed by *Sphagnum* moss. *Sphagnum* is an efficient ion exchanger, removing cations (nutrients) from the water and replacing them with hydrogen ions, further intensifying the acidification process. The resulting acid conditions cause a general decrease in the number of species of aquatic organisms and the elimination of certain groups of phytoplankton such as the diatoms (Fig. 8.18).

There are clear pH preferences among the diatoms. Using this, one can reconstruct the pH history of lakes by examining the diatom frustules in the lake sediments. Each species is assigned an indicator value, based on its present-day occurrence in relation to pH conditions. By knowing the age of the sediment layers examined, one can estimate the historic pH of the sediments from the diatom remains (Arzet *et al*. 1986).

Zooplankton can also be used as indicators. Most *Daphnia*, for example, disappear below pH 6, whereas *Bosmina longispina* still occurs at pH < 4.1 (Brett 1989). Most fish are limited by pH values of

5.0–5.5, but populations of brook trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* may survive at pH 4.5. Some fish can live at low pH values as adults, but their eggs cannot develop (Henriksen *et al*. 1989).

The most important aspects of acidification of lakes involve biotic changes. It is not clear whether the observed changes in communities in acidic lakes are due to direct pH effects (tolerance) or are caused by smaller changes in biotic interactions. For example, community structure could be altered by shifts in the competitive relationships of the algae or by the disappearance of keystone species (see Section 7.3.4) (Eriksson *et al*. 1980).

Success in restoring acidified lakes depends largely on the location of the lake. A short-term solution commonly used in Scandinavia is the periodic addition of alkali (lime or sodium hydroxide) to lakes. In the long run, however, the problem of acidification can only be solved by reducing fossil fuel emissions from industry, automobiles, and domestic heating. There have been national and international efforts to reduce acidifying pollutants in Europe by technical measures. An international protocol signed 1999 at Gotenburg (Sweden) defined the goal to restore acidified lakes until 2016 as specified in the European Water Framework Directive (Ferrier 2001). So far measures have been successful. Europe's annual emissions of sulfur dioxide have been reduced from 54×10^9 kg in 1980 to 18×10^6 kg in 2005, and the models predict a further reduction to 14×10^6 kg in 2010. Extensive monitoring programs have shown a positive effect of this reduction. Although only some of the monitored lakes responded, there is a general trend toward higher buffering capacity and higher pH (Evans *et al*. 2001).

8.7 Ecosystem change

8.7.1 Succession

Long-term succession and the problem of the climax concept

Organisms alter their own environment as a result of their activities. This also changes the natural selection pressures to which they are subjected. Species that were originally well adapted may lose their fitness, while other species may be better adapted to the new conditions. New species will exclude the original species, as they themselves will in turn be excluded in a similar fashion. This process is referred to as *succession*. It includes the temporal change in the community as well as the temporal change in the ecosystem.

Succession that is caused exclusively by the organisms themselves is called *autogenic* succession, whereas long-term changes resulting from altered external factors (e.g., climate) are called *allogenic* succession. A sudden disturbance can cause a system to revert to its earlier condition (*reversion*), from which autogenic succession begins again in the original direction. Assume that a succession consists of the stages

$$A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow D \rightarrow E.$$

A disturbance could cause

$$A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow D \rightarrow \text{disturbance} \rightarrow C \rightarrow D \rightarrow E,$$

but not

$$A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow D \rightarrow \text{disturbance} \rightarrow C \rightarrow B \rightarrow A$$

(Reynolds 1984).

The monoclimax theory of Clements (1936) maintains that within a major climatic zone all succession will proceed to the same final *climax stage*, whose species cannot be excluded by others. The climax stage can be viewed as a homeostatic system in which the losses and gains of all populations and all chemicals are in a nearly perfect steady-state equilibrium. According to the monoclimax theory, the composition of the climax stage flora and fauna does not depend on the starting conditions of the succession or the geological conditions. Even successions starting from bare rocks (*xerosere*) or from a lake (*hydrosere*) would finally arrive at the same end point, which at low and intermediate altitudes would be a red beech forest in central Europe or beech–maple in North America.

The geological basis of the hydrosere is the filling in of lakes. As the lake basin fills in with sediments, its volume is decreased and, with a constant total loading of nutrients, it becomes increasingly eutrophic (see Section 8.6.1). Eutrophication likewise increases the rate of sedimentation in the basin. Lakes also become overgrown from the shoreline. In shallow shore regions emergent macrophytes (reeds, rushes) accumulate nutrients that contribute to eutrophication. These lakes gradually transform into *marshlands*, which are invaded by moisture-tolerant trees (willows, alder), eventually forming

a forest. Trees with intermediate moisture tolerance follow as the soils develop. A *floating mat* made of peat moss (*Sphagnum*) and sedges first develops out from the edges, where there are steep banks. Peat forms under the floating mat from the accumulation of organic matter that is not easily decomposed. Once the floating mat becomes secured, shrubs (mostly Ericaceae, e.g., blueberry) and later trees become established, eventually transforming the silted-up lake into a forest.

Such a succession has not been directly observed, since it may take centuries, millennia, or even millions of years (for very large lakes). It is generally assumed that ecosystems and communities observed today correspond to specific temporal stages of succession (*space-for-time substitution*).

There are a number of uncertainties and assumptions in the space-for-time substitution concept, since it is almost impossible to prove whether all successions within a major climatic zone converge on the same climax stage (*monoclimax theory*), or whether there are different climax stages within a zone, depending on the starting conditions or on the geology of the region (*polyclimax theory*). Furthermore, succession may take so long that long-term climatic conditions may change. If the climate change alters the course of the succession, it would be impossible to determine whether the climate caused the change to a new monoclimax or whether the succession would have changed regardless of the climate change. The monoclimax–polyclimax controversy must be regarded as an insoluble question (nonfalsifiable).

General trends

Regardless of whether there is a single climax stage, distinctions can be made between early and late (mature) succession stages. This is especially true for *primary succession*, involving the first settlement of a habitat not previously colonized. The trends described (Odum 1959) are largely deductive reasoning regarding the abilities organisms would need to be successful as a habitat becomes more and more populated. Empirical tests of this concept have been few and incomplete, since, again, one runs into the problem of long-term succession and space-for-time substitution.

At first, colonization of an empty habitat is largely a matter of *accumulation of biomass*. The accumulation of biomass corresponds to an increasing consumption of abiotic resources. Generally, during early succession in aquatic habitats most of the nutrients are dissolved in the water and are thus available. In later stages an increasing percentage of the nutrients is tied up in the biomass.

If a succession in a habitat begins with an insignificant addition of organic matter, the first organisms to settle must be autotrophic (*autotrophic succession*). At first there is an excess of primary production compared to respiration. Once the primary producer biomass is present, consumers and detritivores can follow. This increases the respiration and eventually it will move toward an equilibrium between photosynthesis and respiration.

On the other hand, in habitats with heavy organic pollution (e.g., in wastewater) the first settlement is by heterotrophs (*heterotrophic succession*). The primary producers gradually become important as the organic substrates are mineralized. In a heterotrophic succession there is an excess of respiration over primary production in the beginning. Both heterotrophic and autotrophic succession tend to converge toward a primary production/respiration ratio of of 1:1.

Competition increases, and there is limitation as the abiotic resources are consumed. Thus the successful species in succession are those that can rapidly take up available resources and hold on to them. When resources are in short supply, populations cannot achieve adequate reproductive rates to compensate for high mortality. Therefore, successful species are also those that have some resistance to mortality, especially since as higher trophic levels are added it also increases the mortality. This shift toward species that are strong competitors and can resist mortality leads to increasingly closed nutrient cycles.

As primary producers become more resistant to grazing, the herbivores become less important and detritivores take on greater importance. There is also an accumulation of refractory substances, since some of the grazing resistance comes from the formation of grazing resistant structures that are not easily decomposed (cellulose, lignin, chitin).

Relative metabolic rates (e.g., the P:B ratio, see Box 4.4) decline as the resources become more limiting and more materials are invested in protective structures and larger bodies. These changes during

succession represent a transition from *r* to *K* selection (see Section 5.6).

Margalef (1968) referred to this concept as the *maturation* of ecosystems. This idea has been proposed for terrestrial systems in which long-lived primary producers represent an important element. We have already mentioned that there is no such climax stage in aquatic systems, but rather that they ultimately become terrestrial systems. They are only the beginning stages of a succession. We should not expect to find features identifying lakes as "mature" or "less mature." The pelagic region of a lake cannot achieve a "mature" condition, since it is constantly reverting to an earlier succession level (see Section 8.7.1). At temperate latitudes, these disturbances are caused by the seasons and the circulation of the water column. In a sense, there is certain degree of "maturing" of the system that occurs every year as the lake succession repeats itself in a yearly cycle.

Seasonal succession in plankton

The pattern of succession in a lake can be observed in the seasonal changes in the biomass and species composition of the plankton. An advantage of the short time course is that the problem of space-for-time substitution is avoided. Although the timescale is short, the plankton succession can be compared to terrestrial succession, as the level of primary producers involves *c*.30–100 generations of organisms and a series of distinctive floristic stages.

Because plankton are well suited for experimental studies, the seasonal succession of plankton is one of the best-studied and best-understood examples of succession. It is difficult, however, to separate the autogenic and allogenic components, because of the overlay of autogenic succession with the physical changes of the season. Originally, the seasonal periodicity of the phytoplankton was attributed almost solely to allogenic effects (temperature, stratification, light). Meanwhile, it has been possible to develop a relatively clear picture of the causal mechanisms of plankton succession from numerous studies that have manipulated the physical conditions (e.g., artificial circulation; Reynolds *et al*. 1984), categorized the various components of population dynamics for the important species (Reynolds 1984, Sommer 1987), and compared growth and losses with seasonal changes in the species composition (Sommer 1989).

Thermal stratification of a lake is the single most important factor controlling the seasonal succession of the plankton. Succession begins with the breakup of the ice or the time when the ice becomes transparent. If the previous winter period was long enough to reduce the standing crop of the plankton to low levels, the succession has characteristics of a primary succession that begins with primary colonization. Constant or increasing stability of the stratification allows for the development of an autogenic succession. Temporary short-term expansion of the depth of mixing (e.g., by storms) leads to reversions. Finally, erosion of the thermocline in the fall causes allogenic shifts. The PEG model of seasonal succession of phytoplankton and zooplankton is a general diagram that was developed in a comparative study by the international Plankton Ecology Group (PEG). It summarizes the course of seasonal succession in 24 sequential events (Sommer *et al*. 1986). Lake Constance and a number of comparable eutrophic lakes served as model systems. Although the sequence of events may not apply to all lakes with different specific conditions, the causal explanations should nevertheless apply. The applicability of the model to soft-water lakes, shallow lakes, and tropical lakes is questionable, since this has not been adequately examined.

Figure 8.19 summarizes the most important predictions of the PEG model. Succession in eutrophic lakes typically has two phytoplankton maxima, a spring maximum of small algae, and a summer maximum of large, grazing-resistant forms. These maxima are separated by a clear-water phase. The clear-water phase is caused by a maximum of large zooplankton that is later replaced by smaller zooplankton species. The seasonal pattern is different in oligotrophic lakes. It appears that the entire process proceeds more slowly, so that only the first part of the succession is completed and there is no clear-water phase.

The intensity of controlling factors is indicated by the thickness of the black horizontal bar in Fig 8.19. Their effect on the accumulation of biomass and the selection of certain species was described in Chapter 6. It is clear that the physical factors create a "frame," within which the biological factors form

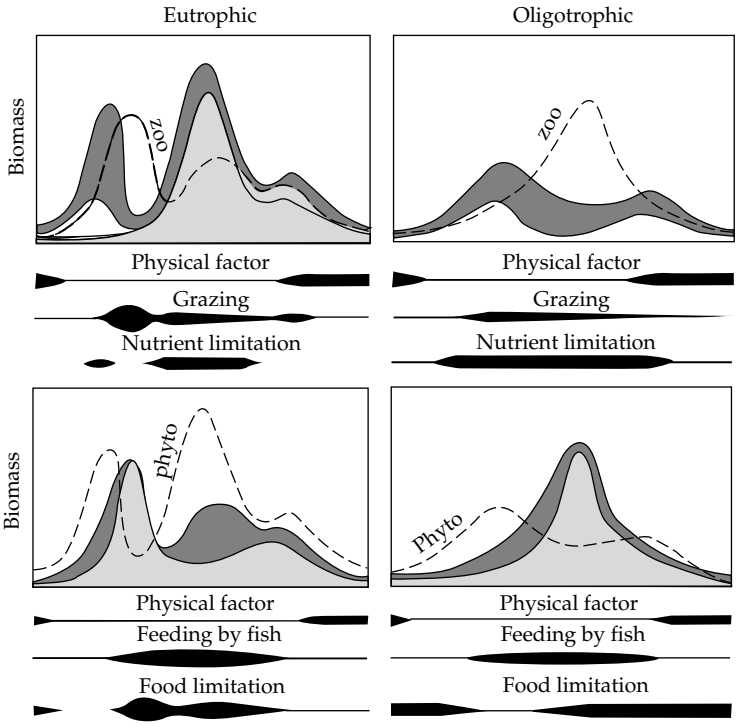


Figure 8.19 Graphic presentation of the PEG model of seasonal succession. Seasonal development of phytoplankton (*top*) and zooplankton (*bottom*) in eutrophic (*left*) and oligotrophic (*right*) lakes. Phytoplankton: dark shading, small species; medium shading, large nonsiliceous species; while large diatoms. Zooplankton: dark shading, small species; medium shading, large species. The black horizontal symbols indicate the relative importance of the selection factors (from Sommer *et al*. 1986).

the specific "picture." The seasonal succession of the phytoplankton in Lake Constance is presented in Fig. 8.20 for comparison with the predictions of the PEG model.

Climatic conditions can affect the seasonal succession, but the basic pattern remains unchanged. Definite trends during the maturation of an ecosystem, as described in Section 8.7.1, can be seen in the plankton during the course of a season:

• *Accumulation of biomass*: Eutrophic lakes have their seasonal biomass maximum during the summer, but this is not true for oligotrophic lakes (Fig. 8.19). It should be noted, however, that nutrients and matter continually settle out of the epilimnion.

• *Decrease in the relative metabolic rates*: The ratio of production to biomass of the phytoplankton decreases during the course of the autogenic succession. This is interrupted by the clear-water phase, during which the yearly maximum P:B ratio is reached (Fig. 8.21).

• *Increase in resource limitation and competition*: Nutrient limitation increases after the clear-water phase, resulting in increasing competition within the phytoplankton. The water transparency decreases with increasing biomass, creating competition for light. Food limitation for the zooplankton is most intense during the clear-water phase. Zooplankton also tend to be food limited during the summer, when there are fewer edible algae than during the spring algal maximum.

• *Closing of the nutrient cycles*: During the spring maximum and following the clear-water phase, nutrients are increasingly shifted from the dissolved to the incorporated pool. After the diatoms disappear, it is mainly the motile species that remain (flagellates, cyanobacteria with gas vacuoles). This results in a drastic reduction in the sedimentation

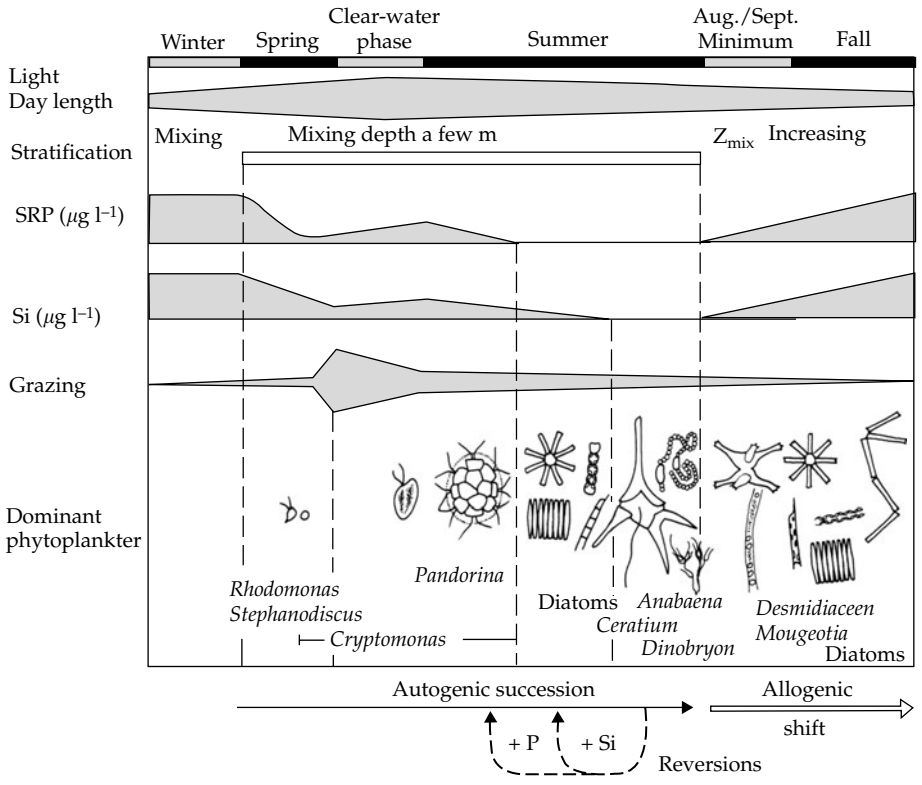


Figure 8.20 Seasonal succession of phytoplankton and the relevant environmental conditions in Lake Constance (from Sommer 1987).

and an increase in the retention of nutrients in the epilimnion.

• *Shift from herbivory to detritivory*: After the clear-water phase, the herbivores utilize a smaller fraction of the primary production due to the shift to inedible algal species. During this time the large and poorly edible algae are utilized mainly by parasites (fungi) and detritivores.

Self-purification as heterotrophic succession

If a pulse of allochthonous organic matter is introduced into a body of water, it is decomposed and eventually remineralized. Since the organic matter changes and the organisms also change their environment as they decompose, a type of succession takes place in the organic substrate. Such *heterotrophic succession* occurs in lakes, but the individual stages can be more easily analyzed in streams, where various horizontal zones along a "self-purification stretch" correspond to the various stages of heterotrophic succession. The distance downstream from the source of organic matter corresponds to the increasing age of a lake (flowing wave), so that the temporal course of lake succession is translated to a spatial course in streams.

Over long periods the remineralization of organic matter reflects the amount of production, unless organic matter is added to the lake. In undisturbed water bodies, the sum of all decomposition processes should approach equilibrium with the sum of all production processes. In late succession the primary production–respiration (P:R) quotient approaches 1. If decomposable organic matter is added to a water body, the quotient will drop well below 1. The return to equilibrium by decomposition of these substances is referred to as *self-purification*. In contrast to trophic condition, which

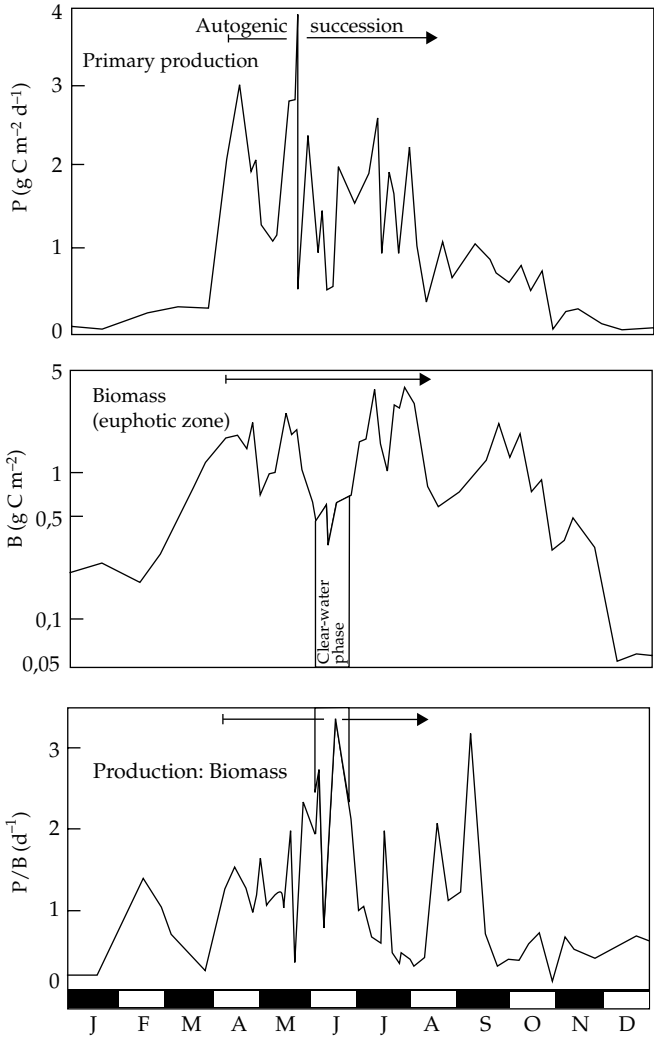


Figure 8.21 (a) Primary production (g C m^{-2} d^{-1}), (b) biomass (g C m^{-2}) in euphotic zone and (c) the production–biomass ratio of the phytoplankton in Lake Constance in 1981 (from Tilzer 1984b).

refers to the processes of production (see Section 8.5.4), the term *saproby* is used to describe the intensity of the decomposition processes.

Allochthonous loading of organic substances is the rule in undisturbed streams (see Section 8.4). However, the concept of self-purification is normally only used to describe the breakdown of anthropogenic disturbances (e.g., wastewater). In applied limnology, "water quality" is sometimes based on the succession stages used to classify streams. Sections of the stream are divided according to chemical criteria or indicator organisms. A system widely used in central Europe is the *saprobic system*, in which four saprobic steps are distinguished based on the chemical conditions and the types of organisms present. The categories of organisms are based on descriptive studies relating the abundance of species in particular stream types. The saprobic system requires extensive identification at the species level for organisms ranging from bacteria to fish. Despite the lack of experimental evidence for placing each species in a particular category, the saprobic system is a useful means for characterizing streams, for there is a distinct pattern in the occurrence of various groups of organisms in the self-purification stretch (Fig. 8.22). In North

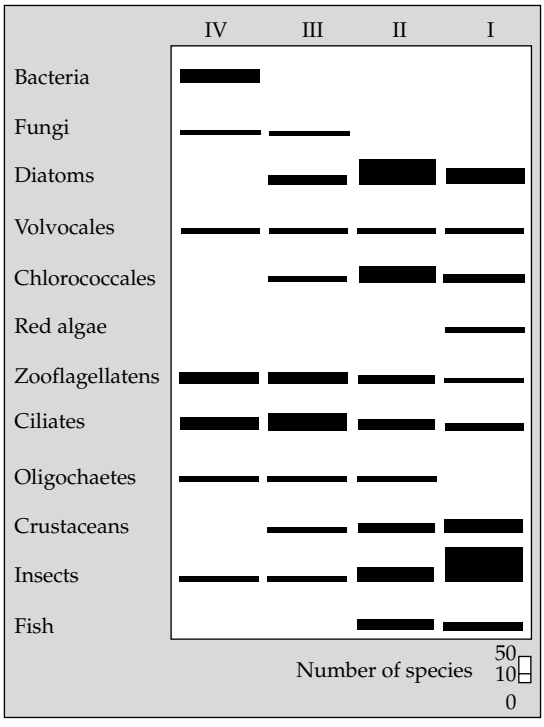


Figure 8.22 The distribution of indicator species of the saprobic system in the various water-quality classes (from Uhlmann 1975).

America a similar, but much simplified, biotic index using only arthropods has proved to be a useful tool for monitoring the degree of organic and nutrient pollution in streams (Hilsenhoff 1977; see Box 8.3).

Several critical points must be considered, however. There is disagreement concerning the classification of cyanobacteria, algae, and higher plants in the saprobic system, since as photolithoautotrophic organisms they should respond to the trophic condition rather than the saprobic condition of a water body. Also, it is essential to make exact identifications of animals that are used as indicator organisms, because their specific environmental requirements are what make them useful as indicators. For this reason, groupings such as "caddisfly larvae" have little predictive power. It should also be noted that the limiting environmental factors are sometimes only indirectly related to the pollutant. This is the case with oxygen, for example. A mountain stream with a high physical mixing of air would have higher dissolved oxygen than a lowland stream with the same amount of pollution. Organisms that are limited by oxygen would have a very different indicator value in the two types of streams.

Box 8.3 Bioassessment of stream water quality

It is not easy to characterize the water quality of a stream. Chemical analysis can provide precise measurements, but pollution levels usually vary, for example, with the time of year and even with the time of day. If the sample for the chemical analysis happens to be taken at the wrong time, it may be entirely misleading. Water samples can be collected over a longer period and combined, but such averages underestimate short-term, catastrophic events, such as pulses of toxins. Macroinvertebrates in a stream generally have life cycles of a year or more, which exposes them to pollutants over long periods and integrates the effects of short-term episodes. Thus there has been much emphasis on finding organisms that can be used to indicate the average water quality in a stream.

A *biotic index* based on communities of insects, amphipods, and isopods was developed by Hilsenhoff (1977, 1987) to assess the degree of organic and nutrient pollution in streams in Wisconsin (USA). Streams with high levels of organic matter develop low oxygen concentrations during the summer and especially at night. The range of tolerance of a species to dissolved oxygen in water affects its ability to survive or compete with other species. Species tolerant of oxygen deficiencies, such as chironomid midge larvae, tend to dominate the benthic community in organically polluted streams, whereas intolerant species, such as stoneflies and mayflies, tend to be rare or absent.

To calculate the Hilsenhoff biotic index (HBI), 100 or more arthropods must be first collected from a rocky or sand and gravel riffle area of a stream. The shallow, turbulent water in this habitat provides the highest possible oxygen conditions in the stream. Next, organisms must be

continues

Box 8.3 ***continued***

identified to the lowest taxonomic level possible. Tables of species list their "tolerance" to organic pollution (low oxygen), on a scale of 0 (least tolerant) to 10 (most tolerant). Tolerance values were derived from a comparison of water quality conditions and the occurrence of arthropod species in more than 2000 stream samples. The biotic index represents an average tolerance for the arthropod community in a particular stream or location within a stream:

$$\text{HBI} = \frac{\sum tn}{\sum n}$$

where n is the number of individuals of a particular species counted in the sample and t is the tolerance value of this species, taken from a published list.

Example

Species	*n*	*t*	*tn*
Clioperla clio	27	1	27
Heptagenia diabasia	58	3	174
Hydropsyche arinale	23	5	115
Total	108		316

HBI = 316/108 = 2.9 (excellent water quality with no detectable organic pollution; see evaluation table below).

Categories used to evaluate water quality with the Hilsenhoff biotic index (Hilsenhoff 1987):

Biotic index	Water quality	Degree of organic pollution
0.00–3.50	Excellent	None apparent
3.51–4.50	Very good	Possibly slight
4.51–5.50	Good	Some
5.51–6.50	Fair	Fairly significant
6.51–7.50	Fairly poor	Significant
7.51–8.50	Poor	Very significant
8.51–10.00	Very poor	Severe

The HBI focuses on a narrower range or organisms than the saprobic system, but species identifications require expertise and are time consuming. Ideally all organisms should be identified to genus and species, but this is not always practical or useful; less sensitive measures of water quality can be gained from estimates of the biotic index using only family-level identification. Such *bioassessment* of water quality at the family level requires little taxonomic training and can be completed in the field without identification keys in as little as 23 min (Hilsenhoff 1988). However, because of the broad range of species requirements within a family of arthropods, use of average family-level tolerance values may lead to inaccurate estimates of water quality.

The changes in the environmental conditions in the course of a self-purification stretch are presented in Fig. 8.23. The most strongly polluted zone is called the *polysaprobic zone* (water class IV). Below the input of organic substances there is first a dilution and physical purification processes (e.g., flocculation of organic matter). There is a rapid oxygen consumption by oxic decomposition of organic substances. The oxygen depletion leads to the development of an anoxic zone, not far from the input of the organic matter. The anoxic decomposition of organic matter results in carbon dioxide as the oxidized end product, as well as alcohols, organic acids, hydrogen, methane, ammonium, and hydrogen sulfide as reduced end products (see Section 4.3.10). The anoxic respiration leads to the consumption of nitrates (nitrate ammonification and denitrification) as well as sulfate (desulfurization). The availability of hydrogen sulfide and adequate light promote anoxic photosynthesis by sulfur bacteria. At the aerobic–anoxic boundary chemolithotrophic microorganisms appear because of the supply of reduced substrates (see Section 4.3.8). When the supply of atmospheric oxygen is sufficient to maintain a dissolved oxygen concentration of $c.3\,\text{mg}\,\text{l}^{-1}$, there are often blooms of the bacterium *Sphaerotilus natans*, referred to as *sewage fungi*. Bacteria-feeding animals follow, with a spatial lag. The range of species is very limited because of the low or lacking dissolved oxygen. Bacteria-feeding protozoans dominate, since relatively few metazoans are adapted to living at low oxygen concentrations (e.g., *Tubifex*, *Chironomus*).

The release of mineral nutrients by bacteria feeders allows for an increase in photosynthesis downstream. There is usually also an increase in oxygen

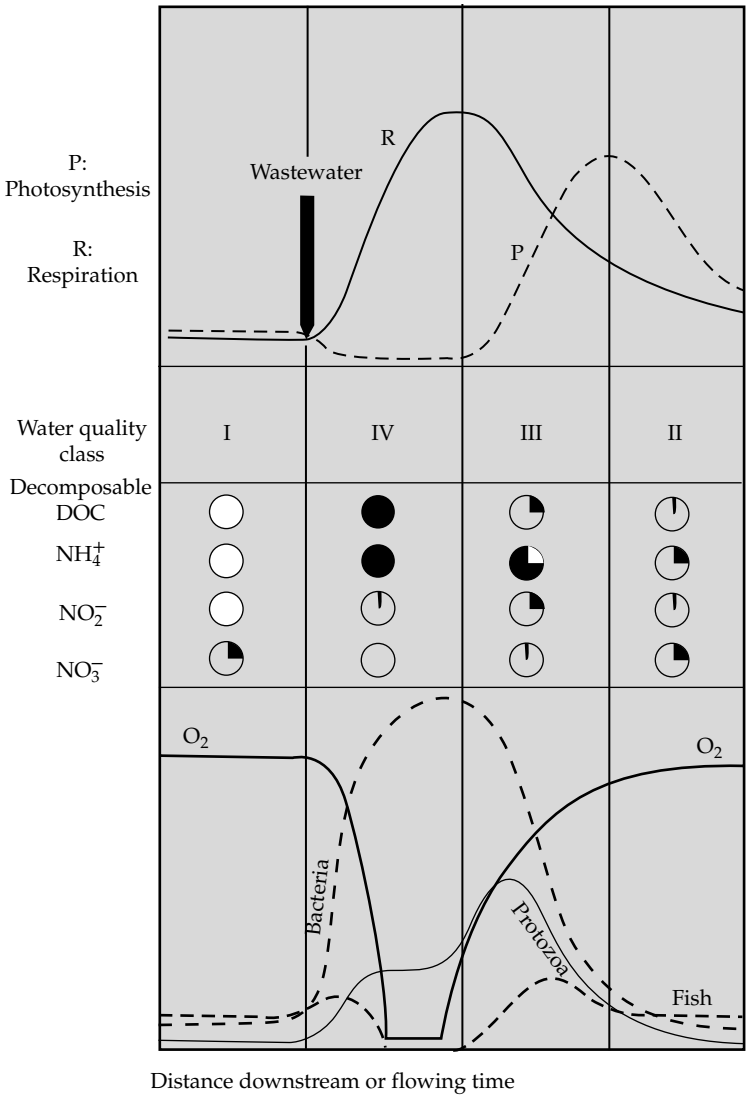


Figure 8.23 Diagrammatic view of the length of a self-purification stretch of a stream (from Uhlmann 1975).

due to atmospheric inputs and lower oxygen consumption in this region, as some of the organic matter has already been utilized. The improved supply of oxygen permits chemosynthetic oxidation of reduced substances, especially the nitrification of ammonium. The number of animal species increases in response to the improved oxygen conditions and the additional food available due to the cyanobacteria and algae. This large supply of food can sometimes lead to massive developments of certain animals. This zone is called the *α-mesosaprobic zone* (class III). Fish reappear in large numbers in the *β-mesosaprobic zone* (class II). Rarely does a stream re-establish itself to an *oligosaprobic* condition (class I), because the nutrients released by the remineralization of the organic pollution stimulate increased primary production, which in turn produces a secondary loading of organic matter in the stream.

Nutrients are removed from the nutrient "spirals" (see Section 8.4) only after moving through long stretches of a stream. Often, however, before that occurs in our anthropogenically affected landscape, a new source of organic pollution entering the stream restarts the heterotrophic succession once again.

8.7.2 Climate change

Change of physical conditions

While the analysis of succession concentrates on the intrinsic dynamics of ecosystems, we are currently facing a global change of the external conditions under which ecosystems develop. Meanwhile, most scientists agree that the earth's surface will become warmer because of the greenhouse effect and that the increase of greenhouse gases, particularly carbon dioxide but also methane, is mainly from anthropogenic sources. Atmospheric concentrations of carbon dioxide have increased from a pre-industrial level of *c*.280 ppm (parts per million) to 367 ppm in 1999 and further increases are to be expected (McCarthy *et al*. 2001). Atmospheric methane concentrations have increased from a pre-industrial level of *c*.750 ppb (parts per billion) to 1745 ppb in 1998. Both gases absorb infrared radiation and thus reduce the heat loss to the atmosphere ("greenhouse effect"). Methane is *c*.20 times more potent at the same concentration, but the much higher concentration of carbon dioxide makes it the more important greenhouse gas.

The prediction of future seasonal and regional temperature patterns is fairly well advanced (e.g., McCarthy *et al*. 2001). Based on a doubling of carbon dioxide emissions within the twenty-first century ("business as usual scenario") most models predict the following changes for western, central, and northern Europe for the period 2070–2100 in comparison to the mean for the reference period 1960–90:

- Mean temperature increase: 3–5 °C.
- Increase of winter temperatures: 5–10 °C.
- *Precipitation:* Predictions have to be split into smaller regional scales, with simultaneous increases and decreases in different regions.
- Extreme events (storms, droughts, floods) will increase in frequency.

These changes in atmospheric conditions translate into the following changes for lake and river physics:

- Less ice-cover; beginning later, with earlier ice-out.
- Earlier onset of stratification and later beginning of fall circulation.
- In deep lakes, full winter circulation only during exceptionally cold winters ("oligomixis"), as can be seen today in the deep north Italian lakes.
- More frequent and stronger floods in rivers.
- More frequent drying-out of small rivers and streams.

Although the last decade (1997–2006) has been the warmest since continuous meteorological records began, it is still controversial whether this is already the onset of the predicted climate change or a fluctuation within the natural range of climate variability. One of the most important patterns of the European climate variability is the *North Atlantic oscillation* (NAO), which oscillates at roughly decadal scales. The NAO index is defined as the air pressure difference between the subarctic Iceland low and the subtropical Azores high. In central and western Europe positive anomalies of the NAO index are characterized by strong westerly winds, mild winters, and cool summers. Negative anomalies are characterized by a more continental climate with less westerly winds, cold winters, and hot summers. Similar oscillation phenomena are also recorded for other regions of the world, e.g., the El Niño southern oscillation (ENSO) that influences the climate on both sides of the Pacific Ocean.

Biological response

In spite of the uncertainty of whether the warming during the last decade can be viewed as the onset of the predicted climate change, biological responses to present-day warming have already been documented (Walther *et al*. 2002). Most examples are terrestrial and include poleward extensions of geographic species ranges and shifts in seasonal activity and growth patterns: earlier onset of spring events and later onset of autumn events (flowering of tree species, loss of leaves, bird migrations, nesting, etc.). For Lake Constance, a chain of effects from the winter NAO index to the timing of the clear-water phase (cf. Section 6.4.1) in late spring/early

summer has been documented (Straile *et al*. 2003). The NOA winter index influences mean air temperatures during the first quarter of the year. This signal is preserved in Lake Constance water temperatures until May, the usual time of the phytoplankton spring bloom. *Daphnia* growth responds strongly to spring temperatures, leading to order-of-magnitude differences in *Daphnia* during May, which is then reflected in a much earlier onset of the grazing induced clear-water phase after high-NAO winters. The difference amounts to *c*.45 d between years with low and high winter NAO indices (Fig. 8.24).

While the Lake Constance results are in line with the general expectation of an acceleration of spring events, different phenomena may occur in ecosystems with different species composition. For example, in the shallow German Bight of the North Sea, the diatom spring bloom appears to be retarded after warmer winters. Wiltshire and Manly (2004) provide tentatively explain this by higher grazing rates of the overwintering copepod populations during warmer late winter/early spring periods. These higher grazing rates would have to be overcome by higher phytoplankton growth rates, which can only be achieved under the longer days later in the year. However, an alternative explanation is also possible. Mild winters are usually cloudy, which means that light-limited growth rates of phytoplankton should be lower than during cold but sunny later winter/early spring periods. Note that light-limited photosynthesis is the only physiological process not dependent on temperature (cf. Section 4.3.5). This temporal decoupling of light- and temperature-controlled processes would not occur in the deep Lake Constance, where thermal stratification is needed to provide enough light for phytoplankton growth.

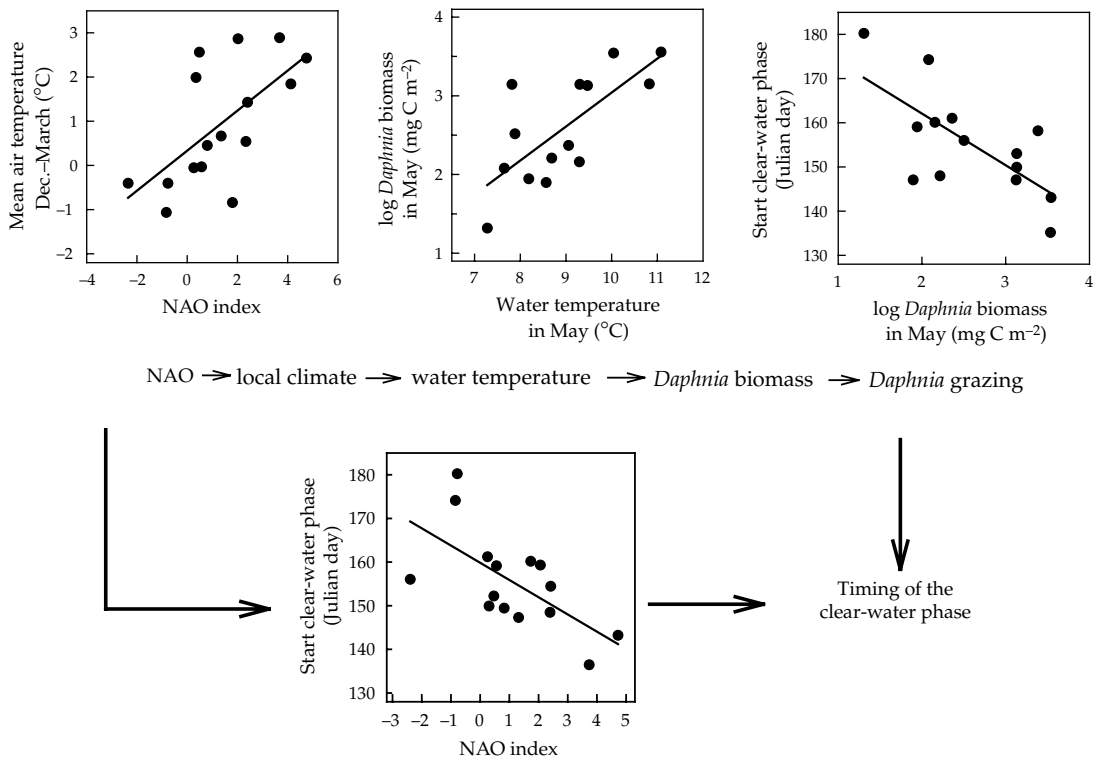


Figure 8.24 Propagation of the effects of the winter NAO index on winter meteorological conditions, Lake Constance water temperatures during the spring bloom period, *Daphnia* biomass in May, and the timing of the clear-water phase (data from Straile *et al*. 2003).

The prediction of future ecosystem states may become even more complicated if seasonal growth and activity patterns of predator and prey respond differently to climate change. While the seasonal timing of starvation-sensitive juvenile life-cycle stages is synchronized to the seasonal patterns of food availability by natural selection, microevolutionary adaptation to a shifted seasonality of food might lag behind. Such a *mismatch* between demand and supply could lead to poor survival of the juveniles and thus to a poor recruitment to the adult population, with unknown top-down and bottom-up transmission effects through the food web. Such questions are the focus of ongoing research projects, and results are to be expected within the next few years. A preliminary indication of such effects on the food web can be derived from mesocosm projects with early spring plankton from the Baltic Sea (Sommer *et al*. 2007). The indoor mesocosm was subjected to late winter/early spring temperature patterns conforming to the decadal mean 1992–2002 and to three elevated temperature regimes (2, 4, and 6 °C higher). The occurrence of the phytoplankton spring bloom was accelerated only slightly by *c*.1 d °C^{-1}, the clear-water phase was accelerated substantially by *c*.4 d °C^{-1}, and the peak of copepod nauplii was dramatically accelerated by *c*.9 d °C^{-1} (Fig. 8.25). This means that the nauplius peak occurred *c*.1 month before the phytoplankton spring bloom in the warmest treatments. The potential

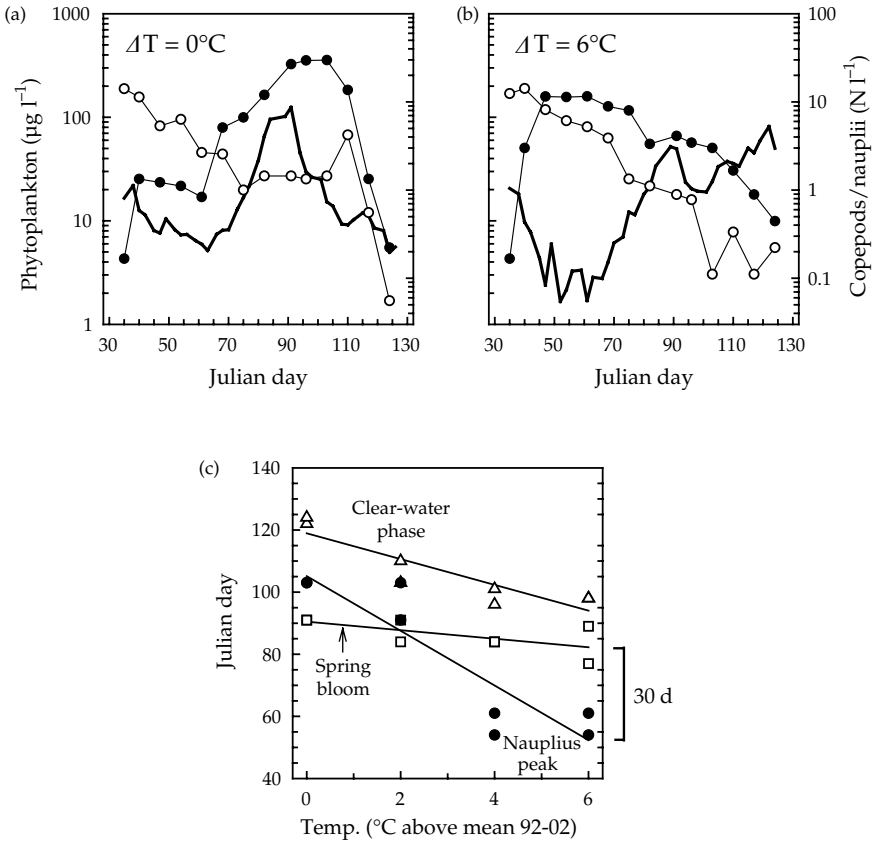


Figure 8.25 Temporal shifts of the phytoplankton and copepod spring growth patterns in mesocosm experiments with Baltic Sea plankton. Late winter/early spring temperature patterns followed the mean 1992–2002 plus a temperature elevation of 0, 2, 4, and 6 °C. (a) Phytoplankton biomass (thick line), adult copepod abundance (open circles), nauplii abundance (full circles) in a mesocosm with 0 °C elevation. (b) Same symbols, but mesocosm with 6 °C elevation. (c) Overview over all mesocosms; timing of spring bloom (open squares), the clear-water phase (open triangles), and the spring peak of copepod nauplii (filled circles) (data from Sommer *et al*. 2007).

impact on higher trophic levels can be inferred from the fact that first-feeding larvae of important fish species (e.g., herring, sprat, cod) depend on nauplii as their food, and they cannot survive several days with insufficient food. Starvation-induced mortality or the wrong timing of a nauplius cohort might thus lead to mortality of the fish larvae (Cushing 1975). Although these experimental results have been obtained with brackish water communities, it is justifiable to expect similar relationships for lakes.

The analysis of long-term data series has already revealed examples of trophic mismatch in lakes. Increasingly warmer springs since 1962 have affected trophic interactions in Lake Washington (USA) (Winder and Schindler 2004). Earlier stratification resulted in advancement of spring diatom blooms by 20 days. This led to an expanding temporal mismatch of *Daphnia* with the spring bloom and a long-term decline of *Daphnia* populations. The two main *Daphnia* species, *D. pulicaria* and *D. thorata*, seem to be differently affected by changing temperature change because of to their different life cycles. The spring development of *D. pulicaria* depends largely on the overwintering population, whereas *D. thorata* recruits mostly from hatching ephippia. In earlier years, a high spring peak of over 100 individuals per liter caused the dominance of *D. pulicaria* in spring. Recently, lower numbers of *D. pulicaria* have led to an increasing dominance of *D. thorata*. When the fry of sockeye salmon *Oncorhynchus nerka* enter the lake in spring, they depend on *Daphnia* as food. *D. pulicaria* have a better nutritional value and are easier to catch, hence they are the preferred prey. However, the fish fry have a fixed behavior of switching uniformly to *Daphnia* if the *Daphnia* density exceeds 0.4 individuals per liter. With decreasing *D. pulicaria* densities in the lake, the switch point occurs later in the year, hence the fish have to prey on the less preferred *D. thorata*. Between 1992 and 2001, the length of the time that wild salmon fry from the Cedar river arriving in the lake had to wait until the density of any *Daphnia* achieved the threshold increased continuously from 20 to 40 days. Hence they had to feed on less valuable alternative prey, which had a negative effected on their growth (Hampton *et al*. 2006). Evidently, earlier warming of Lake Washington in spring caused two mismatches, between phytoplankton and *Daphnia* and between *Daphnia* and salmon fry.

Depending on geographical location (light), physical structure, and the nutrient conditions of a lake, spring warming may have different effects. In lakes in south-western Alaska (USA), spring ice breakup occurred 7 days earlier in 2002 than in 1962 (May 26 vs June 2). The earlier ice breakup was associated with higher summer water temperatures (average 2 °C) and higher densities of *Daphnia*. This resulted in better growth of juvenile sockeye salmon as they spent their first year in the lakes (Schindler *et al*. 2005). Hence the same climatic factor had opposing effects on sockeye salmon.

Further effects of elevated carbon dioxide levels

Besides the direct effects on global climate, increased levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere will probably have indirect effects on aquatic ecosystems. Many fresh waters, in particular streams, are net heterotrophic, i.e., they depend on organic carbon imported from terrestrial production in the watershed (see Section 8.4). Elevated carbon dioxide levels, however, affect growth and biochemical composition of terrestrial plants and the species composition of terrestrial plant communities (Körner 2003). Consequently, the nature of particulate and dissolved organic carbon entering fresh waters will change, which must affect the aquatic communities.

Although the indirect consequences of carbon dioxide enrichment on aquatic systems may be complex and difficult to predict, preliminary experiments have indicated possible mechanisms. One of the strongest couplings of terrestrial and aquatic systems is leaf litter fall into forested streams in autumn (see Section 4.3.11). Organisms in such streams have adapted their life cycle to use this pulse of external energy input. A further increase of atmospheric carbon dioxide concentration may not only cause a temporal mismatch between leaf shedding and consumer development due to climate change, but may also affect the quality of the food resource. Tuchman *et al*. (2002, 2003) have grown young aspen *Populus tremuloides* trees under ambient (370 ppm) and elevated (720 ppm) concentrations of carbon dioxide, and exposed the leaves in a stream for 4 months. Leaf litter grown under

elevated levels of carbon dioxide contained more structural compounds, phenolics and lignin but less nitrogen, and had a higher C:P ratio. This reduced its nutritional value to aquatic decomposers and detritivores. It supported 59% lower bacterial production than litter grown at ambient carbon dioxide levels, while fungal biomass was not affected. Larvae of craneflies *Tipula*, dipterans that live on microbially colonized leaf litter, fed and assimilated less, and grew 12 times slower on elevated carbon dioxide-grown leaves than the controls fed leaves grown at ambient level. Other shredders, the crustaceans *Asellus* and *Gammarus*, showed increased rates of nitrogen and phosphorus excretion when fed leaves grown in elevated carbon dioxide conditions (Frost and Tuchman 2005). The processes studied in these experiments (decomposition, consumption, growth, nutrient release) are at the base of trophic relationships in streams, hence we can expect effects on the whole stream community should the carbon dioxide levels in the atmosphere rise as predicted.

Freshwater ecosystems: sources or sinks of greenhouse gases?

Carbon dioxide Combustion of fossil fuels is the main source of surplus carbon dioxide, although only c.50% of the total carbon dioxide emissions (*c*.$6.3 \times 10^{15}\,g\,y^{-1}$ in the 1990s) are estimated to appear as a concentration increase in the atmosphere. It is estimated that $1.7 \pm 0.5 \times 10^{15}\,g\,y^{-1}$ are taken up by the ocean and $1.4 \pm 0.7 \times 10^{15}\,g\,y^{-1}$ by terrestrial ecosystems (McCarthy *et al*. 2001). Because of their small contribution to the earth's surface, lakes and rivers are not considered in such global budgets. The net heterotrophic nature of many lakes (see Section 8.3.2) makes them net exporters of carbon dioxide, but viewed from a watershed perspective the picture changes. The allochthonous input of organic carbon is the consequence of terrestrial primary production, and the carbon dioxide needed for this production has first been sequestered from the atmosphere.

Methane Estimates of global methane emissions to the atmosphere are in the range of $500–600 \times 10^{12}\,g\,y^{-1}$ (McCarthy *et al*. 2001). Wetlands are the most prominent source, with estimates ranging from $215 \text{ to } 325 \times 10^{12}\,g\,y^{-1}$. These estimates include both natural wetlands and rice fields, which may be viewed as artificial wetlands. Estimates for the contribution of rice fields range from $25 \text{ to } 100 \times 10^{12}\,g\,y^{-1}$. The higher estimates put the rice fields into the same size range as the other most important anthropogenic sources—cattle and leakage from energy carriers. Methane emissions from wastewater treatment are a minor source ($14–25 \times 10^{12}\,g\,y^{-1}$), similar in importance to termites and the world oceans, the only significant natural sources after wetlands. Recent estimates attribute 6–16% of total natural methane emissions to lakes (Bastviken *et al*. 2004). Methane is produced as the reduced end product of the fermentation of organic substances by anaerobic methanogenic archaea (see Section 4.3.10). Methanogenesis happens everywhere in the anoxic part of lake and ocean sediments and in the soil of wetlands. In lakes, the methane produced by methanogenesis is oxidized by methylotrophic bacteria in the overlying aerobic sediment layers and water column; only a very tiny fraction reaches the atmosphere by diffusion through the stratified water column. However, methane, together with other gases, accumulates as bubbles in the sediment and can then burst through the sediment surface in the process of ebullition. This can be observed especially during periods of rapidly falling atmospheric pressure. Ebullition results in direct flux of methane to the atmosphere with little impact by oxidation. Casper *et al*. (2000) measured that ebullition contributed 96% of the methane flux to the atmosphere from a small lake.

Wetland soils lack the buffering effect of the overlying water column, which makes them roughly 10 times more important as a methane source than the entire world ocean. There is a serious risk of positive feedback for global warming due to wetlands in Arctic regions that are under permafrost, especially vast areas in Siberia. As long as they are frozen these wetlands do not produce methane, but if they thaw because of higher global temperatures, they will begin to emit additional methane, which in turn enhances the greenhouse effect. The first signs of this process have already been observed. Walter *et al*. (2006) found considerable amounts of methane released by ebullition from thaw lakes located in the Siberian permafrost region. While

the surrounding soil is still permanently frozen, methane is produced in the warmer lake sediments. Thawing permafrost along lake margins accounts for most of the methane released from the lakes. Between 1970 and 2000 the expansion of thaw lakes was concurrent with warming in the area, which led to a 58% increase in methane emissions.

Increased ultraviolet radiation

The depletion of stratospheric ozone is another global anthropogenic change of concern. The thinning of the ozone layer due to catalytic destruction by gaseous pollutants (chlorofluorocarbons, organobromides) occurs regularly in polar areas, in particular Antarctica, as spectacular "ozone holes", but it is a global phenomenon. Ozone absorbs hazardous short wave, ultraviolet radiation, hence its loss from the stratosphere leads to increased UV levels at the earth surface. Two types of UV radiation reach the surface, UV-A (wavelength 315–400 nm) and UV-B (280–315 nm). Although the shorter-wavelength UV-B is more absorbed in the atmosphere it has a stronger effect on living organisms.

UV radiation can have deleterious effects on living organisms through deterioration of important biological molecules, such as proteins and lipids, and biological membranes. It interferes with cellular functions and essential biochemical processes. Probably the most important effect is the damage of DNA leading to malfunction and mutations (review by Häder and Sinha 2005). Although there are numerous cellular repair mechanisms, the biological effects of increased UV radiation raise concern about ecological consequences for terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems.

The vertical attenuation of UV radiation in fresh waters can be very variable, depending on turbidity and UV-absorbing substances. The 1% level of surface intensity can be reached within few centimeters in humic lakes but >10 m in very clear lakes. Dissolved organic carbon (DOC) absorbs UV readily, and the DOC concentration is a good predictor of UV attenuation in lakes. This has been demonstrated for neighboring lakes of different ages in Glacier Bay, Alaska (Williamson *et al*. 2001). These lakes have been created by the retreat of a melting glacier. At the time of the study, the youngest lake was 10 years old, the oldest 90 years. The older the lake, the more it had time to develop vegetation in the catchment, which resulted in accumulation of DOC in the water. Concentrations of DOC varied between 4.4 mg l^{-1} for the oldest lake and 0.7 mg l^{-1} for the youngest. Figure 8.26 shows that UV penetrated much deeper in the low-DOC lakes. The depth where the intensity of radiation amounted to 1% of surface irradiance (Z1%) varied between 14.7 m and 0.6 m. The figure also shows the calculated exposure of an organism circulating freely in the epilimnion as compared to an organism staying near the surface (as a percentage). Organisms in the high-DOC lakes are well protected, while in the low-DOC lakes they are strongly exposed to UV radiation. This is not a consequence of different lake morphology, as the mixing depth was similar (approximately 3 m) in all lakes.

Organisms on all trophic levels are affected by UV radiation. The effects on algae have been reviewed by Holzinger and Lütz (2006). Strong inhibitory effects on photosynthesis have been measured in the laboratory. However, the overall effect is small in deep lakes with a large mixing depth, as the time an individual spends in greater depths is sufficient for cellular repair mechanisms to restore function (Hiriart-Baer and Smith 2005). Phytoplankton under radiation stress also change features determining the food quality for grazers. Radiated cells can develop thicker cell walls (Van Donk and Hessen 1993) and change nutrient

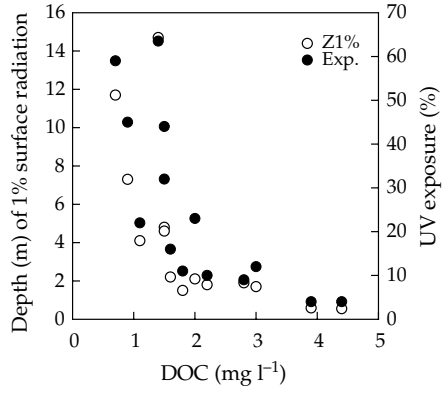


Figure 8.26 Attenuation of UV radiation (320 nm) in seven neighboring lakes in Alaska differing in DOC content (measurements from June and July). Depth (Z1%) to which 1% of the incident surface radiation penetrates, and calculated percentage of subsurface irradiance to which an organism (e.g., an alga) would be exposed (Exp.) if freely circulating in the epilimnion (data from Williamson *et al*. 2001).

stoichiometry and fatty acid content (Leu *et al*. 2006), but it is not yet clear if such effects are important for natural food webs.

Direct effects of UV radiation on zooplankton have been demonstrated both in the laboratory and in the field. For example, Williamson *et al*. (2001) observed differences in zooplankton composition that were not a result of colonization history in the deglaciated lakes in Alaska. Species living in the high-DOC lakes could not survive near the surface of the young lakes. Larger zooplankton species (*Daphnia* and *Cyclops*) performed diel vertical migrations and avoided the surface layers during the day, even in the absence of fish. Experiments in enclosures comparing zooplankton behavior under ambient light conditions and in treatments where UV radiation was shielded out with UV-absorbing plastic (Fischer *et al*. 2006) resulted in different depth distributions of *Daphnia catawba* during day and night. *Daphnia* dwelled in deeper layers during day, but only under ambient light. Diel vertical migration is an efficient protection against UV damage, but it has associated costs (see Section 6.8.4).

Organisms that cannot escape UV radiation by seeking shelter can be protected by pigments. Calanoid copepods can be very colorful (red or blue) due to UV-absorbing carotenoids. *Daphnia middendorffiana* in shallow ponds in the Arctic can be nearly black as they deposit melanin in their carapace, but they lose the pigmentation when transferred to the laboratory. The pigments greatly increase the conspicuousness of these crustaceans, hence the zooplankton can only have bright colors in the absence of fish.

Another class of accumulated photo-protective compounds, *mycosporine-like amino acids* (MAAs), has been identified in many organisms from bacteria to fish. The accumulation of MAAs in freshwater plankton varies with UV exposure. In alpine lakes where UV levels are rather high, MAAs in phytoplankton and in the copepod *Cyclops abyssorum tatricus* were *c*.3 times higher in summer than during ice-cover periods. Phytoplankton in deeper water layers had more MAAs then than phytoplankton near the surface. In *Cyclops*, sensitive stages like eggs and nauplii contained the highest amounts of MAAs (Tartarotti and Sommaruga 2006).

Due to the strong absorption of UV radiation in waters containing DOC, aquatic organisms have a good chance of avoiding the deleterious radiation, and they have evolved various strategies to cope with it. Nevertheless, increased levels of UV radiation may have complex effects on aquatic ecosystems.

8.8 Effects of biodiversity on ecosystem functions

8.8.1 Definitions and problems

Descriptions of ecosystems normally use highly aggregated units, such as trophic levels or guilds. Those aggregated units are used as "black boxes," irrespective of the identity and number of species within them. However, since the early days of ecology, the question "what is the good of so many species?" has attracted interest. This question was initially discussed is relation to ecosystem "stability." Goodman's (1976) influential review of the sparse evidence in favor of the "diversity–stability hypothesis" discredited it as a kind of myth creation and showed that the term "stability" was defined so loosely that a critical test of the hypothesis was practically impossible. After Goodman's intervention, the topic was almost forgotten for nearly two decades, but it experienced a revival during the mid 1990s and even extended its scope. The question was extended from diversity–stability relationships to the importance of biodiversity for ecosystem functioning in general (note that the now-fashionable term "biodiversity" has in principle no meaning other than "diversity" as defined in Section 7.4).

The revival of the topic was partially indebted to more rigorous problem definitions and experimental designs, but even more importantly to the growing concern about the current wave of species extinctions. According to some researchers, the current rate of species extinctions is *c*.100–1000 times higher than preindustrial background levels (Chapin *et al*. 2000, Pimm *et al*. 1995). In such a situation, how many species are needed for ecosystems to function as we are used to see them function becomes a burning question. Although there is still much scientific debate on the topic, some consensus has been reached (summarized in Hooper *et al*. 2005). Ecosystem functions that relate to diversity are either defined as stability properties (persistence,

constancy, resistance, or elasticity to perturbations) and biogeochemical properties (productivity, nutrient cycling, and retention), or in a more anthropocentric way as "ecosystem goods and services" (in the case of fresh water this may mean supply of drinking water, fisheries, aesthetic and hygienic qualities for recreation and tourism, fishing, etc.).

Problems of experimental design

In principle, studies on the effects of biodiversity on ecosystem functions could be based on correlations of field data or on experiments. However, correlative studies have one difficulty: differences in local diversity are in most cases dependent on various environmental conditions (e.g., solar energy input, nutrient richness, disturbance regime, regional species pool and dispersal) which in themselves influence ecosystem functions. It may become very hard or almost impossible to find the appropriate statistical techniques to quantify the extra influence of diversity on ecosystem functions. The same applies to experiments where diversity differences between the different experimental units have been manipulated indirectly via environmental factors. Therefore, most of the reliable studies are based on artificially composed communities, but even those are not without methodological problems.

- *Species identity versus richness:* Early studies have been criticized because it was not clear whether the enhanced performance of species richer treatments was due to species richness *per se* or to the specific properties of the additional species in the richer treatments (Huston 1997). This problem can be overcome by combining two levels of replication: same species number/same species and same species number/different species (Downing and Leibold 2002). Obviously, this makes such experiments extremely laborious and restricts the experimental approach to small and easily cultured organisms.
- *Species versus functional diversity:* Conventional measures of diversity and species richness (see Section 7.4.1) make no distinction between mixtures of species consisting of similar or different species. On the other hand, one would intuitively expect that a mixture of three equal-sized diatoms would produce a less pronounced diversity effect than a mixture of a diatom, a flagellate and a nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterium. This problem can be solved by lumping species into predefined (but subjective) functional groups and treating functional groups as quasi-species when calculating diversity. More sophisticated methods are borrowed from numerical taxonomy. Species are ordered in an n-dimensional space of n relevant and quantifiable traits; distances between species are calculated and used to construct a cluster diagram whose attributes can be used as diversity measures (Petchey and Gaston 2006).
- *Non-random species loss:* Natural communities differ from artificially assembled experimental communities by having a history of competitive exclusions, successful invasions, and unsuccessful invasion attempts. This means that they represent the most stable subset of the total of all possible species combinations, irrespective of their diversity. Similarly, the expected loss of species by environmental stress is by no means random. Thus, a statistically desirable attribute of experimental communities (random assemblage) makes them unnatural at the same time. The problem is acknowledged, but the scientific community is still waiting for convincing experimental designs.

Sampling effect versus complementarity

Diversity effects can fall into two broad categories: the sampling effect and the complementarity effect. The *sampling effect* means that in species-richer communities there is a higher probability of finding particularly productive or stress-resistant species, or species better adapted to changed environmental conditions. The *complementarity effect* depends on niche differences between the coexisting species and/or positive interactions (symbiosis, facilitation). Niche differences would for example result in a more complete usage of the resource base and, thus, higher productivity. Some authors (Doak *et al*. 1998) have called the sampling effect a statistical inevitability without ecological mechanism behind it, but even so, it would be an ecological reality with potentially important implications for conservation issues. Attempts to separate the sampling form the complementarity effect in experimental data are based on the concept of *overyielding* (Hector *et al*. 2002). This means that a species mixture performs

better in the parameter of interest than (i) the species best performing in monoculture, (ii) the dominant species in monoculture, or (iii) a weighted average of the species mixture calculated from single-species performances in monoculture. Obviously, each of the three standards of comparison can give different results, and the debate about the most appropriate choice is still going on.

The *insurance hypothesis* (Yachi and Loreau 1999) is closely related to the sampling effect. It rests on the assumption of redundancy among species—that functionally similar species can replace each other if disturbances eliminate one species, or if the environmental changes lead to the disadvantage of one and the advantage of another species. Intuitively, one would expect the insurance to become "safer" the more species there are.

Local versus regional diversity

Most biodiversity–ecosystem effect experiments rely on closed species assemblages, but it is obvious that the insurance effect can also be achieved by immigration, provided that the immigrating species have easily transportable propagules or that powerful transport vectors exist, as is the case in the recolonization of disturbed river reaches from upstream (see Section 5.8).

The importance of the regional species pool was demonstrated in simple aquarium experiments with periphyton (Matthiessen and Hillebrand 2006). The aquaria had a biofilm at the bottom consisting of 15 algal species, which comprised the regional species pool. In each aquarium, there were plastic tubes ("local communities") with initial species numbers of 2, 4, and 8 species. The plastic tubes were open at the top and totally submerged, thus permitting a low background level of dispersal. This background dispersal was enhanced by stirring up the bottom biofilm 0, 1, 2, 7, 14, and 28 times during the 28 day experimental period. Final species richness in the local communities was unrelated to initial species richness of the local communities, but increased strongly with the frequency of stirring events up to 7 events;a further increase of stirring frequency did not increase species richness any further (Fig. 8.27).

8.8.2 Diversity and productivity

Experiments dedicated to studying the influence of diversity on productivity have most frequently been carried out with terrestrial model systems (usually grassland communities) and with aquatic microcosms. The results have usually, but not always, supported the hypothesis that diversity enhances productivity, if other factors (e.g., nutrient richness, physical conditions) are kept equal between treatments. Mostly, production rates have not been

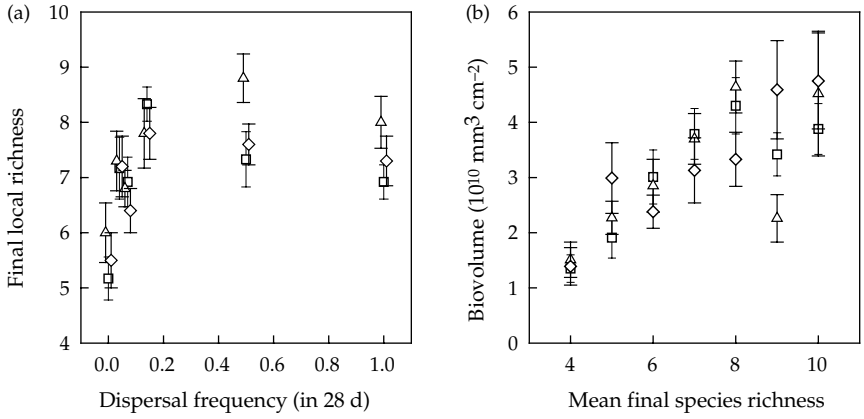


Figure 8.27 Periphyton experiments on the role of dispersal for local species richness and productivity. Symbols indicate initial species richness (squares: 2 species, triangles: 4 species, diamonds: 8 species). Error bars represent ±1 SE. (a) Final species richness in dependence of the frequency of dispersal enhancing events. (b) Periphyton biomass measured as biovolume in dependence of final species richness (from Matthiessen and Hillebrand 2006).

measured directly but biomass accumulation at the end of the experiment has been used as a proxy, which might be a problem if there is a strong turnover because of consumption by higher trophic levels. However, most of the diversity–productivity experiments are at a single trophic level where this is only a minor problem.

In the periphyton experiments mentioned in the previous section, there was a clear increase of periphyton biomass with final species richness, while the initial species richness had no influence (Fig. 8.27). In one of the few studies with several trophic levels, Downing and Leibold (2002) set up mesocosms with 1, 3, and 5 species per trophic level (macrophytes, benthic grazers, and carnivores). Benthic microorganisms and plankton were not manipulated, but were monitored. Primary production and community respiration (both measured by the oxygen method) increased with species richness, as did phytoplankton biomass, but zooplankton biomass decreased.

Although few studies have been directly designed to study the influence of diversity on top-down effects, Hillebrand and Cardinale (2004) were able to extract relevant data from 87 studies of grazing on algae. They showed by a meta-analysis that consumer effects declined with prey diversity. The opposite trend seems probable for consumer diversity, as suggested by the *Daphnia*–copepod experiments presented in Section 7.3.6 (Sommer *et al*. 2003), where a mixture of *Daphnia* and copepods was more effective in reducing phytoplankton biomass than *Daphnia* or copepods alone. Gamfeldt *et al*. (2005) performed experiments with two trophic levels, with a factorial combination of phytoplankton and ciliate species richness (one, two, or three species). Phytoplankton richness had no effect on phytoplankton biomass, but increased consumer biomass. Ciliate richness decreased phytoplankton biomass but increased ciliate biomass. A tentative explanation based on the assumption of a combined sampling and complementarity effect is quite easily provided: Increased prey diversity means a higher probability of having resistant prey, while increased predator diversity means a broader spectrum of food preferences. The first effect may be counteracted if increased prey diversity leads to a biochemically more balanced diet for the consumers.

8.8.3 Diversity and stability

Before searching for any relationships between diversity and stability, the concept of "stability" has to be defined adequately. We must differentiate at least three classes of stability (Fig. 8.28):

- *Constancy*: This usually refers to the lack of change in the number of individuals, biomass, number of species, etc. Constancy need not only mean a fixed set of conditions—we can also speak of stable cycles and continuous trends. An observation that there are no unpredictable changes does not explain whether the constancy was caused by the external conditions (absence of disturbances) or by the ability of the populations to resistance disturbances.
- *Persistence* is a relaxed version of constancy. It means that only the identity of an ecosystem (e.g., a macrophyte stand) has to be maintained; quantitative measures do not have to be constant. Persistence can be measured as the survival time of a given ecosystem type. Although persistence is not an important concept in experimental research, it is probably the most important stability concept for nature conservation issues.
- *Resistance (inertia)*: This refers to the ability to keep a stationary condition, a cycle, or a trend despite a disturbance. Resistance leads to constancy, but it is not the only possible cause.
- *Elasticity*: Elasticity is the ability to return to the stationary state, cycle, or trend after a deviation from the normal condition. Elasticity only leads to constancy over a long period. Some authors distinguish two different aspects of "return stability", the extent of perturbation tolerated after which return is still possible (*resilience*) and the speed at which initial conditions are restored after perturbation (*elasticity sensu stricto*).

Most rigorous experimental studies concentrate on constancy, usually expressed as the inverse of some measure of variability through time (e.g., standard deviation, coefficient of variance). We might expect properties measured at the population level (e.g., abundance of individual species) to respond differently than aggregated properties, such as total biomass. Both the sampling effect and the complementarity effect lead to identical predictions (Tilman 1996). Population level measures

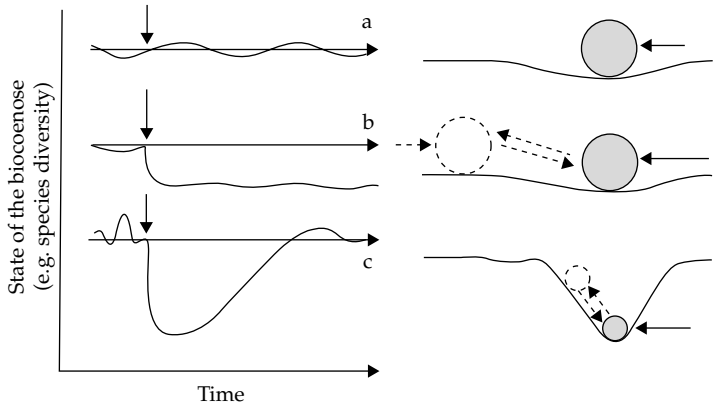


Figure 8.28 A visual presentation of various types of community "stability". The condition of the system is represented as a ball in a valley. In the adjacent graphs a measurable parameter (e.g., diversity) is shown. (a) The system has a high resistance. A minor disturbance (arrow) cannot alter its course. The community either does not change or changes only within the boundaries of normal seasonal variation. (b) A more powerful disturbance can change the course of the system and elevate it to a new stable level. It will remain there until a new disturbance causes it to revert to its previous condition. (c) The small ball represents a system with little resistance, but a high degree of elasticity. Even a small disturbance causes large changes, but the system rapidly returns to its initial condition (from Lampert 1978c).

should fluctuate more strongly with increasing diversity, because more species extend the scope for species replacements, independently of whether these displacements are driven by random processes or by niche differences. On the other hand, summing up the species, the individual species' biomass or production rates should dampen variability, if the performances of the individual species are not strictly synchronized. Again, this damping can be the result either of random differences in time series or of a complementarity effect, if strengths and weaknesses of the different species compensate each other.

The contrasting effects of diversity on population and ecosystem constancy have been demonstrated in plankton (phytoplankton, heterotrophic protists, rotifers) microcosm experiments by McGrady-Steed and Morin (2000). The species pool contained primary producers, herbivores, bacterivores, and predators. Initial species richness in the microcosms ranged from 3 to 31 species. While there were some species losses from the richer microcosms, the overall rank order in species richness persisted through the experimental period of 42 days, the persistence time of individual species declining with total species richness. On the other hand, a decreasing coefficient of variance of bacterivore total abundance, herbivore total abundance, predator total abundance, and total system respiration indicated a positive effect of diversity on aggregated properties. The coefficient of variation of primary producers deviated from the expected value; it was highest at intermediate species richness.

Lakes in the temperate zone, and especially streams, often show a high degree of elasticity (see Section 5.8). The organisms are adapted to strong fluctuations and disasters and therefore have resting stages and/or specialized strategies for colonization. This enables the system to regenerate itself very quickly after a brief disturbance, even if it was a strong disturbance. It becomes more difficult if the disturbance lasts longer so that the system slowly transforms into another state. A good example of this is the eutrophication of the lakes through the addition of phosphorus. A one-time addition of phosphorus (e.g., as fertilizer) has no lasting effect on the lake. The phosphorus is quickly incorporated into the biomass and then settles out of the water. As long as there is oxygen in the deep water, the phosphorus will stay in the sediments as insoluble ferric iron complexes (Section 8.3.5). This disturbance is so short that the food web structure does not change.

The problem of eutrophication of lakes is that the disturbance occurs continually over long periods. Phosphorus is added to the lakes from sewage, erosion of land, and from the air. This causes a continually elevated production that slowly changes the food web. The ball in Fig. 8.28 (b) is slowly rolled to a new level. If the disturbance is then stopped (e.g., by diverting the sewers), the lake will not "get better" immediately. In the meantime, the reduction in nutrient addition now becomes a disturbance to the new system. The feedback of phosphorus from the anaerobic sediments and the internal phosphorus cycling determines the productivity. Long-lived keystone species have changed; for example, there are more planktivorous, carp-like fish (cyprinids). Filamentous cyanobacteria inhibit the reappearance of large, filter-feeding zooplankton. These mechanisms work to keep the lake in its new, eutrophic condition. This is painfully obvious when lake restoration is attempted (Sas 1989). Sometimes artificial measures must be taken to speed up the process of oligotrophication (see Section 8.6.2). In the picture analogy in Fig 8.28, one must give the ball a push to roll it back to its old position.

Shallow eutrophic lakes can exhibit two alternative stable states, either a clear-water state dominated by aquatic vegetation, or a turbid state characterized by high algal biomass. There is no intermediate state: It is either one or the other. Phytoplankton biomass can be two orders of magnitude lower in clear-water shallow eutrophic lakes than in turbid lakes. It is not clear how dense beds of aquatic macrophytes stabilize the clear-water state. Competition and allelopathy have been suggested as mechanisms. However, once a system has switched to the turbid state, it takes considerable nutrient reduction to achieve recolonization by macrophytes, since algae absorb too much light to allow the rooted plants to grow on the bottom. Top-down manipulations are more effective in this case. One season of enhanced grazing due to reduced fish stocks may be sufficient to re-establish the macrophytes, which subsequently suppress the algae (see Section 7.3.4). There are numerous examples of neighboring shallow lakes that persist for many years in two different states (Scheffer *et al*. 1993).

Review questions

1 Assume a simple trophic chain consisting of nanophytoplankton–*Daphnia*–whitefish and a microbial chain of picophytoplankton–heterotrophic nanoflagellates–ciliates– *Daphnia*–whitefish. Assume the ecological efficiency within the short chain is 10% and the long chain can support the same amount of fish production as the short chain. (a) If the ecological efficiency within the long chain is equal to the short chain, how much higher must the picoplankton production be than the nanophytoplankton production? (b) If the picoplankton and nanoplankton production are equal, what must the ecological efficiency be for the following links: picoplankton–HNF, HNF–ciliates, and ciliates–*Daphnia*?

2 What common feature distinguishes the carbon and nitrogen cycles in lakes from the phosphorus and silicon cycles? How does this feature affect the cycling of carbon and nitrogen?

3 Are the concentrations of dissolved phosphate, nitrate, and ammonium in the epilimnion during the summer a good measure of the nutrient richness of a lake? Explain.

4 Nutrient ratios are important for competitive interactions in phytoplankton communities. Which ratios do you expect to decrease or to increase during the stratified period: Si:N; Si:P; NH_4^+:NO_3.

5 Use the IBP- and OECD-type equations presented in Sections 8.5.2 and 8.5.3 to calculate for (a) an oligotrophic ($10\,\mu g\,P_{tot}\,l^{-1}$), (b) a mesotrophic ($30\,\mu g\,P_{tot}\,l^{-1}$), and (c) a eutrophic ($100\,\mu g\,P_{tot}\,l^{-1}$) lake characteristic values for: (i) the mean annual chlorophyll concentration; (ii) the annual primary production; (iii) the annual secondary production; (iv) the fish yield.

6 For each of the lakes in Question 5, make some calculations concerning the light climate in each lake. Assume a background vertical extinction coefficient (extinction coefficient without chlorophyll) of $0.2\,m^{-1}$ and assume that for each mg $Chl\,l^{-1}$ the extinction coefficient increases by 0.015 units. Calculate: (a) the annual mean extinction coefficient; (b) the annual mean thickness of the euphotic zone (you can find the Lambert–Beer equation in Section 3.2.1).

7 Half a century ago, fisheries scientists complained about the infertility of oligotrophic lakes and suggested they be fertilized. Now, after the widespread eutrophication of lakes in recent decades, lake managers are not happy about the increase in lake fertility. Why?

8 It has been suggested that denitrification in sewage treatment plants could reduce the nitrogen loading to marine coastal waters, especially if the water from the treatment plant must travel a long distance to be discharged into the

ocean. Which process could severely limit the success of denitrification?

9 Why has the reduction of phosphates in detergents been an effective measure in the control of eutrophication?

10 Under which conditions and at what time of the year do you expect diatoms, dinoflagellates, and cyanobacteria to be dominant phytoplankton?

11 Describe and explain the seasonal size trends in phytoplankton and zooplankton in oligotrophic and eutrophic lakes.

12 Explain why food availability for fish larvae might decrease if climate change leads to increasing spring temperatures.

13 Explain the difference between the complementarity and the sampling effect of biodiversity.

14 The Hilsenhoff index is based on the composition of benthic organisms in riffle habitats. Why?

15 Why would a toxic spill of a pesticide have different long-term effects in a lake and in a stream?

CHAPTER 9

Final remarks

9.1 Ecology and the biological sciences

At the beginning of the book we defined ecology according to Krebs (1985), as "the scientific study of the interactions that determine the distribution and abundance of organisms." This definition is somewhat too narrow; it includes the analysis of the environmental requirements of individuals, of growth and distribution of populations, of the interactions between populations, and of the function of communities. It does not, however, include the analysis of the function of ecosystems, which has become an increasingly important part of ecology.

We have not attempted to redefine the term "ecology", but examples described in our text illustrate the breadth and limits of ecological research. We have restricted the subject to the ecology of fresh water, although the same questions and problems are found in terrestrial and marine ecology. One exception is the analysis of biogeochemical cycles that occur on spatial scales beyond the individual ecosystem, such as landscapes, regions, and the entire biosphere. A textbook about terrestrial or marine ecology might be expected to have a section devoted to global transport. However, the percentage of the earth's surface that contains limnetic ecosystems is negligible in terms of global flow of matter. It is thus reasonable to conclude a textbook in limnoecology with a section devoted to ecosystems.

We have limited our approach to ecosystems and smaller units, and also focused on short-term events. We assume that interactions such as competition and predation take place between existing species or genotypes; that is, no new genotypes are created during the ecological process. It would otherwise be impossible to predict the outcome of the interaction on the basis of the physiological condition of the organisms. The creation of new genotypes lies in the realm of genetics, not ecology. However, evolution also requires selection, and the study of factors driving natural selection is an objective of ecology (see Section 1.1).

In his famous essay *The Ecological Theater and the Evolutionary Play*, Hutchinson (1965) characterized evolution as a play that is performed within the theater of "ecology." This picture can be modified to clarify the distinction between ecology and related sciences. If one views the interactions between organisms and their environment as a play, then there are three different ways to explain it: One can analyze the actors, the stage, or the play itself. Numerous biological disciplines analyze the actors; for example, taxonomy, functional morphology, physiology, and genetics. The analysis of the stage is "geography" in the broadest sense of the word and includes many nonbiological sciences, such as geology, hydrology, lake physics, water chemistry, etc. The analysis of the play itself is ecology, and it must be qualified that the methods used in ecology cannot be applied to evolutionary and geological timescales.

It should be obvious that we view ecology as a natural science. At several points we have emphasized that some ecological concepts do not conform to the rigorous principles of the scientific method, especially the principle of falsifiability. Some hypotheses, such as the diversity–stability hypothesis, have created much controversy among academics as well as in the field of popular ecology. We view this as an indication of immaturity of the science and by no means as evidence that ecology is unscientific.

9.2 Ecology and society

The emphasis on ecology as a natural sciences is not entirely consistent with the popular view in society. Many people would like to use ecology as the basis

for a new political doctrine. These ideas can be seen in expressions such as "reconciliation of ecology and economy," "ecological world market," and "ecosocialism." Such uses of a natural science are contrary to the meaning of science as well as the meaning of a democratic society. Natural sciences provide theories describing how nature functions: They cannot show which aspects of nature are more worthy of conserving, or which goals humans should strive for. Determining values and goals are tasks for a democratic process and not for science. Ecologists and other experts have no more rights in this decision-making than other people. The role of the expert should be to indicate possible ways of achieving goals and to point out possible conflicts between goals that have been selected.

Even if a society were to agree that the health and preservation of ecosystems is valuable and should be given the highest priority, ecology could not help further define this value. Having seen the prescientific character of the "balance of nature" and the superorganism concept, there is no scientific criterion that can be used to place a value on the health of ecosystems. There is no scientific basis for selecting a particular historic condition of an ecosystem as an ideal or "target condition". Even the most recognized and most agreed-upon goals in environmental politics are not closely tied to ecological knowledge. In addition to the reduction of emissions that are harmful to human health, most other attempts toward protection of the environment and nature fall into two main categories: The maintenance of diversity and the re-establishment or retention of the largest possible closure of biogeochemical cycles. Both are goals that have recently become accepted by many people; they are human value judgments, however, and are thus not scientific principles. Ecology can show that anthropogenic opening of cycles of matter has undesirable effects (e.g., more nutrient losses from soils → greater need for fertilizing → more eutrophication of lakes); it is not capable of showing how undesirable these effects are.

9.3 Ecology and the environment

This book has included relatively little of the so-called "applied ecology." Lacking a clear distinction between "ecology" and "environmental science," "ecology" has become a hollow word that can be filled with any meaning as the need arises. There is no doubt that the greatest challenge of our time is the protection of our habitat and resources as the world population increases. By training us to think in terms of interconnected systems, ecology has contributed significantly to a better appreciation of environmental problems. Demands will also be made on ecology to make predictions about the consequences of human activities. Such predictions can be made only if there is a strong natural science theory.

Environmental problems have become widely recognized. This is a very positive sign, but it has led to a strong shift toward applied ecology. The objective of this applied ecology is not the development of generalized theories, but the optimization of human living conditions, and this cannot always be based on scientific criteria. According to Fenchel (1987), who has critically evaluated this problem, the relationship between ecology and environmental sciences can be compared to the relationship between physics and engineering science. Physics provides the fundamental materials from which the engineers make products. Physics and engineering science are relatively clearly distinguished from one another, but this is not the case for ecology and environmental sciences. Only a small fraction of the support that is intended for "ecological research" goes into basic research in ecology. The largest percentage is used to deal with serious environmental problems and for "monitoring." Such programs are badly needed and should be strengthened, but they result in little scientific progress, since as a rule they apply known concepts and methods, rather than developing them. For this reason, increases in research funding have unfortunately not resulted in corresponding increases in ecological theories.

Hopefully it has become clear that the purpose of this book is to highlight the possibilities and limitations of ecological theories in the field of aquatics. We would like to see the concept of "ecology" once again used as it once was, as a subdiscipline of biology with its own methods and its own theoretical concepts, equal to other subdisciplines. It is neither an "integrated science" nor a "doctrine of salvation."

References

Abbot, M.R., Denman, K.L., Powell, T.M., Richerson, P.J., Richards, R.C., and Goldman, C.R. (1984). Mixing and the dynamics of the deep chlorophyll maximum in Lake Tahoe. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **29**, 862–878.

Ackerman, J.D. (2001). Benthic-pelagic coupling over a zebra mussel reef in western Lake Erie. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **46**, 892–904.

Adrian, R., and Frost, T.M. (1993). Omnivory in cyclopoid copepods: Comparisons of algae and invertebrates as food for three, differently sized species. *J. Plankton Res.*, **15**, 643–658.

Ahlgren, G. (1978). Growth of *Oscillatoria gardhii* in chemostat culture. II. Dependence of growth constants on temperature. *Mitt. Int. Ver. Limnol.*, **21**, 88–102.

Alcaraz, M., and Strickler, J.R. (1988). Locomotion in copepods: pattern of movements and energetics of *Cyclops*. *Hydrobiologia*, **167/168**, 409–414.

Allan, J.D., Flecker, A.S., and McClintock, N.L. (1987). Prey preference of stoneflies: sedentary vs mobile prey. *Oikos*, **49**, 323–331.

Almer, B., Dickson, W., Eckström, C., Hornström, E., and Miller, U. (1974). Effects of acidification on Swedish lakes. *Ambio*, **3**, 30–36.

Amann, R.I., Ludwig, W., and Schleifer, K-H (1995). Phylogenetic identification and in situ detection of individual microbial cells without cultivation. *Microbiological Reviews*, **59**, 43–169.

Ambühl, H. (1959). Die Bedeutung der Strömung als ökologischer Faktor. *Schweiz. Z. Hydrol.*, **21**, 133–264.

Andersen, T., and Hessen, D.O. (1991). Carbon, nitrogen, and phosphorus content of freshwater zooplankton. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **36**, 807–814.

Anderson, R.S. (1970). Effects of rotenone on zooplankton communities and a study of their recovery patterns in two mountain lakes in Alberta. *J. Fish. Res. Bd. Canada*, **27**, 1335–1365.

Anholt, B.R. (1995). Density dependence resolves the stream drift paradox. *Ecology*, **76**, 2235–2239.

Anning, T., Harris, G., and Geider, R.J. (2001). Thermal acclimation in the marine diatom *Chaetoceros calcitrans* (Bacillariophyceae). *Eur. J. Phycol.*, **36**, 233–241.

Apperson, C.S., Yows, D., and Madison, L. (1978). Resistance to methyl parathion in *Chaoborus astictopus* from Clear Lake, California. *J. Econ. Entomol.*, **71**, 772–773.

Arens, C.S. (1989). Comparative functional morphology of the mouth parts of stream animals feeding on epilithic algae. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Suppl.*, **83**, 253–354.

Arzet, K., Steinberg, C., Psenner, R., and Schulz, N. (1986). Diatom distribution and diatom inferred pH in the sediment of four alpine lakes. *Hydrobiologia*, **143**, 247–254.

Avise, J.C. (2004). *Molecular markers, natural history, and evolution*. Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, MA.

Azam, F., Fenchel, R., Field, J.G., Ray, J.S., Meyer-Reil, L.A., and Thingstad, F. (1983). The ecological role of water-column microbes in the sea. *Mar. Ecol. Progr. Ser.*, **10**, 257–263.

Bailey, PCE (1986). The feeding behaviour of a sit-and-wait predator, *Ranatra dispar* (Heteroptera: Nepidae): optimal foraging and feeding dynamics. *Oecologia*, **68**, 291–297.

Bannister, T.T. (1974). Production equations in terms of chlorophyll concentration, quantum yield, and upper limit to production. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **19**, 1–12.

Banse, K. (1982). Cell volumes, maximal growth rates of unicellular algae and ciliates, and the role of ciliates in the marine pelagial. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **27**, 1059–1071.

Barbosa, F.A.R., and Tundisi, J.G. (1989). Diel variations in a shallow tropical Brazilian lake. I. The influence of - temperature variation on the distribution of dissolved oxygen and nutrients. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **116**, 333–350.

Barnhisel, D.R. (1991). The caudal appendage of the cladoceran *Bythotrephes cederstroemi* as defense against young fish. *J. Plankton Res.*, **13**, 529–537.

Barry, M.J. (1994). The costs of crest induction for *Daphnia carinata*. *Oecologia*, **97**, 278–288.

Bastviken, D., Cole, J.J., Pace, M., and Tranvik, L. (2004). Methane emissions from lakes: Dependence of lake characteristics, two regional assessments, and a global estimate. *Global Biogeochem. Cycles*, **18**, B4009.

Bauer, G. (1987). Reproductive strategy of the freshwater pearl mussel *Margaritifera margaritifera*. *J. Animal Ecol.*, **56**, 691–704.

Beadle, L.C. (1943). Osmotic regulation and the faunas of inland waters. *Biol. Rev.*, **18**, 172–183.

Bechara, J.A., Moreau, G., and Planas, D. (1992). Top-down effects of brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) in a boreal forest stream. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **49**, 2093–2103.

Bechara, J.A., Moreau, G., and Haré, L. (1993). The impact of brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) on an experimental stream benthic community: the role of spatial and size refugia. *J. Animal Ecol.*, **62**, 451–464.

Becker, C., and Boersma, M. (2005). Differential effects of phosphorus and fatty acids on *Daphnia magna* growth and reproduction. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **50**, 388–397.

Becks, L., Hilker, F.M., Malchow, H., Jürgens, K., and Arndt, H. (2005). Experimental demonstration of chaos in a microbial food web. *Nature*,

Bell, G. (2005). The co-distribution of species in relation to the neutral theory of community ecology. *Ecology*, **86**, 1757–1770.

Benndorf, J., Schultz, H., Benndorf, A., Unger, R., Penz, E., Kneschke, H., Kossatz, K., Dumke, R., Hornig, V., Kruspe, R., and Reichel, S. (1988). Food-web manipulation by enhancement of piscivorous fish stocks: Long-term effects in the hypertrophic Bautzen Reservoir. *Limnologica (Berlin)*, **19**, 97–110.

Berendonk, T.U. (1999). Influence of fish kairomones on the ovipositioning behavior of *Chaoborus* imangines. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **44**, 454–458.

Berendonk, T.U., and Bonsall, M.B. (2002). The phantom midge and a comparison of metapopulation structures. *Ecology*, **83**, 116–128.

Bergh, O., Brosheim, K.Y., Bratbak, G., and Heldal, M. (1989). High abundance of viruses found in aquatic environments. *Nature*, **340**, 467–468.

Bird, D.F., and Kalff, J. (1993). Protozoan grazing and the size-activity structure of limnetic bacterial communities. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **50**, 370–380.

Birge, E.A. (1897). Plankton studies on Lake Mendota: II. The Crustacea from the plankton from July 1894, to December 1896. *Trans. Wisconsin Acad. Sci. Arts Lett.*, **11**, 274–448.

Black, R.W. (1980). The genetic component of cyclomorphosis in *Bosmina*. In W.C. Kerfoot (ed.) *Evolution and ecology of zooplankton communities.*, pp. 456–469. University Press of New England, Hanover, NH.

Black, R.W.I., and Slobodkin, L.B. (1987). What is cyclomorphosis? *Freshwat. Biol.*, **18**, 373–378.

Boeing, W.J., Wissel, B., and Ramcharan, C.W. (2005). Costs and benefits of *Daphnia* defense against *Chaoborus* in nature. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **62**, 1286–1294.

Bohl, E. (1980). Diel pattern of pelagic distribution and feeding in planktivorous fish. *Oecologia*, **44**, 368–375.

Bollens, S.M., and Frost, B.W. (1989). Predator-induced diel vertical migration in a planktonic copepod. *J. Plankton Res.*, **11**, 1047–1065.

Borgström, R., and Hendrey, G.R. (1976). pH tolerance of the first fish larval stages of *Lepidurus arcticus* and of adult *Gammarus lacustris*. SNSF-Projekt, IR 22/76

Bottrell, H.H. (1975). The relationship between temperature and duration of egg development in some epiphytic Cladocera and Copepoda from the river Thames, Reading, with a discussion of temperature functions. *Oecologia*, **18**, 63–84.

Bottrell, H.H., Duncan, A., Gliwicz, Z.M., Grygierek, E., Herzig, A., Hillbricht-Ilkowska, A., Kurasawa, H., Larsson, P., and Weglenska, T. (1976). A review of some problems in zooplankton production studies. *Norw. J. Zool.*, **24**, 419–456.

Bowers, G. (1987). Aquatic plant photosynthesis: strategies that enhance carbon gain. In Crawford, R.M. (ed.) *Plant life in aquatic and amphibian habitats.*, pp. 79–98. Blackwell, Oxford.

Boyero, L., and Pearson, R.G. (2006). Intraspecific interference in a tropical stream shredder guild. *Mar. Freshwat. Res.*, **57**, 201–206.

Braband, A., and Faafeng, B. (1993). Habitat shift in roach (*Rutilus rutilus*) induced by pikeperch (*Stizostedion lucioperca*) introduction: Predation risk versus pelagic behavior. *Oecologia*, **95**, 38–46.

Braunwarth, C., and Sommer, U. (1985). Analyses of the in situ growth rates of Cryptophyceae by use of the mitotic index technique. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **30**, 893–897.

Braunwarth, C. (1988). Populationsdynamik natürlicher Phytoplankton-populationen: Analyse der in-situ Wachstums-und Verlustraten. PhD thesis, Univ. Konstanz, Konstanz.

Brendelberger, H. (1991). Filter mesh size of cladocerans predicts retention efficiency for bacteria. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **36**, 884–894.

Brett, J.R. (1965). The relation of size to rate of oxygen consumption and sustained swimming speed of Sockeye Salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). *J. Fish. Res. Bd. Canada*, **22**, 1491–1501.

Brett, M.T. (1989). Zooplankton communities and acidification processes (a review). *Water Air Soil Poll.*, **44**, 387–414.

Brodersen, J., and Madsen, H. (2003). The effect of calcium concentration on the crushing resistance, weight and size of *Biomphalaria sudanica* (Gastropoda: Planorbidae). *Hydrobiologia*, **490**, 181–186.

Brodin, T., Johansson, F., and Bergstein, J. (2006). Predator related oviposition site selection of aquatic beetles (*Hydroporus* spp.) and effects on offspring life-history. *Freshwat. Biology*, **51**, 1277–1285.

Brönmark, C., and Malmqvist, B. (1986). Interactions between the leech *Glossiphonia complanata* and its gastropod prey. *Oecologia*, **69**, 268–276.

Brönmark, C. (1994). Effects of tench and perch on interactions in a freshwater, benthic food chain. *Ecology*, **75**, 1818–1828.

Brönmark, C., and Hansson, L.A. (2000). Chemical communication in aquatic systems: an introduction. *Oikos*, **88**, 103–109.

Brönmark, C., and Pettersson, L.B. (1994). Chemical cues from piscivores induce a change in morphology in crucian carp. *Oikos*, **70**, 396–404.

Brooks, J.L. (1968). The effects of prey size selection by lake planktivores. *Syst. Zool.*, **17**, 272–291.

Brooks, J.L., and Dodson, S.I. (1965). Predation, body-size and composition of plankton. *Science*, **150**, 28–35.

Bruning, K., and Ringelberg, J. (1987). The influence of phosphorus limitation of the diatom *Asterionella formosa* on the zoospore production of its fungal parasite *Rhizophydium planktonicum*. *Hydrobiol. Bull.*, **21**, 49–54.

Brylinsky, M. (1980). Estimating the productivity of lakes and reservoirs. In LeCren, E.D. and Lowe-McConnell, R.H. (ed.) *The functioning of freshwater ecosystems.*, pp. 411–453. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Burns, C.W. (1968). The relationship between body size of filter-feeding cladocera and the maximum size of particles ingested. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **13**, 675–678.

Burton, R.S., and Swisher, S.G. (1985). Population structures of the intertidal copepod *Tigriopus californicus* as revealed by field manipulation of allele frequencies. *Oecologia*, **65**, 108–111.

Byron, E.R. (1982). The adaptive significance of calanoid copepod pigmentation: A comparative and experimental analysis. *Ecology*, **63**, 1871–1886.

Caceres, C.E., and Soluk, D.A. (2002). Blowing in the wind: a field test of overland dispersal and colonization by aquatic invertebrates. *Oecologia*, **131**, 402–408.

Calow, R.J.P. (1992). Can ecosystems be healthy? Critical consideration of concepts. *J. Aquat. Ecosyst. Health*, **1**, 1–15.

Caraco, N.F., Cole, J.J., and Strayer, D.L. (2006). Top-down control from the bottom: Regulation of eutrophication in a large river by benthic grazing. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **51**, 664–670.

Carmichael, W.W. (1992). Cyanobacteria secondary metabolites—the cyanotoxins. *J. Appl. Bact.*, **72**, 445–459.

Carpenter, S.R., Kitchell, J.F., and Hodgson, J.R. (1985). Cascading trophic interactions and lake productivity. *BioScience*, **35**, 634–639.

Carpenter, S.R., Lanthrop, R.C., and Munoz del Rio, A. (1993). Comparison of dynamic models for edible phytoplankton. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **50**, 1757–1767.

Casper, P., Maberly, S.C., Hall, G.H., and Finlay, B.J. (2000). Fluxes of methane and carbon dioxide from a small productive lake to the atmosphere. *Biogeochemistry*, **49**, 1–19.

Cattaneo, A. (1983). Grazing on epiphytes. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **28**, 124–132.

Chapin, S.F., Zavaleta, E.S., Eviner, V.T., Naylor, R.L., Vitousek, P.M., Reynolds, H.L., Hopper, D.U., Lavorel, S., Sala, O.E., Hobbie, S.E., Mack, M.C., and Díaz, S. (2000). Consequences of changing biodiversity. *Nature*, **405**, 234–242.

Chesson, J. (1978). Measuring preference in selective predation. *Ecology*, **9**, 923–947.

Chow-Fraser, P., and Sprules, W.G. (1992). Type-3 functional response in limnetic suspension-feeders, as demonstrated by in situ grazing rates. *Hydrobiologia*, **232**, 175–191.

Clements, F.E. (1936). Structure and nature of the climax. *J. Ecol.*, **24**, 252–284.

Cole, J.J., Carpenter, S.R., Kitchell, J.F., and Pace, M.L. (2002). Pathways of organic carbon utilization in small lakes: Results from whole lake ^{13}C addition and coupled model. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **47**, 1664–1675.

Coleman, J.R., and Coleman, B. (1981). Inorganic carbon accumulation and photosynthesis in a blue-green alga as a function of external pH. *Plant Physiol.*, **67**, 917–921.

Connell, J.H. (1980). Diversity and coevolution of competitors, or the ghost of competition past. *Oikos*, **35**, 131–138.

Cowan, C.A., and Peckarsky, B.L. (1994). Diel feeding and positioning periodicity of a grazing mayfly in a trout stream and fishless stream. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **51**, 450–459.

Cowgill, U.M., and Milazzo, D.P. (1990). The sensitivity of two cladocerans to water-quality variables: salinity and hardness. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **120**, 185–196.

Crawford, D.W. (1992). Metabolic cost of motility in planktonic protists: Theoretical considerations on size scaling and swimming speed. *Microb. Ecol.*, **24**, 1–10.

Cronberg, G. (1982). Changes in the phytoplankton of Lake Trummen induced by restoration. *Hydrobiologia*, **86**, 185–193.

Cross, W.F., Johnson, B.R., Wallace, J.B., and Rosemond, A.D. (2005). Contrasting response of stream detritivores to long-term nutrient enrichment. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **50**, 1730–1739.

Crowl, T.A., and Covich, A.P. (1990). Predator-induced life history shifts in a freshwater snail. *Science*, **247**, 949–951.

Cushing, D.H. (1975). *Marine ecology and fisheries*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Darwin, C.R. (1859). *On the origin of species by means of natural selection, or the preservation of favoured races in the struggle for life*. John Murray, London.

Dawidowicz, P., and Loose, C.J. (1992). Metabolic costs during predator-induced diel vertical migration of *Daphnia*. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **37**, 1589–1595.

Dawidowicz, P., Pijanowska, J., and Ciechomski, K. (1990). Vertical migration of *Chaoborus* larvae is induced by the presence of fish. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **35**, 1631–1637.

De Bruin, A., Ibelings, B.W., Rijkeboer, M., Brehm, M., and Van Donk, E. (2004). Genetic variation in *Asterionella formosa* (Bacillariophyceae): Is it linked to frequent epidemics of host-specific parasitic fungi? *J. Phycol.*, **40**, 823–830.

De Meester, L., and Dumont, H.J. (1988). The genetics of phototaxis in *Daphnia magna*: Existence of three phenotypes for vertical migration among parthenogenetic females. *Hydrobiologia*, **162**, 47–55.

De Meester, L., Weider, L.J., and Tollrian, R. (1995). Alternative antipredator defences and genetic polymorpism in a pelagic predator-prey system. *Nature*, **378**, 483–485.

De Meester, L., Gomez, A., Okamura, B., and Schwenk, K. (2002). The Monopolization Hypothesis and the dispersal-gene flow paradox in aquatic organisms. *Acta Oecol.*, **23**, 121–135.

De Roos, A.M., Persson, L., and McCauley, E. (2003). The influence of size-dependent life-history traits on the structure and dynamics of populations and communities. *Ecol. Lett.*, **6**, 473–487.

Decaestecker, E., Vergote, A., Ebert, D., and De Meester, L. (2003). Evidence for strong clone-parasite species interactions in the *Daphnia* microparasite system. *Evolution*, **57**, 784–792.

Decaestecker, E., Declerck, S., De Meeester, L., and Ebert, D. (2005). Ecological implications of parasites in natural *Daphnia* populations. *Oecologia*, **144**, 382–390.

Deines, P., and Grey, J. (2006). Site-specific methane production and subsequent midge mediation within Esthwaite Water, UK. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **167**, 317–334.

Dejours, P. (1975). *Principles of comparative respiratory physiology*. North Holland, Amsterdam.

DeMott, W.R. (1986). The role of taste in food selection by freshwater zooplankton. *Oecologia*, **69**, 334–340.

DeMott, W.R. (1988). Discrimination between algae and artificial particles by freshwater and marine copepodes. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **33**, 397–408.

DeMott, W.R. (1989). The role of competition in zooplankton succession. In U Sommer, ed. *Plankton ecology. Succession in plankton communities.*, pp. 195–252. Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg.

DeMott, W.R., and Moxter, F. (1991). Foraging on cyanobacteria by copepods: responses to chemical defenses and resource abundance. *Ecology*, **72**, 1820–1834.

DeMott, W.R., and Tessier, A.J. (2002). Stoichiometric constraints vs. algal defenses: Testing mechanisms of zooplankton food limitation. *Ecology*, **83**, 3426–3433.

DeWitt, T.J., Sih, A., and Wilson, D.S. (1998). Costs and limits of phenotypic plasticity. *Trends Ecol. Evolut.*, **13**, 77–81.

Dini, M.L., and Carpenter, S.R. (1988). Variability in *Daphnia* behavior following fish community manipulations. *J. Plankton Res.*, **10**, 621–635.

Doak, D.F., Bigger, D., Harding, E.K., Marvier, M.A., O'Malley, R.E., and Thomson, D. (1998). The statistical inevitability of stability-diversity relationships in community ecology. *Am. Nat.*, **151**, 264–276.

Dodds, W.K. (1991). Community interactions between the filamentous alga *Cladophora glomerata* (L) Kuetzing, its epiphytes, and epiphyte grazers. *Oecologia*, **85**, 572–580.

Dodds, W.K. (2006). Eutrophication and trophic state in rivers and streams. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **51**, 671–680.

Dodson, S.I. (1974a). Zooplankton competition and predation: an experimental test of the size-efficiency hypothesis. *Ecology*, **55**, 605–613.

Dodson, S.I. (1974b). Adaptive change in plankton morphology in response to size-selective predation: A new hypothesis of cyclomorphosis. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **19**, 721–729.

Douglas, M., and Lake, P.S. (1994). Species richness of stream stones: an investigation generating the species-area relationship. *Oikos*, **69**, 387–396.

Downing, A.J., and Leibold, M.A. (2002). Ecosystem consequences of species richness and composition in pond food webs. *Nature*, **416**, 837–841.

Downing, J.A., and Rigler, F.H. (ed.) (1984). *A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary production in fresh waters.* Blackwell, Oxford.

Drenner, R.W., De Noyelles, F., Jr., and Kettle, D. (1982). Selective impact of filter-feeding gizzard shad on zooplankton community structure. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **27**, 965–968.

Droop, M.R. (1983). 25 years of algal growth kinetics. *Bot. Mar.*, **26**, 99–112.

Dudgeon, D. (1989). Phoretic Diptera (Nematocera) on *Zygonyx iris* (Odonata: Anisoptera) from a Hong Kong river: incidence, composition and attachment sites. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **115**, 433–439.

Durham, K.A., Porta, D., McKay, R.M.L., and Bullerjahn, G.S. (2003). Expression of the iron-responsive *irp A* gene from the cyanobacterium *Synechococcus* sp. strain PCC 7942. *Arch. Microbiol.*, **179**, 131–134.

Ebert, D. (1994). Virulence and local adaptation of a horizontally transmitted parasite. *Science*, **265**, 1084–1086.

Ebert, D. (2005). *Ecology, epidemiology, and evolution of parasitism in Daphnia [Internet]*. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), National Center for

Biotechnology Information. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov./entrez/query.fcgi?db=Books,

Edmondson, W.T. (1968). A graphical method for evaluating the use of the egg ratio for measuring birth and death rates. *Oecologia*, **1**, 1–37.

Edmondson, W.T., and Winberg, G.G. (ed.) (1971). *A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary production in fresh waters*. Blackwell, Oxford.

Edmondson, W.T. (1991). *The uses of ecology. Lake Washington and beyond*. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Edmondson, W.T. (1993). Experiments and quasi-experiments in limnology. *Bull. Mar. Science*, **53**, 65–83.

Einsle, U. (1988). The long-term dynamics of crustacean communities in Lake Constance (Obersee, 1962–1986). *Schweiz. Z. Hydrol.*, **50**, 136–165.

Elser, J.J., and Urabe, J. (1999). The stoichiometry of consumer-driven nutrient recycling: Theory, observations and consequences. *Ecology*, **80**, 735–751.

Elser, J.J., Goff, N.C., MacKay, N.A., Amand, A.L.S., Elser, M.M., and Carpenter, S.R. (1987). Species-specific algal responses to zooplankton: experimental and field observations in three nutrient limited lakes. *J. Plankton Res.*, **9**, 699–718.

Elser, J.J., Elser, M.M., McKay, R.M.L., and Carpenter, S.R. (1988). Zooplankton-mediated transitions between N and P limited algal growth. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **33**, 1–14.

Elser, J.J., Achyara, K., Kyle, M., Cotner, J., Makino, W., Markov, T., Watts, T., Hobbie, S., Fagan, W., Schade, J., Hood, J., and Sterner, R.W. (2003). Growth rate-stoichiometry couplings in diverse biota. *Ecol. Lett.*, **6**, 936–943.

Elster, H-J (1974). History of limnology. *Mitt. Int. Verein. Limnol.*, **20**, 7–30.

Eriksson, M.O.G., Henrikson, L., Nilsson, B., I. , Nyman, G., Oscarson, H.G., Stenson, A.E., and Larsson, K. (1980). Predator-prey relations important for the biotic changes in acidified lakes. *Ambio*, **9**, 248–249.

Evans, C.D., Cullen, J.M., Alewell, C., Kopácek, J., Marchetto, A., Moldan, F., Prechtel, A., Rogora, M., Vesely, J., and Wright, R. (2001). Recovery from acidification in European surface waters. *Hydrol. Earth. Syst. Sci.*, **5**, 283–297.

Fee, E.J. (1976). The vertical and seasonal distribution of chlorophyll in lakes of the Experimental Lakes Area, northwestern Ontario: Implications for primary production estimates. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **21**, 767–783.

Feminella, J.W., Power, M.E., and Resh, V.H. (1989). Periphyton responses to invertebrate grazing and riparian canopy in three northern California coastal streams. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **22**, 445–457.

Fenchel, T. (1987). *Ecology—Potentials and limitations*. Ecology Institute, Oldendorf/Luhe.

Ferrier, R.C., Jenkins, A., Wright, R.F., Schöpp, W., and Barth, H. (2001). Assessment of recovery of European surface waters from acidification 1970–2000: An introduction to the Special Issue. *Hydrol. Earth. Syst. Sci.*, **5**, 274–282.

Feuchtmayr, H. (2004). Mesozooplankton impacts on lower trophic levels from freshwater, marine and brackish systems in spring—a comparative study. Ph.D. Thesis, C. A. University, Kiel

Figuerola, J., and Green, A.J. (2002). Dispersal of aquatic organisms by waterbirds: a review of past research and priorities for future studies. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **47**, 483–494.

Findenegg, I. (1943). Untersuchungen über die ökologie und die Produktionsverhältnisse des Planktons im Kärntner Seengebiet. *Int. Rev. ges. Hydrobiol.*, **43**, 368–429.

Fischer, J.M., Nicolai, J.L., Williamson, C.E., Persaud, A., and Lockwood, R.S. (2006). Effects of ultraviolet radiation on diel vertical migration of crustacean zooplankton: an in situ mesocosm experiment. *Hydrobiologia*, **563**, 217–224.

Flecker, A.S. (1992). Fish predation and the evolution of invertebrate drift periodicity: evidence from neotropical streams. *Ecology*, **73**, 438–448.

Flöder, S., and Sommer, U. (1999). Diversity in planktonic communities: An exprimental test of the intermediate disturbance hypothesis. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **44**, 1114–1119.

Folt, C., and Goldman, C.R. (1981). Allelopathy between zooplankton: A mechanism for interference competition. *Science*, **213**, 1133–1135.

Frost, B.W. (1988). Variability and possible adaptive significance of diel vertical migration in *Calanus pacificus*, a planktonic marine copepod. *Bull. Mar. Science*, **43**, 675–694.

Frost, P.C., and Tuchman, N.C. (2005). Nutrient release rates and ratios by two stream detritivores fed leaf litter grown under elevated atmospheric CO_2. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **163**, 463–477.

Fry, B. (2006). *Stable isotope ecology*. Springer, New York.

Fuhrman, J.A., and Azam, F. (1982). Thymidine incorporation as a measure of heterotrophic bacterioplankton production in marine surface waters: evaluation and field results. *Mar. Biol.*, **66**, 109–120.

Gabriel, W., Taylor, B.E., and Kirsch-Prokosch, S. (1987). Cladoceran birth and death rates estimates: experimental comparisons of egg-ratio methods. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **18**, 361–372.

Gaedeke, A., and Sommer, U. (1986). The influence of the frequency of periodic disturbances on the maintenance of phytoplankton diversity. *Oecologia*, **71**, 25–28.

Gaedke, U. (1992). The size distribution of plankton biomass in a large lake and its seasonal variability. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **1992**, 1202–1220.

Gaedke, U., and Schweizer, A. (1993). The first decade of oligotrophication in Lake Constance. I. The response of phytoplankton biomass and cell size. *Oecologia*, **93**, 268–703.

Galbraith, M.G., Jr. (1967). Size-selective predation on *Daphnia* by rainbow trout and yellow perch. *Trans. Amer. Fish. Soc.*, **96**, 1–10.

Gamfeldt, L., Hillebrand, H., and Jonsson, P.R. (2005). Species richness changes across trophic levels simultaneously affect prey and consumer biomass. *Ecol. Lett.*, **8**, 696–703.

Gause, G.J. (1934). *The struggle for existence*. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, MD.

Geider, R.J., and McIntyre, H.L. (2002). Physiology and biochemistry of photosynthesis and algal carbon acquisition. In Williams, P.J., Thomas, D.N., and Reynolds, C.S. (ed.) *Phytoplankton productivity: Carbon assimilation in marine and freshwater ecosystems.*, pp. 44–77. Blackwell, Oxford.

Geider, R.J., McIntyre, H.L., and Kana, T.M. (1997). A dynamic model of phytoplankton growth and acclimation: responses of the balanced growth rate and chlorophyll:carbon ratio to light, nutrient-limitation and temperature. *Mar. Ecol. Progr. Ser.*, **148**, 187–200.

Geller, A. (1985). Degradation and formation of refractory DOM by bacteria during simultaneous growth on labile substrates and persistent lake water constituents. *Schweiz. Z. Hydrol.*, **47**, 27–44.

Geller, W. (1975). Die Nahrungsaufnahme von *Daphnia pulex* in Abhängigkeit von der Futterkonzentration, der Temperatur, der Körpergrösse und dem Hungerzustand der Tiere. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Suppl.*, **48**, 47–107.

Geller, W., and Müller, H. (1981). The filtration apparatus of cladocera: Filter mesh sizes and their implications on food selectivity. *Oecologia*, **49**, 316–321.

Gerdeaux, D., and Perga, M-E (2006). Changes in whitefish scales $\delta^{13}C$ during eutrophication and reoligotrophication of subalpine lakes. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **51**, 772–780.

Gerritsen, J., and Strickler, R. (1977). The filtration apparatus of cladocera: Filter mesh sizes and their implications on food selectivity. *J. Fish. Res. Board. Can.*, **34**, 73–82.

Gessner, M. (1999). A perspective on leaf litter breakdown in streams. *Oikos*, **85**, 377–384.

Gilbert, J.J. (1966). Rotifer ecology and embryological induction. *Science*, **151**, 1234–1237.

Gilbert, J.J. (1967). Asplanchna and postero-lateral spine production in *Brachionus calyciflorus*. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **64**, 1–62.

Gilbert, J.J. (1988). Suppression of rotifer populations by *Daphnia*: A review of the evidence, the mechanisms, and the effects on zooplankton community structure. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **33**, 1286–1313.

Giller, P.S. (1984). *Community structure and the niche*. Chapman & Hall, London.

Gleason, H.A. (1926). The individualistic concept of the plant association. *Torrey Bot. Club Bull.*, **53**, 1–10.

Gliwicz, Z.M. (1980). Filtering rates, food size selection, and feeding rates in cladocerans—another aspect of interspecific competition in filter-feeding zooplankton. In Kerfoot, W.C. (ed.) *Evolution and ecology of zooplankton communities.*, pp. 282–291. University Press of New England, Hanover, NH.

Gliwicz, Z.M. (1990a). Food thresholds and body size in cladocerans. *Nature*, **343**, 638–640.

Gliwicz, Z.M. (1990b). Why do cladocerans fail to control algal blooms? *Hydrobiologia*, **200/201**, 83–97.

Gliwicz, Z.M. (2003). *Between hazards of starvation and risk of predation: The ecology of offshore animals*. Inter Research, Oldendorf/Luhe.

Gliwicz, Z.M., and Pijanowska, J. (1988). Effect of predation and resource depth distribution on vertical migration of zooplankton. *Bull. Mar. Sci.*, **43**, 695–709.

Gliwicz, Z.M., and Siedlar, E. (1980). Food size limitation and algae interfering with the food collection in *Daphnia*. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **88**, 155–177.

Goldman, J.C., Mc Carthy, J.J., and Peavey, D.G. (1979). Growth rate influence on the chemical composition of phytoplankton in oceanic waters. *Nature*, **279**, 210–215.

Goldschmidt, T. (1996). *Darwin's dreampond*. MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.

Goodman, D. (1976). The theory of diversity-stability relationships in ecology. *Quart. Rev. Biol.*, **50**, 237–266.

Goser, B., and Ratte, H.T. (1994). Experimental evidence of negative interference in *Daphnia magna*. *Oecologia*, **98**, 354–361.

Grant, J.W.G., and Bayly, I.A.E. (1981). Predator induction of crests in morphs of the *Daphnia carinata* King complex. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **26**, 201–218.

Grey, J., Jones, R.I., and Sleep, D. (2001). Seasonal changes in the importance of the source of organic matter to the diet of zooplankton in Loch Ness, as indicated by stable isotope analysis. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **46**, 505–513.

Grey, J., Kelly, A., Ward, S., Sommerwerk, N., and Jones, R.I. (2004). Seasonal changes in the stable isotope values of lake-dwelling chironomid larvae in relation to feeding and life cycle variability. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **49**, 681–689.

Grinnell, J. (1917). The niche-relationships of the California trasher. *Auk*, **34**, 427–433.

Grodzinski, W., Klekowski, R.Z., and Duncan, A. (ed.) (1975). *Methods for ecological bioenergetics*. Blackwell, Oxford.

Gross, E.M. (1999). Allelopathy in benthic and littoral areas: Case studies on allelochemicals from benthic cyanobacteria and submerged macrophytes. In Dakshini, K. M. M. and Foy, C.L. (ed.) *Principles and practices in plant ecology: Allelochemical interactions*, 179–199. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Gross, E.M. (2003). Allelopathy of aquatic autotrophs. *Crit. Rev. Plant Sci.*, **22**, 313–339.

Gross, E.M., Wolk, C.P., and Jüttner, F. (1991). Fischerellin, a new allelochemical from the freshwater cyanobacterium *Fischerella muscicola*. *J. Phycol.*, **27**, 868–892.

Grossman, G.D., Rincon, P.A., Farr, M.D., and Ratajczak Jr., R.E. (2002). A new optimal foraging model predicts habitat use by drift-feeding stream minnows. *Ecol. Freshwat. Fish*, **11**, 2–10.

Guasch, H., and Sabater, S. (1998). Light history influences the sensitivity to atrazine in periphytic algae. *J. Phycol.*, **34**, 233–241.

Güde, H. (1986). Loss processes influencing growth of bacterial populations in Lake Constance. *J. Plankton Res.*, **8**, 795–810.

Gyllström, M., and Hansson, L.A. (2004). Dormancy in freshwater zooplankton: Induction, termination and the importance of benthic-pelagic coupling. *Aquat. Sci.*, **66**, 274–295.

Haag, W.R., Berg, D.J., Carton, D.W., and Farris, J.L. (1993). Reduced survival and fitness in native bivalves in response to fouling by the introduced zebra mussel (*Dreissena polymorpha*) in western Lake Erie. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **50**, 13–19.

Häder, D-P, and Sinha, R.P. (2005). Solar ultraviolet radiation-induced DNA damage in aquatic organisms: potential environmental impact. *Mut. Res.*, **571**, 221–233.

Hairston, N.G., Jr. (1981). The interaction of salinity, predators, light and copepod color. *Hydrobiologia*, **81**, 151–158.

Hairston, N.G., Jr., and DeStasio, B.T., Jr. (1988). Rate of evolution slowed by a dormant propagule pool. *Nature*, **336**, 239–242.

Hairston, N.G., Jr., and Olds, E.J. (1987). Population differences in the timing of diapause: a test of hypotheses. *Oecologia*, **1987**, 339–344.

Hairston, N.G., Jr., Van Brunt, R.A., Kearns, C.M., and Engstrom, D.R. (1995). Age and survivorship of diapausing eggs in a sediment egg bank. *Ecology*, **76**, 1706–1711.

Hairston, N.G., Jr., Lampert, W., Caceres, C.E., Weider, L.J., Gaedke, U., Fischer, J.M., A., F.J., and Post, D.M. (1999). Rapid evolution revealed by dormant eggs. *Nature*, **401**, 446.

Hairston, N.G., Jr., Holtmeier, C.L., Lampert, W., Weider, L.J., Post, D.M., Fischer, J.M., Caceres, C.E., Fox, J.A., and Gaedke, U. (2001). Natural selection for grazer resistance to toxic cyanobacteria: evolution of phenotypic plasticity? *Evolution*, **55**, 2203–2214.

Hairston, N.G., Jr., Kearns, C.M., Demma, L.P., and Effler, S.W. (2005). Species-specific *Daphnia* phenotypes: A history of industrial pollution and pelagic ecosystem response. *Ecology*, **86**, 1669–1678.

Halbach, U. (1969). Das Zusammenwirken von Konkurrenz und Räuber-Beute-Beziehungen bei Rädertieren. *Zool. Anz. Suppl.*, **33**, 72–79.

Hall, D., Threlkeld, S.T., Burns, C.W., and Crowley, P.H. (1976). The size-efficiency hypothesis and the size structure of zooplankton communities. *Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst.*, **7**, 177–208.

Hamilton, D.J., Ankney, C.D., and Bailey, R.C. (1994). Predation of zebra mussels by diving ducks: an exclosure study. *Ecology*, **75**, 521–531.

Hampton, S.E., Romare, P., and Seiler, D.E. (2006). Environmentally controlled *Daphnia* spring increase with implications for sockeye salmon fry in Lake Washington, USA. *J. Plankton Res.*, **28**, 399–406.

Hamrin, S.F., and Persson, L. (1986). Asymmetrical competition between age classes as a factor causing population oscillations in an obligate planktivorous fish species. *Oikos*, **47**, 223–232.

Haney, J.F. (1973). An in situ examination of the grazing activities of natural zooplankton communities. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **72**, 87–132.

Haney, J.F. (1993). Environmental control of diel vertical migration behaviour. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih.*, **39**, 1–17.

Haney, J.F., Beaulieu, T.R., Berry, R.P., Mason, D.P., Miner, C.R., McLean, E.S., Price, K.L., Trout, M.A., Vinton, R.A., and Weiss, S.J. (1983). Light intensity and relative light change as factors regulating stream drift. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **97**, 73–88.

Haney, J.F., Sasner, J.J., and Ikawa, M. (1995). Effects of products released by *Aphanizomenon flos-aquae* and purified saxitoxin on the movements of *Daphnia carinata* feeding appendages. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **40**, 263–272.

Hanson, P.C., Pollard, A.I., Bade, D.L., Predick, K., Carpenter, S.R., and Foley, J.A. (2004). A model of carbon evasion and sedimentation in temperate lakes. *Global Change Biol.*, **10**, 1285–1298.

Hansson, L.-A. (2004). Plasticity in pigmentation induced by conflicting threats from predation and UV radiation. *Ecology*, **85**, 1005–1016.

Hargrave, B.T. (1971). An energy budget for a deposit-feeding amphipod. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **16**, 99–103.

Harper, J.L. (1967). A Darwinian approach to plant ecology. *J. Ecol.*, **55**, 247–270.

Harris, G.P. (1978). Photosynthesis, productivity and growth: the physiological ecology of phytoplankton. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol*, **10**, 1–177.

Harris, G.P. (1986). *Phytoplankton ecology*. Chapman & Hall, London.

Harrison, S., and Taylor, A.D. (1997). Empirical evidence for metapopulation dynamics. In Hanski, I. and Simberloff, D. (ed.) *Metapopulation biology*, pp. 27–42. Academic Press, London.

Hart, D.D. (1983). The importance of competitive interactions within stream populations and communities. In Barnes, J.R. and Minshall, G.W. ed. *Stream ecology*, pp. 99–136. Plenum Press, New York.

Hart, D.D. (1985a). Causes and consequences of territoriality in a grazing stream insect. *Ecology*, **66**, 404–414.

Hart, D.D. (1985b). Grazing insects mediate algal interactions in a stream benthic community. *Oikos*, **44**, 40–46.

Hart, D.D. (1986). The adaptive significance of territoriality in filter-feeding larval blackflies (Diptera: Simuliidae). *Oikos*, **46**, 88–92.

Hartmann, O. (1920). Studien über den Polymorphismus der Rotatorien mit besonderer Berücksichtigung von *Anuraea aculeata*. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **12**, 209–310.

Havel, J.E., and Dodson, S.I. (1984). *Chaoborus* predation on typical and spined morphs of *Daphnia pulex*: Behavioral observations. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **29**, 487–494.

Healey, F.P. (1973). Characteristics of phosphorus deficiency in *Anabaena*. *J. Phycol.*, **9**, 383–394.

Hebert, P.D.N., and Beaton, M.J. (1989). *Methodologies for allozyme analysis using cellulose acetate electrophoresis*. Helena Laboratories, Beaumont, TX.

Hebert, P.D.N., Muncaster, B.W., and Mackie, G.L. (1989). Ecological and genetic studies on *Dreissena polymorpha* (Pallas): a new mollusk in the Great Lakes. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **46**, 1587–1591.

Hebert, P.D.N., Cywinska, A., Ball, S.L., and de Waard, J.R. (2003). Biological identifications through DNA barcodes. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London Series B*, **270**, 313–321.

Hector, A., Bazeley-White, E., Loreau, M., Otway, S., and Schmid, B. (2002). Overyielding in grassland communities: testing the sampling effect with replicated biodiversity experiments. *Ecol. Lett.*, **5**, 502–511.

Henriksen, A., Lein, L., Rosseland, B.O., Traaen, T.S., and Sevaldrup, I.S. (1989). Lake acidification in Norway: present and predicted fish status. *Ambio*, **18**, 314–321.

Hessen, D.O., and Lyche, A. (1991). Interspecific variations in zooplankton element composition. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **121**, 343–353.

Hessen, D.O., and van Donk, E. (1993). Morphological changes in *Scenedesmus* induced by substances released from *Daphnia*. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **127**, 129–140.

Hieber, M., and Gessner, M. (2002). Contribution of stream detritivores, fungi, and bacteria to leaf breakdown based on biomass estimates. *Ecology*, **83**, 1026–1038.

Hildrew, A.G., and Townsend, C.R. (1982). Predators and prey in a patchy environment. A freshwater study. *J. Anim. Ecol.*, **51**, 797–815.

Hillebrand, H. (2002). Top-down versus bottom-up control of autotrophic biomass—a meta-analysis on experiments with periphyton. *J. North Am. Benthol. Soc.*, **21**, 349–369.

Hillebrand, H., and Cardinale, B. (2004). Consumer effects decline with prey diversity. *Ecol. Lett.*, **7**, 192–201.

Hillebrand, H., Kahlert, M., Haglund, A-L, Berninger, U.G., Nagel, S., and Wickham, S. (2002). Control of microbenthic communities by grazing and nutrient supply. *Ecology*, **83**,

Hilsenhoff, W.L. (1977). Use of arthropods to evaluate water quality of streams. *Tech. Bull. Wisconsin. Dept. Nat. Resour.*, **100**, 15 pp.

Hilsenhoff, W.L. (1987). An improved biotic index of organic stream pollution. *The Great Lakes Entomologist*, **20**, 31–39.

Hilsenhoff, W.L. (1988). Rapid field assessment of organic pollution with a family-level biotic index. *J. N. Am. Benthol. Soc*, **7**, 65–68.

Hiriart-Baer, V.P., and Smith, REH (2005). The effect of ultraviolet radiation on freshwater planktonic primary production: The role of recovery and mixing processes. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **50**, 1352–1361.

Hochachka, P.W., and Somero, G.N. (1984). *Biochemical adaptation*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

Holeck, K.T., Mills, E.L., MacIsaac, H.J., Dochoda, M.R., Colauti, R.I., and Ricciardi, A. (2004). Bridging troubled waters: Biological invasions, transoceanic shipping, and the Laurentian Great Lakes. *BioScience*, **54**, 919–929.

Holfeld, H. (1998). Fungal infections of the phytoplankton: Seasonality, minimal host density, and specifity in a mesotrophic lake. *New Phytol.*, **138**, 507–517.

Holling, C.S. (1959). The components of predation as revealed by a study of small-mammal predation of the European pine sawfly. *Can. Entomol.*, **91**, 293–320.

Holzinger, A., and Lütz, C. (2006). Algae and UV irradiation: Effects on ultrastructure and related metabolic functions. *Micron*, **37**, 190–207.

Hooper, D.U., Chapin, F.S.I., Ewel, J.J., Hector, A., Inchausti, P., Lavorel, S., Lawton, J.H., Lodge, D.M., Loreau, M., Naeem, S., Schmid, B., Setälä, H., Symstad, A.J., Vandermeer, J., and Wardle, D.A. (2005). Effects of biodiversity on ecosystem functioning: a consensus of current knowledge. *Ecol. Monogr.*, **75**, 3–35.

Hrbáček, J. (1962). Species composition and the amount of zooplankton in relation to the fish stock. *Rozpr. Cesk. Akad. Ved. Rada. Mat. Prir.*, **72**, 1–116.

Hubbell, S.P. (2006). Neutral theory and the evolution of ecological equivalence. *Ecology*, **87**, 1387–1398.

Huey, R.B., and Kingsolver, J.G. (1989). Evolution of thermal sensitivity of ectoterm performance. *Trends Ecol. Evol.*, **4**, 131–135.

Huisman, J., and Weissing, F.J. (1994). Light-limited growth and competition for light in well-mixed aquatic environments: an elementary model. *Ecology*, **75**, 507–520.

Hurlbert, S.H., Mulla, M.S., and Willson, H.R. (1972). Effects of an organophosphorus insecticide on the phytoplankton, zooplankton, and insect populations of freshwater ponds. *Ecol. Monogr.*, **42**, 269–299.

Huston, M.A. (1997). Hidden treatments in ecological experiments: re-evaluating the ecosystem function of biodiversity. *Oecologia*, **110**, 449–460.

Hutchinson, G.E. (1957). *A treatise on limnology. Vol. 1. Geography, physics and chemistry*. Wiley, New York.

Hutchinson, G.E. (1958). Homage to Santa Rosalia, or why are there so many kinds of animals. *Amer. Nat.*, **93**, 145–159.

Hutchinson, G.E. (1961). The paradox of the plankton. *Am. Nat.*, **95**, 137–145.

Hutchinson, G.E. (1965). *The ecological theater and the evolutionary play*. Yale University Press, New Haven, CT.

Hutchinson, G.E. (1967). *A treatise on limnology. Vol. 2. Introduction to lake biology and the limnoplankton*. Wiley, New York.

Hutchinson, G.E. (1978). *An introduction to population ecology*. Yale University Press, New Haven, CT.

Hyenstrand, P., Rydin, E., and Gunnerhed, M. (1999). Response of pelagic cyanobacteria to iron additions—enclosure experiments from Lake Erken. *J. Plankton Res.*, **22**, 1113–1126.

Hynes, H.B.N. (1970). *The ecology of running waters*. University of Toronto Press, Toronto.

Hynes, H.B.N. (1975). The stream and its valley. *Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol.*, **19**, 1–15.

Ibelings, B.W., De Bruin, A., Kagami, M., Rijkeboer, M., Brehm, M., and Van Donk, E. (2004). Host parasite interactions between freshwater phytoplankton and chytrid fungi (Chytridiomycota). *J. Phycol.*, **40**, 437–453.

Illies, J. (1961). Versuch einer allgemeinen biozönotischen Gliederung der Fließgewässer. *Int. Rev. ges. Hydrobiol.*, **46**, 205–213.

Ivanov, V.K. (2004). Specific features of the functional response of a sluggish predator to mobile prey in an aquatic environment. *Russ. J. Ecol.*, **35**(5), 354–356.

Ivlev, V.S. (1961). *Experimental ecology of the feeding of fishes* (English translation). Yale University Press, New Haven, CT.

Jacobs, J. (1961). Cyclomorphosis in *Daphnia galeata mendotae*, a case of environmentally controlled allometry. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **58**, 7–71.

Jacobs, J. (1967). Untersuchungen zur Funktion und Evolution der Zyklomorphose bei *Daphnia*, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Selektion durch Fische. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **62**, 467–541.

Jacobs, J. (1974). Quantitative measurement of food selection. *Oecologia (Berlin)*, **14**, 413–417.

Jacobs, J. (1987). Cyclomorphosis in *Daphnia*. In Peters, R.H. and DeBernardi, R. (ed.) *Daphnia: Mem. Ist. Ital. Idrobiol.*, **45**, pp. 325–352. Istituto Italiano di Idrobiologia, Pallanza.

Jacobsen, D., and Johnsen, G.H. (1987). The influence of predation on horizontal distribution of zooplankton species. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **17**, 501–507.

Jacobsen, D., and Sand-Jensen, K. (1992). Herbivory of invertebrates on submerged macrophytes from Danish freshwaters. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **28**, 301–308.

Janssen, J. (1980). Alewives (*Alosa pseudoharengus*) and ciscoes (*Coregonus artedii*) as selective and non-selective planktivores. In Kerfoot, W.C. (ed.) *Evolution and ecology of zooplankton communities.*, pp. 580–586. University Press of New England, Hanover, NH.

Jassby, A.D., and Platt, T. (1976). Mathematical formulation of the relationship between photosynthesis and light for phytoplankton. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **21**, 540–547.

Jeschke, J.M., Kopp, M., and Tollrian, R. (2004). Consumer-food systems: why type I functional responses are exclusive to filter feeders. *Biol. Rev.*, **79**, 337–349.

Jeziorski, A., and Yan, N.D. (2006). Species identity and aqueous calcium concentrations as determinants of calcium concentrations of freshwater crustacean zooplankton. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **63**, 1007–1013.

Jones, C.G., Lawton, J.H., and Shachak, M. (1994). Organisms as ecosystem engineers. *Oikos*, **69**, 373–386.

Jørgensen, E.G. (1969). The adaptation of plankton algae. IV. Light adaptation in different algal species. *Physiol. Plant.*, **22**, 1307–1315.

Jürgens, K. (1994). Impact of *Daphnia* on planktonic microbial food webs-A review. *Mar. Microb. Food Webs*, **8**, 295–324.

Jürgens, K., and Matz, C. (2002). Predation as a shaping force for the phenotypic and genotypic composition of planktonic bacteria. *Antonie van Leeuwenhoek*, **81**, 413–434.

Jüttner, F. (1999). Allelochemical control of natural phytoautotrophic biofilms. In Keevil, C.W., Godfree, C.W., Holt, D. and Dow, C. (ed.) *Biofilms in the aquatic environment*, pp. 43–50. Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge.

Kagami, M., Van Donk, E., De Bruin, A., and Rijkeboer, M. (2004). *Daphnia* can protect diatoms from fungal parasitism. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **49**, 680–685.

Kahara, S.N., and Vermaat, J.E. (2004). The effect of alkalinity on photosynthesis-light curves and inorganic carbon extraction capacity of freshwater macrophytes. *Aquat. Bot.*, **75**, 217–227.

Kasprzak, P., Benndorf, J., Mehner, T., and Koschel, R. (2002). Biomanipulation of lake ecosystems: an introduction. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **47**, 2277–2281.

Kerfoot, W.C. (1978). Combat between predatory copepods and their prey: *Cyclops*, *Epischura*, and *Bosmina*. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **23**, 1089–1102.

Kerfoot, W.C. (1982). A question of taste: Crypsis and warning coloration in freshwater zooplankton communities. *Ecology*, **63**, 538–554.

Kerfoot, W.C. (1985). Adaptive value of vertical migration: comments on the predation hypothesis and some alternatives. In MA Rankin, ed. *Migration: Mechanisms and adaptive significance*., pp. 91–113.

Kerfoot, W.C., and Weider, L.J. (2004). Experimental paleoecology (resurrection ecology): Chasing Van Alen's Red Queen hypothesis. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **49**, 1300–1316.

Kerfoot, W.C., DeMott, W.R., and DeAngelis, D.L. (1985). Interactions among cladocerans: food limitation and exploitative competition. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol*., **21**, 431–451.

Kishida, O., and Nishimura, K. (2006). Flexible architecture of inducible morphological plasticity. *J. Anim. Ecol*., **75**, 705–712.

Kishida, O., Mizuta, Y., and Nishimura, K. (2006). Reciprocal phenotypic plasticity in a predator-prey interaction between larval amphibians. *Ecology*, **87**, 1599–1604.

Klausmeier, C.A., and Litchman, E. (2001). Algal games: The vertical distribution of phytoplankton in poorly mixed water columns. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **46**, 1998–2007.

Klekowski, R.Z. (1973). Neue Ergebnisse auf dem Gebiet der Bioenergetik und der physiologischen ökologie der Tiere. *Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol*., **18**, 1594–1609.

Klekowski, R.Z., and Duncan, A. (1975). Physiological approach to ecological energetics. In Grodzinski, W. Klekowski, R.Z. and Duncan, A. (ed.) *Methods for ecological bioenergetics*, pp. 15–64. Blackwell, Oxford.

Klerks, P.L., and Weis, J.S. (1987). Genetic adaptation to heavy metals in aquatic organisms: a review. *Environ. Poll*., **45**, 173–205.

Kling, G.W., Clark, M.A., Compton, H.R., Devine, J.D., Evans, W.C., Humphrey, A.M., Koenigsberg, E.J., Lockwood, J.P., Tuttle, M.L., and Wagner, G.N. (1987). The 1986 Lake Nyos gas disaster in Cameroon, West Africa. *Science*, **236**, 169–175.

Koch, F., and Wieser, W. (1983). Partitioning of energy in fish: Can reduction of swimming activity compensate for the cost of production? *J. Exp. Biol*., **107**, 141–146.

Koehl, M.A.R., and Strickler, J.R. (1981). Copepod feeding currents: Food capture at low Reynolds numbers. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **26**, 1062–1073.

Köpke, V., Schultz, H., Hornig, V., and Peng, J. (1988). Analyse des Nahrungskonsums von Barschen (*Perca fluviatilis*) in der Talsperre Bautzen. *Limnologica (Berlin)*, **19**, 37–43.

Kopp, M., and Tollrian, R. (2003). Reciprocal phenotypic plasticity in a predator-prey system: inducible offences against inducible defences? *Ecol. Lett*., **6**, 742–748.

Körner, C. (2003). Ecological impacts of atmosheric CO_2 enrichment on terrestrial ecosystems. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. A*, **361**, 2023–2041.

Kozhov, M. (1963). *Lake Baikal and its life*. Junk, Den Haag.

Krebs, C.J. (1985). *Ecology*. Harper & Row, New York.

Kreutzer, C., and Lampert, W. (1999). Exploitative competition in differently sized *Daphnia* species: A mechanistic explanation. *Ecology*, **80**, 2348–2357.

Kuhlmann, H.W., and Heckmann, K. (1985). Interspecific morphogens regulating predator-prey relationships in protozoa. *Science*, **227**, 1347–1349.

Kümmerlin, R.E. (1998). Taxonomical response of the phytoplankton community of Upper Lake Constance (Bodensee-Obersee) to eutrophication and re-oligotrophication. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Spec. Issues Advanc. Limnol*., **53**, 109–117.

Kusch, J., and Heckmann, K. (1992). Isolation of the Lembadion factor, a morphogenetically active signal, that induces *Euplotes* cells to change from their ovoid form into a larger lateral winged morph. *Develop. Genet*., **13**, 241–246.

Laforsch, C., Beccara, L., and Tollrian, R. (2006). Inducible defences: The relevance of chemical alarm cues in *Daphnia*. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **51**, 1466–1472.

Lampert, W. (1971). Untersuchungen zur Biologie und Populationsdynamik der Coregonen im Schluchsee. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Suppl*., **38**, 257–314.

Lampert, W. (1978a). Climatic conditions and planktonic interactions as factors controlling the regular succession of spring algal bloom and extremely clear water in Lake Constance. *Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol*., **20**, 969–974.

Lampert, W. (1978b). Release of dissolved organic carbon by grazing zooplankton. *Limnology and Oceanography*, **23**, 831–834.

Lampert, W. (1978c). Stabilität, Elastizität und Regeneration aquatischer ökosysteme. *Biologie in unserer Zeit*, **8**, 33–41.

Lampert, W. (1984). The measurement of respiration. In Downing, J.A. and Rigler, F.H. (ed.) *A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary production in fresh water*., pp. 413–468. Blackwell, Oxford.

Lampert, W. (1987a). Laboratory studies on zooplankton cyanobacteria interactions. *N. Z. J. Mar. Freshw. Res*., **21**, 483–490.

Lampert, W. (1987b). Feeding and nutrition in *Daphnia*. *Mem. Ist. Ital. Idrobiol*., **45**, 143–192.

Lampert, W. (1987c). Predictability in lake ecosystems: the role of biotic interactions. In Schulze, E.D. and Zwölfer, H. (ed.) *Potentials and limitations of ecosystem analysis*., pp. 333–346. Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg.

Lampert, W. (1988a). The relationship between zooplankton biomass and grazing: A review. *Limnologica*, **19**, 11–20.

Lampert, W. (1988b). The relative importance of food limitation and predation in the seasonal cycle of two *Daphnia* species. *Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol.*, **23**, 713–718.

Lampert, W. (1992). Zooplankton vertical migrations: Implications for phytoplankton-zooplankton interactions. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol.*, **35**, 69–78.

Lampert, W. (1993). Ultimate causes of diel vertical migration of zooplankton: New evidence for the predator-avoidance hypothesis. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol.*, **39**, 79–88.

Lampert, W. (2005). Vertical distribution of zooplankton: density dependence and evidence for an ideal free distributions with costs. *BMC Biology*, **3**, 10.

Lampert, W., and Loose, C. (1992). Plankton Towers: Bridging the gap between laboratory and field experiments. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **126**, 53–66.

Lampert, W., and Wolf, H.G. (1986). Cyclomorphosis in *Daphnia cucullata*: morphometric and population genetic analyses. *J. Plankton Res.*, **8**, 289–303.

Lampert, W., McCauley, E., and Manly, B. (2003). Trade-offs in the vertical distribution of zooplankton: ideal free distribution with costs? *Proc. R. Soc. London B*, **270**, 765–773.

Lancaster, J. (1990). Predation and drift of lotic macroinvertebrates during colonization. *Oecologia*, **85**, 48–56.

Lancaster, J., and Hildrew, A.G. (1993). Characterizing in-stream flow refugia. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **50**, 1663–1675.

Larsson, P. (1978). The life cycle dynamics and production of zooplankton in Ovre Heimdalsvatn. *Holarctic Ecol.*, **1**, 162–218.

Larsson, P., and Dodson, S.I. (1993). Chemical communication in planktonic animals. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **129**, 129–155.

Leah, R.T., Moss, B., and Forrest, D.E. (1980). The role of predation in causing major changes in the limnology of a hyper-eutrophic lake. *Int. Rev. ges. Hydrobiol.*, **65**, 223–247.

Lean, D.R.S., and Nalewajko, C. (1976). Phosphate exchange and organic phosphorus excretion by algae. *J. Fish. Res. Board. Can.*, **33**, 1312–1323.

Lehman, J.T. (1987). Palearctic predator invades North American Great Lakes. *Oecologia*, **74**, 478–480.

Leu, E., Fæøvig, P.J., and Hessen, D.O. (2006). UV effects on stoichiometry and PUFAs of *Selenastrum capricornutum* and their consequences for the grazer *Daphnia magna*. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **51**, 2296–2308.

Lewis, W.M. (1987). Tropical limnology. *Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst.*, **18**, 159–184.

Li, W.K.W., and Morris, I. (1982). Temperature adaptation in *Phaedactylum tricornutum* Bohlin: photosynthetic rate compensation and capacity. *J. exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.*, **58**, 135–150.

Likens, G.E., Bormann, F.H., Pierce, R.S., Eaton, J.S., and Johnson, N.M. (1977). *Biogeochemistry of a forested ecosystem*. Springer, New York.

Limburg, P., and Weider, L.J. (2001). 'Ancient' DNA in the resting egg bank of a microcrustacean can serve as a palaeolimnological database. *Proc. R. Soc. London B*, **269**, 281–287.

Loose, C.J. (1993). *Daphnia* diel vertical migration behavior: Response to vertebrate predator abundance. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol.*, **39**, 29–36.

Loose, C.J., and Dawidowicz, P. (1994). Trade-offs in diel vertical migration by zooplankton: the costs of predator avoidance. *Ecology*, **75**, 2255–2263.

Loose, C.J., Von Elert, E., and Dawidowicz, P. (1993). Chemically-induced diel vertical migration in *Daphnia*: a new bioassay for kairomones exuded by fish. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **126**, 329–337.

Lord, H., Lagergren, R., Svensson, J-E, and Lundqvist, N. (2006). Sexual dimorphism in *Bosmina*: the role of morphology, drag, and swimming. *Ecology*, **87**, 788–795.

Louette, G., and De Meester, L. (2005). High dispersal capacity of cladoceran zooplankton in newly founded communities. *Ecology*, **86**, 353–359.

Louette, G., Van der Elst, M., and De Meester, L. (2006). Establishment success in young cladoceran communities: An experimental test. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **51**, 1021–1030.

MacArthur, R.H., and Wilson, E.O. (1967). *The theory of island biogeography*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

MacIsaac, H.J., and Gilbert, J.J. (1991). Discrimination between exploitative and interference competition between Cladocera and *Keratella cochlearis*. *Ecology*, **72**, 924–937.

MacNeale, K.H., Peckarsky, B.L., and Likens, G.E. (2005). Stable isotopes identify dispersal patterns of stonefly populations living along stream corridors. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **50**, 117–1130.

Maltby, L. (1991). Pollution as a probe of life-history adaptation in *Asellus aquaticus* (Isopoda). *Oikos*, **61**, 11–18.

Margalef, R. (1968). *Perspectives in ecological theory*. University of Chicago Press, Chicago.

Martens, K., Goodeeris, B., and Coulter, G. (1994). Speciation in ancient lakes. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol.*, **44**, 75–96.

Matthews, D.A., Effler, S.W., and Matthews, C.M. (2006). Long-term trends in methane flux from the sediments of Onondaga Lake, NY: Sediment diagenesis and impacts on dissolved oxygen resources. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **163**, 435–462.

Matthews, P.G.D., and Seymour, R.S. (2006). Diving insects boost their buoyancy bubbles. *Nature*, **441**, 171.

Matthiessen, B., and Hillebrand, H. (2006). Dispersal frequency affects local biomass production by controlling local diversity. *Ecol. Lett.*, **9**, 652–662.

May, R.M. (1974). Biological populations with non-overlapping generations: Stable points, stable cycles and chaos. *Science*, **186**, 645–647.

McCarthy, J.J., Canzini, O.F., Leary, N.A., Dokken, D.J., and White, K.S. (ed.) (2001). *Climate changes 2001: Impacts, adaptation, and vulnerability*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

McCauley, E., and Murdoch, W.W. (1987). Cyclic and stable populations: plankton as paradigm. *Am. Nat.*, **129**, 97–121.

McCormick, P.V., Louie, D., and Cairns, C., Jr. (1994). Longitudinal effects of herbivory on lotic periphyton assemblages. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **31**, 201–212.

McGrady-Steed, J., and Morin, P.J. (2000). Biodiversity, density compensation, and the dynamics of functional groups. *Ecology*, **81**, 361–373.

McIntosh, A.R., and Townsend, C.R. (1994). Interpopulation variation in mayfly antipredator tactics: Differential effects of contrasting predatory fish. *Ecology*, **75**, 2078–2090.

McIntosh, A.R., Greig, H.S., McMurthy, S.A., Nyström, P., and Winterbourn, M.J. (2005). Top-down and bottom-up influences on populations of a stream detritivore. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **50**, 1206–1218.

McIntyre, P.B., Michel, E., and M., O. (2006). Top-down and bottom-up controls on periphyton biomass and productivity in Lake Tanganyika. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **51**, 1514–1523.

McQueen, D.J., Johannes, M.R.S., Post, J.R., Stewart, T.J., and Lean, D.R.S. (1989). Bottom-up and top-down impacts on freshwater pelagic community structure. *Ecol. Monogr.*, **59**, 289–309.

Menendez, M., and Sanchez, A. (1998). Seasonal variations in P-I responses of *Chara hispida* L. and *Potamogeton pectinatus* L. from stream Mediterranean ponds. *Aquat. Bot.*, **61**, 1–15.

Meyer, A. (1993). Phylogenetic relationships and evolutionary processesin East African cichlid fishes. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution*, **8**, 279–284.

Meyer, A., Kocher, T.D., Basasibwaki, P., and Wilson, A.C. (1990). Monophyletic origin of Lake Victoria cichlid fishes suggested by mitochondrial DNA sequences. *Nature*, **347**, 550–553.

Milinski, M. (1977). Do all members of a swarm suffer the same predation? *Z. Tierpsychol.*, **45**, 373–388.

Mills, E.L., and Breen, D.M. (1987). Use of zooplankton size to assess the community structure of fish populations in freshwater lakes. *N. A. J. Fish. Man.*, **7**, 369–378.

Mills, E.L., Gorman, R.O., DeGisi, J., Heberger, R.F., and House, R.A. (1992). Food of the alewife (*Alosa pseudoharengus*) in Lake Ontario before and after the establishment of *Bythotrephes cederstroemi*. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **49**, 2009–2019.

Mitchell, S.E., Halves, J., and Lampert, W. (2004). Coexistence of similar genotypes of *Daphnia magna* in intermittent populations: response to thermal stress. *Oikos*, **106**, 469–478.

Miyajima, T. (1992). Biological manganese oxidation in a lake. II: A thermodynamic consideration of the habitat utilization of *Metallogenium* sp. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **124**, 411–426.

Monod, J. (1950). La technique de culture continue: theorie et applications. *Ann. Inst. pasteur Lille*, **79**, 390–410.

Morel, F. (1983). *Principles of aquatic chemistry*. Wiley, New York.

Mort, M.H., and Wolf, H.G. (1986). The genetic structure of large-lake *Daphnia* populations. *Evolution*, **40**, 756–766.

Moya, A., and Font, E., ed. (2004). *Evolution. From molecules to ecosystems*. Oxford University Press, New York.

Muck, P., and Lampert, W. (1980). Feeding of freshwater filter-feeders at very low food concentrations: Poor evidence for "threshold feeding" and "optimal foraging" in *Daphnia longispina* and *Eudiaptomus gracilis*. *J. Plankton Res.*, **2**, 367–379.

Mulderij, G., Smolders, A.J.P., and Van Donk, E. (2006). Allelopathic effects of the aquatic macrophyte, *Stratiotes aloides*, on natural phytoplankton. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **51**, 554–561.

Müller, H. (2002). Lake Constance—a model for integrated lake restoration with international cooperation. *Wat. Sci. Technol.*, **46**,

Müller-Navarra, D. (1995). Evidence that a highly unsaturated fatty acid limits *Daphnia* growth in nature. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **132**, 297–307.

Mullin, M.M., Fuglister-Stewart, E., and Fuglister, F.J. (1975). Ingestion by planktonic grazers as a function of concentration of food. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **20**, 259–262.

Mur, L., and Bejsdorf, R.O. (1978). A model of the succession from green to blue-green algae based on light limitation. *Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol.*, **20**, 2314–2321.

Muyzer, G., and Smalla, K. (1998). Application of denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE) and temperature gradient gel electrophoresis (TGGE) in microbial ecology. *Antonie van Leeuwenhoek*, **73**, 127–141.

Necchi, O. (2004). Light-related photosynthetic characteristics of lotic microalgae. *Hydrobiologia*, **525**, 139–155.

Neill, W.E. (1990). Induced vertical migration in copepods as a defense against invertebrate predation. *Nature*, **345**, 524–526.

Neumann, D. (1961). Ernährungsbiologie einer rhipidoglossen Kiemenschnecke. *Hydrobiologia*, **7**, 133–151.

Nilssen, J.P. (1980). When and how to reproduce: A dilemma for limnetic cyclopoid copepods. In Kerfoot,

W.C. (ed.) *Evolution and ecology of zooplankton communities*., pp. 418–426. University Press of New England, Hanover, NH.

O'Brien, W.J., Evans, B., and Luecke, C. (1985). Apparent size choice of zooplankton by planktivorous sunfish—Exceptions to the rule. *Biol. Fish*., **13**, 225–233.

O'Brien, W.J. (1987). Planktivory by freshwater fish: Thrust and parry in the pelagia. In Kerfoot, W.C. and Sih, A. (ed.) *Predation: direct and indirect impacts on aquatic communities*., pp. 3–16. University Press of New England, Hanover, NH.

Odum, E.P. (1957). Trophic structure and productivity of Silver Springs, Florida. *Ecol. Monogr*., **27**, 55–112.

Odum, E.P. (1959). *Fundamentals of ecology*. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Oksanen, L., Fretwell, S.D., Arruda, J., and Niemala, P. (1981). Exploitation ecosystems in gradients of primary productivity. *Am. Nat*., **118**, 240–261.

Olsen, A.I., Attramadal, Y., Jensen, A., and Olsen, Y. (1999). Influence of size and nutritional value of *Artemia franciscana* on growth and quality of halibut larvae (*Hippoglossus hippoglossus*) during the live feed period. *Aquaculture*, **179**, 475–487.

Østbye, K., Bernatchez, L., Næsje, F., Himberg, K-JM, and Hindar, K. (2005). Evolutionary history of the European whitefish *Coregonus lavaretus* (L.) species complex as inferred from mtDNA phylogeography and gill-raker numbers. *Molecular Ecology*, **14**, 4371–4387.

Overbeck, J. (1975). Distribution pattern of uptake kinetic response in a stratified eutrophic lake. *Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol*., **19**, 2600–2615.

Overrein, N.L., Seip, H.M., and Tollan, A. (1980). *Acid precipitation-effects on forest and fish*. Final report of the SNFS-project 1972–1980 Norwegian Institute of Water Analysis, Oslo

Pace, M.L., Cole, J.J., Carpenter, S.R., Kitchell, J.F., Hodgson, J.R., Van de Bogert, M.C., Bade, D.L., Kritzberg, E.S., and Bastviken, D. (2004). Whole-lake carbon-13 additions reveal terrestrial support of aquatic food webs. *Nature*, **427**, 240–243.

Paerl, H.W. (1988). Growth and reproductive strategies of freshwater blue-green algae (cyanobacteria). In Sandgren, C.D. (ed.) *Growth and survival strategies of freshwater phytoplankton*., pp. 261–315. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Paloheimo, J.E. (1974). Calculation of instantaneous birth rate. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **19**, 692–694.

Palsson, C., and Daniel, C. (2004). Effects of prey abundance and light intensity on nutrition of a mixotrophic flagellate and its competitive relationship with an obligate heterotroph. *Aquat. Microb. Ecol*., **36**, 247–256.

Parent, S., and Cheetham, R.D. (1980). Effects of acid precipitation on *Daphnia magna*. *Bull. Environm. Toxicol*., **25**, 298–304.

Parker, M.S. (1993). Size-selective predation on benthic macroinvertebrates by stream-dwelling salamander larvae. *Arch. Hydrobiol*., **128**, 385–400.

Passarge, J., Hol, S., Escher, M., and Huisman, J. (2006). Competition for nutrients and light: stable coexistence, alternative stable states, or competitive exclusion? *Ecol. Monogr*., **76**, 57–72.

Pastorok, R.A. (1981). Prey vulnerability and size selection by *Chaoborus* larvae. *Ecology*, **62**, 1311–1324.

Pechlaner, R. (1979). Response of a eutrophicated lake (Piburger See) to reduced nutrient load and selective water renewal. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol*., **13**, 293–305.

Peckarsky, B.L. (1991). A field test of resource depression by predatory stonefly larvae. *Oikos*, **61**, 3–10.

Peckarsky, B.L., and Penton, M.A. (1989). Mechanisms of prey selection by stream-dwelling stoneflies. *Ecology*, **70**, 1203–1218.

Peckarsky, B.L., Cowan, C.A., Penton, M.A., and Anderson, C. (1993). Sublethal consequences of stream-dwelling predatory stonflies on mayfly growth and fecundity. *Ecology*, **74**, 1836–1846.

Persson, L. (1987). Competition induced switch in young of the year perch, *Perca fluviatilis*: an experimental test of resource limitation. *Env. Biol. Fish*., **19**, 235–239.

Persson, L., and De Roos, A.M. (2006). Size-structured interactions and the dynamics of aquatic systems. *Pol. J. Ecol*., **in press**

Persson, L., Andersson, G., Hamrin, S.F., and Johansson, L. (1988). Predator regulation and primary production along the productivity gradient of temperate lake ecosystems. In Carpenter, S.R. (ed.) *Complex interactions in lake communities*., pp. 45–65. Springer, New York.

Petchey, O.L., and Gaston, K.J. (2006). Functional diversity: Back to basics and looking forward. *Ecol. Lett*., **9**, 741–758.

Peters, R.H. (1983). *The ecological implications of body size*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Peters, R.H. (1984). Methods for the study of feeding, grazing and assimilation by zooplankton. In Downing, J.A. and Rigler, F.H. (ed.) *A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary production in fresh waters*., pp. 336–412. Blackwell, Oxford.

Peters, R.H. (1986). The role of prediction in limnology. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **31**, 1143–1159.

Pianka, E.R. (1970). On r-and K-selection. *Am. Nat*., **104**, 592–597.

Pimm, S.L., Russell, G.J., Gittleman, J.L., and Brooks, T.M. (1995). The future of biodiversity. *Science*, **269**, 347–350.

Plath, K. (1998). Adaptive feeding behavior of Daphnia magna in response to short-term starvation. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **43**, 593–599.

Poff, N.L. (1997). Landscape filters and species traits: towards mechanistic understanding and prediction in stream ecology. *J. N. Am. Benthol. Soc.*, **16**, 391–409.

Polis, G.A., Sears, A.L.W., Huxel, G.R., Strong, D.R., and Maron, J. (2000). When is a trophic cascade a trophic cascade? *Trends Ecol. Evol.*, **15**, 639–647.

Porter, K.G. (1977). The plant-animal interface in freshwater ecosystems. *Am. Sci.*, **65**, 159–170.

Post, D. (2002). Using stable isotopes to estimate trophic positions: Models, methods and assumptions. *Ecology*, **83**, 703–718.

Post, D.M., Pace, M.L., and Hairston Jr., N.G. (2000). Ecosystem size determines food-chain length in lakes. *Nature*, **405**, 1047–1049.

Power, M.E. (1990). Effects of fish in river food webs. *Science*, **250**, 811–814.

Power, M.E., Matthews, W.J., and Stewart, A.J. (1985). Grazing minnows, piscivorous bass, and stream algae: dynamics of a strong interaction. *Ecology*, **66**, 1448–1456.

Power, M.E., Tilman, D., Estes, J.A., Menge, B.A., Bond, W.J., Mills, L.S., Daily, G., Castilla, J.C., Lubchenco, J., and Paine, R.T. (1996). Challenges in the quest for keystones. *BioScience*, **46**, 609–620.

Preijs, A., Lewandowski, K., and Stancyzkowska-Piotrowska, A. (1990). Size-selective predation by roach (*Rutilus rutilus*) on zebra mussel (*Dreissena polymorpha*): field studies. *Oecologia*, **83**, 378–384.

Probst, L. (1987). Sublitoral and profundal Oligochaeta fauna of Lake Constance (Bodensee-Obersee). *Hydrobiologia*, **155**, 277–282.

Prosser, C.L. (1986). *Adaptational biology: Molecules to organisms*. Wiley, New York.

Prus, T. (1971). The assimilation efficiency of *Asellus aquaticus* L. (Crustacea, Isopoda). *Freshwat. Biol.*, **1**, 287–305.

Pütter, A. (1911). Die Ernährung der Wassertiere durch gelöste organische Verbindungen. *Pflügers Arch. Physiol.*, **137**,

Pyke, G.H., Pulliam, H.R., and Charnov, E.L. (1977). Optimal foraging: a selective review of theory and tests. *Quart. Rev. Biol.*, **52**, 137–154.

Reichwaldt, E.S., and Stibor, H. (2005). The impact of diel vertical migration of *Daphnia* on phytoplankton dynamics. *Oecologia*, **146**, 50–56.

Reynolds, C.S. (1984). *The ecology of freshwater phytoplankton*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Reynolds, C.S. (1988). Functional morphology and the adaptive strategies of freshwater phytoplankton. In Sandgren, C.D. (ed.) *Growth and reproductive strategies of freshwater phytoplankton*, pp. 388–433. Cambridge University Press, New York.

Reynolds, C.S. (1989). Physical determinants of seasonal change in the species composition of phytoplankton. In Sommer, U. (ed.) *Succession in plankton communities.*, pp. 9–56. Springer, Berlin.

Reynolds, C.S., Wiseman, S.W., and Clarke, M.J.O. (1984). Growth and loss rate responses of phytoplankton to intermittent artificial mixing and their potential application to the control of planktonic biomass. *J. Appl. Ecol.*, **21**, 11–39.

Reynolds, C.S., Walsby, A.E., and Oliver, R.L. (1987). The role of buoyancy in the distribution of *Anabaena* s. in Lake Rotongaio. *N. Z. J. Mar. Freshw. Res.*, **21**, 525–526.

Reynolds, C.S., Carling, P.A., and Beven, K.J. (1991). Flow in river channels: new insights into hydraulic retention. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **121**, 171–179.

Reynoldson, T.B. (1983). The population biology of Turbellaria with special reference to the triclads of the British Isles. *Adv. Ecol. Res.*, **13**, 235–326.

Ricciardi, A., and MacIsaac, H.J. (2000). Recent mass invasion of the North American Great Lakes by Ponto-Caspian species. *Trends Ecol. Evolut.*, **15**, 62–65.

Ricciardi, A., Neves, R.J., and Rasmussen, J.B. (1998). Impending extinctions of North American freshwater mussels (Unionoida) following the zebra mussel (*Dreissena polymorpha*) invasion. *J. Anim. Ecol.*, **67**, 613–619.

Richman, S. (1958). The transformation of energy by *Daphnia pulex*. *Ecol. Monogr.*, **28**, 273–291.

Riemann, B., and Christoffersen, K. (1993). Microbial trophodynamics in temperate lakes. *Mar. Microb. Food Webs*, **7**, 69–100.

Riessen, H.P. (1984). Why *Daphnia* lose their helmets. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **29**, 1123–1127.

Ringelberg, J., Van Kasteel, J., and Servaas, H. (1967). The sensitivity of *Daphnia magna* Straus to changes in light intensity of various adaptation levels and its implication in diurnal vertical migration. *Z. vergl. Physiol.*, **56**, 397–407.

Ringelberg, J., Flik, B.J.G., Lindenaar, D., and Royackers, K. (1991). Diel vertical migration of *Daphnia hyalina* (sensu latiori) in Lake Maarsseveen: Part 1. Aspects of seasonal and daily timing. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **121**, 129–145.

Rosemund, A.D., Mulholland, P.J., and Elwood, J.W. (1994). Top-down and bottom-up control of stream periphyton: Effects of nutrients and herbivores. *Ecology*, **74**, 1264–1280.

Rosenthal, S.K., Stevens, S.S., and Lodge, D.M. (2006). Whole-lake effects of invasive crayfish (*Orconectes* spp.) and the potential for restoration. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **63**, 1276–1285.

Rosenzweig, M.L., and MacArthur, R.H. (1963). Graphical representation and stability conditions of predator-prey interactions. *Am. Nat*., **97**, 209–223.

Rothhaupt, K.O. (1988). Mechanistic resource competition theory applied to laboratory experiments with zooplankton. *Nature*, **333**, 660–662.

Rothhaupt, K.O. (1992). Stimulation of phosphorus limited phytoplankton by bacterivorous flagellates in laboratory experiments. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **37**, 750–759.

Routman, E. (1993). Population structure and genetic diversity of metamorphic and paedomorphic populations of the tiger salamander *Ambystoma tigrinum*. *J. Evol. Biol*., **45**, 173–205.

Rubenstein, D.I., and Koehl, M.A.R. (1977). The mechanisms of filter feeding: some theoretical considerations. *Am. Nat*., **111**, 981–994.

Rundle, S.D., and Brönmark, C. (2001). Inter- and intraspecific trait compensation of defence mechanisms in freshwater snails. *Proc. R. Soc. Lond. B*, **268**, 1463–1468.

Rundle, S.D., Spicer, J.I., Coleman, R.A., Vosper, J., and Soane, J. (2004). Environmental calcium modifies induced defences in snails. *Proc. R. Soc. London (Suppl.)*, **271**, S67-S70.

Sakwinska, O., and Dawidowicz, P. (2005). Life history strategy and depth selection behavior as alternative antipredator defenses among natural *Daphnia hyalina* populations. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **50**, 1284–1289.

Sand-Jensen, K. (1987). Environmental control of bicarbonate use among freshwater and marine macrophytes. In Crawford, R.M. ed. *Plant life in aquatic and amphibious habitats*., pp. 99–112. Blackwell, Oxford.

Sanders, R.W., and Porter, K.G. (1988). Phagotrophic phytoflagellates. *Adv. Microb. Ecol*., **10**, 167–192.

Santer, B., and Lampert, W. (1995). Summer diapause in cyclopoid copepods: Adaptive response to fish predation or food bottleneck. *J. Animal. Ecol*., **64**, 600–613.

Sas, H., ed. (1989). *Lake restoration by reduction of nutrient loading*. Academia Verlag Richarz, St. Augustin.

Scheffer, M. (1991). Should we expect strange attractors behind plankton dynamics—and if so, should we bother? *J. Plankton Res*., **13**, 1291–1305.

Scheffer, M., Hosper, S.H., Meijer, M-L, Moss, B., and Jeppesen, E. (1993). Alternative equilibria in shallow lakes. *TREE*, **8**, 275–279.

Schindler, D.E., Rogers, D.E., Scheuerell, M.D., and Abrey, C.A. (2005). Effects of changing climate on zooplankton and juvenile sockeye salmon growth in southwestern Alaska. *Ecology*, **86**, 198–209.

Schindler, D.W. (1980). The effect of fertilization with phosphorus and nitrogen versus phosphorus alone on eutrophication of experimental lakes. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **25**, 1149–1152.

Schindler, D.W. (2006). Recent advances in the understanding and management of eutrophication. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **51**, 356–363.

Schober, U. (1980). Kausalanalytische Untersuchungen der Abundanzschwankungen des Crustaceen-Planktons im Bodensee. Ph.D. thesis, University of Freiburg, Freiburg/Brsg.

Schwartz, S.S., and Cameron, G.N. (1993). How do parasites cost their hosts? Preliminary answers from trematodes and *Daphnia obtusa*. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **38**, 602–612.

Shannon, J.P., Blinn, D.W., and Stevens, L.E. (1994). Trophic interactions and benthic animal community structure in the Colorado River, Arizona, USA. *Freshwat. Biol*., **31**, 213–220.

Shapiro, J. (1990). Biomanipulation: the next phase-making it stable. *Hydrobiologia*, **200/201**, 13–27.

Shapiro, J., and Wright, D.I. (1984). Lake restoration by biomanipulation: Round Lake, Minnesota, the first two years. *Freshwat. Biol*., **14**, 371–383.

Sharley, D.J., Pettigrove, V., and Parsons, Y.M. (2004). Molecular identification of *Chironomus* spp. (Diptera) for biomonitoring of aquatic ecosystems. *Australian Journal of Entomology*, **43**, 359–365.

Sheldon, R.W., Prakash, A., and Sutcliffe, W.H. (1972). The size distribution of particles in the ocean. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **17**, 327–340.

Shurin, J.B. (2000). Dispersal limitation, invasion resistance, and the structure of pond zooplankton communities. *Ecology*, **81**, 3074–3086.

Siebeck, H.O. (1980). Optical orientation of pelagic crustaceans and its consequences in the pelagic and littoral zone. In Kerfoot, WC (ed.) *Evolution and ecology of zooplankton communities*, pp. 28–38. University Press of New England, Hanover, NH.

Siebeck, O. (1982). *Eine limnologische Projektstudie. Nationalpark Berchtesgaden*. Forschungsberichte 5, Nationalpark, Berchtesgaden

Simon, M. (1985). Specific uptake rates of amino acids by attached and free-living bacteria in a mesotrophic lake. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol*., **49**, 1254–1259.

Simpson, F.B., and Neilands, J.B. (1976). Siderochromes in cyanophyceae: isolation and characterization of schizokinen from *Anabaena* sp. *J. Phycol*., **12**, 44–48.

Smith, R.J. (1992). Alarm signals in fish. *Rev. Fish Biol. Fish*., **2**, 33–63.

Smith, V.H. (1979). Nutrient dependence of primary productivity in lakes. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **1979**, 1051–1064.

Sommer, U. (1982). Vertical niche separation between two closely related planktonic flagellate species (*Rhodomonas lens* and *Rhodomonas minuta* v. *nannoplanctica*). *J. Plankton Res*., **4**, 137–142.

Sommer, U. (1984). Sedimentation of principal phytoplankton species in Lake Constance. *J. Plankton Res.*, **6**, 1–14.

Sommer, U. (1985). Comparison between steady state and non-steady state competition: experiments with natural phytoplankton. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **30**, 335.

Sommer, U. (1986). Phytoplankton competition along a gradient of dilution rates. *Oecologia*, **68**, 503–506.

Sommer, U. (1987). Factors controlling the seasonal variation in phytoplankton species composition.—A case study for a deep, nutrient rich lake. *Progr. Phycol. Res.*, **5**, 123–178.

Sommer, U. (1988a). Does nutrient competition among phytoplankton occur in situ? *Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol.*, **23**, 707–712.

Sommer, U. (1988b). Phytoplankton succession in microcosm experiments under simultaneous grazing pressure and resource limitation. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **33**, 1037–1054.

Sommer, U. (1989). The role of competition for resources in phytoplankton succession. In U Sommer, ed. *Plankton ecology: succession in plankton communities.*, pp. 57–106. Springer, Berlin.

Sommer, U. (1990). Phytoplankton nutrient competition—from laboratory to lake. In JB Grace, and D Tilman, ed. *Perspectives on plant competition.*, pp. 193–213. Academic Press, San Diego.

Sommer, U. (1991). A comparison of the Droop and Monod models of nutrient limited growth applied to natural populations of phytoplankton. *Funct. Ecol.*, **5**, 535–544.

Sommer, U. (1992). Phosphorus-limited *Daphnia*: Intrapecific facilitation instead of competition. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **37**, 966–973.

Sommer, U., and Gliwicz, Z.M. (1986). Long range vertical migration of *Volvox* in tropical lake Cahora Bassa (Mozambique). *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **31**, 650–653.

Sommer, U., and Sommer, F. (2006). Cladocerans versus copepods: the cause of contrasting top-down controls on freshwater and marine phytoplankton. *Oecologia*, **147**, 183–194.

Sommer, U., and Stibor, H. (2002). Copepoda—Cladocera—Tunicata: The role of three major mesozooplankton groups in the pelagic food web. *Ecol. Res.*, **17**, 161–174.

Sommer, U., Gliwicz, Z.M., Lampert, W., and Duncan, A. (1986). The PEG model of seasonal succession of planktonic events in fresh waters. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **106**, 433–471.

Sommer, U., Gaedke, U., and Schweizer, A. (1993). The first decade of oligotrophication of Lake Constance. II: The response of phytoplankton taxonomic composition. *Oecologia*, **93**, 276–284.

Sommer, U., Sommer, F., Santer, B., Zöllner, E., Jürgens, K., Jamieson, C., Boersma, M., and Gocke, K. (2003). *Daphnia* versus copepods: the cause of contrasting top-down controls on freshwater and marine phytoplankton. *Oecologia*, **135**, 639–647.

Sommer, U., Aberle, N., Engel, A., Hansen, T., Lengfellner, K., Sandow, M., Wohlers, J., Zöllner, E., and Riebesell, U. (2007). An indoor mesocosm system to study the effect of climate change on the late winter and spring succession of Baltic Sea phyto- and zooplankton. *Oecologia*, **120**, **in press**.

Sone, S., Inoue, M., and Yanagisawa, Y. (2006). Competition between two congeneric stream gobies for habitat in southwestern Shikoku, Japan. *Ichthyol. Res.*, **53**, 19–23.

Sorokin, Y.I., and Kadota, H. (1972). *Microbial production and decomposition in fresh waters*. Blackwell, Oxford.

Southwood, T.R.E. (1988). Tactics, strategies and templets. *Oikos*, **52**, 3–18.

Spence, D.H.N., and Chrystal, J. (1970). Photosynthesis and zonation of freshwater macrophytes. *New Phytol.*, **69**, 205–227.

Spindler, K.D. (1971). Untersuchungen über den Einfluß äuéerer Faktoren auf die Dauer der Embryonalentwicklung und den Häutungsrhythmus von *Cyclops vicinus*. *Oecologia*, **7**, 342–355.

Spitze, K. (1992). Predator-mediated plasticity of prey life-history and morphology: *Chaoborus americanus* predation on *Daphnia pulex*. *Am. Nat.*, **139**, 229–247.

Sprules, W.G., Riessen, H.P., and Jin, E.H. (1990). Dynamics of the *Bythotrephes* invasion of the St. Lawrence Great Lakes. *J. Great Lakes Res.*, **16**, 346–351.

Stadelmann, P. (1971). Stickstoffkreislauf und Primärproduktion im mesotrophen Vierwaldstätter See und im eutrophen Rotsee, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Nitrats als limitierendem Faktor. *Schweiz. Z. Hydrol.*, **33**, 1–65.

Statzner, B., and Holm, T.F. (1989). Morphological adaptation of shape to flow: Microcurrents around lotic macroinvertebrates with known Reynolds numbers at quasi-natural flow conditions. *Oecologia*, **78**, 145–157.

Stearns, S.C. (1989). The evolutionary significance of phenotypic plasticity. *BioScience*, **39**, 436–445.

Stearns, S.C. (1992). *The evolution of life histories*. Oxford University Press, New York.

Stemberger, R.S. (1988). Reproductive costs and hydrodynamics benefits of chemically induced defenses in *Keratella testudo*. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **33**, 593–606.

Stemberger, R.S., and Gilbert, J.J. (1987). Rotifer threshold food concentrations and the size-efficiency hypothesis. *Ecology*, **68**, 181–187.

Stenson, J.A. (1987). Variation in capsule size of *Holopedium gibberum* (Zaddach): a response to invertebrate predation. *Ecology*, **68**, 928–934.

Sterner, R.W. (1986). Herbivores' direct and indirect effects on algal populations. *Science*, **231**, 605–607.

Sterner, R.W. (1989). The role of grazers in phytoplankton succession. In U Sommer, ed. *Succession in plankton communities*., pp. 107–170. Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg.

Sterner, R.W. (1993). *Daphnia* growth on varying quality of *Scenedesmus*: Mineral limitation of zooplankton. *Ecology*, **74**, 2351–2360.

Sterner, R.W., and Elser, J.J. (2002). *Ecological stoichiometry*. Princeton University Press, Princeton. NJ.

Sterner, R.W., Smutka, T.M., McKay, R.M.L., Xiaoming, Q., Brown, E.T., and Sherrell, R.M. (2004). Phosphorus and trace metal limitation of algae and bacteria in Lake Superior. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **49**, 495–507.

Stibor, H. (1992). Predator induced life-history shifts in a freshwater cladoceran. *Oecologia*, **92**, 162–165.

Stibor, H., and Lüning, J. (1994). Predator-induced phenotypic variation in the pattern of growth and reproduction in *Daphnia hyalina* (Crustacea, Cladocera). *Functional Ecol*., **8**, 97–101.

Stibor, H., and Sommer, U. (2003). Mixotrophy of a photosynthetic flagellate viewed from an optimal foraging perspective. *Protist*, **154**, 91–98.

Stich, H.B., and Lampert, W. (1981). Predator evasion as an explanation of diurnal vertical migration by zooplankton. *Nature*, **293**, 396–398.

Straile, D., Livingstone, D.M., Weyhenmeyer, G.A., and George, D.G. (2003). The response of freshwater ecosystems to climate variability associated with the North Atlantic Oscillation. In Hurrell, J.W., Kushnir, Y., Ottersen, G., and Visbeck, M. (ed.) *The North Atlantic Oscillation: Climatic significance and environmental impact*, pp. 263–279. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC.

Streit, B. (1977). Morphometric relationships and feeding habits of two species of *Chaetogaster*, *Ch. limnaei* and *Ch. diastrophus* (Oligochaeta). *Arch. Hydrobiol. Suppl*., **48**, 424–437.

Strickland, J.D., and Parsons, T.R. (1968). A practical handbook of seawater analysis. *Bull. Fish. Res. Bd. Can*., **169**, 1–203.

Strickler, J.R. (1977). Observation of swimming performances of planktonic copepods. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **22**, 165–170.

Strous, M., Kuencer, J.G., and Jetten, S.M. (1999). Key physiology of anaerobic ammonium oxidation. *Appl. Env. Microbiol*., **65**, 3248–3250.

Swift, M.C., and Fedorenko, A.Y. (1975). Some aspects of prey capture by *Chaoborus* larvae. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **20**, 418–425.

Tall, L., Cloutier, L., and Cattaneo, A. (2006). Grazer-diatom size relationships in an epiphytic community. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **51**, 1211–1216.

Talling, J.F. (1957). The phytoplankton population as a compound photosynthetic system. *New Phytol*., **56**, 133–149.

Tanner, C.J., and Branstrator, D.K. (2006). Generational and dual-species exposures to invertebrate predators influence relative head size in *Daphnia mendotae*. *J. Plankton Res*., **28**, 793–802.

Tartarotti, B., and Sommaruga, R. (2006). Seasonal and ontogenetic changes of mycosporine-like amino acids in planktonic organisms from an alpine lake. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **51**, 1530–1541.

Taylor, B.E., and Gabriel, W. (1992). To grow or not to grow: optimal resource allocation for *Daphnia*. *Am Nat*., **139**, 248–266.

Thomasson, K. (1963). Araucanian lakes. *Acta Phytogeogr. Suecica*, **47**, 1–55.

Thompson, J.N. (1998). Rapid evolution as an ecological process. *Trends Ecol. Evol*., **13**, 329–332.

Threlkeld, S.T., Chiavelli, D.A., and Willey, R.L. (1993). The organization of zooplankton epibiont communities. *Trends Ecol. Evol*., **8**, 317–321.

Tilman, D. (1977). Resource competition between planktonic algae: an experimental and theoretical approach. *Ecology*, **59**, 338–348.

Tilman, D. (1982). *Resource competition and community structure*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

Tilman, D. (1996). Biodiversity: population and ecosystem stability. *Ecology*, **77**, 350–363.

Tilman, D., Kilham, S.S., and Kilham, P. (1982). Phytoplankton community ecology: the role of limiting nutrients. *Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst*., **13**, 349–372.

Tilzer, M.M. (1983). The importance of fractional light absorption by photosynthetic pigments for phytoplankton productivity in Lake Constance. *Limnol. Oceanogr*., **28**, 833–846.

Tilzer, M.M. (1984a). The quantum yield as a fundamental parameter controlling vertical photosynthetic profiles of phytoplankton in Lake Constance. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Suppl*., **69**, 169–198.

Tilzer, M.M. (1984b). Estimation of phytoplankton loss rates from daily photosynthetic rates and observed biomass changes in Lake Constance. *J. Plankton Res*., **6**, 309–324.

Tilzer, M.M., Goldman, C.R., and de Amezaga, E. (1975). The efficiency of photosynthetic light energy utilization by lake phytoplankton. *Verh. Internat. Verein. Limnol*., **19**, 800–807.

Tilzer, M.M., Geller, W., Sommer, U., and Stabel, H.H. (1982). Kohlenstoffkreislauf und Nahrungsketten in der

Freiwasserzone des Bodensees. *Konstanzer Blätter für Hochschulfragen*, **73**, 51–76.

Tittel, J., Bissinger, V., Zippel, B., Gaedke, U., Bell, E., Lorke, A., and Kamjunke, N. (2003). Mixotrophs combine resource use to outcompete specialists: Implications for aquatic food webs. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA*, **100**, 12776–12781.

Tollrian, R. (1990). Predator-induced helmet formation in *Daphnia cucullata* (Sars). *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **119**, 191–196.

Tollrian, R. (1991). Some aspects in the costs of cyclomorphosis in *Daphnia cucullata*. *Proc. Int. Soc. Limnol.*, **24**, 2802–2803.

Tollrian, R. (1994). Fish-kairomone induced morphological changes in *Daphnia lumholtzi* (Sars). *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **130**, 69–75.

Tollrian, R. (1995). *Chaoborus crystallinus* predation on *Daphnia pulex*: can induced morphological changes balance effects of body size on vulnerability. *Oecologia*, **101**, 151–155.

Tollrian, R., and Von Elert, E. (1994). Enrichment and purification of *Chaoborus* kairomone from water: Further steps towards its chemical characterization. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **39**, 788–796.

Tollrian, R., and Harvell, C.D. (ed.) (1999). *The ecology and evolution of inducible defences*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

Townsend, C.R., and Hildrew, A.G. (1994). Species traits in relation to a habitat templet for river systems. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **31**, 265–275.

Townsend, C.R., and Risebrow, A.J. (1982). The influence of light level on the functional response of a zooplanktivorous fish. *Oecologia*, **53**, 293–295.

Tschumi, P-A (1977). Eutrophierung, Primärproduktion und Sauerstoffverhältnisse im Bielersee. *Gas-Wasser-Abwasser*, **57**, 245–252.

Turner, A.M., Bernot, R.J., and Boes, C.M. (2000). Chemical cues modify species interactions: the ecological consequences of predator avoidance by freshwater snails. *Oikos*, **88**, 148–158.

Twiss, M.R., Auclair, J-C, and Charlton, M.N. (2000). An investigation into iron-stimulated phytoplankton productivity in epipelagic Lake Erie during thermal stratification using trace metal clean techniques. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **57**, 86–95.

Uhlmann, D. (1975). *Hydrobiologie*. Fischer, Stuttgart.

Underwood, G.J.C., and Thomas, J.D. (1990). Grazing interactions between pulmonate snails and epiphytic algae and bacteria. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **23**, 502–522.

Utermöhl, H. (1958). Zur Vervollkommnung der quantitativen Phytoplankton-Methodik. *Mitt. Int. Ver. Limnol.*, **9**, 1–38.

Vadeboncoeur, Y., and Lodge, D.M. (2000). Periphyton production on wood and sediment. Substratum-specific response to laboratory and whole-lake manipulations. *J. N. Am. Benthol. Soc.*, **19**, 68–81.

Valentine, D.L. (2002). Biogeochemistry and microbial ecology of methane oxidation in anoxic environments: a review. *Antonie van Leeuwenhoek*, **81**, 271–282.

Van Buskirk, J. (2001). Specific induced responses to different predator species in anuran larvae. *J. Evol. Biol.*, **14**, 482–489.

Van de Bund, W.J., and Groenendijk, D. (1994). Seasonal dynamics and burrowing of littoral chironomid larvae in relation to competition and predation. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **132**, 213–225.

Van de Bund, W.J., and van Donk, E. (2002). Short-term and long-term effects of zooplanktivorous fish removal in a shallow lake: a synthesis of 15 years of data from Lake Zwemlust. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **47**, 2380–2387.

Van Donk, E. (1989). The role of fungal parasites in phytoplankton succession. In Sommer, U. (ed.) *Plankton ecology, succession in plankton communities.*, pp. 171–194. Springer, Berlin.

Van Donk, E., and Hessen, D.O. (1993). Grazing resistance in nutrient-stressed phytoplankton. *Oecologia*, **93**, 508–511.

Van Donk, E., and Van de Bund, W.J. (2002). Impact of submerged macrophytes including charophytes on phyto- and zooplankton communities: allelopathy versus other mechanisms. *Aquat. Bot.*, **72**, 261–274.

Van Donk, E., Lürling, M., and Lampert, W. (1999). Consumer-induced changes in phytoplankton: inducibility, costs, benefits, and the impact on grazers. In Tollrian, R. and Harvell, CD (ed.) *The ecology and evolution of inducible defenses*, pp. 89–103. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

Vander Zanden, M.J., and Rasmussen, J.B. (2001). Variation in? δ^{15}N and δ^{13}C trophic fractionation: implications for aquatic food web studies. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **46**, 2061–2066.

Vanni, M.J. (1987). Effects of food availability and fish predation on a zooplankton community. *Ecol. Monogr.*, **57**, 61–88.

Vanni, M.J., Luecke, C., Kitchell, J.F., Allen, Y., Temte, J., and Magnusson, J.J. (1990). Effects on lower trophic levels of massive fish mortality. *Nature*, **344**, 333–335.

Vannote, R.L., Minshall, G.W., Cumming, K.W., Sedell, J.R., and Cushing, C.E. (1980). The river continuum concept. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, **37**, 130–137.

Vareschi, E. (1982). The ecology of Lake Nakuru (Kenya). III. Abiotic factors and primary production. *Oecologia*, **55**, 81–101.

Vaughn, C.C., Gelwick, F.P., and Matthews, W.J. (1993). Effects of algivorous minnows on production of grazing stream invertebrates. *Oikos*, **66**, 119–128.

Verschoor, A.M., Vos, M., and Van der Stap, I. (2004). Inducible defences prevent strong population fluctuations in bi- and tritrophic food chains. *Ecol. Lett.*, **7**, 1143–1148.

Vogel, S. (1994). *Life in moving fluids; the physical biology of flow*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

Vogels, G.D., van der Drift, C., Stumm, C.K., Keltjens, J.T.M., and Zwart, K.B. (1984). Mathanogenesis: surprising molecules, microorganisms, and ecosystems. *J. Microbiol.*, **50**,

Vollenweider, R., and Kerekes, J. (1982). *Eutrophication of waters, monitoring, assessment and control*. OECD, Paris.

Von Elert, E. (2002). Determination of limiting polyunsaturated fatty acids in *Daphnia galeata* using a new method to enrich food algae with single fatty acids. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **47**, 1764–1773.

Von Elert, E., and Pohnert, G. (2000). Predator specificity of kairomones in diel vertical migration of *Daphnia*: a chemical approach. *Oikos*, **88**, 119–128.

Von Frisch, K. (1941). über einen Schreckstoff der Fischhaut und seine biologische Bedeutung. *Z. vergl. Physiol.*, **29**, 46–145.

Vos, M., Flik, B.J.G., Vijverberg, J., Ringelberg, J., and Mooij, W.M. (2002). From inducible defences to population dynamics: modelling refuge use and life history changes in *Daphnia*. *Oikos*, **99**, 386–396.

Wagner, G. (1976). Simulationsmodelle der Seeneutrophierung, dargestellt am Beispiel des Bodensee-Obersees. *Arch. Hydrobiol.*, **78**, 1–41.

Walls, M., Kortelainen, and Sarvala, J. (1990). Prey responses to fish predation in fresh-water communities. *Ann. Zool. Fenn.*, **27**, 183–199.

Walsby, A.E. (1994). Gas vesicles. *Microbiological Reviews*, **58**, 94–144.

Walter, K.M., Zimov, S.A., Chanton, J.P., Verbyla, D., and Chapin III, F.S. (2006). Methane bubbling from Siberian thaw lakes as a positive feedback to climate warming. *Nature*, **443**, 71–75.

Walther, G.R., Post, E., Convey, P., Menzel, A., Parmesan, C., Beebee, T.C., Fromentin, J.M., Hoegh-Guldberg, O., and Bairlein, F. (2002). Ecological responses to recent climate change. *Nature*, **416**, 389–395.

Washington, H.G. (1984). Diversity, biotic and similarity indices. *Wat. Res.*, **18**, 653–694.

Weider, L.J. (1992). Disturbance, competition and the maintenance of clonal diversity in *Daphnia pulex*. *J. Evol. Biol.*, **5**, 505–522.

Weider, L.J., and Hebert, P.D.N. (1987). Ecological and physiological differentiation among low-arctic clones of *Daphnia pulex*. *Ecology*, **68**, 188–198.

Weider, L.J., and Lampert, W. (1985). Differential response of *Daphnia* genotypes to oxygen stress: respiration rates, hemoglobin content and low oxygen tolerance. *Oecologia*, **65**, 487–491.

Weider, L.J., Lampert, W., Wessels, M., Colbourne, J.K., and Limburg, P. (1997). Long-term genetic shifts in a microcrustacean egg bank associated with anthropogenic changes in the Lake Constance ecosystem. *Proc. R. Soc. London B*, **264**, 1613–1618.

Weitere, M., Tautz, D., Neumann, D., and Steinfartz, S. (2004). Adaptive divergence vs. environmental plasticity: tracing local genetic adaptation of metamorphosis traits in salamanders. *Molecular Ecology*, **13**, 1665–1677.

Werner, E.E., and Hall, D.J. (1974). Optimal foraging and the size selection of prey by the bluegill sunfish (*Lepomis macrochirus*). *Ecology*, **55**, 1042–1052.

Werner, E.E., and Hall, D.J. (1988). Ontogenetic habitat shifts in Bluegill: the foraging rate-predation risk tradeoff. *Ecology*, **69**, 1352–1366.

Wetzel, R.G. (1983). *Limnology*. W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia.

Wetzel, R.G. (2001). *Limnology—Lake and River Ecosystems*. Academic Press, San Diego.

Wetzel, R.G., and Likens, G.E. (2000). *Limnological analyses* (3rd edn). Springer, New York.

Wieser, W. (1986). Die ökophysiologie der Cyprinidenfauna österreichischer Gewässer. *österreichs Fischerei*, **39**, 88–93.

Williams, D.D., and Hynes, HBN (1977). Benthic community development in a new stream. *Can. J. Zool.*, **55**, 1071–1076.

Williamson, C.E., Olson, O.G., Lott, S.E., Walker, N.D., Engstrom, D.R., and Hargreaves, B.R. (2001). Ultraviolet radiation and zooplankton community structure following deglaciation in Glacier Bay, Alaska. *Ecology*, **82**, 1748–1760.

Wiltshire, K.H., and Manly, FBJ (2004). The warming trend at Helgoland Roads, North Sea: phytoplankton response. *Helgol. Mar. Res.*, **58**, 1463–1468.

Winberg, G.G. (1971). *Methods for the estimation of production in aquatic animals*. Academic Press, London.

Winder, M., and Schindler, D.E. (2004). Climate change uncouples trophic interactions in an aquatic ecosystem. *Ecology*, **85**, 2100–2106.

Wium-Andersen, S. (1987). Allelopathy among aquatic plants. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol.*, **27**, 167–172.

Woese, C.R., Kandler, O., and Wheels, M.L. (1990). Towards a natural system of organisms: Proposal for the domains Archaea, Bacteria, and Eucarya. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **87**, 4576–4579.

Wright, R.F. (1983). Input–output budgets at Langtjern, a small acidified lake in southern Norway. *Hydrobiologia*, **101**, 1–12.

Wright, R.F., and Hobbie, J.E. (1966). Use of gluctose and acetate by algae and bacteria in aquatic systems. *Ecology*, **47**, 447–464.

Yachi, S., and Loreau, M. (1999). Biodiversity and ecosystem productivity in a fluctuating environment: the insurance hypothesis. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **96**, 1463–1468.

Yasumoto, K., Nishigami, A., Yasumoto, M., Kasai, F., Okada, Y., Kusumi, T., and Ooi, T. (2005). Aliphatic sulfates released from *Daphnia* induce morphological defense of phytoplankton: isolation and synthesis of kairomones. *Tetrahedron Letters*, **46**, 4765–4767.

Yoshida, T., Jones, L.E., Ellner, S.P., Fussmann, G.F., and Hairston, NGJ (2003). Rapid evolution drives ecological dynamics in a predator-prey system. *Nature*, **424**, 303–306.

Zaika, V.E. (1973). *Specific production of aquatic invertebrates.* Wiley, New York.

Zaret, T.M., and Rand, A.S. (1971). Competition in tropical stream fishes: support for the competitive exclusion principle. *Ecology*, **52**, 336–342.

Zeller, M., Reusch, T.B.H., and Lampert, W. (2006). A comparative population genetic study on freshwater calanoid copepods: Investigation of isolation-by-distance in two *Eudiaptomus* species with a different potential for dispersal. *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, **51**, 117–124.

Zevenboom, W. (1980). Growth and nutrient uptake kinetics of *Oscillatoria agardhii*. Acad. Proefschrift, Amsterdam

Zöllner, E., Santer, B., Boersma, M., Hoppe, H-G, and Jürgens, K. (2003). Cascading predation effects of *Daphnia* and copepods on microbial food webs components. *Freshwat. Biol.*, **48**, 2174–2193.

Glossary

abundance: the number of individuals per unit surface area or volume

acidification: lowering of the pH in lakes and streams through external input of acid compounds, e.g. sulfuric compounds from industrial emissions

adaptation: the process of evolutionary modification that results in improved survival and reproduction (fitness) in a species

aerobic: in the presence of oxygen

akinetes: the resting stage (cysts) of cyanobacteria

albedo: reflection of light from surfaces

alkalinity: the capacity of water to buffer against acidity

allele: one of the various forms of a gene at the same locus

allelopathy: inhibition of competing organisms through excreted chemicals

allocation: distribution of available material for mutually exclusive purposes, e.g., growth and reproduction

allochthonous: imported from outside the system

allopatric speciation: evolutionary divergence that occurs as result of geographic separation of populations

allozyme: gene product of one of several alleles of an enzyme that have the same function, but differ in their structure so that they migrate different distances in an electrophoretic assay. They are used as genetic markers to identify a genotype.

amictic lakes: lakes without complete circulation

ammonification: formation of ammonium from nitrate during nitrate respiration

anabolism: constructive metabolism in which energy is used to transform simple to more complex molecules

anaerobic: in the absence of oxygen

anoxibiosis: life without oxygen, e.g., use of fermentation

anoxic: without oxygen

antibiosis: allelopathy among bacteria and fungi

aphotic zone: dark, deep zone where light is insufficient for photosynthesis

assimilation: incorporation of matter into an organism's biomass

attenuation: reduction of light intensity penetrating a water column

autochthonous: originating from within a system

autotrophy: use of inorganic carbon sources (CO_2, HCO_3) for the formation of an organism's own body matter

bacterioplankton: plankton consisting of bacteria

bacterivory: feeding on bacteria

batch culture: culture of algae or bacteria in a closed volume. Population growth is typically along a sigmoid (logistic) growth curve

benthos: community of organisms living on the bottom

biocoenosis: community living in a specific habitat

biodiversity: the number and variability of species and genotypes in an area

biogeochemical cycles: material cycles consisting of biological and abiotic transformations

biomanipulation: food web manipulation. A method of restoration by "top-down" control of the food web. Removal of planktivorous fish causes increased grazing and lower algal density

biomass: mass of living organisms in a given volume or within a given surface area. Can be used for a population, a community or a functional subgroup

bioturbation: destratification of the uppermost layers of sediment by organisms

birth rate: the number of births per unit population density and time

Blackman model: saturation model showing the biological response to resource availability, having an abrupt transition from limitation to saturation

bloom: massive development of phytoplankton

bottom-up control: regulation of structure and dynamics of a community by the amount of resources

C-14 method: measurement of photosynthesis by incorporation of radioactively labeled CO_2

carnivory: nutrition by feeding on animals

carrying capacity: maximum sustainable population density (biomass) in a given ecosystem

catabolism: breakdown metabolism in which energy is gained by transforming large complex molecules into simpler molecules (final product: CO_2)

catchment: the geographic area from which water is drained to a lake through collecting streams

cell quota: intracellular concentration of a biogenic element, important for the Droop model

chaos: a mathematical term describing a population dynamic behaviour with unpredictable outcome as there is no repetition, equilibrium point or stable population cycle

chemocline: zone of rapid vertical change in the chemistry of a water body, usually associated with the transition from oxic to anoxic conditions

chemostat: a culture apparatus (algae, bacteria) with a continuous exchange of medium. In a steady state, the growth rate equals the flow through rate

chemotaxis: orientation of movements relative to chemical gradients

chemotrophy: the use of exergonic, chemical reactions as an energy source for the synthesis of body matter

chlorophyll: main pigment of photosynthesis

clear-water stage: phytoplankton biomass minimum in the middle of the growth period caused by grazing

climax: the final stage of a succession

coprecipitation: settling out as a complex with an insoluble salt (e.g., phosphorus with ferric hydroxide)

coevolution: mutually dependent evolution of several species

cohort: a group of individuals of the same age that can be identified within a population

colonization: settlement of a species in a new habitat

community: assemblage of interacting populations

compensation depth: depth where photosynthesis and respiration are in balance

competition: mutually negative interaction between species that have common resources

competitive exclusion principle: ecological theory that predicts the eventual exclusion of inferior competitors

consumption rate: amount of resources consumed per unit time

convection: vertical mixing caused by density differences

copepodite: late juvenile stages of copepods

cyclomorphosis: seasonal changes in the morphology of organisms within a population

cyst: overwintering cells of algae and protozoa

decalcification: precipitation of calcite caused by photosynthesis

decomposition: breakdown of organic matter

denitrification: transformation of nitrates to N_2, oxidizing nitrates in nitrate respiration under anoxic conditions

density dependence: decline of growth rates with increasing abundance

desulfurication: microbial reduction of sulfate to hydrogen sulfide

detrital food chain: food chain starting with detritivores

detritivory: nutrition by feeding on detritus

detritus: dead organismal matter

diapause: interruption of the ontogenetic development by a resting period

DIC: dissolved inorganic carbon

dimictic lake: a lake with two complete circulation periods per year

DIN: dissolved inorganic nitrogen

diversity: a measure of species variety

DOC: dissolved organic carbon

DOM: dissolved organic matter

Droop model: an equation that relates algal reproductive rates to internal concentrations (cell quota) of the limiting nutrient

ecological efficiency: the ratio of production rates for adjacent trophic levels

ecological stoichiometry: a theory relating growth and excretion of organisms to the ratios of biogenic elements in the tissue and in the food

egg bank: (or resting stage bank) assembly of dormant eggs (or resting stages) surviving for extended periods in lake sediments before they hatch

electrophoresis: a method for separating molecules with different electrical charges. It involves differences in the speed of migration of such molecules in a gel after an electrical charge has been applied

encystment: formation of cysts

endemism: restriction of a species to a single place

energy flow: transport of energy through trophic chains and food webs

ephippium: a protective case shed by many cladocerans to carry dormant diapause eggs

epilimnion: warm surface layer in a stratified lake

epilithic: growing on rocks

epipelic: growing on mud

epiphytic: growing on plants

equitability: a measure of the evenness of abundance of different species in a community. Maximum e indicates that all species are represented in approximately the same proportions. Minimum e means one species is dominant.

euphotic zone: water layer with sufficient light for photosynthesis

eurythermic: tolerates a wide range of temperatures

euryoecious: tolerant to a wide range of an ecological factor

eutrophic: nutrient-rich and with a high productivity

excess density: difference between the density of a suspended particle and the density of the medium

excretion: release of metabolic products into the water

exoenzyme: enzyme released into the medium

exploitative competition: competition where competitors are disadvantaged by removal of shared resources

exponential growth: population growth at a constant instantaneous rate

external loading: input of nutrients to a lake from its catchment and from the atmosphere
feces: particulate matter released (egested) by animals
femtoplankton: plankton $<0.2\,\mu m$ (viruses and phages)
fermentation: anaerobic respiration where energy is gained by splitting an organic compound into a reduced and an oxidized fragment
filter-feeding: uptake of food particles by sieve-like structures
filtering rate: volume of water that contained the number (or biomass) of particles removed by a "filter-feeder" per unit time (clearance rate)
fitness: expected contribution of a gene, genotype or phenotype to future generations; always relative to other genes or organism that are present in a population
fluctuation: irregular changes of a state variable
food web: network of connected trophic chains
form resistance: deviation of a body from the shape of a sphere, causing it to sink more slowly
functional response: the change in rate of consumption of a resource as a function of the resource density
gas vacuoles: gas-filled vesicles in cyanobacteria cells
genetic drift: random changes of gene frequencies in a population
grazing: removal of entire plants through feeding. In freshwater used to describe the removal of phytoplankton by herbivorous zooplankton or the feeding of benthic animals on periphyton.
greenhouse effect: warming of the biosphere due to anthropogenic changes in the emission of accumulated heat to space, caused by enrichment of the atmosphere with "greenhouse gases" (mainly CO_2 and methane)
gross production: potential production excluding catabolic losses
growth rate: rate of change of a biotic variable; important distinctions are somatic vs. population growth rate, absolute vs. relative growth rate, gross vs. net growth rate
guild: group of species that can be aggregated as they play a similar functional role in the ecosystem (e.g. "shredders" feeding on leaf litter in a stream)
habitat: characteristic residence of a species
hard water: fresh water with high concentrations of calcium and magnesium
Henry's law: dependence of the solubility of gases on partial pressure
herbivory: in the most strict sense, feeding on plants. Used in freshwater studies to describe all types of feeding on living plants and cyanobacteria (e.g., algae)
heterocysts: specialized N_2-fixing cells of cyanobacteria
heterotrophy: use of organic carbon sources for the synthesis of body substances
HNF: heterotrophic nanoflagellates: unpigmented flagellates between 2 and 20 μm
holomictic lake: a lake that circulates to the bottom at least once a year
humus: refractory dissolved organic substances
hydrophilic: surface property causing a close contact between a submerged structure and water molecules (surface gets wet)
hydrophobic: surface property preventing a close contact between a submerged structure and water molecules (organism does not get wet)
hypertonic: a higher osmotic pressure in the cell, relative to the environment
hypolimnion: the cold, deep layer in stratified lakes
hyporheal (hyporheic interstitial): the habitat in the spaces of loosely packed material beneath the bottom of a stream and through which some water flows
hypotonic: a lower osmotic pressure within a cell, relative to the environment
IBP: International Biological Program of UNESCO
ingestion rate: food uptake per animal per unit time
interference competition: competition involving direct impairment of competitors
intermediate disturbance hypothesis: hypothesis predicting peak diversity of species at intermediate frequencies and intensities of disturbances
internal loading: availability of nutrients from sources within a lake, e.g. from the sediments
interspecific: between species
intraspecific: within a species
isotonic: having the same osmotic value as the surrounding medium
kairomone: a substance inevitably released by a predator that induces an antipredator response (behavioral or morphological change) by the prey
keystone species: a predator with a significant role in community organization by controlling species interactions on lower trophic levels
k_s value: the concentration of a resource at which one-half the maximum growth rate is attained
laminar flow: flow with parallel stream lines
Liebig's law: states that the biotic response variables such as growth rates or growth yield are limited by only the single growth factor in shortest supply (e.g., phosphorus or nitrogen)
life history strategy: adaptive feature of a life cycle, e.g. age distribution of birth and death rates, growth rates, and size of offspring
light adaptation: physiological adaptation to prevailing light conditions altering the photosynthetic response to light intensities
light extinction: see attenuation

light inhibition: decreased photosynthesis caused by excessively high light intensity

light limitation: limitation of photosynthesis by low light intensity

light saturation: light conditions allowing for maximum photosynthesis, i.e., neither light limitation nor light inhibition

limiting factor: any factor that limits a biological response (see Liebig's law)

lithotrophy: use of inorganic substances as electron donors by bacteria

littoral: the zone near the lake shore

locus: the position of a gene on the chromosome (DNA strand)

logistic growth: a population growth curve that approaches the carrying capacity asymptotically

macrophytes: higher aquatic plants, including the stoneworts (characeae)

meromictic lakes: lakes with a deep layer (monimolimnion) that never mixes with the upper water

meroplankton: organisms that spend only a part of their life cycle in the plankton community

mesocosm: an artificially enclosed sector of an ecosystem used for experiments

metalimnion: the zone of greatest temperature change in stratified lakes

methanogenesis: anaerobic decomposition of organic matter with methane as the final product

methylotrophy: heterotrophy in which C_1 molecules (methane, methanol, formalde-hyde, etc.) serve as carbon sources

Michaelis-Menten equation: the relationship between consumption rate and resource availability described as a curvilinear function with a smooth transition from limitation to saturation

microbial loop: a pathway in the pelagic cycling of matter in which DOC released by phytoplankton is taken up by bacteria, which in turn are eaten by bactivorous protozoans and then may be passed on to metazoan plankton

microevolution: evolutionary changes on the small scale, e.g., changes in gene frequencies of populations

microsatellites: repetitive, noncoding sequences in the DNA that can be used as markers for genetic fingerprinting

mixed layer: layer above the thermocline that can be mixed by the wind

mixolimnion: the region of a meromictic lake that mixes

mixotrophy: nutrition by both autotrophic and heterotrophic processes

monimolimnion: the deep layer of meromictic lakes that is excluded from mixing

Monod equation: the relationship between reproductive rates of bacteria or algae and the resource concentration described as a curvilinear function with a gradual transition from limitation to saturation

monomictic lakes: lakes with one complete circulation (holomixis) per year

monopolization hypothesis: predicts that species colonizing an empty habitat first have an advantage and can suppress species that arrive later

nanoplankton: plankton with a body size between 2 (3) and 20 (30) μm

nauplius: larval stage of certain crustaceans, e.g., copepods

nekton: the community of organisms capable of active swimming

net production: production after removal of metabolic losses

neuston: the community living in the surface film

nitrate respiration: use of the oxygen in nitrate by bacteria under anoxic conditions. See denitrification

nitrification: oxidation of ammonium to nitrite and nitrate

nitrogen fixation: use of N_2 as a nitrogen source by cyanobacteria

numerical response: dependence of the growth rate (in numbers) of a population of consumers on the resource density

nutrient limitation: limitation of growth rate or biomass yield by a shortage of mineral nutrients

OECD model: empirical eutrophication model for lakes developed by an OECD-sponsored comparative eutrophication study

Oksanen model: a model describing alternating bottom-up and top-down control in communities

oligomictic lakes: lakes that do not mix completely every year

oligotrophic: nutrient poor, with low production

omnivore: an organism that feeds on several trophic levels (e.g. phytoplankton, bacteria, and protozoans)

optimal foraging: the searching for and selection of prey in a way that optimizes the net energy gain

organotrophy: the use of organic substances as electron donors

oscillation: regular, periodic changes in a state variable (e.g., abundance)

osmoregulation: the organism's control of its internal osmotic condition

P–I curve: saturation curve describing the dependence of photosynthesis on light intensity

P/B ratio: the relationship between production and biomass

paleolimnology: the study of past populations in a lake using microfossils (i.e. characteristic remnants of organisms) or chemical markers deposited in the sediments

PAR: (photosynthetically active radiation) radiation that can be used for photosynthesis

paradox of the plankton: the apparent contradiction between the richness of phytoplankton species and the competitive exclusion principle

pelagic region: open water zone

periphyton: the community of microalgae growing on submersed surfaces (aufwuchs)

phagotrophy: ingestion of particles by unicellular organisms through their cell surface

phototaxis: directed movement towards higher (positive p.) or lower (negative p.) light intensities

phototrophic: the use of light as an energy source for the synthesis of body substances

phytoplankton: photosynthesizing plankton, including algae and cyanobacteria

picoplankton: phytoplankton with a body size of <2 (3) μm

planktivorous fish: fish that feed on zooplankton

plankton: the community of organisms suspended in the water

plastron: an incompressible layer of air between the fine hairs of aquatic insects that can serve as a permanent "physical gill"

POC: particulate organic carbon

polymictic lakes: lakes that mix more than twice a year; sometimes even daily in the tropics

polymorphism: Existence of more than one allel at a locus in a population

POM: particulate organic matter

PON: particulate organic nitrogen

predator-prey relationship: an interaction between an organism that serves as a food source (prey) for another organism (predator), used in this book in the widest sense to include herbivory and parasitism

predator-prey cycles: cyclic oscillations of predator and prey populations caused by a time lag between prey consumption and numerical response of the predator

primary production: the synthesis of organic matter from inorganic components (through photosynthesis or chemosynthesis)

production: newly formed biomass (B) of a population or trophic level, including the organic matter eliminated (E) during the period of observation: $P = \Delta B + E$

proximate factor: an environmental factor causing a behavioural or morphological response

q_{10}: the factor by which a chemical or biological reaction rate increases with a temperature increase of 10°C

R^* **value**: the concentration of a resource that results in an equilibrium between birth and death rates

r: mathematical symbol for the growth rate of a population

Redfield ratio: stoichiometric C:N:P ratio of phytoplankton not limited by N or P (106:16:1)

remineralization: transformation of elements from the organic to inorganic phase

resource limitation: limitation of physiological rates or growth rates by resources

resource ratio: ratio of the concentration of two or more potentially limiting resources; according to Tilman's theory, decisive in predicting the outcome of exploitative competition

resources: consumable factors (energy, matter, prey, space) needed for the growth and reproduction of organisms

Reynolds number (Re): a dimensionless number that describes the forces affecting a body moving relative to a fluid (e.g., sinking algae). Re describes the relationship between the forces of inertia and viscosity

rheotaxis: the response of an organism to current

Secchi depth: depth to which a white (black and white) standard disk (Secchi disk) remains visible when lowered into the water

secondary production: production by heterotrophic organisms

sedimentation: sinking of particles heavier than water

seiche: wind induced tilting of the surface and thermocline of a lake

selection: (a) in terms of evolutionary biology: "natural selection" of better-adapted genotypes; (b) physiologically defined: selection between different food types (by active selection or passively through differential retention, e.g., in filter-feeding)

selectivity coefficient: a measure for the relative preference or rejection of a food type

size-efficiency hypothesis: predicts the effect of size-selective predation by fish on the size distribution of prey populations; assumes that large herbivorous zooplankton are better resource competitors, while smaller zooplankton are better protected from fish predation

soft water: fresh water with a low concentration of calcium and magnesium

spring bloom: explosive growth of plankton during the spring

stable isotope analysis (SIA): measurement of the relative abundance of stable (= non-decaying) forms of an atom that differ by the number of neutrons, to investigate the origin of organic material

steady state: dynamic equilibrium where production and removal processes are in balance; equilibrium in a chemostat

stenoecious: limited to a narrow range of an ecological factor

stenotherm: an organism limited in its tolerance to a narrow temperature range

stoichiometry: (chemical) ratio of abundance of different atoms in a compound

succession: the long-term changes in species through time within a habitat (e.g., lake aging) or the regular species changes following disturbances (e.g., seasonal succession of plankton). One must distinguish between *allogenic* succession, driven by external factors (e.g., climatic changes), and autogenic succession, in which the appearance of a species is dependent on the activities of preceding species (e.g., nutrient consumption)

sulfate respiration: anaerobic respiration using sulfate as an oxidizing agent

surface bloom: visible surface aggregation of buoyant cyanobacteria

symbiosis: mutually beneficial interaction between organisms

sympatric speciation: evolutionary divergence that occurs while populations occupy the same geographic area

thermocline: the region of the greatest vertical temperature change in a stratified water body

thymidine method: measurement of bacterial production by incorporation of radioactively labeled thymidine

Tilman's theory: theory of exploitative competition based on the numerical response of competitors to limiting resources

top-down control: control of the structure and dynamics of a community by predators, i.e., control from the highest to the lowest trophic levels

trophic cascade: effects of changes at higher trophic levels that perpetuate down a food chain (top-down control) causing alternating changes in abundance in adjacent trophic levels

trophic level: position in the food chain, defined by the number of energy transfer steps to that position

trophogenic zone: (euphotic zone) upper layer in a lake or river where light is sufficient to allow positive net photosynthesis

tropholytic zone: (aphotic zone) lower zone in a lake or river where light does not suffice for positive net photosynthesis

trophy: nutrient richness of a water body

turbulent flow: flow with irregular stream lines

turnover time: the theoretical time needed to replace a particular pool size at a given input flux rate

ultimate factor: a natural selection factor that has been responsible for the evolution of a trait

uptake rate: the rate at which microorganisms take up dissolved substances

ZNGI line: (zero net growth isocline) in a graphic model of competition it is the line that connects all points on the graph where there is zero growth

zooplankton: animal plankton

This page intentionally left blank

Index

Abiotic
  definition of 1
  factors 36, 147
Abramis brama (bream) 228
Acanthodiaptomus 67
  denticornis 38
Acartia hudsonica 197
Acid rain 18, 41, 259
Acidic lakes 18, 261
Acidification 41, 259–262
  restoration of lakes 259, 262
Adaptations 2–3
  costs of 2
  definition of 1
  to current 45
Adaptive value 3
Age distribution
  graphical model 116
  stable 115–117
Aggregation 118, 205
  functional 206
  taxonomic 206
Aggregations as categories in communities 205–206
Akinetes 35
Algae
  biochemical composition 77–78
  inedible 98
  sinking rates 15, 47–49
Alarm substance 174, 192
Alcaligenes eutrophus 68
Alkalinity 19
  role in preventing acidification of lakes 18, 259
Allele 102
Allele frequencies, of *Daphnia* 102–103, 106, 111
Allelopathic interactions 144–145
Allelopathy 144
Allen curve 80
Allochthonous
  definition of 73
  inputs 210, 225, 229, 241
Allometric function 85
Allometric growth 191
Allozyme analysis 102–105, 192
Allozymes 103
Alnus leaves 203
Alosa pseudoharengus 165, 183–185
Alternation of hosts (in parasitism) 180
Alternative Stable State Hypothesis 281–282
Aluminum 42
  mobilization by acidification 18, 261
  pH effects on 41, 261
  toxicity 42, 261
Amblystoma tigrinum 107–108
Amino acids 70
Ammonification 242
Ammonium 242
  aerobic oxidation 68, 254
  anaerobic oxidation 68
  ion 42
  pH effects on 42
Anabaena 54, 155, 253
Anabolic processes 79
Anaerobic 26, 41, 71
Ancylus fluviatilis 45, 181
Anions 18
Anisops 39–40, 174, 176
Anisus vortex 177
Anodontidae 145, 181
Anoxibiosis 26, 39–40
Aphanizomenon 155, 212, 253
Aphanomyces astaci 180
Aphotic zone 59–60, 81
Archaea, methanogenic 71
Argulus foliaceus (carp louse) 180
Argyroneta (water spider) 39
Arms race, in predator-prey relationships 3, 151, 178, 183
Artemia salina 43
Ascomorpha 155
Asellus aquaticus 44, 82, 109, 208, 275
Asplanchna 53, 170, 174–175, 179
Assimilation, of organic matter 80, 82–84
Assimilation efficiency 82–83, 236
Association of water molecules 12
Astacus astacus 180
Asterionella formosa 36, 66–67, 135, 141, 155, 159, 182, 206
Atmospheric exchange of elements 241
Autochthonous, definition of 73
Autolysis 69
Autotrophic organisms 51, 58
Auxotrophic organisms 51

Bacteria
  anaerobic 68, 71
  chemolithotrophic 51, 68
  chemolithoheterotrophic 51, 69
  denitrifying 51
  desulfurizing 51
  glucose uptake 54
  growth rates of 70
  heterotrophic 51, 68–70
  in-situ diversity 112–113
  methane oxidizing 71
  methanotrophic 71
  nitrate respiring 69
  non-culturable 112
  photosynthetic 63
  production of 81
  purple 51, 60, 63
  sulfur 51, 58, 60, 63
Bacteriophages 180
Bacterioplankton 223
Bacterivores 223
Baetis 173
Balance of nature, concept of 238, 285
Barbus barbus (barbel) 227
Batch culture 55–56
Behavior 35
  in current 44
  ontogenetic changes 195
  predator avoidance 172–173, 177–179, 194–199
Benthic
  food chains 211
  grazers 160–162
  zone of streams 225

Benthic-pelagic coupling 224
Benthivorous fish 168
Benthos, definition of 223
Bioassessment of stream water quality 268–269
Biocoenosis 201
Biocoenotic laws of Thienemann 220–221
Biodiversity, definition 277–278
Biofilm 144
Biogeochemical cycles, concept of 238–240
Biogeography 124, 228
Biomanipulation 212–213
  successful 259
Biomass 6
  accumulation in succession 263, 265
  distribution vs. size 86,-87
  pyramids of 236
  surrogate parameters 249
Biotic, definition of 1
Biotic index, for stream water quality 268–269
Bioturbation 75
  effect on phosphorus in sediments 245
Birth rate 92, 98, 101, 196
  calculation of 100–101
  finite 100
  instantaneous 100
Blackman model 52–53, 60
Blepharoceridae 45
Blooms, of cyanobacteria 155, 253. 255–256, 259
Blue-green algae; see Cyanobacteria
Body size
  ecological importance of 85–86
  effect of predators on 179–180
  effect on feeding rate 85
  in pelagic communities 86, 223
Boeckella 124
Bosmina 155, 192
  coregoni 194
  coregoni thersites 91
  longirostris 214
  longispina 119, 261
Bottom-up control 213–219
  concept of 213
  in streams 215
Boundary layer 14–15, 44–45, 50
Brachionus
  calyciflorus 94, 136–137, 174–175
  rubens 136–137, 175
Breitenbach stream 121
Buffering capacity 18
  prevention of acidification by 18, 259
Buoyancy 22, 47–49
Bythotrephes 169
  cederstroemi 123, 167

Caddisflies 39, 45, 75, 118, 146, 162, 215
Cahora Bassa Reservoir 36
Calanoid copepods 75, 170, 277
Calcium 18, 43, 177
Calcium bicarbonate 17
Calcium carbonate 17, 241
Calcium requirements 44, 177
CAM metabolism 44
Cambarus affinis 44
Campostoma 211
Capture rate 164–166, 170–171
Carassius carassius (crucian carp) 174
Carbon
  cycle 241–142
  flow 208–210
Carbon dioxide 16, 17, 241
  as greenhouse gas 271
  atmospheric increase 271
  consumption 60, 64, 275
  effect of elevated levels 274–275
  equilibrium 17, 18, 58, 64–65, 241
Carbonic acid 17
Carnivore 74, 147, 165
Carrying capacity 93–95, 129, 148
Cascading effects 199, 212, 215, 218
Catabolic processes 79
Catastrophic spates 232
Cations 18
Cell quota 55–57, 67
Ceratium hirundinella 35, 155–156, 222
Ceriodaphnia 122, 146, 156
  dubia 43
  quadrangula 154
Chaetogaster limnaei 181
Chalcalburnus chalcoides mento (bleak) 167
Chaoborus 53, 109, 163, 176–179, 192
  anoxibiosis 40
  buoyancy regulation 48
  effect on *Daphia* helmets 176–177
  effect on *Daphnia* reproduction 187–188
  effect on migration of *Diaptomus* 197–198
  effect on neckteeth 176
  factor 176
  feeding on *Daphnia* 170–171
  feeding on *Holopedium* 172
  vertical migration of 41, 225–227
Chaoborus
  crystallinus 90
  flavicans 90

Chaos, deterministic 10, 94–95
Chara 63, 224
Chemical ecology 145
Chemical induction 174–179
Chemocline 28
Chemolithoautotrophs 68
Chemolithoheterotrophs 51
Chemolithotrophic organisms 51, 235
Chemoorganotrophic organisms 51, 235
Chemoreception 169, 173–179
Chemostat (continuous) culture 55–57, 96
Chemostat experiments 95, 152, 158–159
  phytoplankton diversity in 140
Chesson index 164
Chironomid larvae 39, 75, 118, 209
Chironomus 40, 108, 269
Chlamydomonas 136–137
Chlorella 66
Chloride 18
Chlorobiaceae 63
Chlorophyll 249–250
Chromatiaceae 63
Chromulina 50, 79
Chroococcus 156
Chrysophytes 35, 79, 118, 190, 246
Chydorus 154
Chytridiomycete fungi 181–182
Cichlid fishes 108, 124
Circulation patterns of lakes 22–25
Cladocera 35, 76, 121
Cladophora 118, 162, 254
Clear Lake 109
Clear water phase 6, 110, 142, 151, 264–265
  grazing in 265
  intraspecific competition in 142
  predation in 265
Clearance rate 97, 153
Climate change 271–277
Climax, concept of in succession 262–264
Clinograde; see Oxygen curves
Clones 90, 152, 176, 192
  of *Daphnia* 37, 102, 139, 183
Cluster 12
C:N:P ratio 67, 77, 154, 160
Coarse-grained environment 141
Coccochloris peniocystis 41
Cocconeis 162
Coevolution 151, 180
Coexistence, in competition models 129–135
Cohorts 92, 99
Collectors 75, 230

Colonization 89–90, 115, 120–124, 190
Colony formation in plankton 47, 154, 178–179
Colorado River 118
Commensalism 181
Common garden experiment 103, 108, 110
Communities
  in lakes 222–224
  in streams 228–232
Community
  bacterial 112
  Darwinistic concept 202
  definition of 201–202
  emergent properties 201
  functional characteristics 201
  individualistic concept 202
  neutral theory 202
  self-regulation 202
  structure 202
Community grazing rate 97, 153–154
Comparative eutrophication study model (OECD) 249–251
Compensation level 218
Compensatory flight 46
Competition 127
  chemical factors 144
  direct interactions 142–144
  experiments with pulsed nutrients 140
  exploitative 127
  for light 136
  for one common resource 130–131
  for several resources 132
  for substitutable resources 133, 136–137, 142
  interference 142, 146
  interspecific 143
  intraspecific 143
  mechanical interference 145
  theory 129–135, 139
  under variable conditions 138–142
Competitive exclusion principle 127–128
Conochilus unicornis 48, 172
Constancy 280
Consumption
  maximum rate of 52
  rate 53–54
Consumption vector 132–137
Continuous culture; see chemostat
Coprecipitation 44
Coregonus 99–100, 209–210
  albula 143
  lavaretus 108
Correlation 7, 248
  analysis 7
  apparent 7
  multiple 8
CPOM (coarse particulate organic matter) 230
Crayfish 177–178, 188, 211
Crayfish plague 180
Crenobia alpina 38
Cryptophyceans 79
Cryptomonas 79, 98, 158
Cyanobacteria 20, 35, 41, 46, 51, 63, 66, 140, 144, 162 180, 223
Cycling of matter 238–239
Cyclomorphosis 177, 191–194
Cyclopoid copepods 4, 75, 166, 191
Cyclops 166
  abyssorum tatricus 277
  kolensis 189
  vicinus 189–190
Cyclotella 66, 135

Danube River 122
Daphnia 76, 119
  allelopathic interactions 145
  allocation of energy 187
  allozyme patterns of 104, 106, 111
  as prey of *Bythotrephes* 124
  as prey of *Notonecta* 176, 188
  capture rate by *Chaoborus* 170–171
  capture rate by fish 166
  competition with rotifers 146
  effect of parasites on 182–183
  effect on *Scenedesmus* colonies 179
  feeding on bacteria 205
  feeding rate on *Scenedesmus* 54
  feeding spectra of 77
  food threshold for growth 138, 185
  helmet formation 191–193
  hemoglobin synthesis 40, 102
  impact on microbial food webs 205
  in Lake Washington 256–257
  intraspecific competition by 143
  optimal foraging by sunfish on 84
  parasites 182–183
  phosphorus deficiency in 67, 77
  population cycles in 221–222
  size distribution in a lake 167
  vertical migration 50, 194–198
Daphnia 146
  ambigua 110–176
  carinata 174
  catawba 193
  cucullata 104, 176–177, 191–193
  curvirostris 110
  exilis 110
  galeata 105–106, 110–112, 138, 166, 191, 195–196
  galeata mendotae 191–192
  hyalina 160, 187–188, 191, 195–199
  longispina 38, 101, 122
  lumholtzi 177
  magna 37–38, 41, 43, 83, 105, 122, 145, 154, 183, 213
  mendotae 193
  middendorffiana 277
  obtusa 122
  pulex 102, 105, 192
  pulicaria 38, 85, 110, 138, 143, 274
  retrocurva 191
  thorata 274
Day-length, as trigger 189
Dead man playing by *Bosmina* 172
Death rate 92, 98–101, 196
Decalcification, biogenic 18
Decomposition 25, 69
Deduction 5
Deep chlorophyll maximum (DCM) 118
Defecation 82–83
Defense
  against grazing 154–156
  against predators 48, 163, 167, 170–179, 193
  evolution of 48, 151–152
  of territories 145–146
  strategies 151
Defences
  chemical 145, 173
  constitutative 151
  costs of 173–174, 176, 178, 193–194
  inducible 151, 174–179, 193
Demography 114–117, 187
Denitrification 69, 241, 254
  in streams 269
Density 6
Density anomaly 12, 21
Density-dependent regulation 56, 93–94
Density-independent limitation 93
Desulfovibrio 69
Desulfurication 69
  in streams 269
Detergents 253
Deterministic chaos 10, 94–95
Detritivore 74, 237, 266
Detritus 71–73
  nutritional value of 73
Detritus food chain 237
DGGE (Degenerating gradient gel electrophoresis) 112–113
Diapause 3, 35, 110, 189–190
Diapause egg bank 110, 189
Diaphanosoma
  birgei 214
  brachyurum 154, 166

Diaptomus 170, 197, 199
leptopus 171–172
nevadensis 171–172
pallidus 166
sanguineus 189–190
DIC (dissolved inorganic carbon) 26, 64, 210, 241
Dicamptodon 168
Diel drift cycles 46, 172–173
Diel vertical migration
by algae 36
by zooplankton 41, 50, 194–199, 277
costs of 295
effect of fish smell on 197–198
effects on phytoplankton 199
reverse 197
Diffusion
eddy 13
heat 13
through boundary layers 39
Dinobryon 79, 155
Dinophyceans 79
Diphyllobothrium latum 181
Dispersal 46, 109, 120–124, 279
Distribution 117–120
clumped 118
even 117
geographical boundaries 124
ideal free 119
limits of 34, 37
spatial 90
of stream organisms 142
random 117
vertical 118
Disturbance 29, 221–222, 230–231, 262
Diversity
causes and maintenance 220–222
effects of grazing on 221
functional 278
indices 220–222, 230
latitudinal trend 220
local vs. regional 279
Diversity-productivity relationship 279–280
Diversity-stability hypothesis 277, 280
DNA 104–109
bar coding 108
mitochondrial 103, 124
ribosomal 103, 112
sequencing 108–109
DOC (dissolved organic carbon) 19, 69, 276
labile 19
refractory 19
uptake by animals 72
uptake by bacteria 70
sources of 69, 210, 241
DOM (dissolved organic matter) 19, 235
DON (dissolved organic nitrogen) 243
Doroneuria 173
Dorosoma cepedianum 165
Doubling time 92
Drapanocladus sendtneri 63
Dreissena polymorpha (zebra mussel) 123, 145, 168, 224–225
Drift
genetic 105
stream 46, 84, 172
Droop model 56, 67
Dynamic equilibrium 96
Dystrophic lakes, characteristics of 251
Dytiscus 169

Echolocation 226–227
Ecological efficiency 236–237, 250
Ecological genetics 102–112
Ecology
and economy 285
and environmental sciences 285
and society 284–285
applied 285
definition of 284
Ecosystem 31
anthropogenic disturbances 252–262
cycling of matter in 238–239
definition of 234–235
energy flow through 234–235, 238
energy sources for 235
engineers 234
health 235, 285
manipulation 9
maturation of 264
productivity 248–251
source or sink of greenhouse gases 275
stability 277
Ectoparasites 180–181
Egeria densa 61
Egg development time 38, 100–101
Egg-ratio method 101
El Niño Southern Oscillation (ENSO) 271
Elasticity of ecosystems 280–281
Electivity index 164
Electron acceptor 27, 39, 68
Electron donor 27
Electrophoresis 102–105
Elodea 64, 212
Emergent properties of communities 201–202
Empirical models of ecosystems 248–251
Enclosures 8–9, 139, 197, 212–214
Encystment 35
by dinoflagellates 35
control of 35–36
Endemism 124
Endoparasites 180–181
Endosymbiosis 183
Energy
allocation 82–83
content of food 78
gain 166
inorganic sources of 68
utilization 79, 230–231
Energy balance equation 80, 82–83
Energy flow, diagrams of 203, 235–238
Energy transfer 236
efficiency of 82, 236
through ecosystems 235–238
Ephippia 35, 110, 121–123
Ephippia bank 110–111
Epibionts, diatoms and ciliates 181
Epilimnion 22–25, 49
Epilithic benthos, definition of 223
Epineuston 50
Epiphytic algae 118, 162
Epischura 170, 184
Equilibrium conditions 95–96
Equilibrium food concentration 138
Equilibrium point 131, 150
Equitability, in diversity measures 220
Eristalomyia 39
Errors, sampling and subjective 6
Escape behaviour of zooplankton 163, 166, 172–173
Esox lucius (northern pike) 174
Eudiaptomus 84, 155–156
gracilis 105
graciloides 106
Euler formula 117
Euphotic zone 21, 47, 60
Euplotes 178
European Water Framework Directive 262
Euryoecious 33
Eurytherms 37
Eutrophic lakes, characteristics of 251–252
Eutrophication 210, 254–261
as a disturbance to communities 282
concept of 252, 256

effects on littoral zone 254
history 252
nutrient control 252
self-acceleration of 254
Evaporation 22
Evolution 102, 151–152, 185
allopatric 108
prerequisites of 1
Exclosures 8–9
Excretion losses 82
Exoenzymes 19, 73, 243, 245
Experiment
laboratory and field 9
whole lake 210, 214
Experimental Lakes Area (ELA) 9

Fatty acids, essential (see PUFA)
Feces 82, 224
Fecundity, age-specific 114–115
Feedback 129
Feeding
selectivity 163–171
types of 74
Feeding rate 54, 85
Fermentation 71
Ferrobacillus 68
Fertilizer 253–254
Filinia 37, 163
Filter feeders 54
Filter mesh size 76–77, 154
Filtering
costs of 85
in current 45, 76
interference with 156
rate 153
structures 45, 76
Fine-grained environment 141
Fischerella
Fish kill 121, 212, 214
Fish yield, phosphorus model of 250–251
Fitness 1,37, 181, 186, 195
components of 2
Flabelliforma magnivora 183
Flagellates 147, 158
heterotrophic 73, 179–180, 204–205, 237
Floating, problem of 48
Flow 13–16, 28–29
in streams 28–29, 44–46
laminar 14–15, 47
streamlines 14–15
turbulent 14
Flow cytometers 74
Flow field 45
Flowing wave 247, 266
Fontinalis antipyretica 63
Food
energy content of 78
preference, ontogenetic changes 165–167, 204
quality 77–79, 274
selection 77, 154–156, 163–170
spectra overlap 142
Food-chain 202–205, 223
benthic 211
length 210, 236
manipulation 212–213
Food web 202–205
analysis with SIA 206–210
concept 203–204
coupling 205–205
metazoan 204
microbial 204–205
structure 203
Foraging, process of 162–163
Form resistance 48
Founder effect 105, 109
FPOM (fine particulate organic matter) 230
Fragilaria crotonensis 98
Fragillariaceae 140–14
Frequency-dependent selection 109
Functional aggregation 206
Functional feeding groups, in streams 230
Functional genes 114
Functional response curves 52–54, 83, 85

Galaxias 173
Galba trunculata 208
Galionella 68
Galloping eutrophication, effect of phosphorus 245
Gammarus 45, 275
effect of pH on 41
lacustris 41, 118
pulex 208
Gas vacuoles 47, 118
Gases
dissolved 16
relative saturation 16
Gasterosteus aculeatus 208
Gelatinous sheath
as adaptation to reduce sinking 47–48, 172
as predator defence 155–156, 172
Gene flow 2, 89
Gene frequency 103
Gene pool 1, 89–90
Genetic
differentiation 103, 108–111
diversity 103, 108–111
drift 2, 105
exchange 106
fingerprints 108, 112
relatedness (kin) 103
structure of populations 102
Genotype 102
multi locus 104
Genotypic variability 102–103, 151, 189, 197
Gerris 50
Ghost of competition past 128
Gill 39, 165
physical 39
Global warming
biological responses to 271–274
ice-breakup 274
mismatch of plankton 273–274
predictions 271
Glochidia larvae 181, 186
Graben lakes 124
Grazing
as loss to algal populations 97, 152, 225
by protozoans 158, 204–205
on periphyton 160–162
resistance 154–156, 263
role in clear-water phase 152–153
Grazing rate 97, 153, 157
Great Lakes of North America 123, 224–225
Great Salt Lake 42
Greenhouse gases 271, 275
Gross growth rate of populations 92, 96–98
Gross production
definition 79
efficiency (K_1) 82–83, 236
Großer Plöner See 105
Growth
exponential 93
gross efficiency 83
logistic 93–94, 129
kinetics of 55
net efficiency 83
strategies 187–188
threshold concentration for 84, 185
Growth rate
gross 92, 96, 157–158
net 92–93, 96, 157–158
numerical 54–55, 91–92
population 55, 92, 101, 115
resource-saturated 53–54, 96
somatic 91
specific 55, 92
Guilds, functional categories of feeding 203
Gymnodinium 79, 206

Habitat requirements 33
Habitat Templet Concept 231–232
Handling time 53, 168
Hard waters 290
Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium 103
Heat
  exchange 21
  tolerance 36
Hemoglobin 40
  in *Daphnia* 40, 102
Henry's law 16, 39
Herbivores 74, 144, 147, 153
Hesperoperla 170
Heterocope borealis 190
Heterocysts 66
Heterogeneity
  spatial 142, 232
  temporal 142, 232
Heterotrophic potential 70
Hilsenhoff biotic index 268–269
HNF (heterotrophic nanoflagellates) 73, 179–180, 204–205, 237
Holistic concept of ecosystems 234, 247
Holling's functional response models 53, 85
Holomictic lakes 24–25
Holopedium gibberum 43, 48, 154, 172, 176
Homoiosmotic organisms 42
Homothermic 22
Hubbard Brook 248
Humic acids 18, 70
Humic substances 21, 44
Hyalella azteca 83
Hydra 183
Hydraulic retention time 251
Hydrilla verticillata 61, 64
Hydrobius retardus 178
Hydrogen ion, retention 251
Hydrogen sulfide 16, 58, 60
Hydrophilic 13
Hydrophobic 13, 50
Hydropsyche 76
Hydrosere 262
Hydrostatic pressure 17, 63
Hydrothermal vents 235
Hygrohypnum 63
Hypereutrophic lakes, characteristics of 251–252
Hypertonic regulation 43
Hypolimnion 22
  aeration of 259
Hyporheic interstitial 46
Hyporheic zone of streams 46, 225
Hypothesis
  falsification 4–6
  probabilistic 5
  testing 4–6
Hypothetico-deductive method 5
Hypotonic regulation 42

Ice, optical characteristics 21
Illies' zonation scheme 228
Incipient limiting concentration 83
Indicator species 225–228, 261, 267–270
Individualistic concept of communities 202
Individuals, characteristics of 33
Induction 5
Inedible algae 155–156, 213
Ingestion, concept of 82
Ingestion rate 38, 83, 153
Insurance hypothesis 191, 279
Interactions, strong vs. weak 201
Interference competition 146
Interference of grazing by algae 256
Intermediate Disturbance Hypothesis 139, 221–22
Intermittent mixing, in lake restoration 259
International Biological Programme (IBP) 80, 237, 248, 250
Invasion 123, 190
Invasive species 123
Invisibility of prey 171
Ions 18, 42
Iron 27–28
  as micronutrient 19, 67
  oxidation 27, 28, 245
Iron sulfide 28
Isoetes 64
Isolation by distance 106–107

K-selection 120
K-strategy 120
Kairomones 174–179, 188, 192
  chemical nature 179
Keratella 163
  quadrata 146, 191
  testudo 174
Keystone species (keystone predators) 123, 211–213, 238, 262
Königsee 20, 26
k_s value 57, 65–66, 70

Lake Annecy 210
Lake Baikal 124, 223
Lake Biel 26
Lake Constance 73, 110, 209–210, 254
  annual phosphorus loading in 253
  competition experiments with phytoplankton from 131, 140
  decrease in PAR light with depth 20, 21
  efficiency of light use in photosynthesis 80
  euphotic zone in 21
  eutrophication 111–112
  light attenuation by chlorophyll a in 80
  nutrient control in 2
  long-term phytoplankton densities in 91
  POC size fractions, with season in 74
  populations of edible and inedible phytoplankton in 98
  restoration 111, 256–258
  seasonal succession of phytoplankton in 265
  seasonal succession of plankton in 264–266
  size distribution of biomass in 87
  trophic conditions in 110–112, 251–252
  tubificid worms and pollution in 224
  uptake kinetics of DOC in 70
  vertical migration of *Daphnia* species in 195–196
  vertical profiles of photosynthesis in 61
  zebra mussels in 123
Lake Erie 67, 252–253
Lake Erken 54, 67, 70
Lake Geneva 209–210
Lake Lenore 18, 171–172
Lake Malawi 124
Lake Mephremagog 161
Lake Nakuru 18, 20
Lake Neusiedl 91
Lake Nyos 17
Lake Ohrid 124
Lake Ontario 252–253
Lake Øvre Heimdalsvatn 99
Lake St. George 215–216
Lake Tahoe 20, 21, 63
Lake Tanganyika 124, 161
Lake Trummen 190
Lake typology 251–252
Lake Victoria 124
Lake Washington, case study of eutrophication 256–257
Lake Windemere 206
Lake Zürich 63, 254
Lakes
  acidified 18

as islands 31, 89, 120
fault block depression 124
humic 44, 210
shallow 282
trophic classification 251–252
Lake snow 73
Land-water boundary 31
Lates nilotica 123–124
Lawrence Lake 241–242
Leaf litter 73, 274–275
Lembadion 178–179
Lepomis macrochirus (bluegill sunfish) 165, 169
Leptodora 169, 171, 184, 193
Leptothrix 68
Leucotrichia pictipes 145, 162
Leuctra 46
Liebig's law of the minimum 55
Life cycle 115, 120, 186
adaptation 35, 191, 274
evolution of 186
programmed 188–189
Life history strategy 117, 120, 185–191
evolution of 185
Light 19
adaptation 62–63
as a resource 58, 135
compensation depth 59, 60
energy flow density 20
extinction 19
global radiation 19
limitation 60–64
photon flux density 20
photosynthetically active radiation (PAR) 18, 20, 61
reflection 19
transmission 19–20
ultraviolet 19, 196
units of measure 20
utilization efficiency 79–80
vertical attenuation coefficient 19–20
visible 19
wavelength 19–20
Limit cycle 150
Limnothrix 63, 253
Lipids 78
Lithotrophic organisms 51
Littoral zone, definition of 223
Littorella 64, 144
Lobelia 64
Local adaptation 110–111, 151
Loch Ness 93–94, 209
Logistic growth curve 129
Longevity 186
Long-term data series 90–91, 274
Lotka-Volterra model
of competition 129–130, 143
of predation 147–148
Lyell's Principle 128
Lymnea stagnalis 39, 177

Macrobrachium australiense 109
Macrograzer 161
Macronutrients 65, 67
Macrophytes 144, 213, 224
definition of 60, 223
depth zonation 63–64
light requirements 61
use of dissolved inorganic carbon 64–65
Magnesium 18
Manganese 68
Margaritifera margaritifera 44, 186
Match-mismatch hypothesis 273–274
Mathematical models 10
Maturation 185–188, 191
Mechanoreception 169–172
Meromixis 24, 28
Mesocosms 8, 9, 213, 218–219, 280
definition 8
Mesotrophic lakes, characteristics of 251–252
Metabolic activity 79
Metabolic losses 80, 82
Metalimnion 22
Metallogenium 68
Metapopulation 89–90, 109
Metazooplankton 237
Methane 16
anaerobic oxidation 71–72
as greenhouse gas 271
atmospheric concentration 271
ebullition 71, 275
emission 275
food-web transfer 209
isotopic signature 209
oxidation 71
production 71
vertical profile of 71–72
Methanogenesis 275
Methanogenic archaea 71
Metschnikowia bicuspidata 182
Michaelis-Menten model 52–53, 61, 65, 70
Microbial food webs 179
size structure 179–80
Microbial loop
general features 204–205, 237
link or sink? 237
Microcoleus vaginatus 162
Microcosmos 8–9, 279, 281
definition 8
Microcystin 156
Microcystis 47, 155–156, 253
aeruginosa 67, 111–112
Microevolution 103, 109–112, 151–152, 189–190
Microfossils 247
Microhabitats, in the littoral region 224
Micronutrients 44, 65, 67
Micropatchiness, in nutrients 159
Micropterus (small mouth bass) 211
Micropterus salmoides (large mouth bass) 168
Microsatellites 105–107
Microturbulance detection by predators 170
Migration
diel vertical 36, 41, 50, 194–199
fish 121, 168
horizontal 168, 199
Minimum factor 55
Mixed layer 22–24, 49
Mixodiaptomus laciniatus 38
Mixolimnion 28
Mixotrophic organisms 51
Mixotrophy 69, 78, 79
Models
deterministic 10
simulation 10
stochastic 10
Molekular markers 103–109
Monimolimnion 28
Monoclimax theory 262–263
Monocultures 144
Monod equation 55, 65, 67, 131
Monopolization Hypothesis 123
Monoraphidium 136–137
Morphometry, importance for trophic conditions 251–252
Mortality 91, 93, 97, 195–196
causes of 147
due to parasitism 97
size-dependent 187
Mougeotia 159, 261
Mutualism 183
Mycosporine-like amino acids (MAAs) 277
Myriophyllum 64
Mysis relicta 37
Myth creation 277

N:P ratio 77, 135, 240
Nanoplankton
definition of 223
production of 237
Natural selection 1, 102, 188–190, 199

Nautococcus mammilatus 50
Neckteeth 174, 176, 193
Nekton, definition of 222
Neothremma 45
Nereis diversicolor 42
Net growth rate of populations 92–93, 96–98
Net heterotrophy 241, 274
Net plankton, definition of 223
Net production
  definition 79
  efficiency (K_2) 83, 236
Neuston
  attachment mechanisms of 50
  definition of 50, 223
Niche 128
  competitive exclusion 127
  ecological 34, 128
  fundamental 34–36
  hypervolume 34
  overlap of 128, 142
  realized 34–336, 128
Nile River 247
Nitrate 242–243
  injection into sediments 259
  respiration 69
Nitrate ammonification 69, 242, 269
  in streams 334
Nitric acid 18
Nitrification 68, 242
Nitrobacter 68, 127, 183
Nitrogen 16, 27
  assimilation 27
  biochemical transformations of 243
  dissolved 16, 242
  fixation 66
  loading 253
  regenerated 242
  time-space distributions of 239
Nitrogen cycle 242–244
  in lake with anoxic hypolimnion 243
Nitrogenase 66, 242
Nitrosomonas 68, 127, 183
Noemacheilus barbatulus 208
Nonsubstitutable resources 55, 132
Norfolk Broads 211
North Atlantic Oscillation (NOA) 271–272
Nostocaceae 66, 206
Notolpa sublineata 109
Notonecta 170, 178, 187–188
Nutrient cycles, closed 238, 241, 263, 265
Nutrient limitation 65
Nutrient loading 240, 251–254
Nutrient spirals, in streams 247–271
Nutrients
  balance 241
  diffuse sources 240, 258
  essential 18, 54
  micropatchiness 159
  microzones of 139
  mineral 65
  pulses of 140
  regeneration by zooplankton grazing 139, 156–160
  release from sediments 241
Nymphaea 63

Ochromonas 79
OECD eutrophication study 251–252
Oksanen model of vertically alternating controls 217, 236
Oligotrophic lakes, characteristics of 251–252
Oligotrophication 255–258, 261
Olszewski tube 259
Omnivores 74, 205
Oncorhynchus (Pacific salmon) 50, 99, 186, 274
  gairdneri (rainbow trout) 167
Onondaga Lake 110
Opportunistic species 121, 186
Optimal foraging 84–85
Optimization 2, 199
Optimization of feeding 84–85
Optimum 33–34
Orconectis virilis 188
Organotrophic organisms 51
Ortho-silicic acid 246
Orthograde; see Oxygen curves
Orthophosphate 246
Oscillations, in populations 90, 94–95, 148–150, 152
Osmoregulation 42, 43
Overwintering 35
Oxidation level 27
Oxygen 23, 38
  cellular exchange of 39
  conformers to 40
  consumption 24, 82
  dissolved 16
  production 24
  regulators of 40
  supersaturation 17, 25, 251
  vertical profiles of 24
Oxygen balance 25
Oxygen curves 25–26, 251

P:B ratio 81
  changes with succession 265–267
P:R ratio
  in succession 263
  in streams 229–230, 266
P-I curve 60–63, 79
Palaemonetes varians 42
Paleolimnology 110, 239, 247
PAR, see Light
Paradox of the plankton 128
Paramecium 128
  aurelia 127
  caudatum 127
Parasite 147
  life cycle 181–182
  population growth rates 182
Parasite-host relationships 127, 180
Parasites
  of *Daphnia* 182–183
  of phytoplankton 181–182
Parasitism 180–183
Parthenogenesis 186, 192
  cyclic 186
Particle
  capture 77
  counters 74–75
  size 47, 73–75, 77, 154
Partial pressure 16
Particulate feeders 73
Pasteuria ramosa 183
Patchiness 6
Paul Lake 210
PCR (polymerase chain reaction) 104
Pediastrum 155
PEG model (Plankton Ecology Group) 264–265
Pelagic zone 222
Per capita growth rate 92
Perca fluviatilis (perch) 50, 83, 167, 169, 208, 211–212
Peridinium 154
Peridinopsis 79
Periphyton 60, 141, 224, 279–280
  biomass 161, 177–178, 212 215, 280
  effect of grazers on 161, 211
  grazing on 145, 16–162, 177–178, 209
Permafrost 275–276
Peter Lake 210
pH 17, 259–262
  effect of photosynthesis 26
  preference of diatoms 261
  tolerance to 41
Phagocytosis 78, 153
Phagotrophy 79
Phenotype 1–2, 102, 151, 188
Phenotypic plasticity 151–152, 192
Phenotypic variability 102
Phosphorus
  external loading in Schlachtensee 256
  in sediment-water boundary 245

iron complexes 245
limitation 65–66
loading in Lake Constance 253, 258
loading-phosphorus concentration model 251
Phosphorus cycle 243–245
general features of 243–244
in a stratified lake 246
Phosphorus-chlorophyll *a* model, regression 249–250
Phosphorus-fish yield model, regression 250–251
Phosphorus-primary production model, regression 249
Photoautotrophs 51
Photolithoautotrophs 51
Photosynthesis 20, 23–24, 58
^{14}C method 58
energetics 79
formula 26, 58
gross 60
light inhibition 60–64
light limitation 60–64, 79
light saturation 60–64, 79
net 60
oxygen method 58
quantum yield coefficient 79
Photosynthetic rate
measurement of 58–60
vertical profiles of 59
Phototrophic organisms 51, 235
Phragmites 63
Phylogeography 108
Physella 211
gyrina 177
virgata 188
Physiological mortality 97
Physiological optimum 33–34
Phytoplankton
doubling time 92
effect of pH on 201
fungal parasitism 181–182
grazing resistance 154–156
loss rate 49, 92, 97
populations of 96
production:biomass ratio in 81
stoichiometry 160
Picoplankton 154, 204, 220, 223, 237
PIE (probability of interspecific encounters) 220
Pigmentation in copepods 171–172, 277
Piona 170
Piscicola geometra 180
Piscivores 165, 169, 179–180, 211–213
Planktivores 165
Planktivorous fish 165–167, 179–180, 211–213
Plankton, definition of 29, 222
Plankton "clouds" 118–119
Plankton Towers 119, 197–198
Planktosphaeria 155–156
Planktothrix
agardhii 63, 66
rubescens 63, 254
Planorbis 39, 177
Plastron 40
Plitwicz lakes 18
Plußsee
Ceratium population and cyst formation in 35
comparison of oxygen curves in 25
fine layering of chlorophyll *a* in 24
glucose uptake in 74
seasonal changes in phytoplankton populations in 222
silicon and diatoms in 247
vertical profiles of nitrate, nitrite and ammonium in 243
vertical profiles of oxygen in 26
POC (particulate organic carbon) 72, 210, 241–242
Poikilosmotic organisms 42
Polyarthra 163
Polycelis felina 38
Polyclimax theory 263
Polymictic lakes 24–25
Polymorphic genes 102–103, 109
Polyphemus 169, 199
Polysaprobic zone 269
POM (particulate organic matter) 72, 77
general features 72
biochemical composition 77–79
energy content 78
nutritional value 77–79
Pomoxis annularis 165
Pool size, in ecosystem models 235
Population
abundance 90–91
age structure 90, 99–100, 114
carrying capacity 93–96
definition of 89
density 90
dynamics 91–92, 96, 98, 101
export 91–92, 96
extinction 89
genetic structure of 102–103
import 91–92, 96
losses to sedimentation 97
oscillations 90, 94–95, 143, 150, 152
phytoplankton 91
Population growth 55, 92, 98, 115
density-dependent control of 93–95
lag phase of 94–95
maximization of 187
stationary phase of 56
Potamobius fluviatilis 42
Potamogeton 64, 224
lucens 61
pectinatus 61
perfoliatus 208
schweinfurtii 61
strictus 63
Potamon 228
Potassium 18
Prandtl boundary layer 15–16
Predation
efficiency 236
size-selective 165–170, 179–180
Predator avoidance hypothesis for vertical migration 196–199
Predator-prey cycles 150, 221–222
Predator-prey models
Lotka-Volterra 147–148
Rosenzweig-Mac Arthur 148–151
Predator-prey relationships 127, 147–152, 179–180, 204
Predators
ambush 163
general features of 75, 147
in streams 170, 211, 230
invertebate, characteristics 165, 169
preference of 164
visually orienting 164
vertebate, characteristics 165
Predictability of environmental conditions 31
Prey
detection 163, 169
encounter 162–163, 170–171
handling 163, 170–171
optimal 168
preference 165–170
Primary consumers, definition of 203
Primary production 58
in IBP ecosystem studies 249
geographical trends 249
Probability of encounter 163
Problem algae 253
Production
bacterial 70
by heterotrophic microorganisms 81
efficiency of 82–83
gross 79
net 79
secondary 80–89

Productivity 25
Profundal zone 223–224
Protozoa 74, 178, 204, 223
Proximate factors
  definition 3
  regulating cyclomorphosis 192
  regulating vertical migration 195
PUFA (polyunsaturated fatty acids) 77, 78
Puget Sound 256

Q_{10} 37

r-selection 120
r-strategy 120
Radiation, see Light
Radix ovata 208
Rana
  pirica 178
  temporaria 178
Ranatra dispar 84–85
Reaction distance of fish 165–168
Reaction norm 33, 37, 102–103, 112
Rectilinear model 53–54
Redfield ratio 67
Redox, in sediment-water boundary 245, 259
Redox potential 27, 28
  annual cycle 28
Refractory substances
  accumulation in succession 263
  in streams 230
  in ecosystems 235
Regression analyses
  in empirical models 248
  role of scale in 248
Reproduction 185–186
  continuous 99
  discrete 98–100
  population 91
  rate of 92
Resistance
  (inertia) 280–281
  to grazing 156, 204–205
  to pollution 109
  to toxic cyanobacteria 111
Resource competition, mechanistic theory of 130
Resource consumption vector 132–135
Resource limitation, theory of 53–54, 265
Resource supply vector 132–135
Resources
  availability of 132, 146
  competition for 130–135
  consumption of 50–54, 129–135
  consumption of, definition 51
  essential 54, 58, 132
  light as 58
  nonsubstitutable 55, 132
  optimal ratio of consumption 132–135
  optimal utilization 231
  overlap of food spectra 142
  substitutable 55, 132–133
Respiration
  aerobic 39, 82–83
  anaerobic 40, 68
  effect of body size on 86
Respiratory quotient (RQ) 82
Resting egg pool 110, 189–190
Resting eggs 101, 110, 189–190
Resting stage 35, 121, 190
Restoration 190
  of Lake Constance 256–258
  of Lake Washington 256–257
  of lakes 254–261
Restriction fragment-length polymorphism 107–108
Reverse migration 194, 197–198
Reversion, effect of disturbance on succession 262–266
Reynolds number (Re) 14–16, 45, 47, 76
Rheotactic organisms 46
Rhine River 29, 31, 121, 225
Rhithrogena 45
Rhithron 228
Rhizophydium planktonicum 182
Rhodomonas 62, 91
Rhodospirillaceae 63
Risk reduction by prey 170–174
River continuum concept 228–231
River plankton 225
Rosenzweig-MacArthur model 148–151
Rotenone, use to eliminate fish 212
Rotifers 146–147, 163, 192, 223
Round Lake 212
Rutilus rutilus (roach) 168–169

Salamandra salamandra 108
Saline lakes 18, 171
Salmo
  salar (Atlantic salmon) 50, 186
  trutta (brown trout) 173, 215, 227
Salmonid fishes 31
Salvelinus fontinalis (brook trout) 165, 215, 262
Sampling
  effect 278
  error 6
  frequency 7
Saprobic system 267–270
Saproby 267
Saturation
  curve 52–53
  relative 16, 17
Scapholeberis mucronata 223
Scenedesmus 83, 138, 178
Schluchsee 99–100
Schluensee 208–209
Schlachtensee 256
Schöhsee
  cyanobacteria and P:N ratio in 140–141
  Daphnia population dynamics in 101
  diatoms and Si:P ratio in 141
  light and temperature profiles in 20
  mesocosms in 9
  phosphorus fractions in 245
  trophic features of 251–252
  vertical migration of zooplankton in 194
  water transparency in 20
  zooplankton grazing on phytoplankton in 153
Scrapers 74, 230
Secchi transparency 21
Second Law of Thermodynamics 79
Secondary consumers, definition of 203
Secondary producers, definition of 203
Secondary production
  definition of 80
  estimation of 80–81
Sediment feeders 75
Sedimentation rate 97
Sediments, as nutrient sinks 239, 245
Selective factors 48, 102, 105, 109, 186
Selectivity coefficient, grazing 97–98, 154–156
Selectivity indicies 164
Self-purification, in streams 266–271
Self-regulation
  in predator-prey systems 149–150
  of communities 202
  of ecosystems 248
Sewage diversion 256
Shannon-Weaver diversity index (H') 220–222
Sheaths, mucilaginous 47–48, 155–156, 172
Shell strength 44, 177
Shoreline avoidance 199
Shredders 73, 75, 230
Si:P ratio 135, 140, 159, 215

Sialis 170
Sida cristallina 154
Sieve of lethal limits concept of communities 202
Silicon 19, 66
Silicon cycle 245–247
Silver Springs 238, 248
Simocephalus vetulus 83
Simuliidae 76
Simulium 146, 170
Sinking 15
  losses due to 49, 97
  problem of 49
  velocity 15, 47–49
Size-Efficiency Hypothesis (SEH) 183–185
Size-structured interactions 179
Sloppy feeding 157
Soap Lake 18, 171–172
Soda lakes 18
Sodium 18
Sodium carbonate 18
Soft waters 240
Space-for-time substitution 263
Species
  diversity 219–22
  loss 278
  richness 219–222, 278–280
Specific growth rate of populations 92
Sphaerocystis 156
Sphaerotilus natans 269
Sphagnum 261
Spirogyra 254
Spirulina 20
Spreading of the risk 190–191
Spumella 158
SRP (soluble reactive phosphorus) 244–245
Stability
  classes of 280–281
  concept of community stability 231
  ecosystem 277–278
Stable age distribution 115–117
Stable isotopes 46, 73
  as tracers 46, 210
  depletion 206–208
  food-web analysis 206–210
  fractionation 207
  signature 206–210
Statospores 35
Staurastrum 48, 154
Steady-state
  and competition 131
  concept 96
  equilibrium 55–57, 96, 131, 230–231
Stenoecious 33
Stenotherms 37
Stephanodiscus
  astraea 47
  minutus 66
Stictochironomus 173
Stizostedion lucioperca (pikeperch) 169
Stoichiometry 55, 67, 78, 158, 160–162, 239
Stoke's Law 47
Stomach content 142–143, 167
Stong interactions, within a community 201
Stratification
  annual cycle 23
  fine structure 23
  temperature dependence 22–23
Stratiotes aloides 144–145
Stream
  algae 44
  bottom types of 29
  floods in 29
  flow in 28, 44
  gases in 30
  oxygen in 30–31
  plankton in 29
  velocity of 29
  temperature of 30
Streambed 29, 44, 225
Stream ecosystem 247–248
Stream order 29–30
Streams
  are they ecosystems? 247–248
  as continuous systems 228–231
  classifications of 225–228
  headwater 29–30
  types of 225–228
Subitaneous eggs 189–190
Subpopulations 90
Succession 262–268
  allogenic 262
  autogenic 262
  autotrophic 263
  ecological 231
  features of 262
  general trends in 263–264
  heterotrophic 263, 266
  long-term 262–264
  maturation of ecosystems in 264
  primary 263
  seasonal 264–266, 272–273
Sulfate 18, 259–260
Sulfur 27
Sulfur bacteria 51, 58, 60, 63
Sulfuric acid 18, 259
Summer depression of *Daphnia* 188
Superorganism concept of ecosystems 201–202, 234
Surface blooms, of cyanobacteria 253
Surface film 50, 223
Surface tension 13, 50
Surrogate parameters 90, 248
Survival curves 41, 114–115
Survival probability 114–115, 185
Swarms 119–120, 168, 189
Swimming
  activity 49
  energetic costs of 50, 194, 198
Symbiosis 127, 183
Synchaeta 163
Synechococcus 68
Synedra 158
  acus 48, 182
  filiformis 65–66

Tanytarsus 251–252
Taxonomic aggregation 206
TDP (total dissolved phosphorus) 244
Temperature
  as a zeitgeber 193
  effects on feeding 38
  optimum 37
  physiological effects 38
  reaction norm 37
  stratification 22
  tolerance to 36–38
  vertical profile 22
TEP (transparent exopolymers) 73
Territories, direct defence of 145–146
Theodoxus fluviatilis 161, 208
Thermocline 22
Thermophilic 36
Thiobacillus denitrificans 68
Threshold food concentration 83–84, 137–138, 185
Threshold values for trophic condition 251
Thymalus thymalus (grayling) 227
Thymidine uptake 70
Tigriopus californicus 105
Tilman's model of competition 130–135
Time lags 93–95, 148, 223, 255
Time scales 152
Timing strategies 189
Tinca tinca (tench) 211–212
Tipula 275
Tolerance optimum 33
Tolerance ranges 33, 41
Top-down control 213–219, 280
  concept of 213
  dampening effects of 215–216
  in streams 215
Top-down/bottom-up controls, effect of scaling 218

Toxic ammonia 254
Toxic cyanobacteria 111, 155–156
TP (total phosphorus) 244
Trace elements 65
Tradeoffs
  nutrient uptake 66, 120
  risks of predation 168–169
Trophic cascade 213, 218
Trophic classification of lakes 251–252
Trophic level concept 205, 218, 236
Trophic pyramids 236
Trophic types of organisms 51
Trophodynamics 205
Trophogenic zone 24
Tropholytic zone 24
Tubifex 40, 75, 220, 269
Turbellarians 14, 22, 30, 49
Turbidity 21
Turbulence 14, 22, 30, 49
Typha 63

Ultimate factors 120, 199
  definition 3
  regulating cyclomorphosis 193–194
  regulating vertical migration 195–199
Ultraoligotrophic lakes, characteristics of 251–252
UPOM (ultrafine particulate organic matter) 230
UV radiation 19, 50
  biological effects 50, 276–277
  characteristics 19
  effects on zooplankton 172, 277
  increase 276
  vertical attenuation 276

Vallisneria 237
van't Hoff's Law 37
Vertical migration; see Diel vertical migration
Vierwaldstätter Lake 239
Viruses 180
Viscosity 12–16
  dynamic 13
  kinematic 13
Visual orientation 164–165
Volvox 36, 65–66

Wastewater
  removal 254
  treatment 253–254
  treatment plant 255
Water
  as a solvent 16
  boiling point 12
  color 21
  density 12, 47
  dielectric constant 16
  hardness 43
  molecular structure 12
  specific heat 13
  surface tension 13
  thermal features 13
  transparency 21
  viscosity 12–13
Water quality classes of saprobic system 267–270
Watershed, effects on water chemistry 240–241, 247–248
Weathering of rock 240, 260
Winter fish kills 179, 215, 254
Wörthersee 63

Zelandopsyche ingens 215
Zero growth isocline 129
ZNGI lines 132–137, 149–150
Zooplankton 138
  pigments 171
  size structure 167, 179, 184
  stoichiometry 160
Zoospore 182
Zwemlust 213
Zygorhizidium planktonicum 182